AUTHENTICATED
U.S. GOVERNMENT
INFORMATION
GPO

# SCIENCE, TECHNOLOGY, AND GLOBAL ECONOMIC COMPETITIVENESS

## HEARING

BEFORE THE

## COMMITTEE ON SCIENCE

ONE HUNDRED NINTH CONGRESS

FIRST SESSION

OCTOBER 20, 2005

**Serial No. 109–27**

Printed for the use of the Committee on Science

Available via the World Wide Web: http://www.house.gov/science

U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE

24–132PS WASHINGTON : 2006

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Internet: bookstore.gpo.gov Phone: toll free (866) 512–1800; DC area (202) 512–1800
Fax: (202) 512–2250 Mail: Stop SSOP, Washington, DC 20402–0001

## COMMITTEE ON SCIENCE

HON. SHERWOOD L. BOEHLERT, New York, *Chairman*

RALPH M. HALL, Texas
LAMAR S. SMITH, Texas
CURT WELDON, Pennsylvania
DANA ROHRABACHER, California
KEN CALVERT, California
ROSCOE G. BARTLETT, Maryland
VERNON J. EHLERS, Michigan
GIL GUTKNECHT, Minnesota
FRANK D. LUCAS, Oklahoma
JUDY BIGGERT, Illinois
WAYNE T. GILCHREST, Maryland
W. TODD AKIN, Missouri
TIMOTHY V. JOHNSON, Illinois
J. RANDY FORBES, Virginia
JO BONNER, Alabama
TOM FEENEY, Florida
BOB INGLIS, South Carolina
DAVE G. REICHERT, Washington
MICHAEL E. SODREL, Indiana
JOHN J.H. "JOE" SCHWARZ, Michigan
MICHAEL T. MCCAUL, Texas
VACANCY
VACANCY

BART GORDON, Tennessee
JERRY F. COSTELLO, Illinois
EDDIE BERNICE JOHNSON, Texas
LYNN C. WOOLSEY, California
DARLENE HOOLEY, Oregon
MARK UDALL, Colorado
DAVID WU, Oregon
MICHAEL M. HONDA, California
BRAD MILLER, North Carolina
LINCOLN DAVIS, Tennessee
RUSS CARNAHAN, Missouri
DANIEL LIPINSKI, Illinois
SHEILA JACKSON LEE, Texas
BRAD SHERMAN, California
BRIAN BAIRD, Washington
JIM MATHESON, Utah
JIM COSTA, California
AL GREEN, Texas
CHARLIE MELANCON, Louisiana
DENNIS MOORE, Kansas

# CONTENTS

**October 20, 2005**


| | Page |
|---|---|
| Witness List | 2 |
| Hearing Charter | 3 |

**Opening Statements**

| | |
|---|---|
| Statement by Representative Sherwood L. Boehlert, Chairman, Committee on Science, U.S. House of Representatives | 24 |
| Written Statement | 25 |
| Statement by Representative Bart Gordon, Minority Ranking Member, Committee on Science, U.S. House of Representatives | 26 |
| Written Statement | 27 |
| Prepared Statement by Representative Vernon J. Ehlers, Chairman, Subcommittee on Environment, Technology, and Standards, Committee on Science, U.S. House of Representatives | 28 |
| Prepared Statement by Representative Jerry F. Costello, Member, Committee on Science, U.S. House of Representatives | 28 |
| Prepared Statement by Representative Eddie Bernice Johnson, Member, Committee on Science, U.S. House of Representatives | 29 |
| Prepared Statement by Representative Michael M. Honda, Member, Committee on Science, U.S. House of Representatives | 30 |
| Prepared Statement by Representative Russ Carnahan, Member, Committee on Science, U.S. House of Representatives | 30 |
| Prepared Statement by Representative Sheila Jackson Lee, Member, Committee on Science, U.S. House of Representatives | 30 |
| Prepared Statement by Representative Brian Baird, Member, Committee on Science, U.S. House of Representatives | 31 |

**Witnesses:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Mr. Norman R. Augustine, Retired Chairman and CEO, Lockheed Martin Corporation | |
| Oral Statement | 33 |
| Written Statement | 36 |
| Biography | 44 |
| Dr. P. Roy Vagelos, Retired Chairman and CEO, Merck & Co. | |
| Oral Statement | 44 |
| Written Statement | 46 |
| Biography | 48 |
| Dr. William A. Wulf, President, National Academy of Engineering | |
| Oral Statement | 49 |
| Written Statement | 51 |
| Biography | 53 |
| Discussion | 54 |

Page

**Appendix 1: Answers to Post-Hearing Questions**

Responses on behalf of Norman R. Augustine, Retired Chairman and CEO, Lockheed Martin Corporation; P. Roy Vagelos, Retired Chairman and CEO, Merck & Co.; and, William A. Wulf, President, National Academy of Engineering ..... 72

**Appendix 2: Additional Material for the Record**

*Rising Above the Gathering Storm: Energizing and Employing America for a Brighter Economic Future,* National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, and Institute of Medicine, February 2006 ..... 77

# SCIENCE, TECHNOLOGY, AND GLOBAL ECONOMIC COMPETITIVENESS

**THURSDAY, OCTOBER 20, 2005**

HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES,
COMMITTEE ON SCIENCE,
*Washington, DC.*

The Committee met, pursuant to call, at 10:00 a.m., in Room 2318 of the Rayburn House Office Building, Hon. Sherwood L. Boehlert [Chairman of the Committee] presiding.

# COMMITTEE ON SCIENCE
# U.S. HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES

## *Science, Technology and Global Economic Competitiveness*

Thursday, October 20, 2005
10:00 a.m. – 12:00 p.m.
2318 Rayburn House Office Building (WEBCAST)

**Witness List**

**Mr. Norman R. Augustine**
Retired Chairman and CEO
Lockheed Martin Corporation

**Dr. P. Roy Vagelos**
Retired Chairman and CEO
Merck & Co

**Dr. William A. Wulf**
President
National Academy of Engineering

Section 210 of the Congressional Accountability Act of 1995 applies the rights and protections covered under the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 to the United States Congress. Accordingly, the Committee on Science strives to accommodate/meet the needs of those requiring special assistance. If you need special accommodation, please contact the Committee on Science in advance of the scheduled event (3 days requested) at (202) 225-6371 or FAX (202) 225-0891.

Should you need Committee materials in alternative formats, please contact the Committee as noted above.

HEARING CHARTER

# COMMITTEE ON SCIENCE
# U.S. HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES

# Science, Technology, and Global Economic Competitiveness

THURSDAY, OCTOBER 20, 2005
10:00 A.M.–12:00 P.M.
2318 RAYBURN HOUSE OFFICE BUILDING

**1. Purpose**

On Thursday, October 20, 2005, the House Science Committee will hold a hearing to receive testimony on the report released by the National Academy of Sciences on October 12 entitled *Rising Above the Gathering Storm: Energizing and Employing America for a Brighter Economic Future.* The report, which was requested by Congress, recommends ways to strengthen research and education in science and technology.

**2. Witnesses**

**Mr. Norman R. Augustine,** Retired Chairman and CEO of the Lockheed Martin Corporation. Mr. Augustine chaired the National Academy of Sciences (NAS) committee that wrote the report.

**Dr. P. Roy Vagelos,** Retired Chairman and CEO of Merck & Co. Dr. Vagelos served on the NAS committee that wrote the report.

**Dr. William A. Wulf,** President of the National Academy of Engineering and Vice Chair of the National Research Council, the principal operating arm of the National Academies of Sciences and Engineering.

**3. Overarching Questions**

- What are the principal innovation-related challenges the United States faces as it competes in the global economy?
- What specific steps should the Federal Government take to ensure that the United States remains the world leader in innovation?

**4. Brief Overview**

- While the U.S. continues to lead the world in measures of innovation capacity—research and development (R&D) spending, number of scientists and engineers, scientific output, etc.—recent statistics on the level of U.S. support for research relative to other countries indicate that this lead may be slipping. Overall U.S. federal funding for R&D as a percentage of gross domestic product (GDP) has declined significantly since its peak in 1965, and the focus of this R&D has shifted away from the physical sciences, mathematics, and engineering—the areas of R&D historically most closely correlated with innovation and economic growth.
- At the same time, other nations—particularly emergent nations such as China and India—have recognized the importance of innovation to economic growth, and are pouring resources into their scientific and technological infrastructure, rapidly building their innovation capacity and increasing their ability to compete with the United States in the global economy.
- In May 2005, at the request of Congress, the National Academy of Sciences (NAS) began a study of "the most urgent challenges the United States faces in maintaining leadership in key areas of science and technology." NAS assembled a high-level panel of senior scientists and business and university leaders and produced a report in five months.
- The NAS report offers four broad recommendations: (A) increase America's talent pool by vastly improving K–12 science and mathematics education; (B) sustain and strengthen the Nation's traditional commitment to long-term basic research; (C) make the United States the most attractive setting in

which to study and perform research; and (D) ensure that the United States is the premier place in the world to innovate. (The executive summary of the NAS report is attached in Appendix A.)

- The NAS report also describes 20 explicit steps that the Federal Government could take to implement its recommendations. The report estimates the total cost of these steps to be $9.2–$23.8 billion per year.

**5. Summary of NAS Report**

In May of this year, Senators Lamar Alexander and Jeff Bingaman, Chairman of the Energy Subcommittee and Ranking Member of full Senate Committee on Energy and Natural Resources, respectively, asked the National Academy of Sciences (NAS) to conduct a study of "the most urgent challenges the United States faces in maintaining leadership in key areas of science and technology." In June, Science Committee Chairman Sherwood Boehlert and Ranking Member Bart Gordon wrote to the NAS to endorse the Senate request for a study and suggest some additional specific questions (the text of the Senate and House letters are attached in Appendices B and C). The study was paid for out of internal Academy funds, and NAS released the report on October 12.

*The Problem*

The NAS report begins by describing how science and engineering are critical to American prosperity. Technical innovations, such as electricity and information technology, have increased the productivity of existing industries and created new ones and improved the overall quality of life in the U.S. The report then examines how the U.S. is doing relative to other countries in science and technology today—looking at indicators such as science and engineering publications, R&D investment, venture capital funding, and student proficiency levels—to see if the U.S. is positioned to make the next generation of innovations needed to maintain U.S. competitiveness and security going forward.

"Worrisome indicators" outlined in the report[1] include:

- The United States today is a net importer of high-technology products. Its share of global high-technology exports has fallen in the last two decades from 30 percent to 17 percent, and its trade balance in high-technology manufactured goods shifted from plus $33 billion in 1990 to a negative $24 billion in 2004.
- In 2003, only three American companies ranked among the top 10 recipients of patents granted by the United States Patent and Trademark Office.
- In Germany, 36 percent of undergraduates receive their degrees in science and engineering. In China, the figure is 59 percent, and in Japan 66 percent. In the United States, the corresponding figure is 32 percent.
- Fewer than one-third of U.S. 4th grade and 8th grade students performed at or above a level called "proficient" in mathematics ("proficiency" was considered the ability to exhibit competence with challenging subject matter). About one-third of the 4th graders and one-fifth of the 8th graders lacked the competence to perform basic mathematical computations.

The NAS report concludes that education, research, and innovation are essential if the U.S. is to succeed in providing jobs for its citizenry.

*Recommendations and Steps the Federal Government Should Take to Implement Them*

The NAS report makes four recommendations, each of which is supported by explicit steps that the Federal Government could take to implement the recommendations. These recommendations and steps are provided verbatim below; more details on each step are available in the report executive summary in Appendix A.

*10,000 Teachers, 10 Million Minds and K–12 Science and Mathematics Education*

Recommendation A: Increase America's talent pool by vastly improving K–12 science and mathematics education.

Implementation Steps:

- A–1: Annually recruit 10,000 science and mathematics teachers by awarding four-year scholarships and thereby educating 10 million minds.

[1] See pages 18–19 of this charter for the pages of the NAS report that contain the sources for these statistics.

- A–2: Strengthen the skills of 250,000 teachers through training and education programs at summer institutes, in Master's programs, and Advanced Placement and International Baccalaureate (AP and IB) training programs and thus inspire students every day.
- A–3: Enlarge the pipeline by increasing the number of students who take AP and IB science and mathematics courses.

*Sowing the Seeds through Science and Engineering Research*

Recommendation B: Sustain and strengthen the Nation's traditional commitment to long-term basic research that has the potential to be transformational to maintain the flow of new ideas that fuel the economy, provide security, and enhance the quality of life.

Implementation Steps:

- B–1: Increase the federal investment in long-term basic research by 10 percent a year over the next seven years.
- B–2: Provide new research grants of $500,000 each annually, payable over five years, to 200 of our most outstanding early-career researchers.
- B–3: Institute a National Coordination Office for Research Infrastructure to manage a centralized research infrastructure fund of $500 million per year over the next five years.
- B–4: Allocate at least eight percent of the budgets of federal research agencies to discretionary funding.
- B–5: Create in the Department of Energy an organization like the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency called the Advanced Research Projects Agency-Energy (ARPA–E).
- B–6: Institute a Presidential Innovation Award to stimulate scientific and engineering advances in the national interest.

*Best and Brightest in Science and Engineering Higher Education*

Recommendation C: Make the United States the most attractive setting in which to study and perform research so that we can develop, recruit, and retain the best and brightest students, scientists, and engineers from within the United States and throughout the world.

Implementation Steps:

- C–1: Increase the number and proportion of U.S. citizens who earn physical-sciences, life-sciences, engineering, and mathematics Bachelor's degrees by providing 25,000 new four-year competitive undergraduate scholarships each year to U.S. citizens attending U.S. institutions.
- C–2: Increase the number of U.S. citizens pursuing graduate study in "areas of national need" by funding 5,000 new graduate fellowships each year.
- C–3: Provide a federal tax credit to encourage employers to make continuing education available (either internally or through colleges and universities) to practicing scientists and engineers.
- C–4: Continue to improve visa processing for international students and scholars.
- C–5: Provide a one-year automatic visa extension to international students who receive doctorates or the equivalent in science, technology, engineering, mathematics, or other fields of national need at qualified U.S. institutions to remain in the United States to seek employment. If these students are offered jobs by U.S.-based employers and pass a security screening test, they should be provided automatic work permits and expedited residence status.
- C–6: Institute a new skills-based, preferential immigration option.
- C–7: Reform the current system of "deemed exports."

*Incentives for Innovation and the Investment Environment*

Recommendation D: Ensure that the United States is the premier place in the world to innovate; invest in downstream activities such as manufacturing and marketing; and create high-paying jobs that are based on innovation by modernizing the patent system, realigning tax policies to encourage innovation, and ensuring affordable broadband access.

Implementation Steps:

- D–1: Enhance intellectual property protection for the 21st century global economy.
- D–2: Enact a stronger research and development tax credit to encourage private investment in innovation.
- D–3: Provide tax incentives for U.S.-based innovation.
- D–4: Ensure ubiquitous broadband Internet access.

*Costs of the Recommendations*

The NAS report provides a "back of the envelope" estimate of the annual cost to the Federal Government of each of the implementation steps that are recommended.

- For the three steps in Recommendation A (increase America's talent pool by vastly improving K–12 science and mathematics education): $1.5–$2.4 billion per year.
- For the six steps in Recommendation B (sustain and strengthen the Nation's traditional commitment to long-term basic research): $1.1–$3.4 billion per year.
- For the seven steps in Recommendation C (make the United States the most attractive setting in which to study and perform research): $1.6–$3.6 billion per year.
- For the four steps in Recommendation D (ensure that the United States is the premier place in the world to innovate): $5.1–$14.4 billion per year.

The total cost of these steps would be $9.2–$23.8 billion per year.

**6. Issues Related to Specific Recommendations in the NAS Report and Related Questions for the Witnesses**

In the invitation letter for the hearing, each of the witnesses was asked to answer questions about the three specific recommendations discussed below. These were major recommendations that seemed to call for further elaboration.

*Recommendation B–1: Increase the federal investment in long-term basic research by 10 percent a year over the next seven years:* Numerous reports and groups in recent years have suggested doubling federal funding for basic research, as the NAS report recommends.[2] (The authorization bill for the National Science Foundation the Congress passed in 2002 called for doubling that agency's budget, and Congress did double the budget of the National Institutes of Health over the past six years or so.) While these reports have included a rationale for increasing federal R&D spending, none has explained the reason why a specific level of spending needs to be achieved by a particular date. The U.S. currently spends $56 billion annually on non-defense R&D, more than the rest of the G–7 countries[3] combined. Also, total R&D spending (government and industry) in the U.S. has remained relatively constant as a percentage of the U.S. gross domestic product, indicating that investment in R&D has grown as the U.S. economy has grown, begging the question of why increased federal investment is necessary. (This may be especially true if federal R&D is being invested in the same kinds of research as private R&D rather than in kinds of research, particularly basic research, that might otherwise be neglected.)

In addition, the NAS report argues that federal investment in basic research fuels economic growth by contributing new ideas that can eventually lead to commercial products. Yet recent surveys of industry suggest that companies' investments in R&D have had only a very limited impact on the success of the individual companies.[4] What is true for individual companies is not necessarily true for nations as a whole; R&D may contribute greatly to the relative economic success of the U.S. as a whole, while not being so important to any individual company. (This would make sense. Nations stay ahead through innovation, but individual companies may have other comparative advantages.) But the company statistics and attitudes on R&D at least raise the question about whether the contribution of R&D to economic

[2] For example, the U.S. Commission on National Security in the 21st Century (the Hart-Rudman Commission, Phase III, 2001) recommended doubling the federal research and development budget by 2010.

[3] The six non-U.S. members of the G–7 are France, Great Britain, Germany, Japan, Italy and Canada.

[4] Booz Allen Hamilton's Global Innovation 1,000 study was released on October 11, 2005 and is available on line at *http://www.boozallen.com.* An example of their findings is that companies in the bottom 10 percent of R&D spending as a percentage of sales under-perform competitors on gross margins, gross profit, operating profit, and total shareholder returns. However, companies in the top 10 percent showed no consistent performance differences compared to companies that spend less on R&D.

success is exaggerated, and how federal R&D investment contributes to overall economic success.

Questions in the witness letters on this recommendation:

- How did the study panel arrive at the recommended 10 percent annual increase in federally-sponsored basic research over the next seven years? What other options did the panel consider and what led to the choice of 10 percent?
- Recent surveys of industry suggest that basic research performed at universities and transformational technological innovation have only a very limited impact on the success of individual companies. Is the impact of research and innovation different for the economy as a whole than it is for individual companies?

*Recommendation B–4: Allocate at least eight percent of the budgets of federal research agencies to discretionary funding:* A number of recent reports have expressed concern that the current grant selection system in most agencies shies away from daring proposals. The view is that when funding is tight (like now), researchers and the peer review system both tend to favor *incremental* research proposals—projects that are guaranteed to produce results—results that are generally in keeping with existing ideas. In this situation, high-risk research (especially that proposed by young investigators or involving interdisciplinary studies) can be underfunded or neglected entirely. The NAS report recommends that funding be set aside at federal research agencies (and distributed at program officers' discretion) for high-risk, high-payoff research. While such research is valuable, so is the research that provides steady if incremental advances on existing scientific questions. In addition, not every agency is equally well equipped to solicit and select high-risk projects. Finally, even if setting aside such funding is a good idea, it's unclear whether eight percent is a reasonable amount.

Questions in the witness letters on this recommendation:

- How did the study panel arrive at the recommended eight percent allocation within each federal research agency's budget to be managed at the discretion of technical program managers to catalyze high-risk, high-payoff research? What other options did the panel consider and what led to the choice of eight percent?

*Recommendation B–5: Create in the Department of Energy an organization like the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency called the Advanced Research Projects Agency-Energy (ARPA–E):* The recommendation seems to assume that the main reason the U.S. has not made more progress in deploying technologies that use less energy or that use alternative energy sources is that the technology is not being developed. But numerous studies have concluded that the primary problem in energy technology is that existing advanced technologies never get deployed. These studies tend to recommend policy changes to encourage the deployment of advanced technologies, as opposed to recommending (or merely recommending) programs to develop new technologies. For example, a recent American Council for an Energy Efficient Economy study estimated that "adopting a comprehensive set of policies for advancing energy efficiency could lower national energy use by 18 percent in 2010 and 33 percent in 2020."[5] Similarly, a 2001 NAS study on automotive fuel economy described numerous existing technologies that could reduce dependence on foreign oil, but are not yet deployed.

In addition, it is not clear whether the DARPA analogy is entirely apt. DARPA funds advanced technologies that will eventually be used by the Pentagon. The government itself would not be the main purchaser of technologies developed by ARPA–E, so those technologies would still face existing problems in finding markets. It is also unclear how the research that would be supported by ARPA–E would differ from that already funded by the Department of Energy's current conservation and renewable energy research programs.

Questions in the witness letters on this recommendation:

- Industry and government have both developed numerous energy production and energy efficiency technologies that have not been deployed. How did the study panel arrive at its implicit conclusion that technology development is the greater bottleneck (as opposed to policy) in developing energy systems for a 21st century economy?

[5] *Energy Efficiency Progress and Potential,* American Council for an Energy-Efficient Economy, no date.

**7. General Issues**

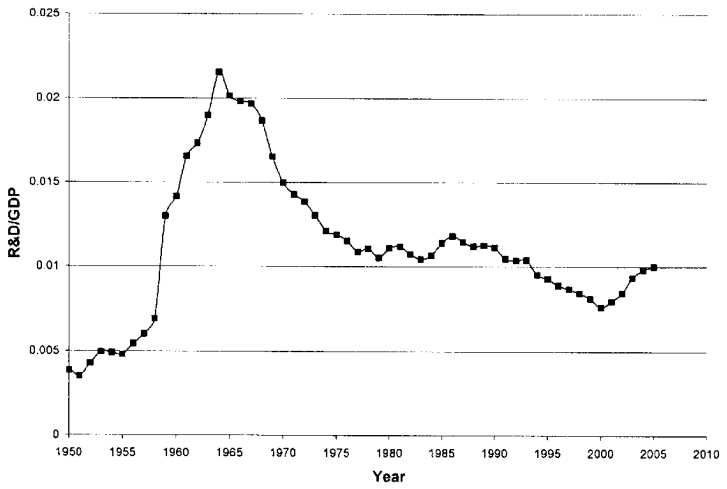
*Overall Federal Support for R&D*

The amount of the country's overall wealth devoted to federal R&D has declined significantly since the post-Sputnik surge in support for R&D. According to Office of Management and Budget statistics, in 1965, funding for federal R&D as a percentage of GDP (measured as outlays), also known as R&D intensity, was slightly over two percent (Chart 1). In 2005, it is estimated to be 1.07 percent.

While this ratio has recently begun to increase again, turning upward over the last five years, the majority of those increases have gone toward short-term defense development and homeland security applications. For example, the Department of Defense (DOD) R&D increases alone—most of which have supported development projects that have very little impact on innovation or broader economic development—has accounted for almost 70 percent of the overall R&D increases of the last five years. Of the remaining increases, 75 percent has gone to the National Institutes of Health (NIH) and the Department of Homeland Security (DHS). At $71 billion and $29 billion, respectively, the R&D budgets of DOD and NIH now account for over 75 percent of all federal R&D. Meanwhile, funding for the physical sciences and engineering—the areas historically most closely associated with innovation and economic growth—have been flat or declining for the last thirty years.

Also, the long-term outlook for the federal budget does not favor future increases in discretionary spending (through which almost all R&D is funded). Absent major policy changes, the growth in mandatory federal spending—primarily for health and retirement benefits and payments on the national debt interest—will demand a significantly greater share of the government's resources.

**Chart 1.** Federal Spending (Outlays) on Research and Development as a Percentage of GDP, FY1950-FY2005. (Source: Office of Management and Budget Historical Tables, Fiscal Year 2006.)




*Shift of Private Sector R&D*

During the heyday of the corporate research laboratory in the middle decades of the 20th century, U.S. corporate laboratories supported all stages of R&D, from knowledge creation to applied research to product development, and were quite successful in their efforts to nurture innovation. The most notable example of this was AT&T's Bell Laboratories, which grew to be one of the world premier research organizations of the last century, developing numerous breakthrough technologies that changed American life, including transistors, lasers, fiber-optics, and communications satellites. Researchers at Bell Labs and other corporate laboratories were eligible for, and received, grants from federal research agencies such as the National Science Foundation and DOD, but they received core support from the parent company and they conducted basic and applied research directed toward developing technology relevant to the company's business.

While overall growth of industry-funded R&D has remained strong in recent years, the focus of this R&D has shifted significantly away from longer-term basic research in favor of applied research and development more closely tied to product development. Because of market demands from investors to capitalize on R&D quickly, large corporate laboratories of the Bell Labs model are increasingly rare (notable exceptions include companies such as IBM and GE). Instead, corporations now focus research projects almost exclusively on lower-risk, late-stage R&D projects with commercial benefits, leaving the Federal Government as the predominant supporter of long-term basic research.

*Increasing Competitiveness of Foreign Countries*

While trends of support for the innovation system in the U.S. have showed signs of slowing, other nations are committing significant new resources to building their science and technology enterprises. More than one-third of OECD (Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development) countries have increased government support for R&D by an average rate of over five percent annually since 1995. The European Union has recently established a target to achieve EU-wide R&D intensity of three percent of the EU economy by 2010. (By comparison, the current U.S. R&D intensity, public and private sector combined, is 2.6 percent of GDP.) Similarly, individual nations, including South Korea, Germany, the U.K. and Canada, have recently pledged to increase R&D spending as a percentage of GDP.

However, no nation has increased its support for innovation as dramatically as China. It has doubled its R&D intensity from 0.6 percent of its GDP in 1995 to 1.2 percent in 2002 (this during a time of rapid GDP growth). R&D investments in China by foreign corporations have also grown dramatically, with U.S. investments alone increasing from just $7 million in 1994 to over $500 million in 2000. China is now the third largest performer of R&D in the world, behind only the U.S. and Japan.

The increased innovation capacity of other countries is also becoming evident in output-based R&D benchmarks. For example, the U.S. share of science and engineering publications published worldwide declined from 38 percent in 1988 to 31 percent in 2001, while Western Europe and Asia's share increased from 31 to 36 percent and 11 to 17 percent, respectively. Similar trends have occurred in the area of U.S. patent applications and citations in scientific journals.

*Education and Workforce Issues*

While the supply and demand of future scientists and engineers is notoriously difficult to predict, most experts believe that the transition to a knowledge-based economy will demand an increased quality and quantity of the world's scientific and technical workforce. As is the case with R&D figures, trends in the distribution of the world's science and engineering workforce are also unfavorable to long-term U.S. competitiveness.

The world is catching up and even surpassing the U.S. in higher education and the production of science and engineering specialists. China now graduates four times as many engineering students as the U.S., and South Korea, which has one-sixth the population of the U.S., graduates nearly the same number of engineers as the U.S. Moreover, most Western European and Asian countries graduate a significantly higher percentage of students in science and engineering. At the graduate level, the statistics are even more pronounced. In 1966, U.S. students accounted for approximately 76 percent of world's science and engineering Ph.D.s. In 2000, they accounted for only 36 percent. In contrast, China went from producing almost no science and engineering Ph.D.s in 1975 to granting 13,000 Ph.D.s in 2002, of which an estimated 70 percent were in science and engineering.

Meanwhile, the achievement and interest levels of U.S. students in science and engineering are relatively low. According to the most recent international assessment, U.S. twelfth graders scored below average and among the lowest of participating nations in math and science general knowledge, and the comparative data of math and science assessment revealed a near-monopoly by Asia in the top scoring group for students in grades four and eight. These students are not on track to study college level science and engineering and, in fact, are unlikely ever to do so. Of the 25–30 percent of entering college freshmen with an interest in a science or engineering field, less than half complete a science or engineering degree in five years.

All of this is happening as the U.S. scientific and technical workforce is about to experience a high rate of retirement. One quarter of the current science and engineering workforce is over 50 years old. At the same time, the U.S. Department of Labor projects that new jobs requiring science, engineering and technical training will increase four times higher than the average national job growth rate.

*Industry Concerns and Reports*

Some leading U.S. businesses have become increasingly vocal about concerns that the U.S. is in danger of losing its competitive advantage. In an effort to call attention to these concerns, several industry organizations have independently produced reports specifically examining the new competitiveness challenge and recommending possible courses of action to address it. Prominent among these efforts is the National Innovation Initiative (NII), a comprehensive undertaking by industry and university leaders to identify the origins of America's innovation challenges and prepare a call to action for U.S. companies to "innovate or abdicate." The December 2004 NII final report, *Innovate America: Thriving in a World of Challenge and Change,* is intended to serve as a roadmap for policy-makers, industry leaders, and others working to help America remain competitive in the world economy.

Other industry associations that have also produced recent reports include AeA (formerly the American Electronics Association), the Business Roundtable, Electronic Industries Alliance, National Association of Manufacturers, and TechNet. While the companies and industry sectors represented by these organizations varies widely, one general recommendation was common to all of the reports: the Federal Government needs to strengthen and re-energize investments in R&D and science and engineering education. The Science Committee held a hearing on July 21, 2005 on *U.S. Competitiveness: The Innovation Challenge* to examine the issues raised in these reports and how federal science and engineering research and education investments impacts U.S. economic competitiveness.

**Appendix A**

## Executive Summary of National Academy of Sciences Report, Rising Above the Gathering Storm: Energizing and Employing America for a Brighter Economic Future

The United States takes deserved pride in the vitality of its economy, which forms the foundation of our high quality of life, our national security, and our hope that our children and grandchildren will inherit ever-greater opportunities. That vitality is derived in large part from the productivity of well-trained people and the steady stream of scientific and technical innovations they produce. Without high-quality, knowledge-intensive jobs and the innovative enterprises that lead to discovery and new technology, our economy will suffer and our people will face a lower standard of living. Economic studies conducted before the information-technology revolution have shown that even then as much as 85 percent of measured growth in U.S. income per capita is due to technological change.[6]

Today, Americans are feeling the gradual and subtle effects of globalization that challenge the economic and strategic leadership that the United States has enjoyed since World War II. A substantial portion of our workforce finds itself in direct competition for jobs with lower-wage workers around the globe, and leading-edge scientific and engineering work is being accomplished in many parts of the world. Thanks to globalization, driven by modern communications and other advances, workers in virtually every sector must now face competitors who live just a mouse-click away in Ireland, Finland, China, India, or dozens of other nations whose economies are growing.

### CHARGE TO THE COMMITTEE

The National Academies was asked by Senator Lamar Alexander and Senator Jeff Bingaman of the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources, with endorsement by Representatives Sherwood Boehlert and Bart Gordon of the House Committee on Science, to respond to the following questions:

> What are the top 10 actions, in priority order, that federal policy-makers could take to enhance the science and technology enterprise so that the United States can successfully compete, prosper, and be secure in the global community of the 21st Century? What strategy, with several concrete steps, could be used to implement each of those actions?

The National Academies created the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century to respond to this request. The charge constitutes a challenge both daunting and exhilarating: to recommend to the Nation specific steps that can best strengthen the quality of life in America—our prosperity, our health, and our security. The committee has been cautious in its analysis of information. However, the available information is only partly adequate for the committee's needs. In addition, the time allotted to develop the report (10 weeks from the time of the committee's meeting to report release) limited the ability of the committee to conduct a thorough analysis. Even if unlimited time were available, definitive analyses on many issues are not possible given the uncertainties involved.

This report reflects the consensus views and judgment of the committee members. Although the committee includes leaders in academe, industry, and government—several current and former industry chief executive officers, university presidents, researchers (including three Nobel prize winners), and former presidential appointees—the array of topics and policies covered is so broad that it was not possible to assemble a committee of 20 members with direct expertise in each relevant area. Because of those limitations, the committee has relied heavily on the judgment of many experts in the study's focus groups, additional consultations via email and telephone with other experts, and an unusually large panel of reviewers. Although other solutions are undoubtedly possible, the committee believes that its recommendations, if implemented, will help the United States achieve prosperity in the 21st century.

---

[6] For example, work by Robert Solow and Moses Abramovitz published in the middle 1950s demonstrated that as much as 85 percent of measured growth in U.S. income per capita during the 1890–1950 period could not be explained by increases in the capital stock or other measurable inputs. The big unexplained portion, referred to alternatively as the "residual" or "the measure of ignorance," has been widely attributed to the effects of technological change.

## FINDINGS

Having reviewed trends in the United States and abroad, the committee is deeply concerned that the scientific and technical building blocks of our economic leadership are eroding at a time when many other nations are gathering strength. We strongly believe that a worldwide strengthening will benefit the world's economy—particularly in the creation of jobs in countries that are far less well-off than the United States. But we are worried about the future prosperity of the United States. Although many people assume that United States will always be a world leader in science and technology, this may not continue to be the case inasmuch as great minds and ideas exist throughout the world. We fear the abruptness with which a lead in science and technology can be lost—and the difficulty of recovering a lead once lost, if indeed it can be regained at all.

This nation must prepare with great urgency to preserve its strategic and economic security. Because other nations have, and probably will continue to have, the competitive advantage of a low-wage structure, the United States must compete by optimizing its knowledge-based resources, particularly in science and technology, and by sustaining the most fertile environment for new and revitalized industries and the well-paying jobs they bring. We have already seen that capital, factories, and laboratories readily move wherever they are thought to have the greatest promise of return to investors.

## RECOMMENDATIONS

The committee reviewed hundreds of detailed suggestions—including various calls for novel and untested mechanisms—from other committees, from its focus groups, and from its own members. The challenge is immense, and the actions needed to respond are immense as well.

The committee identified two key challenges that are tightly coupled to scientific and engineering prowess: creating high-quality jobs for Americans and responding to the Nation's need for clean, affordable, and reliable energy. To address those challenges, the committee structured its ideas according to four basic recommendations that focus on the human, financial, and knowledge capital necessary for U.S. prosperity.

The four recommendations focus on actions in K–12 education (*10,000 Teachers, 10 Million Minds*), research (*Sowing the Seeds*), higher education (*Best and Brightest*), and economic policy (*Incentives for Innovation*) that are set forth in the following sections. Also provided are a total of 20 implementation steps for reaching the goals set forth in the recommendations.

Some actions involve changes in the law. Others require financial support that would come from reallocation of existing funds or, if necessary, from new funds. Overall, the committee believes that the investments are modest relative to the magnitude of the return the Nation can expect in the creation of new high-quality jobs and in responding to its energy needs.

## 10,000 TEACHERS, 10 MILLION MINDS IN K–12 SCIENCE AND MATHEMATICS EDUCATION

*Recommendation A: Increase America's talent pool by vastly improving K–12 science and mathematics education.*

*Implementation Actions*

The highest priority should be assigned to the following actions and programs. All should be subjected to continuing evaluation and refinement as they are implemented:

**Action A–1: Annually recruit 10,000 science and mathematics teachers by awarding four-year scholarships and thereby educating 10 million minds.** Attract 10,000 of America's brightest students to the teaching profession every year, each of whom can have an impact on 1,000 students over the life of their careers. The program would award competitive four-year scholarships for students to obtain Bachelor's degrees in the physical or life sciences, engineering, or mathematics with concurrent certification as K–12 science and mathematics teachers. The merit-based scholarships would provide up to $20,000 a year for four years for qualified educational expenses, including tuition and fees, and require a commitment to five years of service in public K–12 schools. A $10,000 annual bonus would go to participating teachers in underserved schools in inner cities and rural areas. To provide the highest-quality education for undergraduates who want to become teachers, it would be important to award matching grants, perhaps $1 million a year for up to five years, to as many as 100 universities and colleges to encourage them to establish integrated four-year undergraduate programs leading to Bachelor's degrees in science, engineering, or mathematics with teacher certification.

**Action A–2: Strengthen the skills of 250,000 teachers through training and education programs at summer institutes, in Master's programs, and Advanced Placement and International Baccalaureate (AP and IB) training programs and thus inspires students every day.** Use proven models to strengthen the skills (and compensation, which is based on education and skill level) of 250,000 *current* K–12 teachers:

- *Summer institutes:* Provide matching grants to state and regional one- to two-week summer institutes to upgrade as many as 50,000 practicing teachers each summer. The material covered would allow teachers to keep current with recent developments in science, mathematics, and technology and allow for the exchange of best teaching practices. The Merck Institute for Science Education is a model for this recommendation.
- *Science and mathematics Master's programs:* Provide grants to universities to offer 50,000 current middle-school and high-school science, mathematics, and technology teachers (with or without undergraduate science, mathematics, or engineering degrees) two-year, part-time Master's degree programs that focus on rigorous science and mathematics content and pedagogy. The model for this recommendation is the University of Pennsylvania Science Teachers Institute.
- *AP, IB, and pre-AP or pre-IB training:* Train an additional 70,000 AP or IB and 80,000 pre-AP or pre-IB instructors to teach advanced courses in mathematics and science. Assuming satisfactory performance, teachers may receive incentive payments of up to $2,000 per year, as well as $100 for each student who passes an AP or IB exam in mathematics or science. There are two models for this program: the Advanced Placement Incentive Program and Laying the Foundation, a pre-AP program.
- *K–12 curriculum materials modeled on world-class standards:* Foster high-quality teaching with world-class curricula, standards, and assessments of student learning. Convene a national panel to collect, evaluate, and develop rigorous K–12 materials that would be available free of charge as a voluntary national curriculum. The model for this recommendation is the Project Lead the Way pre-engineering courseware.

**Action A–3: Enlarge the pipeline by increasing the number of students who take AP and IB science and mathematics courses.** Create opportunities and incentives for middle-school and high-school students to pursue advanced work in science and mathematics. By 2010, increase the number of students in AP and IB mathematics and science courses from 1.2 million to 4.5 million, and set a goal of tripling the number who pass those tests, to 700,000, by 2010. Student incentives for success would include 50 percent examination fee rebates and $100 mini-scholarships for each passing score on an AP or IB mathematics and science examination.

The committee proposes expansion of two additional approaches to improving K–12 science and mathematics education that are already in use:

- *Statewide specialty high schools:* Specialty secondary education can foster leaders in science, technology, and mathematics. Specialty schools immerse students in high-quality science, technology, and mathematics education; serve as a mechanism to test teaching materials; provide a training ground for K–12 teachers; and provide the resources and staff for summer programs that introduce students to science and mathematics.
- *Inquiry-based learning:* Summer internships and research opportunities provide especially valuable laboratory experience for both middle-school and high-school students.

## SOWING THE SEEDS THROUGH SCIENCE AND ENGINEERING RESEARCH

*Recommendation B: Sustain and strengthen the Nation's traditional commitment to long-term basic research that has the potential to be transformational to maintain the flow of new ideas that fuel the economy, provide security, and enhance the quality of life.*

*Implementation Actions*

**Action B–1: Increase the federal investment in long-term basic research by 10 percent a year over the next seven years,** through re-allocation of exist-

ing funds[7] or if necessary through the investment of new funds. Special attention should go to the physical sciences, engineering, mathematics, and information sciences and to Department of Defense (DOD) basic-research funding. This special attention does not mean that there should be a disinvestment in such important fields as the life sciences (which have seen growth in recent years) or the social sciences. A balanced research portfolio in all fields of science and engineering research is critical to U.S. prosperity. This investment should be evaluated regularly to realign the research portfolio—unsuccessful projects and venues of research should be replaced with emerging research projects and venues that have greater promise.

**Action B–2: Provide new research grants of $500,000 each annually, payable over five years, to 200 of our most outstanding early-career researchers.** The grants would be made through existing federal research agencies—the National Institutes of Health (NIH), the National Science Foundation (NSF), the Department of Energy (DOE), DOD, and the National Aeronautics and Space Administration—to underwrite new research opportunities at universities and government laboratories.

**Action B–3: Institute a National Coordination Office for Research Infrastructure to manage a centralized research-infrastructure fund of $500 million per year over the next five years—**through reallocation of existing funds or if necessary through the investment of new funds—to ensure that universities and government laboratories create and maintain the facilities and equipment needed for leading-edge scientific discovery and technological development. Universities and national laboratories would compete annually for these funds.

**Action B–4: Allocate at least eight percent of the budgets of federal research agencies to discretionary funding** that would be managed by technical program managers in the agencies and be focused on catalyzing high-risk, high-payoff research.

**Action B–5: Create in the Department of Energy (DOE) an organization like the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) called the Advanced Research Projects Agency-Energy (ARPA–E).**[8] The Director of ARPA–E would report to the Under Secretary for science and would be charged with sponsoring specific research and development programs to meet the Nation's long-term energy challenges. The new agency would support creative "out-of-the-box" transformational generic energy research that industry by itself cannot or will not support and in which risk may be high but success would provide dramatic benefits for the Nation. This would accelerate the process by which knowledge obtained through research is transformed to create jobs and address environmental, energy, and security issues. ARPA–E would be based on the historically successful DARPA model and would be designed as a lean and agile organization with a great deal of independence that can start and stop targeted programs on the basis of performance. The agency would itself perform no research or transitional effort but would fund such work conducted by universities, startups, established firms, and others. Its staff would turn over about every four years. Although the agency would be focused on specific energy issues, it is expected that its work (like that of DARPA or NIH) will have important spin-off benefits, including aiding in the education of the next generation of researchers. Funding for ARPA–E would start at $300 million the first year and increase to $1 billion per year over 5–6 years, at which point the program's effectiveness would be evaluated.

**Action B–6: Institute a Presidential Innovation Award to stimulate scientific and engineering advances in the national interest.** Existing presidential awards address lifetime achievements or promising young scholars, but the proposed new awards would identify and recognize persons who develop unique scientific and engineering innovations in the national interest at the time they occur.

---

[7] The funds may come from anywhere in an agency, not just other research funds.

[8] One committee member, Lee Raymond, does not support this action item. He does not believe that ARPA–E is necessary as energy research is already well funded by the Federal Government, along with formidable funding of energy research by the private sector. Also, ARPA–E would put the Federal Government in the business of picking "winning energy technologies"—a role best left to the private sector.

## BEST AND BRIGHTEST IN SCIENCE AND ENGINEERING HIGHER EDUCATION

*Recommendation C: Make the United States the most attractive setting in which to study and perform research so that we can develop, recruit, and retain the best and brightest students, scientists, and engineers from within the United States and throughout the world.*

*Implementation Actions*

**Action C–1: Increase the number and proportion of U.S. citizens who earn physical-sciences, life sciences, engineering, and mathematics Bachelor's degrees by providing 25,000 new four-year competitive undergraduate scholarships each year to U.S. citizens attending U.S. institutions.** The Undergraduate Scholar Awards in Science, Technology, Engineering, and Mathematics (USA–STEM) would be distributed to states on the basis of the size of their congressional delegations and awarded on the basis of national examinations. An award would provide up to $20,000 annually for tuition and fees.

**Action C–2: Increase the number of U.S. citizens pursuing graduate study in "areas of national need" by funding 5,000 new graduate fellowships each year.** NSF should administer the program and draw on the advice of other federal research agencies to define national needs. The focus on national needs is important both to ensure an adequate supply of doctoral scientists and engineers and to ensure that there are appropriate employment opportunities for students once they receive their degrees. Portable fellowships would provide funds of up to $20,000 annually directly to students, who would choose where to pursue graduate studies instead of being required to follow faculty research grants.

**Action C–3: Provide a federal tax credit to encourage employers to make continuing education available (either internally or though colleges and universities) to practicing scientists and engineers.** These incentives would promote career-long learning to keep the workforce current in the face of rapidly evolving scientific and engineering discoveries and technological advances and would allow for retraining to meet new demands of the job market.

**Action C–4: Continue to improve visa processing for international students and scholars** to provide less complex procedures and continue to make improvements on such issues as visa categories and duration, travel for scientific meetings, the technology-alert list, reciprocity agreements, and changes in status.

**Action C–5: Provide a one-year automatic visa extension to international students who receive doctorates or the equivalent in science, technology, engineering, mathematics, or other fields of national need at qualified U.S. institutions to remain in the United States to seek employment. If these students are offered jobs by United States-based employers and pass a security screening test, they should be provided automatic work permits and expedited residence status.** If students are unable to obtain employment within one year, their visas would expire.

**Action C–6: Institute a new skills-based, preferential immigration option.** Doctoral-level education and science and engineering skills would substantially raise an applicant's chances and priority in obtaining U.S. citizenship. In the interim, the number of H–1B[9] visas should be increased by 10,000, and the additional visas should be available for industry to hire science and engineering applicants with doctorates from U.S. universities.

**Action C–7: Reform the current system of "deemed exports."[10]** The new system should provide international students and researchers engaged in funda-

[9] The H–1B is a nonimmigrant classification used by an alien who will be employed temporarily in a specialty occupation of distinguished merit and ability. A specialty occupation requires theoretical and practical application of a body of specialized knowledge and at least a Bachelor's degree or its equivalent. For example, architecture, engineering, mathematics, physical sciences, social sciences, medicine and health, education, business specialties, accounting, law, theology, and the arts are specialty occupations. See http://uscis.gov/graphics/howdoi/h1b.htm

[10] The controls governed by the Export Administration Act and its implementing regulations extend to the transfer of technology. *Technology* includes "*specific information* necessary for the 'development,' 'production,' or 'use' of a product" [emphasis added]. Providing information that is subject to export controls—for example, about some kinds of computer hardware—to a foreign national within the United States may be "deemed" an export, and that transfer requires an

Continued

mental research in the United States with access to information and research equipment in U.S. industrial, academic, and national laboratories comparable with the access provided to U.S. citizens and permanent residents in a similar status. It would, of course, exclude information and facilities restricted under national-security regulations. In addition, the effect of deemed-exports regulations on the education and fundamental research work of international students and scholars should be limited by removing all technology items (information and equipment) from the deemed-exports technology list that are available for purchase on the overseas open market from foreign or U.S. companies or that have manuals that are available in the public domain, in libraries, over the Internet, or from manufacturers.

## INCENTIVES FOR INNOVATION AND THE INVESTMENT ENVIRONMENT

*Recommendation D: Ensure that the United States is the premier place in the world to innovate; invest in downstream activities such as manufacturing and marketing; and create high-paying jobs that are based on innovation by modernizing the patent system, realigning tax policies to encourage innovation, and ensuring affordable broadband access.*

*Implementation Actions*

**Action D–1: Enhance intellectual-property protection for the 21st century global economy** to ensure that systems for protecting patents and other forms of intellectual property underlie the emerging knowledge economy but allow research to enhance innovation. The patent system requires reform of four specific kinds:

- Provide the Patent and Trademark Office sufficient resources to make intellectual-property protection more timely, predictable, and effective.
- Reconfigure the U.S. patent system by switching to a "first-inventor-to-file" system and by instituting administrative review after a patent is granted. Those reforms would bring the U.S. system into alignment with patent systems in Europe and Japan.
- Shield research uses of patented inventions from infringement liability. One recent court decision could jeopardize the long-assumed ability of academic researchers to use patented inventions for research.
- Change intellectual-property laws that act as barriers to innovation in specific industries, such as those related to data exclusivity (in pharmaceuticals) and those which increase the volume and unpredictability of litigation (especially in information-technology industries).

**Action D–2: Enact a stronger research and development tax credit to encourage private investment in innovation.** The current Research and Experimentation Tax Credit goes to companies that *increase* their research and development spending above a base amount calculated from their spending in prior years. Congress and the administration should make the credit permanent,[11] and it should be increased from 20 percent to 40 percent of the qualifying increase so that the U.S. tax credit is competitive with that of other countries. The credit should be extended to companies that have consistently spent large amounts on research and development so that they will not be subject to the current *de facto* penalties for previously investing in research and development.

**Action D–3: Provide tax incentives for United States-based innovation.** Many policies and programs affect innovation and the Nation's ability to profit from it. It was not possible for the committee to conduct an exhaustive examination, but alternatives to current economic policies should be examined and, if deemed beneficial to the United States, pursued. These alternatives could include changes in overall corporate tax rates, provision of incentives for the purchase of high-technology research and manufacturing equipment, treatment of capital gains, and incentives for long-term investments in innovation. The Council of Economic Advisers and the Congressional Budget Office should conduct a comprehensive analysis to examine how the United States compares with other nations as a location for innovation and related activities with a view to ensuring that the United States is one of the most attractive places in the world for long-term innovation-related investment. From a tax standpoint, that is not now the case.

**Action D–4: Ensure ubiquitous broadband Internet access.** Several nations are well ahead of the United States in providing broadband access for home, school,

---

export license. The primary responsibility for administering controls on deemed exports lies with the Department of Commerce, but other agencies have regulatory authority as well.

[11] The current R&D tax credit expires in December 2005.

and business. That capability will do as much to drive innovation, the economy, and job creation in the 21st century as did access to the telephone, interstate highways, and air travel in the 20th century. Congress and the administration should take action—mainly in the regulatory arena and in spectrum management—to ensure widespread affordable broadband access in the near future.

## CONCLUSION

The committee believes that its recommendations and the actions proposed to implement them merit serious consideration if we are to ensure that our nation continues to enjoy the jobs, security, and high standard of living that this and previous generations worked so hard to create. Although the committee was asked only to recommend actions that can be taken by the Federal Government, it is clear that related actions at the State and local levels are equally important for U.S. prosperity, as are actions taken by each American family. The United States faces an enormous challenge because of the disadvantage it faces in labor cost. Science and technology provide the opportunity to overcome that disadvantage by creating scientists and engineers with the ability to create entire new industries—much as has been done in the past.

It is easy to be complacent about U.S. competitiveness and pre-eminence in science and technology. We have led the world for decades, and we continue to do so in many research fields today. But the world is changing rapidly, and our advantages are no longer unique. Without a renewed effort to bolster the foundations of our competitiveness, we can expect to lose our privileged position. For the first time in generations, the Nation's children could face poorer prospects than their parents and grandparents did. We owe our current prosperity, security, and good health to the investments of past generations, and we are obliged to renew those commitments in education, research, and innovation policies to ensure that the American people continue to benefit from the remarkable opportunities provided by the rapid development of the global economy and its not inconsiderable underpinning in science and technology.

## SOME WORRISOME INDICATORS

- When asked in spring 2005 what is the most attractive place in the world in which to "lead a good life," [1] respondents in only one of the 16 countries polled (India) indicated the United States.
- For the cost of one chemist or one engineer in the United States, a company can hire about five chemists in China or 11 engineers in India.[2]
- For the first time, the most capable high-energy particle accelerator on Earth will, beginning in 2007, reside outside the United States.[3]
- The United States is today a net importer of high-technology products. Its share of global high-technology exports has fallen in the last two decades from 30 percent to 17 percent, and its trade balance in high-technology manufactured goods shifted from plus $33 billion in 1990 to a negative $24 billion in 2004.[4]
- Chemical companies closed 70 facilities in the United States in 2004 and have tagged 40 more for shutdown. Of 120 chemical plants being built around the world with price tags of $1 billion or more, one is in the United States and 50 in China.[5]
- Fewer than one-third of U.S. 4th grade and 8th grade students performed at or above a level called "proficient" in mathematics; "proficiency" was considered the ability to exhibit competence with challenging subject matter. Alarmingly, about one-third of the 4th graders and one-fifth of the 8th graders lacked the competence to perform basic mathematical computations.[6]
- U.S. 12th graders recently performed below the international average for 21 countries on a test of general knowledge in mathematics and science. In addition, an advanced mathematics assessment was administered to U.S. students who were taking or had taken precalculus, calculus, or Advanced Placement calculus and to students in 15 other countries who were taking or had taken advanced mathematics courses. Eleven nations outperformed the United States, and four countries had scores similar to the U.S. scores. No nation scored significantly below the United States.[7]
- In 1999, only 41 percent of U.S. 8th grade students received instruction from a mathematics teacher who specialized in mathematics, considerably lower than the international average of 71 percent.[8]
- In one recent period, low-wage employers, such as Wal-Mart (now the Nation's largest employer) and McDonald's, created 44 percent of the new jobs, while high-wage employers created only 29 percent of the new jobs.[9]
- In 2003, only three American companies ranked among the top 10 recipients of patents granted by the United States Patent and Trademark Office.[10]

---

[1] Interview asked nearly 17,000 people the question: "Supposed a young person who wanted to leave this country asked you to recommend where to go to lead a good life—what country would you recommend ?" Except for respondents in India, Poland, and Canada, no more than one-tenth of the people in the other nations said they would recommend the United States. Canada and Australia won the popularity contest. Pew Global Attitudes Project, July 23, 2005.

[2] The Web site http://www.payscale.com/about.asp tracks and compares pay scales in many countries. Ron Hira, of Rochester Institute of Technology, calculates average salaries for engineers in the United States and India as $70,000 and $13,580, respectively.

[3] CERN, http://public.web.cern.ch/Public/Welcome.html.

[4] For 2004, the dollar value of high-technology imports was $560 billion; the value of high-technology exports was $511 billion. See Appendix Table 6–01 of National Science Board's Science and Engineering Indicators 2004.

[5] "No Longer The Lab Of The World: U.S. chemical plants are closing in droves as production heads abroad," *Business Week* (May 2, 2005).

[6] National Center for Education Statistics, Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study, 2003, http://nces.ed.gov/timss.

[7] Data are from National Science Board. 2004. Science and Engineering Indicators 2004 (NSB 04–01). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. Chapter 1.

[8] Data are from National Science Board. 2004. Science and Engineering Indicators 2004 (NSB 04–01). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. Chapter 1.

[9] Roach, Steve. More Jobs, Worse Work. *New York Times.* July 22, 2004.

[10] U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, Preliminary list of top patenting organizations. 2003, http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/ac/ido/oeip/taf/top03cos.htm.

- In Germany, 36 percent of undergraduates receive their degrees in science and engineering. In China, the figure is 59 percent, and in Japan 66 percent. In the United States, the corresponding figure is 32 percent.[11]
- The United States is said to have 10.5 million illegal immigrants, but under the law the number of visas set aside for "highly qualified foreign workers" dropped to 65,000 a year from its 195,000 peak.[12]
- In 2004, China graduated over 600,000 engineers, India 350,000, and America about 70,000.[13]
- In 2001 (the most recent year for which data are available), U.S. industry spent more on tort litigation than on R&D.[14]

---

[11] Data are from National Science Board. 2004. Science and Engineering Indicators 2004 (NSB 04–01). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, Appendix Table 2–33.

[12] Colvin, Geoffrey. 2005. "America isn't ready." *Fortune Magazine,* July 25. H–1B visas allow employers to have access to highly educated foreign professionals who have experience in specialized fields and who have at least Bachelor's degree or the equivalent. The cap does not apply to educational institutions. In November 2004, Congress created an exemption for 20,000 foreign nationals earning advanced degrees from U.S. universities. See Immigration and Nationality Act Section 101(a)(15)(h)(1)(b).

[13] Geoffrey Colvin. 2005. "America isn't ready." *Fortune Magazine,* July 25.

[14] U.S. research and development spending in 2001 was $273.6 billion, of which industry performed $194 billion, and funded about $184 billion. (National Science Board Science and Engineering Indicators 2004). One estimate of tort litigation costs in the United States was $205 billion in 2001. (Leonard, Jeremy A. 2003. How Structural Costs Imposed on U.S. Manufacturers Harm Workers and Threaten Competitiveness. Prepared for the Manufacturing Institute of the National Association of Manufacturers. http://www.nam.org/s—nam/bin.asp?CID=216&DID=227525&DOC=FILE.PDF.

**Appendix B:** Senate Letter to National Academy of Sciences

# United States Senate

**WASHINGTON, DC 20510**

May 27, 2005

Dr. Bruce Alberts
President
National Academy of Sciences
2101 Constitution Avenue
Washington, DC 20418

Dear Dr. Alberts:

The Energy Subcommittee of the Senate Energy and Natural Resources Committee has been given the latitude by Chairman Pete Domenici to hold a series of hearings to identify specific steps our government should take to ensure the preeminence of America's scientific and technological enterprise.

The National Academies could provide critical assistance in this effort by assembling some of the best minds in the scientific and technical community to identify the most urgent challenges the United States faces in maintaining leadership in key areas of science and technology. Specifically, we would appreciate a report from the National Academies by September 2005 that addresses the following:

- Is it essential for the United States to be at the forefront of research in broad areas of science and engineering? How does this leadership translate into concrete benefits as evidenced by the competitiveness of American businesses and an ability to meet key goals such as strengthening national security and homeland security, improving health, protecting the environment, and reducing dependence on imported oil?

  What specific steps are needed to ensure that the United States maintains its leadership in science and engineering to enable us to successfully compete, prosper, and be secure in the global community of the 21st century? How can we determine whether total federal research investment is adequate, whether it is properly balanced among research disciplines (considering both traditional research areas and new multidisciplinary fields such as nanotechnology ), and between basic and applied research?

- How do we ensure that the United States remains at the epicenter of the ongoing revolution in research and innovation that is driving 21st century economies? How can we assure investors that America is the preferred site for investments in new or expanded businesses that create the best jobs and provide the best services?

- How can we ensure that critical discoveries across all the scientific disciplines are predominantly American and exploited first by firms producing and hiring in America? How can we best encourage domestic firms to invest in invention and innovation to meet new global competition and how can public research investments best supplement these private sector investments?

- What specific steps are needed to develop a well-educated workforce able to successfully embrace the rapid pace of technological change?

Your answers to these questions will help Congress design effective programs to ensure that America remains at the forefront of scientific capability, thereby enhancing our ability to shape and improve our nation's future.

We look forward to reviewing the results of your efforts.

Sincerely,

Lamar Alexander

Lamar Alexander
Chairman
Energy Subcommittee

Jeff Bingaman
Ranking Member
Committee on Energy and
Natural Resources

**Appendix C:** House Letter to National Academy of Sciences

U.S. HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES
COMMITTEE ON SCIENCE
SUITE 2320 RAYBURN HOUSE OFFICE BUILDING
WASHINGTON, DC 20515-6301
(202) 225-6371
TTY: (202) 226-4410
http://www.house.gov/science/welcome.htm

June 30, 2005

Dr. Bruce Alberts
President
National Academy of Sciences
2101 Constitution Avenue
Washington, DC 20418

Dear Dr. Alberts,

We understand that the National Academies, in response to a request from Senators Alexander and Bingaman, are in the early stages of developing a study related to the urgent challenges facing the United States in maintaining leadership in key areas of science and technology. Because the Science Committee considers ensuring the strength and vitality of the Nation's scientific and technology enterprise an important part of its broad oversight responsibility, we are writing to endorse the request for this study and to encourage the National Academies to carry it forward expeditiously.

In addition, we would like to suggest some specific questions we hope to see addressed by the study:

- What skills will be required by the future U.S. science and engineering workforce in order for it to command a salary premium over foreign scientists and engineers? Are alternative degree programs needed, such as professional science masters degrees, to meet the needs of industry and to lead to attractive career paths for students?

- Are changes needed in the current graduate education system, such as: a different mix in graduate support among fellowships, traineeships, and research assistantships; more research faculty positions and fewer postdocs and graduate students in traditional graduate programs?

- Should a greater proportion of federal research funding be allocated to high-risk, exploratory research and should funding priorities among broad fields of science and engineering be readjusted?

- What policies and programs will help ensure the rapid flow of research results into the marketplace and promote the commercialization of research in a way that leads to the creation of good jobs for Americans?

The committee looks forwards to reviewing the results of this effort, and hopes that a draft response will be available by September 30, 2005. We hope that the new and innovative ideas you produce as the result of this effort will be able to translate into policies that will enhance U.S. prosperity in the 21st century. If you have any questions, please contact Dan Byers of the Majority Staff or Jim Wilson of the Minority Staff.

Sincerely,

SHERWOOD BOEHLERT
Chairman

BART GORDON
Ranking Member

Chairman BOEHLERT. The hearing will come to order.

Before we start the official part of today's hearing, I would like to take a moment to recognize a real person to illustrate the importance of the issues we are going to be discussing today. Neela Thangada, who is in the audience today. Neela, would you please stand?

Just yesterday, she won the Discovery Channel Young Scientist Challenge. She got into the finals of this contest by doing an individual project on plant cloning and won by demonstrating leadership, teamwork, and scientific problem-solving on a series of experiments related to forces of nature, a very timely thing for this year's contest. Now let me point out that Neela is 14. She is in the seventh grade. What she is doing is so exciting. She is accompanied by her mom. Where is mom, Neela? You know, when I first met Neela, this is not as a politician, this is just an observation, I didn't know which one was the student and which one was the mom. Mom, please stand and be recognized. I want to thank you for the guidance you are providing.

Neela is what this whole hearing is about and what the whole Augustine report is about, so we are so pleased to see you, and thank you for joining us.

It is a pleasure to welcome everyone here this morning for our hearing on the new and vitally important National Academy report, "Rising Above the Gathering Storm." This report is already getting an unusual amount of media coverage, and how refreshing that is to have the media concentrating on something that is not sensational but is critically important, a tribute, in part, to the reputations and work of our witnesses here today, and that is helping to jump-start, and in other quarters, to intensify, a national discussion on research and education and the Nation's future.

The overarching message of the report is simple and clear, and it is one the Congress had better heed. And the message is this: complacency will kill us. "Where there is no vision, the people perish." If the United States rests on its withering laurels in the competitive world, we will witness the slow erosion of our preeminence, our security, and our standard of living. That is a very sobering message. We used to be so far ahead of everybody else in the global enterprise that when we looked around, we couldn't even find a person in second place. Now we can't even take a nanosecond to look over our shoulder, because they are breathing down our neck.

It is a message that this committee has been trying to send for many, many years, and now, joined by Chairman Wolf of the Appropriations Committee and some of our other friends over there who get it, indeed this committee has pressed, sometimes successfully and, unfortunately, sometimes not, for many of the specific proposals in the Academy report. So Mr. Augustine, you guys are really helping us, and I appreciate it.

We have authorized increased spending on basic research, including funding for research equipment and for more daring and cross-disciplinary research, and we have created programs like the Noyce Scholarships to try to attract more top students into teaching. And Neela, consider teaching as a career, will you please? And like Tech Talent to get more students who express interest in science, math, and engineering to complete majors in those fields.

We have pushed for greater funding for the education directorate at the National Science Foundation and for the basic and applied research programs at the Department of Energy.

But clearly, we haven't done enough. We have all of the zeal of the most fervent missionary, and we are trying, but we haven't done enough, and we haven't succeeded nearly as much as we would like. That is why the Augustine report helps this. Science programs still have to scrounge around for every additional cent. Young scientists still have to beg for funds. Our education system is still producing too many students who can not compete with our counterparts around the world. And the Federal Government is still ignoring our fundamental energy problems while wasting money pandering to special interests.

So I urge our witnesses today, who are among the most prominent and respected leaders in the Nation, to redouble your efforts to get the word out about this report. We need a lot more missionary work, especially in this era of fiscal constraint. While Congress turns its attention to fixing the immediate problems caused by the literal storms that have hit our coasts, we can't skimp on the funds needed to address the gathering storm described so starkly in your report.

There is an exchange in a Hemingway novel in which one character asks another how he went bankrupt. He answers, "Two ways. First gradually and then suddenly." As a nation, we are gradually going bankrupt now in the ways described in the Academy report. If we don't act, we are going to wake up one day and find ourselves suddenly unable to compete.

I look forward to further guidance this morning on exactly what we should do to compete. And I hope we will have a spirited discussion about the details of the Academy report recommendations. But as we argue about the specifics, and it won't be so much an argument, it will be sort of a debate, I hope we can all come away with an open and even greater commitment to address the problems that the report lays before us.

[The prepared statement of Chairman Boehlert follows:]

PREPARED STATEMENT OF CHAIRMAN SHERWOOD L. BOEHLERT

It's a pleasure to welcome everyone here this morning for our hearing on the new and vitally important National Academy report "Rising Above the Gathering Storm." This report is already getting an unusual amount of media coverage—a tribute, in part, to the reputations and work of our witnesses today—and that is helping to jump-start (and in other quarters, to intensify) a national discussion on research and education and the Nation's future.

The overarching message of the report is simple and clear, and it's one the Congress had better heed. And the message is this: complacency will kill us. If the United States rests on its withering laurels in this competitive world, we will witness the slow erosion of our preeminence, our security and our standard of living. It's a sobering message.

It's also a message that this committee has been trying to send for many years, now joined by Chairman Wolf and some of our other friends on Appropriations. Indeed, this committee has pressed—sometimes successfully, sometimes not—for many of the specific proposals in the Academy report.

We have authorized increased spending on basic research, including funding for research equipment and for more daring and cross-disciplinary research; and we have created programs like the Noyce Scholarships to try to attract more top students into teaching, and like Tech Talent to get more students who express interest in science, math and engineering to complete majors in those fields.

We have pushed for greater funding for the education directorate at the National Science Foundation (NSF) and for the basic and applied research programs at the Department of Energy.

But we clearly haven't done nearly enough. Science programs still have to scrounge around for every additional cent; young scientists still have to beg for funds; our education system is still producing too many students who cannot compete with their counterparts around the world; and the Federal Government is still ignoring our fundamental energy problems while wasting money pandering to special interests.

So I urge our witnesses today—who are among the most prominent and respected leaders in this nation—to redouble your efforts to get the word out about this report. We need a lot more missionary work, especially in this era of fiscal constraint. While Congress turns its attention to fixing the immediate problems caused by the literal storms that have hit our coasts, we can't skimp on the funds needed to address the "gathering storm" described so starkly in your report.

There's an exchange in a Hemingway novel in which one character asks another how he went bankrupt. He answers, "Two ways. First gradually and then suddenly." As a nation, we're gradually going bankrupt now in the ways described in the Academy report. If we don't act, we're going to wake up one day and find ourselves "suddenly" unable to compete.

I look forward to getting further guidance this morning on exactly what we should do to compete, and I hope we have a spirited discussion about the details of your recommendations. But as we argue about the specifics, I hope we can all come away with an even greater commitment to address the problems this report lays before us.

Chairman BOEHLERT. With that, it is a pleasure to turn to my partner in this venture, the Ranking Member from Tennessee, Mr. Gordon.

Mr. GORDON. Thank you, Mr. Chairman.

Let me, once again, concur with your statements and also say that I have witnessed firsthand your passion for these issues. You are a leader in the area, and I appreciate working with you on it.

Let me also thank the Committee for the work you have done, Mr. Augustine. Once again, you have done a tremendous service for the country.

And let me say this, without diminishing what you have done. To a great extent, what you have done is just rehash what we already knew and brought it together from different sources. There is not a lot new here, and I don't mean that as—I mean, I think it is good that we have brought it together. I think that it is good that we can look to your report and say these are leaders in academia, with the private sector, and hopefully get us more energy in trying to accomplish something here. But again, as our Chairman has pointed out, this committee has passed many of these things already.

And so really, what I would like to hear you talk a little bit about is how do we get the private sector, and what do you intend to do to help implement these proposals. I mean, again, you know, we have to have more energy. Clearly, what we are doing is not enough. And I would like to hear something about that.

The other thing that I noted reading through this report is that, with the exception of talking about R&D credits, there really wasn't much said about the private sector in this area. Now maybe you didn't think that was your charge, but I think the charge said what are some federal policies that deal with it. The R&D credit is one of those. And I pose this question that I would like to hear more about. There seems to be a growing disparity between top level CEO and other kind of salaries and the salaries of others in those companies in relationship to other countries. And is this lead-

ing us to a situation where those top executives are so pushed because of this type of compensation that they have to be so quarterly oriented to having results that the private sector is not doing its part in R&D? And is there some, I mean, I guess, one, is this accurate? And if it is not, then that is fine. If it is accurate, then is there a federal role in somehow trying to encourage looking beyond the quarter? Looking beyond. I mean, right now folks, in two or three years, can make all of the money they can spend the rest of their life. So you know, as long as they keep the stock up, why should I worry about five years from now? Why should I make these investments?

Again, if I am wrong, I would like to know.

The other thing is in your statement, and it was $10 billion, I hate to say, is a modest amount of money, but it is not, I think in terms of investment and in terms of our budget, it is a reasonable amount of money to spend. And you are talking about how we need to reallocate. We can get part of this by reallocating some funds within, I guess, our current budget. But I didn't see the section about what to allocate and what were those specifically. So if you have some suggestions in addition to reallocate, which ones we should reallocate, I would like to hear that today.

So with that in mind, again, I want to thank you. This is an important document. This is a document that we all need to wave and that we all need to charge forward with. It is important to our kids and our grandkids. So I thank you for it.

Again, my questions did not try to diminish what you did but to try to take this a step farther.

Thank you.

[The prepared statement of Mr. Gordon follows:]

PREPARED STATEMENT OF REPRESENTATIVE BART GORDON

I want to join Chairman Boehlert in welcoming everyone to this morning's hearing.

I also want to thank our distinguished panel for not only taking the time to appear before us today, but for their time and effort in preparing this report.

The title of this report, "Rising Above the Gathering Storm: Energizing and Employing America for a Brighter Economic Future," summarizes the challenge before us.

There is a general uncertainty about our country's future economic prospects and a desire for guidance on how to move forward. I think that the report provided by the Panel takes some steps towards providing that guidance.

A few disturbing facts from the report jumped out at me:

The large wage disparity between U.S.-based scientists and engineers and their competitors in China and India; and

The 110 chemical facilities that have closed or are slated for closure in the U.S. coupled with the 120 large chemical plants currently under construction globally—one new plant in the U.S. and 50 in China.

China is producing more than 600,000 engineers per year.

As the report notes, "Thanks to globalization, workers in virtually every sector must now face competitors who live just a mouse-click away, . . ." I'm left wondering where will the good high-paying jobs be for the next generation—in the U.S. or in some other country.

The report outlines a number of specific actions we can take to improve the innovation environment in the U.S. Many of these recommendations are familiar to us because they are what the Science Committee has advocated in legislation.

For example, substantial increases in funding for NSF and the Office of Science at DOE. In the area of science education, the Committee has authorized scholarships for math, science and engineering students to obtain teaching certificates as

well as the math and science partnership program to improve the training of new teachers.

There seems to be a broad consensus on what the U.S. should be doing, but the Administration has not followed through in its funding requests.

This report highlights that our current federal R&D investment strategies are not up to meeting the global competitive paradigm of the 21st century. The recommendations represent a challenge to the Administration and to Congress to take action now.

I am interested about one of the Panel's statements which is that some of its recommendations "require funds that would ideally come from the re-allocation of existing funds." What is not identified is what funds should be re-allocated or why. I hope our witnesses will provide some more detail into the Panel's thinking.

We can all agree that more R&D will result in more innovation, but one issue not addressed by this report is will it really generate more and better jobs in the U.S.? Or will the exploitation of these innovations quickly move to countries with lower cost labor?

I hope the panel has some thoughts on how to ensure that the development of new technologies leads to the creation of new jobs in the U.S. One only has to look at most types of consumer electronics—the history of VCR technology as an example—to see that we have often lost the economic payoff from technology invented here.

In closing, it seems that we understand the challenges we face and we have agreement on how to address these challenges. What is lacking is the political will to make the investment.

I would like to point out that his report represents a consensus of panelists representing business, academic, and education leaders. I would challenge the Panel to press the Administration and Congress to fund their recommendations. As a nation, we cannot afford not to.

[The prepared statement of Mr. Ehlers follows:]

PREPARED STATEMENT OF REPRESENTATIVE VERNON J. EHLERS

I am delighted with the Academy for producing this report, and am pleased that the Committee is taking the time to delve into the report's recommendations and proposed implementation.

For many years, I have stressed the need to increase our national investment in fundamental research and education. Despite passing an authorization bill to double the budget of the National Science Foundation (NSF) by 2008, we are still falling very short of that goal set by Congress in 2002. Each year, the chasm between the authorization and appropriation broadens, while at the same time the NSF education budget continues to diminish. But today there are an increasing number of voices joining the chorus recognizing the need for change. The voices are louder and clearer as the message begins to unify: build our science, technology, engineering and math skills, and we will maintain the strength and competitiveness of the United States. Business, industry and academic leaders are all drawing attention to the connection between our prosperity and a technically-skilled workforce. As we see the indications that our science and math education is slipping, we are jeopardizing our quality of life and national security, especially for our children and grandchildren. Without bolstering our science and technology infrastructure, we cannot expect these trends to change.

There are many challenging questions raised by the report; it will take the strong dedication of the Committee and Chair to share these recommendations with a variety of stakeholders. I thank the witnesses today for their good work, and encourage them and the others they represent to continue to publicize this problem and lobby Members of Congress to make national competitiveness a priority through their strong support of fundamental research and education. I commend the witnesses for being here today, and look forward to continuing to work with you to not only share your report recommendations, but to actively seek solutions.

[The prepared statement of Mr. Costello follows:]

PREPARED STATEMENT OF REPRESENTATIVE JERRY F. COSTELLO

Good morning. I want to thank the witnesses for appearing before our committee to discuss the report released by the National Academy of Sciences (NAS) on October 12, 2005 entitled, *Rising Above the Gathering Storm: Energizing and Employing America for a Brighter Economic Future.* I commend Chairman Boehlert and Ranking Member Gordon for holding this hearing today because the recommendations

this report issued will provide our committee with good policy options to explore to ensure new ideas and innovation.

In June of this year, Chairman Boehlert and Ranking Member Gordon wrote to NAS to endorse the Senate request for a study of "the most urgent challenges the United States faces in maintaining leadership in key areas of science and technology," to provide advice and recommendations for maintaining U.S. leadership in science and technology in the face of growing global competition. Today, Americans are feeling the effects of globalization because a substantial portion of our workforce finds itself in direct competition for jobs with lower-wage workers around the globe. It comes as no surprise that high-tech jobs are being out-sourced to foreign countries like China and India. Without high-quality, knowledge intensive jobs and the innovative enterprises that lead to discovery and new technology, our economy will suffer and our constituents will face a lower standard of living. I am very concerned about the issue of off-shoring and out-sourcing and how these trends will affect current scientists and engineers, as well as the future employment opportunities and career choices of students.

A few months ago, Ranking Member Gordon and I hosted our first in a series of several bipartisan roundtable discussions to frame what is known and unknown about supply and demand for the Science and Technology workforce, outline factors that influence supply and demand, and explore policy options. From the first Roundtable, we learned that it is difficult to determine how many jobs we have lost because we do not have sufficient or accurate data on the problem. I believe we have to raise awareness of this issue—the federal research and development budget—in order to keep high wage science and engineering jobs here in the U.S.

Despite claims to the contrary by the Administration, the Federal R&D budget is not faring well, particularly the non-defense component which has been flat for 30 years. In FY06, the Administration proposed a 1.4 percent spending reduction in the federal science and technology budget. Reductions like this continue to chip away at the U.S. research base and jeopardize our economic strength and long-term technological competitiveness. Innovation does indeed drive our economic growth, but we must have the knowledge base to drive innovation. Encouraging more children in careers in math and science is a needed start but only the beginning. We must do better in understanding the global competition facing our science and engineering workforce.

I hope this hearing will draw us closer to an answer of how we can ensure the U.S. benefits from innovation, compete with foreign scientists and engineers without lowering salaries, increase funding for basic research in the physical sciences and engineering, and improve teacher recruitment and retention so we can increase student interest levels and their knowledge and understanding of these valuable subjects.

I welcome our panel of witnesses and look forward to their testimony.

[The prepared statement of Ms. Johnson follows:]

PREPARED STATEMENT OF REPRESENTATIVE EDDIE BERNICE JOHNSON

Thank you, Mr. Chairman and Ranking Member.

The United States has slashed its federal investment in scientific research. In 1965, in the Sputnik era, funding for federal research and development as a percentage of gross domestic product was slightly over two percent. In 2005, it is estimated to be 1.07 percent.

As a result, scientists are not getting the money they need and are pursuing alternative careers. Young people see the trend and opt not to study science.

Meanwhile, other nations have ramped up their technical infrastructure and workforce. The National Academies' recent report on the United States and global competitiveness found that in Germany, 36 percent of undergraduates receive their degrees in science and engineering. In China, the figure is 59 percent, and in Japan 66 percent. In the United States, the corresponding figure is 32 percent.

I concur that these are "worrisome indicators" indeed. Our competitiveness is quietly slipping. We are a net importer of high technology products, and soon we will be a net importer of people with high technology expertise.

I am glad the National Academies published this report and hope the leadership of this Congress will act on these recommendations. Progress is expensive, but decay is intolerable.

[The prepared statement of Mr. Honda follows:]

PREPARED STATEMENT OF REPRESENTATIVE MICHAEL M. HONDA

Chairman Boehlert and Ranking Member Gordon, I thank you for holding this important hearing today and for requesting that the study "Rising Above the Gathering Storm: Energizing and Employing America for a Brighter Economic Future" be undertaken.

This report makes a many good recommendations in a number of areas. In the area of education, for example, it suggests that we should recruit new science and math teachers, that we should strengthen the skills of teachers the math, science, and engineering subject areas, and we increase the number of students who take math and science courses.

But what I do not see in the recommendations troubles me. What I think is missing is the idea of teaching innovation.

I'm worried that if we simply try to produce a bunch of new scientists and engineers with the same skills as the ones who are unemployed back home in my district today, things aren't going to get any better here. China and India will be able to produce more scientists and engineers than us, and if they are paid less, work will still be done overseas.

We have been lucky in the past that a few people who were innately innovative and inventive also had enough knowledge in math and science to make breakthroughs in these areas that started entirely new industries. Skilled scientists and engineers have been able to sustain incremental progress in these new industries, but the pressure from other nations is growing ever greater.

While some people are simply blessed with the special skills of innovation and invention and they have prospered in the past, we need to realize that these skills are teachable and bring them into our curriculum. An MIT–Lemelson/NSF study on invention recognized this and suggested incorporating innovation into our curriculum, and Singapore's Minister of Education has begun to make such changes to his own country's curriculum to prepare his country for the future.

I hope that the witnesses will address this shortcoming of their report during the hearing, and that the Committee will pay attention to this important issue in the future.

[The prepared statement of Mr. Carnahan follows:]

PREPARED STATEMENT OF REPRESENTATIVE RUSS CARNAHAN

Mr. Chairman and Mr. Ranking Member, thank you for again bringing this important issue to our attention in the Science Committee.

For years, the U.S. has felt the backlash of an increasingly competitive global market, most sharply felt in the loss of jobs as they shift overseas. I applaud the effort to look beyond the problems and causes associated with competing in a global marketplace and to look toward solutions.

It is our duty as leaders of this nation to wisely consider options and vigorously advocate for the right changes. Our workforce, and thus many of our constituents' livelihoods, depend on it.

Mr. Augustine, Dr. Vagelos, and Dr. Wulf, thank you for your efforts with this report and for appearing before us today. I look forward to hearing your testimony.

[The prepared statement of Ms. Jackson Lee follows:]

PREPARED STATEMENT OF REPRESENTATIVE SHEILA JACKSON LEE

Mr. Chairman, let me first thank you for holding this important hearing regarding the recent report published by the National Academy of Sciences. I would also like to thank our witnesses, Mr. Augustine, Dr. Vagelos, and Dr. Wulf, for being here today.

The report being presented to us today highlights what is becoming more and more apparent in recent years, that the United States is losing footing as the dominant knowledge, innovation, and business center of the world; our policies are resulting in the deterioration of our economy. As highlighted in the testimony, an overwhelming amount of evidence points to this. Students today are less prepared to face the global market than they once were, and foreign students are becoming more and more prepared. The most glaring statistic to me contained in the testimony was that in 2003, foreign students earned almost 60 percent of engineering doctorates awarded in U.S. universities!

Our children today are not being given the tools necessary to compete in the world of tomorrow. We are not giving them the proper training, the proper teachers or incentive to succeed. This is an issue that must cross party lines and rest at the heart

of all Americans because this is about the future strength of our nation. We became the world's greatest economic power through innovation and education, and today we must renew that challenge to push the boundaries of discovery.

The importance of a strong scientific and technological enterprise is a primary factor in driving economic growth. Substantial and sustained U.S. investments in research and education over the last 50 years spawned an abundance of technological breakthroughs that transformed American society and helped the U.S. to become the world's dominant economy. Economists estimate that these technological advances have been responsible for half of U.S. economic growth since the end of World War II. The relationship between innovation and economic growth has only grown in recent years as the world shifts to an increasingly knowledge-based economy. In an age where information travels around the world at previously unimaginable speeds, the United States must continue to stay steps ahead of everyone else. This means that status quo policies on education will not work.

At the same time, other nations—particularly emerging nations such as China and India—have recognized the importance of science and technology to economic growth, and are pouring resources into their scientific and technological infrastructure, rapidly building their human capital and dramatically increasing their ability to compete with U.S. businesses on the world stage.

As was mentioned in the testimony, there unfortunately will not be a Sputnik-like event, where the United States gets a powerful wakeup call. Instead, our decline in competitiveness is occurring slowly, and from a combination of many factors. The foundation our mothers and fathers laid for us slowly crumbles around us. This is why I find this hearing to be so important. We as the Federal Government must ensure that our nation does not lag behind in innovation and discovery. We must ensure that our children are properly prepared to face the increasingly challenging global market. Finally, we must continue to ensure that we in the United States continue to be the Nation that sets the bar for everyone else.

I would again like to thank our witnesses for being here today, and I look forward to an open and enlightened conversation on the powerful suggestions made in this report.

[The prepared statement of Mr. Baird follows:]

PREPARED STATEMENT OF REPRESENTATIVE BRIAN BAIRD

Mr. Chairman, I would like to thank you and Ranking Member Gordon for raising importance to the issue of math and science education as it relates to scientific and technological competitiveness. I would also like to thank the witnesses—Mr. Augustine, Dr. Vagelos, and Dr. Wulf—for testifying today on the recently released National Academy of Sciences report entitled, "Rising Above the Gathering Storm: Energizing and Employing America for a Brighter Economic Future." One of the recommendations made in this report is to vastly improve K–12 math and science education. I could not agree more. This should be one of the highest priorities of the Federal and State governments and I look forward to reviewing the testimony of our witnesses and the specific recommendations from this report to translate these recommendations into Congressional action.

With the topic of today's discussion centering around science competitiveness, it could not be more appropriate to honor a guest visiting the Committee today, as she can speak directly to the importance of a quality science education—and she can do so quite well I might add. This honoree is Neela Thangada, the winner of the Discovery Channel Young Scientist Challenge, and her mother, Mrudula Rao Thangada. Neela was named "Top Young Scientist" at an awards ceremony yesterday evening for her project, "Effects of Various Nutrient Concentrations on the Cloning of the Eye of the Solanum Tuberosum at Multiple Stages" or, in laymen's terms, she set out to explore potato cloning.

I had the chance to meet with her and her mother before the hearing, and was impressed with her enthusiasm for science and discovery and her ability to effectively speak about her research. She is indeed an incredible young lady.

Her trip to the House Science Committee today from her home in Texas was the result of an important public-private partnership initiated by the Discovery Channel. Every year since 1999, Discovery has launched the competition in partnership with Science Service to nurture the next generation of American scientists at a critical age when interest in science begins to decline. The cutting-edge competition gives 40 of the Nation's top middle school students the opportunity to demonstrate their scientific know-how and push the limits of their knowledge in the quest for the title of America's "Top Young Scientist of the Year."

More than 9,500 middle school students have formally entered the Challenge since its inception, and these students are drawn from an initial pool of 75,000 students annually. Previous winners have attained more than $500,000 in scholarship awards and participated in science-related trips that have taken them to the far corners of the globe, from the Galapagos Islands to the Ukraine.

This year's finalists traveled to Washington, D.C., to compete in team-based, interactive challenges designed around the theme of "Forces of Nature." In the wake of the recent natural disasters that ravaged the Gulf Coast of the United States and Southeast Asia, each student faced simulated challenges—from fog banks to hurricanes to tsunamis—that utilized their broad range of knowledge in order to understand the implications and scope of natural disasters.

Public-private partnerships such as these exist to challenge and engage our students and we must continue to support such programs. However, we must also better prepare and inspire our math and science teachers to provide the highest-quality education for all students throughout the country. We can start by implementing some of the recommendations laid out here today.

Chairman BOEHLERT. Thank you very much.

And you will notice the similarity in theme between, you know, this is not a division. The center of this committee separating the Democrats from the Republicans doesn't separate us at all on the importance of the subject matter today. This is something that Mr. Gordon and I and every single Member of this committee, on both sides, believe passionately in and work, we think, hopefully, effectively on. And that is why we welcome what you bring to the table. And we want to give it as much attention as possible.

I would suggest that this probably, if we are looking on the grand scheme of things on the Hill today of what is going on, there is probably no more important discussion than the one we are having right here. And quite frankly, it doesn't have a lot of sex appeal for a lot of the media. And so we don't get a lot of coverage. I don't care if they print what I say, but I darn sure care about printing what you guys are going to say to us. That message has to get out.

And the other observation I would make, and we have had it in private conversations, but I will make it again for the official record, I know that some of the captains of industry, in circles you travel, you know and they know and we know that we have got to do better. And in the polite conversation we have at these various functions, they will talk about such needs as getting back to the basics of greatly improving K–12 science and math education. There is no more basic building block for the foundation of the future development of this nation than that. And they will talk to me all of the time about it. Some of the great names in the captains of industry will talk to me about that. And then they will talk to me about the importance of our investment in long-range research, about how magnificent the National Science Foundation is, sponsoring university-based research, and why we need young scholars like I have been privileged to introduce here today to inspire them to greater heights. And I say to them, "You know what?" I have told these guys, "You people have got more lobbyists running around this Hill, high-priced lobbyists who know what they are doing, and they are very smart, and they are very effective, and they knock on the door and they come in. You know, they don't come in to talk to me about the importance of K–12 science and math education or investing more in the science enterprise. They are in to discuss the latest tweaking needed in the tax policy or the adjustment necessary for trade policy. They are thinking of the moment and the bottom line for the next quarterly statement." And

I understand that. But there is never enough time to get to the second part of their agenda, which is what we are discussing today.

So that is why I think this is very important, and that is why I applaud what you have done, and so does Mr. Gordon. I mean, we have had conversation about your work, and boy, we couldn't be happier. And we just want to try to—we are going to play the role of dentist this morning and sort of pull from you some new ideas on what we can do beyond the report, because this town is filled with reports that have gone on for years and the libraries of the various Committee rooms and offices have reports that are gathering dust. They read them initially and say, "Oh, what a great report," and then go on to the next thing and never go back to look at the report.

I pledge to you, and I think I can do it for both of us, that we are going to follow through, because some of the things that you have mentioned here we are already doing, but we are nickel-and-diming the issue. We have got to make some substantial investments, and it is an investment that is going to pay handsome dividends.

With that, let me present our distinguished panel.

Mr. Norman Augustine, Retired Chairman and CEO, Lockheed Martin Corporation. Mr. Augustine is a frequent visitor to this committee and to Capitol Hill and has served in so many capacities in government and in the private sector with great distinction. Dr. P. Roy Vagelos, Retired Chairman and CEO, Merck & Company. And Doctor, you are preceded by your reputation, and we thank you for the great work you are doing. And a dear friend of long standing who is constant counsel for this committee, Dr. William Wulf, President of the National Academy of Engineering.

Every day, what good comes from government usually comes because government has the common sense, to work with leaders in the private sector to interact and to be guided and to develop an agenda that offers some positive approaches to some thorny problems. And we have before us three people who are always there to propose workable solutions. And for that, we are eternally grateful.

With that, let me say the general rule, and you know the ground rules, is don't get nervous when the light comes on, but we would ask that you summarize your opening statement. And I'm not even going to put an arbitrary time limit on it, because this is so important and you are the only panel. And we will go right to it.

With that, Mr. Chairman, the floor is yours.

## STATEMENT OF MR. NORMAN R. AUGUSTINE, RETIRED CHAIRMAN AND CEO, LOCKHEED MARTIN CORPORATION

Mr. AUGUSTINE. Well, thank you, Mr. Chairman, and Members of the Committee. And I thank you in particular for all of your efforts in this area in the past—really, it was by virtue of your committee and your colleagues in the Senate that gave us the opportunity to take on our study. And we, all 20 members, I can assure you, feel very compassionate about the topic.

Also, I would like to congratulate Neela. My congratulations and ours. She is an example to why we are here.

I would, Mr. Chairman, with your permission, like to submit a longer statement for the record and brief——

Chairman BOEHLERT. Without objection, your entire statement will appear in the record. And summarize it in any manner you think is appropriate.

Mr. AUGUSTINE. Thank you very much.

The thrust of our committee's findings are fairly straightforward. They would begin by saying that we conclude that individuals' prosperity, the prosperity of individuals, depends very heavily upon the quality of the jobs they can hold. And collectively, our prosperity depends very heavily on the tax revenues that our government can acquire, which, in turn, depend upon the quality of the jobs our citizens can hold. So quality jobs are at the root of our discussions.

But there has been a major change brought about by technology largely in this scenario. That change some people refer to as the "death of distance". And it has been brought about by the advent of advanced information processing, storage and transmissions that have made those functions almost free in today's world. What that means is that jobs that used to have to be performed by people who are in near proximity to their work or to each other now can be performed by people all around the world. And that, in turn, means that Americans, when they compete for jobs, will no longer compete with their neighbors. They will compete with people throughout the globe. And that is true not only at the so-called lower end of the job spectrum, it will be true throughout the job spectrum. This is in a world where there are three billion new capitalists who have appeared in the last 15 years since the end of the Cold War.

The United States operates at a considerable disadvantage today in this competition for jobs. You could—I was in Vietnam recently. You could hire 20 assembly workers for the minimum U.S. wage. In India today, you could hire 11 engineers for the cost of one in the United States. And they are very good engineers. Many of them trained at our universities.

And as I said, few jobs are safe. Today, if you go to many hospitals in this country and have a CAT scan or an X-ray, there is a fair chance it will be read by a physician in Bangalore. Similarly, there is an office very near to where we are now that, if you go in their building, they have a flat screen on the wall, and their receptionist there very pleasantly helps you find the person you are supposed to go see and controls access to the building. She is in Bangalore. I am sure you are familiar with many other examples of this type.

Is this not good that the rest of the world is prospering? And our committee's conclusion is a resounding yes. It will make the world safer. It will create more customers for our products, and it will create less costly products for our consumers. But as with all times of tectonic changes, there are likely to be winners, and there are likely to be losers. And our committee's goal is to help assure that America will be among the winners.

There is an enigma, and your quote from Hemingway, Mr. Chairman, summarizes it better than I am able to do it. But we are in an environment where we are not likely to see sudden warnings such as we had on 9/11, Pearl Harbor, Sputnik. It is more like the proverbial frog being gradually boiled. Thomas Friedman has summarized by saying, in his great book "The World is Flat,"

globalization has "accidentally made Beijing, Bangalore, and Bethesda next door neighbors." And indeed, when it comes to seeking a job, those jobs are just a mouse click away to many people throughout the world.

We operate at a severe disadvantage in the labor cost area, but there are other indicators that are not particularly good, either. One of the things that has been keeping us going, as this committee knows so well, in the area of science, has been the number of very talented foreign-born individuals who have chosen to come to America and live and work here. Today, 38 percent of the Ph.D.s in America working in science and technology are foreign-born. Fifty-nine percent of last year's doctorates in engineering were foreign students, and that is at U.S. universities.

But if you look at how we are doing ourselves with our native-born population, a recent test of mathematical understanding among about tenth grade students conducted in various nations of the world, the United States was in 27th place.

This sort of thing is propagating into the industrial world where last year U.S. chemical companies closed 70 plants in the United States. They have earmarked 40 more to close. At the same time, there are 120 new chemical plants being built in the world, each with a price tag of $1 billion or more. Of those, one is in the United States and 50 are in China.

U.S. companies now spend more money on litigation and related costs than they spend on research and development, Mr. Gordon, to your point. These are trends that we can not long survive. And as we know, once you lose your lead in R&D, it takes a very long time to recover it, if, indeed, one can at all.

The committee that we assembled through the auspices of the National Academies included 20 members, four or five CEOs or former CEOs of Fortune 100 companies, three nobel laureates, presidents of five or six major universities, several former presidential appointees, as far as I know, from both parties. We didn't ask that question. And they, as you said, Mr. Chairman, with regard to your committee, come together in a spirit of unanimity on each of the issues that we have discussed.

I will close my opening remarks by indicating that we have provided four recommendations. They tend to be rather broad. We have backed them with 20 quite specific implementing actions, things you can go do, some of which you are doing, some of which we do need to do more of.

Of the four general recommendations, the one that all 20 of us agree is the highest priority, is to fix the K–12 science and technology education system in this country, public education. Secondly is to put more money into basic research in specific fields, namely into the physical sciences, mathematics, engineering, and computer sciences. This should be done not to disinvest in the health and biological sciences, which are very important, but they have just seen a period of major investment. Thirdly, to encourage more students to study math and science and engineering and to make it easier to attract foreign students to study and stay in our country in those fields. And then lastly, to create an environment that makes the United States an attractive place for innovation that will at-

tract companies from abroad as well as our own companies to invest here rather than abroad.

So with that opening, I will turn to my colleagues and thank you for this opportunity. And we look forward to your questions.

[The prepared statement of Mr. Augustine follows:]

PREPARED STATEMENT OF NORMAN R. AUGUSTINE

Mr. Chairman and Members of the Committee,

Thank you for this opportunity to appear before you on behalf of the National Academies' Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. As you know, our effort was sponsored by the National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering and Institute of Medicine (collectively known as the National Academies). The National Academies were chartered by Congress in 1863 to advise the government on matters of science and technology.

The Academies were requested by Senator Alexander and Senator Jeff Bingaman, members of the Senate Committee on Energy and Natural Resources to conduct an assessment of America's ability to compete and prosper in the 21st century—and to propose appropriate actions to enhance the likelihood of success in that endeavor. This request was endorsed by Representatives Sherwood Boehlert and Bart Gordon of the House Committee on Science.

To respond to that request the Academies assembled 20 individuals with diverse backgrounds, including university presidents, CEOs, Nobel Laureates and former presidential appointees. The result of our committee's work was examined by over forty highly qualified reviewers who were also designated by the Academies. In undertaking our assignment we considered the results of a number of prior studies which were conducted on various aspects of America's future prosperity. We also gathered sixty subject-matter experts with whom we consulted for a weekend here in Washington and who provided recommendations related to their fields of specialty.

It is the unanimous view of our committee that America today faces a serious and intensifying challenge with regard to its future competitiveness and standard of living. Further, we appear to be on a losing path. We are here today hoping both to elevate the Nation's awareness of this developing situation and to propose constructive solutions.

The thrust of our findings is straightforward. The standard of living of Americans in the years ahead will depend to a very large degree on the quality of the jobs that they are able to hold. Without quality jobs our citizens will not have the purchasing power to support the standard of living which they seek, and to which many have become accustomed; tax revenues will not be generated to provide for strong national security and health care; and the lack of a vibrant domestic consumer market will provide a *disincentive* for either U.S. or foreign companies to invest in jobs in America.

What has brought about the current situation? The answer is that the prosperity equation has a new ingredient, an ingredient that some have referred to as "The Death of Distance." In the last century, breakthroughs in aviation created the opportunity to move people and goods rapidly and efficiently over very great distances. Bill Gates has referred to aviation as the "World Wide Web of the 20th century." In the early part of the present century, we are approaching the point where the communication, storage and processing of information are nearly free. That is, we can now move not only physical items efficiently over great distances, we can also transport *information* in large volumes and at little cost.

The consequences of these developments are profound. Soon, only those jobs that require near-physical contact among the parties to a transaction will not be opened for competition from job seekers around the world. Further, with the end of the Cold War and the evaporation of many of the political barriers that previously existed throughout the world, nearly three *billion* new, highly motivated, often well educated, new capitalists entered the job market.

Suddenly, Americans find themselves in competition for their jobs not just with their neighbors but with individuals around the world. The impact of this was initially felt in manufacturing, but soon extended to the development of software and the conduct of design activities. Next to be affected were administrative and support services. Today, "high end" jobs, such as professional services, research and management, are impacted. In short, few jobs seem "safe":

- U.S. companies each morning receive software that was written in India overnight in time to be tested in the U.S. and returned to India for further production that same evening—making the 24-hour workday a practicality.
- Back-offices of U.S. firms operate in such places as Costa Rica, Ireland and Switzerland.
- Drawings for American architectural firms are produced in Brazil.
- U.S. firm's call centers are based in India—where employees are now being taught to speak with a mid-western accent.
- U.S. hospitals have X-rays and CAT scans read by radiologists in Australia and India.
- At some McDonald's drive-in windows orders are transmitted to a processing center a thousand miles away (currently in the U.S.), where they are processed and returned to the worker who actually prepares the order.
- Accounting firms in the U.S. have clients tax returns prepared by experts in India.
- Visitors to an office not far from the White House are greeted by a receptionist on a flat screen display who controls access to the building and arranges contacts—she is in Pakistan.
- Surgeons sit on the opposite side of the operating room and control robots which perform the procedures. It is not a huge leap of imagination to have highly-specialized, world-class surgeons located not just across the operating room but across the ocean.

As Tom Friedman concluded in *The World is Flat,* globalization has "accidentally made Beijing, Bangalore and Bethesda next door neighbors." And the neighborhood is one wherein candidates for many jobs which currently reside in the U.S. are now just a "mouse-click" away.

How will America compete in this rough and tumble global environment that is approaching faster than many had expected? The answer appears to be, "not very well"—unless we do a number of things differently from the way we have been doing them in the past.

Why do we reach this conclusion? One need only examine the principal ingredients of competitiveness to discern that not only is the world flat, but in fact it may be tipping *against* us.

One major element of competitiveness is, of course, the cost of labor. I recently traveled to Vietnam, where the wrap rate for low-skilled workers is about twenty-five cents per hour, about one-twentieth of the U.S. minimum wage. And the problem is not confined to the so-called "lower-end" of the employment spectrum. For example, five qualified chemists can be hired in India for the cost of just one in America. Given such enormous disadvantages in labor cost, we cannot be satisfied merely to match other economies in those other areas where we do enjoy strength; rather we must excel . . . markedly.

The existence of a vibrant domestic market for products and services is another important factor in determining our nation's competitiveness, since such a market helps attract business to our shores. But here, too, there are warning signs: Goldman Sachs analysts project that within about a decade, fully 80 percent of the world's *middle-income* consumers will live in nations outside the currently industrialized world.

The availability of financial capital has in the past represented a significant competitive advantage for America. But the mobility of financial capital is legion, as evidenced by the willingness of U.S. firms to move factories to Mexico, Vietnam and China if a competitive advantage can be derived by doing so. Capital, as we have observed, crosses geopolitical borders at the speed of light.

Human capital—the quality of our work force—is a particularly important factor in our competitiveness. Our public school system comprises the foundation of this asset. But as it exists today, that system compares, in the aggregate, abysmally with those of other developed—and even developing—nations . . . particularly in the fields which underpin most innovation: science, mathematics and technology.

Of the utmost importance to competitiveness is the availability of knowledge capital—"ideas." And once again, scientific research and engineering applications are crucial. But knowledge capital, like financial capital, is highly mobile. There *is* one major difference: being first-to-market, by virtue of access to new knowledge, can be immensely valuable, even if by only a few months. Craig Barrett, a member of our committee and Chairman of Intel, points out that 90 percent of the products his company delivers on December 31st did not even exist on January 1st of that

same year. Such is the dependence of hi-tech firms on being at the leading edge of scientific and technological progress.

There are of course many other factors influencing our nation's competitiveness. These include patent processes, tax policy and overhead costs—such as health care, regulation and litigation—all of which tend to work against us today. On the other hand, America's version of the Free Enterprise System has proven to be a powerful asset, with its inherent aggressiveness and discipline in introducing new ideas and flushing out the obsolescent. But others have now recognized these virtues and are seeking to emulate our system.

But is it not a *good* thing that others are prospering? Our committee's answer to that question is a resounding *"yes."* Broadly based prosperity can make the world more stable and safer for all; it can make less costly products available for American consumers; it can provide new customers for the products we produce here. Yet it is inevitable that there will be relative winners and relative losers—and as the world prospers, we should seek to assure that America does not fall behind in the race.

The enigma is that in spite of all these factors, America seems to be doing quite well just now. Our nation has the highest R&D investment intensity in the world. We have indisputably the finest research universities in the world. California alone has more venture capital than any nation in the world other than the United States. Two million jobs were created in America in the past year alone, and citizens of other nations continue to invest their savings in America at a remarkable rate. Total household net worth is now approaching $50 *trillion.*

The reason for this prosperity is that we are reaping the benefits of past investments—many of them in the fields of science and technology. But the early indicators of future prosperity are generally heading in the wrong direction. Consider the following:

- For the cost of one engineer in the United States, a company can hire 11 in India.
- America has been depending heavily on foreign-born talent. Thirty-eight percent of the scientists and engineers in America holding doctorates were born abroad. Yet, when asked in the spring of 2005, what are the most attractive places in the world in which to live, respondents in only one of the countries polled indicated the U.S.A.
- Chemical companies closed seventy facilities in the U.S. in 2004, and have tagged forty more for shutdown. Of 120 *new* chemical plants being built around the world with price tags of $1 billion or more, one is in the U.S. Fifty are in China.
- In 1997 China had fewer than 50 research centers managed by multi-national corporations. By 2004 there were over 600.
- Two years from now, for the first time, the most capable high-energy particle accelerator on Earth will reside outside the United States.
- The United States today is a net importer of *high technology* products. The U.S. share of global high tech exports has fallen in the last two decades from 30 percent to 17 percent, while America's trade balance in high tech manufactured goods shifted from a *positive* $33B in 1990 to a *negative* $24B in 2004.
- In a recent international test involving mathematical understanding, U.S. students finished in 27th place among the nations participating.
- About two-thirds of the students studying chemistry and physics in U.S. high schools are taught by teachers with no major or certificate in the subject. In the case of math taught in grades five through 12, the fraction is one-half. Many such students are being taught math by graduates in physical education.
- In one recent period, low-wage employers like Wal-Mart (now the Nation's largest employer) and McDonald's created 44 percent of all new jobs. High-wage employers created only 29 percent.
- In 2003 foreign students earned 59 percent of the engineering doctorates awarded in U.S. universities.
- In 2003 only three American companies ranked among the top 10 recipients of patents granted by the U.S. Patent Office.
- In Germany, 36 percent of undergraduates receive their degrees in science and engineering. In China, the corresponding figure is 59 percent, and in Japan it is 66 percent. In the U.S., the share is 32 percent. In the case of engineering, the U.S. share is five percent, as compared with 50 percent in China.

- The United States is said to have over 10 million illegal immigrants, but the number of legal visas set-aside annually for "highly qualified foreign workers" was recently dropped from 195,000 per year down to 65,000.
- At a time when the world's nations are clamoring to obtain science and engineering talent, U.S. law will grant a visa for outstanding foreign students to attend U.S. universities only if they promise they will go home when they graduate.
- In 2001 (the most recent year for which data are available), U.S. industry spent more on tort litigation and related costs than on research and development.

As important as jobs are, the impact of these circumstances on our nation's security could be even more profound. In the view of the bipartisan Hart-Rudman Commission on National Security, ". . .the inadequacies of our system of research and education pose a greater threat to U.S. national security over the next quarter century than any potential conventional war that we might imagine."

The good news is that there are things we can do to assure that America does in fact share in the prosperity that science and technology are bringing the world. In this regard, our committee has made four broad recommendations as the basis of a prosperity initiative—and offers 20 specific actions to make these recommendations a reality. They include:

- *"Ten Thousand Teachers, Ten Million Minds"*—which addresses America's K–12 education system. We recommend that America's talent pool in science, math and technology be increased by vastly improving K–12 education. Among the specific steps we propose are:
  - Recruitment of 10,000 new science and math teachers each year through the award of competitive scholarships in math, science and engineering that lead to a Bachelor's degree *accompanied by a teaching certificate*—and a five-year commitment to teach in a public school.
  - Strengthening the skills of 250,000 *current* teachers through funded training and education in part-time Master's programs, summer institutes and Advanced Placement training programs.
  - Increasing the number of students who take Advanced Placement science and mathematics courses.
- *"Sowing the Seeds"*—which addresses America's research base. We recommend strengthening the Nation's traditional commitment to long-term *basic* research through:
  - Increasing federal investment in research by 10 percent per year over the next seven years, with primary attention devoted to the physical sciences, engineering, mathematics, and information sciences—without disinvesting in the health and biological sciences.
  - Providing research grants to early career researchers.
  - Instituting a National Coordination Office for Research Infrastructure to oversee the investment of an additional $500M per year for five years for advanced research facilities and equipment.
  - Allocating at least eight percent of the existing budgets of federal research agencies to discretionary funding under the control of local laboratory directors.
  - Creation of an Advanced Research Projects Agency–Energy (ARPA–E), modeled after DARPA in the Department of Defense, reporting to the Department of Energy Undersecretary for Science. The purpose is to support the conduct of out-of-the-box, transformational, generic, energy research by universities, industry and government laboratories.
  - Establish a Presidential Innovation Award to recognize and stimulate scientific and engineering advances in the national interest.
- *"Best and Brightest"*—which addresses higher education. In this area we recommend:
  - Establishing 25,000 competitive science, mathematics, engineering, and technology undergraduate scholarships and 5,000 graduate fellowships in areas of national need for U.S. citizens pursuing study at U.S. universities.
  - Providing a federal tax credit to employers to encourage their support of continuing education.

- Providing a one-year automatic visa extension to international students who receive a science or engineering doctorate at a U.S. university, and providing automatic work permits and expedited residence status if these students are offered employment in the U.S.
- Instituting a skill-based, preferential immigration option.
- Reforming the current system of "deemed exports" so that international students and researchers have access to necessary non-classified information or research equipment while studying and working in the U.S.

○ *"Incentives for Innovation"*—in which we address the innovation environment itself. We recommend:

- Enhancements to intellectual property protection, such as the adoption of a first-to-file system.
- Increasing the R&D tax credit from the current 20 percent to 40 percent, and making the credit permanent.
- Providing permanent tax incentives for U.S.-based innovation so that the United States is one of the most attractive places in the world for long-term innovation-related investments.
- Ensuring ubiquitous broadband Internet access to enable U.S. firms and researchers to operate at the state-of-the-art in this important technology.

It should be noted that we are not confronting a so-called "typical" crisis, in the sense that there is no 9/11, Sputnik or Pearl Harbor to alert us as a nation. Our situation is more akin to that of the proverbial frog being slowly boiled. Nonetheless, while our committee believes the problem we confront is both real and serious, the good news is that we may well have time to do something about it—if we start now.

Americans, with only five percent of the world's population but with nearly 30 percent of the world's wealth, tend to believe that scientific and technological leadership and the high standard of living it underpins is somehow the natural state of affairs. But such good fortune is *not* a birthright. If we wish our children and grandchildren to enjoy the standard of living most Americans have come to expect, there is only one answer: We must get out and *compete.*

I would like to close my remarks with a perceptive and very relevant poem. It was written by Richard Hodgetts, and eloquently summarizes the essence of innovation in the highly competitive, global environment. The poem goes as follows:

> *Every morning in Africa a gazelle wakes up. It knows it must outrun the fastest lion or it will be killed.*
>
> *Every morning in Africa a lion wakes up. It knows it must outrun the slowest gazelle or it will starve.*
>
> *It doesn't matter whether you're a lion or a gazelle—when the sun comes up, you'd better be running.*

And indeed we should.

Thank you for providing me with this opportunity to testify before the Committee. I would be pleased to answer any questions you have about the report.

**Response to House Committee on Science Questions**

**1. How did the study panel arrive at the recommended 10 percent annual increase in federally-sponsored basic research over the next seven years? What other options did the panel consider and what led to the choice of 10 percent?**

After reviewing the proposals for enhanced research funding that have been made in recent years, the committee concluded that a 10 percent annual increase over a seven-year period would be appropriate. This achieves the doubling that was in principle part of the *NSF Authorization Act of 2002* approved by Congress and the President, but would expand it to other agencies and focus that increase on the physical sciences, engineering, mathematics, and the information sciences as well as DOD basic research.

The committee viewed enhanced funding in these fields as urgent. It chose the 10 percent level and seven-year time frame as the best way for these funds to be spent effectively. The base for this doubling (federal funding for the fields listed plus DOD basic research—not including the specified fields so there is no double-counting) was approximately $8 billion in FY 2004.

By taking this action, the balance of the Nation's research portfolio in fields that are essential to the generation of both ideas and skilled people for the Nation's economy and national/homeland security would be restored. That does not mean that there should be a *disinvestment* in such important fields as the life sciences (which have in fact seen growth in recent years) or the social sciences. A balanced research portfolio in all fields of science and engineering research is critical to U.S. prosperity.

As indicated in the National Academies Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy's (COSEPUP) 1993 report *Science, Technology, and the Federal Government: National Goals for a New Era*

> The United States needs to be among the world leaders in all fields of research so that it can
>
> - Bring the best available knowledge to bear on problems related to national objectives even if that knowledge appears unexpectedly in a field not traditionally linked to that objective.
> - Quickly recognize, extend, and use important research results that occur elsewhere.
> - Prepare students in American colleges and universities to become leaders themselves and to extend and apply the frontiers of knowledge.
> - Attract the brightest young students.[1]

**2. How did the study panel arrive at the recommended eight percent allocation within each federal research agency's budget to be managed at the discretion of technical program managers to catalyze high-risk, high-payoff research? What other options did the panel consider and what led to the choice of eight percent?**

The committee found that at many agencies approximately one to three percent of a program's budget is to be managed at the discretion of the program managers. The committee believes, as shown through the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) model, that more risky research that crosses disciplinary lines can be funded by using the "strong program manager" approach as is the case at DARPA. Some committee members believed that five percent was sufficient, others 10 percent—in the end a compromise was reached at eight percent. The committee is flexible about the specific number as long as the goal of catalyzing high-risk, high-payoff research (as opposed to incremental research) is achieved. Experience shows that research investments of this type are exceptionally highly leveraged.

**3. Industry and government have both developed numerous energy production and energy efficiency technologies that have not been deployed. How did the study panel arrive at its implicit conclusion that technology development is the greater bottleneck (as opposed to policy) in developing energy systems for a 21st century economy?**

The committee believes that both policy and technology play a role in responding to the Nation's need for clean, affordable, and reliable energy.

While the implementation of some technologies, such as nuclear energy, is discouraged by policy, we still face environmental and safety challenges only science and engineering research can ameliorate—even if policy-makers were willing to deploy that technology today. There are no doubt questions of cost and policy that affect use of various energy technologies. When was the last nuclear plant commissioned? But those policy decisions are often directly linked to technical capabilities or the absence thereof. No 'final' solutions without serious problems are waiting in the wings for policy changes. Nuclear energy is an (the) important potential source of energy but it has security and waste disposal/storage problems that have not been handled satisfactorily. That is a prime example of a policy problem that requires research to unlock it.

Similarly, the Nation, as the report indicates, has made substantial strides in efficiency, but much more can be done. Yes there is existing efficiency technology that can be deployed, and, following market forces if oil prices do not return to recent levels, will probably be used increasingly.

As a result, the Nation will not significantly decrease energy dependence without technology—policy changes alone are insufficient. The production of electricity and mobility on a worldwide basis cannot go on for ever in their present form. This country is running a significant risk of remaining substantially dependent on foreign oil.

---

[1] COSEPUP. 1993. *Science, Technology, and the Federal Government: National Goals for a New Era.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

The history of science and technology suggests that radical new solutions may well be available. The field of energy has not been viewed as exciting by a generation of engineering students. The time required to effect an energy solution from research to implementation is considerable. The rate of growth of the energy problem (usage) worldwide is likely to have profound effects.

We believe that the Advanced Research Projects Agency (ARPA–E) proposed by the committee can jump start new approaches to high risk/high payoff research of the type that DARPA has historically performed to great effect for the military. It can capture the talents of outstanding young people in industry and academia. DARPA is a demonstrably effective approach to advanced research and development, and Energy is one of the most important challenges to our nation's future.

**4. Recent surveys of industry suggest that basic research performed at universities and transformational technological innovation have only a very limited impact on the success of individual companies. Is the impact of research and innovation different for the economy as a whole than it is for individual companies?**

There is broad consensus among economists that for decades the growth of the U.S. economy has been driven by technological advances and innovation. These come almost exclusively from two sources—companies and universities. Companies are devoting fewer and fewer resources to longer-term research that contributes to the common base of technology that is available to all; i.e., work that improves our national capacity but doesn't necessarily directly drive that company's profits. Universities are increasingly the only avenue for the research that will lead to fundamentally new things and to a highly-educated workforce. Most large companies now strive for a large percentage of their products to have been developed within the last two or three years. This requires constant and focused innovation. The immediate crowds out the strategic.

Truly transformational technologies do not come along every day, and cannot be readily predicted. But one thing is certain—if we do not invest in research and advanced training for scientists and engineers, they will not occur at all—at least not in the United States.

Because of this, the committee disagrees with the first premise in the question. Industry gains not only from the new knowledge generated as a result of academic research, but also from the skilled people generated as a result of research.

Although many industries as diverse as the pharmaceutical and banking industry understand the linkage of their business to science and technology, others do not always fully understand the linkages between its day-to-day activities and science and technology. For example, at one point, we thought that the trucking industry was not particularly sensitive to science and technology. But the trucking industry certainly has been able to enhance its competitiveness by using tools such as the global positioning system, advanced lightweight materials, the ability to use the Internet, and weather forecasting to enhance its ability to locate the best route to a destination thus lowering its operating cost. In addition, its competitiveness could be enhanced further if new ways are developed for the industry to be more efficient in its use of fuel and if more affordable fuels are developed.

As a result, when looking at its primary operations, a single company may not see direct use of basic research if it has not licensed a patent, contracted for studies or undertaken its own work. But slightly below the surface the substantial contribution of basic research to essentially every company is evident.

For some industries, research provides them with the talented people they need whose education is influenced in substance, thinking and methods by basic research experience/training. Talented graduates for corporate laboratories are a primary deliverable of basic research operations at universities. Many major companies, in addition, support basic research at universities first and foremost to gain access to these people.

Secondly, essentially every company buys technology whose function and cost are controlled by basic research conducted earlier. So companies that assemble products using others' components may not be involved in basic research directly but their business remains dependent on the basic research behind the component technologies that they use.

Third, basic research creates the new technologies and new enterprises that these companies will sell to, or buy from or even become. Frankly, it is difficult to think of a company that does not use technology at some level, and that technology evolved from basic research.

Fourth, the people generated as a result of the higher education they receive, underpinned by basic research, create whole new industries and jobs. For example, in 1997, BankBoston conducted the first national study of the economic impact of

a research university. It found that graduates of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology founded 4,000 firms which, in 1994 alone, employed at least 1.1 million people and generated $232 billion of world sales. Further, if the companies founded by MIT graduates and faculty formed an independent nation, the revenues produced by the companies would make that nation the 24th largest economy in the world. Within the United States, the companies founded by MIT graduates employed a total of 733,000 people in 1994 at more than 8,500 plants and offices in the 50 states—equal to one out of every 170 jobs in America. Eighty percent of the jobs in the MIT-related firms are in manufacturing (compared to 16 percent nationally), and a high percentage of products are exported.

**COMMITTEE BIOGRAPHIC INFORMATION**

**NORMAN R. AUGUSTINE** [NAE*] (Chair) is the retired Chairman and CEO of the Lockheed Martin Corporation. He serves on the President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology and has served as Under Secretary of the Army. He is a recipient of the National Medal of Technology.

**CRAIG BARRETT** [NAE] is Chairman of the Board of the Intel Corporation.

**GAIL CASSELL** [IOM*] is Vice President for Scientific Affairs and a Distinguished Lilly Research Scholar for Infectious Diseases at Eli Lilly and Company.

**STEVEN CHU** [NAS*] is the Director of the E.O. Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory. He was a co-winner of the Nobel prize in physics in 1997.

**ROBERT GATES** is the President of Texas A&M University and served as Director of Central Intelligence.

**NANCY GRASMICK** is the Maryland State Superintendent of Schools.

**CHARLES HOLLIDAY JR.** [NAE] is Chairman of the Board and CEO of DuPont.

**SHIRLEY ANN JACKSON** [NAE] is President of Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute. She is the Immediate Past President of the American Association for the Advancement of Science and was Chairman of the U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission.

**ANITA K. JONES** [NAE] is the Lawrence R. Quarles Professor of Engineering and Applied Science at the University of Virginia. She served as Director of Defense Research and Engineering at the U.S. Department of Defense and was Vice-Chair of the National Science Board.

**JOSHUA LEDERBERG** [NAS/IOM] is the Sackler Foundation Scholar at Rockefeller University in New York. He was a co-winner of the Nobel prize in physiology or medicine in 1958.

**RICHARD LEVIN** is President of Yale University and the Frederick William Beinecke Professor of Economics.

**C.D. (DAN) MOTE JR.** [NAE] is President of the University of Maryland and the Glenn L. Martin Institute Professor of Engineering.

**CHERRY MURRAY** [NAS/NAE] is the Deputy Director for Science and Technology at Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory. She was formerly the Senior Vice President at Bell Labs, Lucent Technologies.

**PETER O'DONNELL JR.** is President of the O'Donnell Foundation of Dallas, a private foundation that develops and funds model programs designed to strengthen engineering and science education and research.

**LEE R. RAYMOND** [NAE] is the Chairman of the Board and CEO of Exxon Mobil Corporation.

**ROBERT C. RICHARDSON** [NAS] is the F.R. Newman Professor of Physics and the Vice Provost for Research at Cornell University. He was a co-winner of the Nobel prize in physics in 1996.

**P. ROY VAGELOS** [NAS/IOM] is the retired Chairman and CEO of Merck & Co., Inc.

**CHARLES M. VEST** [NAE] is President Emeritus of MIT and a Professor of Mechanical Engineering. He serves on the President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology and is the Immediate Past Chair of the Association of American Universities.

**GEORGE M. WHITESIDES** [NAS/NAE] is the Woodford L. & Ann A. Flowers University Professor at Harvard University. He has served as an adviser for the National Science Foundation and the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency.

**RICHARD N. ZARE** [NAS] is the Marguerite Blake Wilbur Professor of Natural Science at Stanford University. He was Chair of the National Science Board from 1996 to 1998.

BIOGRAPHY FOR NORMAN R. AUGUSTINE

NORMAN R. AUGUSTINE was raised in Colorado and attended Princeton University where he graduated with a BSE in Aeronautical Engineering, magna cum laude, an MSE and was elected to Phi Beta Kappa, Tau Beta Pi and Sigma Xi.

In 1958 he joined the Douglas Aircraft Company in California where he held titles of Program Manager and Chief Engineer. Beginning in 1965, he served in the Pentagon in the Office of the Secretary of Defense as an Assistant Director of Defense Research and Engineering. Joining the LTV Missiles and Space Company in 1970, he served as Vice President, Advanced Programs and Marketing. In 1973 he returned to government as Assistant Secretary of the Army and in 1975 as Under Secretary of the Army and later as Acting Secretary of the Army. Joining Martin Marietta Corporation in 1977, he served as Chairman and CEO from 1988 and 1987, respectively, until 1995, having previously been President and Chief Operating Officer. He served as President of Lockheed Martin Corporation upon the formation of that company in 1995, and became its Chief Executive Officer on January 1, 1996, and later Chairman. Retiring as an employee of Lockheed Martin in August, 1997, he joined the faculty of the Princeton University School of Engineering and Applied Science where he served as Lecturer with the Rank of Professor until July, 1999.

Mr. Augustine served as Chairman and Principal Officer of the American Red Cross for nine years and as Chairman of the National Academy of Engineering, the Association of the United States Army, the Aerospace Industry Association, and the Defense Science Board. He is a former President of the American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics and the Boy Scouts of America. He is currently a member of the Board of Directors of ConocoPhillips, Black & Decker and Procter & Gamble and a member of the Board of Trustees of Colonial Williamsburg and Johns Hopkins and a former member of the Board of Trustees of Princeton and MIT. He is a member of the President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology and the Department of Homeland Security Advisory Board and was a member of the Hart/Rudman Commission on National Security.

Mr. Augustine has been presented the National Medal of Technology by the President of the United States and has five times been awarded the Department of Defense's highest civilian decoration, the Distinguished Service Medal and has received the Joint Chiefs of Staff Distinguished Public Service Award. He is co-author of *The Defense Revolution* and *Shakespeare In Charge* and author of *Augustine's Laws* and *Augustine's Travels.* He holds eighteen honorary degrees and was selected by *Who's Who in America* and the Library of Congress as one of the Fifty Great Americans on the occasion of Who's Who's fiftieth anniversary. He has traveled in nearly 100 countries and stood on both the North and South Poles.

Chairman BOEHLERT. Thank you very much.

Dr. Vagelos.

## STATEMENT OF DR. P. ROY VAGELOS, RETIRED CHAIRMAN AND CEO, MERCK & CO.

Dr. VAGELOS. Thank you, Mr. Chairman and Committee Members. I am delighted to be here to talk about my specific interest in this committee work.

And let me start with K–12 education since that was mentioned by both the Chairman and Mr. Gordon. Mr. Gordon made the statement that much of what is recommended is a rehash of old material. And to some degree, that is true. The problem is that if you go to the American public today, they will tell you that they are not pleased with the results of what we are doing in K–12 education, and therefore, the committee looked very hard. And as

Norm just mentioned, among the committee of 20 people, the unanimous number one priority was to do something in K–12 education.

So let me tell you a couple of things that we focused on. First of all, a recognition that if one is going to teach in science and mathematics, that one should have had some expertise and some courses in those fields that are going to be taught in K–12, especially in grades eight through twelve. What we have found is that many of the teachers have had no major, and not even a good course in the subjects that they are teaching. So you will have a teacher teaching physics or chemistry or mathematics never having had a major course in those areas. And so can we expect such teachers to turn on our young people to be able to enter these fields?

We decided not, and therefore, what are we recommending?

We are suggesting several programs that are aimed at just that kind of thing. For instance, there are students who are already majoring as undergraduates in mathematics, science, and engineering, and there is a program, for instance, it is called "U Teach" at the University of Texas in Austin, which selects these students and offers them scholarships if they will also take some courses in education and learn to teach during the four years that they are already majoring in these subjects that they are going to potentially teach. Now these are the people who really understand their subjects.

And so one of the recommendations is 10,000 students per year of that sort nationally who are going to be expert in their field and who are becoming teachers, and the payback is that they teach for five years.

Another program that we have. So that would cover 10,000 new teachers coming through the mill. If you take the large numbers of people who are already teaching in these subjects and say can we resuscitate them because they don't really have the expertise. And we have a program, several programs for them.

The one I like best is those people who are willing to come back for a Master's degree and spend two years, two summers and weekends to take a Master's in subject matter, whether it is physics, chemistry, technology, or mathematics, and they end up, at the end of two years, as master teachers, really understanding deeply their subject and being able to turn out other teachers and certainly to recruit and excite students.

In addition to these Master's programs, there are programs that are summer institutes, large numbers of these, where teachers come back for two to four weeks annually have their education in specific subject matter improved. So these are the kinds of people who can turn people on and students on.

Now we can do that for teachers. We can also increase the number of students that are going through middle and high schools who go into science and math by inducing them to take advanced placement courses and tests or international baccalaureate subjects. And there is a program, again which was tested and has been going for 10 years in Texas, centered in Dallas in this instance, where both the teachers are trained in the summer institutes to teach advanced courses, and students are induced by offering them scholarships, and then if they pass the test, they get a bonus of $100. Not

only do the students get $100, but the teachers get $100. Now this program has been going on for 10 years, and the number of students taking these advanced placement courses and tests has gone up tenfold, 10 times over the course of 10 years. Now the beauty of that is that these students who are now taking advanced courses are more likely to go into such courses when they go to college.

Okay. So those are two programs that I think are really important and have been demonstrated to work. And so this is what we would recommend.

We would also recommend a development of a curriculum, a national curriculum, that would be voluntary and available through the Internet to, available to all teachers nationally and all school districts that could be optimizing all of these subjects that we are talking about.

To jump ahead, to get students then to go into science, engineering, mathematics, computer sciences, there would be scholarships, undergraduate scholarships at the level of $25,000 per year, competitive, picking the best students in the country to go into these, also 5,000 fellowships for graduate study in such subjects to get our students in there and in the same subjects, and finally, as Norm just talked about the international students, we would like to have a correction and improvement in both the visa and the immigration policies so that we can continue to attract or attract again those kinds of top students internationally who were coming to the United States and have been slowed down because of various problems since 9/11.

So I think, in summary, I think we all agree that K–12 is important. Certainly our higher education is also important. But it is not only important for competitiveness, it is important for the jobs, the high-knowledge jobs of the future that are going to dictate our economy.

Thank you, Mr. Chairman.

[The prepared statement of Dr. Vagelos follows:]

PREPARED STATEMENT OF P. ROY VAGELOS

Mr. Chairman and Members of the Committee.

Thank you for this opportunity to appear before you on behalf of the National Academies' Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. As you know, our effort was sponsored by the National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering and Institute of Medicine (collectively known as the National Academies). The National Academies were chartered by Congress in 1863 to advise the government on matters of science and technology.

Mr. Augustine, Chair of the Committee, has discussed the overall concerns the Committee has about the future vitality of the United States economy. During my testimony, I will focus on the problems that we're having in K through 12 education. The Committee believes the education issue is the most critical challenge the United States is facing if our children and grandchildren are to inherit ever-greater opportunities for high-quality, high-paying jobs—and our solution and recommendations to respond to the Nation's challenge in K–12 science, mathematics, engineering, and technology education were the Committee's top priority.

The Committee found that the American public is not satisfied with the K through 12 education available for their children. They are worried about the international comparative surveys that show that children outside the United States—even those in countries with far less resources than ours—rank higher than their own children in their understanding of mathematics or science.

The Committee then made the recommendation we call "10,000 teachers, 10 million minds" which proposes increasing America's talent pool by vastly improving K–12 science and mathematics education.

In developing its action steps to reach this goal, the Committee first focused on what part of K–12 science, mathematics, engineering, and technology education was of greatest concern. The Committee immediately recognized that many of these teachers do not have sufficient education in these fields, and its recommendations respond to that concern.

Of all its action steps, the Committee's highest priority is a program that would annually recruit 10,000 of America's brightest students to the science, mathematics, and technology K–12 teaching profession. The program would recruit and train excellent teachers by providing scholarships to students obtaining Bachelor's degrees in the physical or life sciences, engineering, or mathematics to gain concurrent certification as K–12 science and mathematics teachers. Over their careers, each of these teachers would educate 1,000 students, so that each annual cadre of teachers educated in this program would impact 10 million minds.

The program would provide merit-based scholarships of up to $20,000 a year for four years for qualified educational expenses, including tuition and fees, and would require a commitment to five years of service in public K–12 schools. A $10,000 annual bonus would go to program graduates working in under-served schools in inner cities and rural areas.

To provide the highest-quality education for undergraduates who want to become K–12 science and mathematics teachers, it would be important to award matching grants, perhaps $1 million a year for up to five years, to as many as 100 universities and colleges to encourage them to establish integrated four-year undergraduate programs leading to Bachelor's degrees in science, engineering, or mathematics *with concurrent teacher certification.*

This program, modeled after a very successful program in Texas (and which is being replicated in California), takes advantage of those people who are already in science, mathematics, engineering, and technology higher education programs and offer them the ability to get into teaching. It also incorporates in-classroom teaching experiences, master K–12 teachers, and ongoing mentoring—the combination of which produces highly qualified teachers with the skills and support to remain effective in the classroom.

Our second action step focuses on strengthening the skills of 250,000 current K–12 science and mathematics teachers through summer institutes, Master's programs, and Advanced Placement and International Baccalaureate (AP and IB) professional development programs. Each of these activities also builds on very successful model programs that can be scaled up to the national level.

In the case of the summer institutes, the Committee recommends that the Federal Government provide matching grants for state-wide and regional one- to two-week summer institutes to upgrade the content knowledge and pedagogy skills of as many as 50,000 practicing teachers each summer. The material covered would allow teachers to keep current with recent developments in science, mathematics, and technology and allow for the exchange of best teaching practices. The Merck Institute for Science Education is a model for this recommendation.

For the science and mathematics Master's programs, the Committee recommends that the Federal Government provide grants to universities to develop and offer 50,000 current middle-school and high-school science, mathematics, and technology teachers (with or without undergraduate science, mathematics, or engineering degrees) two-year, part-time Master's degree programs that focus on rigorous science and mathematics content and pedagogy. The model for this recommendation is the University of Pennsylvania Science Teachers Institute.

In the case of AP, IB, and pre-AP or pre-IB training, the Committee recommends that the Federal Government support the training of an additional 70,000 AP or IB and 80,000 pre-AP or pre-IB instructors to teach advanced courses in mathematics and science. Assuming satisfactory performance, teachers may receive incentive payments of up to $2,000 per year, as well as $100 for each student who passes an AP or IB exam in mathematics or science. There are two models for this program: the Advanced Placement Incentive Program and Laying the Foundation, a pre-AP program.

The Committee also proposes that high-quality teaching be fostered with world-class curricula, standards, and assessments of student learning. Here, the Committee recommends that the Department of Education convene a national panel to collect, evaluate, and develop rigorous K–12 materials that would be available free of charge as a *voluntary* national curriculum. The model for this recommendation is the Project Lead the Way pre-engineering courseware.

Why are we doing this? Because, as Mr. Augustine mentions, many of the teachers who are teaching subjects have no background in the subjects that they are teaching. It is very hard for someone who does not have a physics education to turn students on to physics, because they have no basic feeling for the subject. Teachers

with strong content knowledge, either through a Bachelor's or Master's program, who also have strong pedagogy skills and access to ongoing skills updates can be truly effective at encouraging students in science, mathematics, and technology fields. That is the thesis that we've built on.

The Committee also proposes a program that will enlarge the pipeline by encouraging more students to take AP and IB science and mathematics courses and tests through providing more opportunities and incentives for middle-school and high-school students to pursue advanced work in science and mathematics. The Committee suggests a national goal of increasing the number of students in AP and IB mathematics and science courses from 1.2 million to 4.5 million, and setting a goal of tripling the number who pass those tests, to 700,000, by 2010. Student incentives for success would include 50 percent examination fee rebates and $100 mini-scholarships for each passing score on an AP or IB mathematics and science examination.

The reason we are encouraging more students to participate in AP/IB courses is because we have found, through the Dallas-based AP Incentive Program, that those students who take AP/IB courses are twice as likely to enter and complete college as those who do not. Of particular interest is the ability of programs such as the University of California College Prep Program to reach currently under-served areas or populations of students with specific learning needs through online access to teachers and tutors.

We also propose scholarships for American undergraduates who are willing to go into science and technology and engineering and fellowship programs for those pursing graduate science and engineering degrees in areas of national need.

In sum, the Committee is proposing a whole spectrum of recommendations that will enhance the quality of science, mathematics, engineering, and technology education for all American students and providing incentives for Americans to pursue higher education degrees in these fields. By taking the proposed actions, we believe that the United States will be better positioned to compete as a country for future high knowledge jobs.

Thank you for providing me with this opportunity to testify before the Committee. I would be pleased to answer any questions you have about the report.

## BIOGRAPHY FOR P. ROY VAGELOS

Dr. Vagelos served as Chief Executive Officer of Merck & Co. Inc., for nine years from July 1985 to June 1994. He was first elected to the Board of Directors in 1984 and served as its Chairman from April 1986 to November 1994.

Dr. Vagelos joined the worldwide health products firm in 1975 as Senior Vice President of Research and became President of its research division in 1976; in addition, starting in January 1982, he served as Senior Vice President of Merck with responsibility for strategic planning. He continued to hold both positions until 1984, when he was elected Executive Vice President.

Before assuming broader responsibilities of business leadership, Dr. Vagelos had won scientific recognition as an authority on lipids and enzymes and as a research manager. This followed a decision early in his career to put his principal energies into research rather than the practice of medicine.

Dr. Vagelos received a A.B. degree (1950) from the University of Pennsylvania, where he was elected to Phi Beta Kappa, the academic honor society. He received his M.D. from Columbia University (1954) and was elected to Alpha Omega Alpha, the medical honor society. After internship and residency (1954–56) at Massachusetts General Hospital in Boston, he joined the National Institutes of Health in Bethesda, Maryland.

At the NIH (1956–66) he served in the National Heart Institute, holding positions in cellular physiology and biochemistry—first as Senior Surgeon and then as Head of Section of Comparative Biochemistry, both in the Laboratory of Biochemistry.

In 1966, Dr. Vagelos joined Washington University in St. Louis, Missouri, as Chairman of the Department of Biological Chemistry of the School of Medicine. In addition, from 1973 to 1975, he assumed more extensive responsibilities as Director of the University's Division of Biology and Biochemical Sciences, which he founded.

Dr. Vagelos has received honorary Doctor of Science degrees from Washington University (1980) for his research achievements and important influence on national science policy; Brown University (1982) for distinguished contributions to the advancement of knowledge as a teacher, research scientist, and head of one of the Nation's outstanding laboratories; the University of Medicine and Dentistry of New Jersey (1984) for outstanding leadership in biomedical research leading to drugs and other therapeutic agents of direct benefits to mankind; New York University (1989) for contributions in helping to discover and produce medicines that both extend and enhance life; Columbia University (1990) for an extraordinary range of accomplish-

ments in biological science, pharmaceutical research, and leadership in the pharmaceutical industry; the New Jersey Institute of Technology (1992) for his contributions to medical research; Pamukkale University in Turkey (1992); and the University of New York at Stony Brook (1994) for outstanding achievement; Mount Sinai Medical School (1997); and the University of British Columbia (1998). He received Honorary Doctor of Laws degrees for leadership in the battle to conquer diseases from Princeton University (1990), the University of Pennsylvania (1999) and Harvard University (2003). Rutgers University (1991) granted him honorary Doctor of Humane Letters degree in recognition of his "ambitious agenda to develop effective cures for the most perplexing illness of our time."

The author of more than 100 scientific papers, he received the Enzyme Chemistry Award of the American Chemical Society in 1967. He was elected in 1972 to the American Academy of Arts and Sciences and the National Academy of Sciences, and in 1993 to the American Philosophical Society. In 1989 he received the Thomas Alva Edison Sciences Award from Governor Thomas Kean. In 1993, he received the Lawrence A. Wien Prize in Social Responsibility from Columbia University. In 1994 he received the C. Walter Nichols Award from New York University's Stern School of Business. In 1995 he received the National Academy of Science Award for Chemistry in Service to Society. In 1998 he was awarded the Prince Mahidol Award conferred by His Majesty the King in Bangkok (Thailand). In 1999 he received the Othmer Gold Medal from the Chemical Heritage Foundation and Bower Award in Business Leadership from Franklin Institute.

Dr. Vagelos was Chairman of the Board of Trustees of the University of Pennsylvania from October 1994 to June 1999, having served as a trustee since 1988. He also served as Co-Chairman of the New Jersey Performing Arts Center from 1989–99, was President and CEO of the American School of Classical Studies at Athens from 1999–2001 and served in the National Research Council Committee on Science and Technology for Countering Terrorism in 2002.

He is currently Chairman of Regeneron Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Theravance, Inc., two biotech companies. He is also Chairman of the Board of Visitors at Columbia University Medical Center where he also chairs the Capital Campaign. He serves on a number of public policy and advisory boards, including the Donald Danforth Plant Science Center and the Danforth Foundation.

Dr. Vagelos is married to the former Diana Touliatos. They live in New Jersey, and have four children and seven grandchildren.

Dr. Vagelos was born on October 8, 1929, in Westfield New Jersey.

Chairman BOEHLERT. Thank you very much, Doctor.

Dr. Wulf.

## STATEMENT OF DR. WILLIAM A. WULF, PRESIDENT, NATIONAL ACADEMY OF ENGINEERING

Dr. WULF. Good morning, Mr. Chairman.

I have to say I am particularly delighted to be here this morning with Norm and Roy. I would point out that Norm Augustine is a member of the National Academy of Engineering, and in fact, was its Chairman a few years ago.

Just echoing your comments before, I think the issue that we are talking about today is the most important issue facing our country. It may not be the most urgent, but I believe it is the most important.

I wasn't a member of Norm's committee, and so I can't hope to represent the content of "Rising Above the Gathering Storm" as well as Norm or Roy, so I am not going to try, but I would like to make three points.

First, as Norm suggested, the problem is, itself, a creeping crisis. In fact, it is not a problem; it is a set of problems. And those set of problems I view as rather like tiles in a mosaic. Each one of them viewed up close, perhaps, doesn't sound like a crisis and isn't, perhaps, likely to provoke action, but if you stand back and you look at the overall mosaic, a pattern emerges. It is a pattern of short-term thinking, a pattern of lack of long-term investment. It

is a pattern for preserving the status quo rather than reaching for the next big goal. It is a pattern that presumes that we in the United States are entitled to a better quality of life than others and that all we have to do is to circle the wagons and defend that entitlement. It is a pattern that does not balance the dangers and opportunities in current circumstances.

I don't have time to talk about all of the tiles in this mosaic, and I would largely be redundant with the report that is the subject of this hearing if I did, but they include the dramatic decline in industry-based basic research, the flat-to-declining federal support of research in the physical sciences and engineering, the increasingly short-term risk averse nature of the research that is supported, the discouraging effect on foreign students and scholars of our current visa policy and its impact on our ability to get the world's best and brightest to come to the United States and to contribute to our security and prosperity, the draconian proposals for handling of deemed exports in basic research, and their chilling impact on long-term basic research at universities, and finally, the rapid growth in the use of the category of sensitive but unclassified information and its impact on the free flow of scientific information.

My second point is that although the problems depicted in "Rising Above the Gathering Storm" may not have a Sputnik-like wake-up event, that does not mean they are unimportant. Quite the contrary. In my view, collectively, they are the most important issue currently facing the United States.

I am hardly alone in that view. There is an increasingly wide recognition of it, I believe. In my written testimony, there are references to some recent reports from a variety of sources that reflect this deep concern, from the National Academies, from the private sector, from government agencies, and from academia. Despite the differing perspectives of the authoring organizations, there is surprising consistency among this report.

As is said in the American Electronics Association report, and I quote, "We are slipping. Yes, the United States still leads in nearly every way one can measure, but that does not change the fact that the foundation on which this lead was built is eroding. Our leadership in technology and innovation has benefited from an infrastructure created by 50 years of continual investment, education, and research. We are no longer maintaining that infrastructure."

In my view, the erosion alluded to by the AEA, if unchecked, will lead to a poorer quality of life for our grandchildren, and quite possibly to a world that is less secure and less free.

My third, and final, point is that it is all about innovation and the multifaceted environment that supports innovation. There is wide agreement in the reports cited in my written testimony that the U.S. ability to innovate has been the source of its prosperity, and hence that ensuring our ability to continue to innovate is central to our future prosperity and security. Each of these reports proposes specific policy options to do this. Many of them are similar, few are identical. I think that is because there is no simple formula for innovation. There is, instead, a multi-component environment that collectively encourages, or discourages, innovation. Just to mention a few of the components of this environment: there must be a vibrant research base; there must be an educated work-

force; there must be a culture that permits and even encourages risk taking; there must be a social climate that attracts the best and brightest to practice engineering, whether from within the country or outside it; there must be "patient capital" available to the entrepreneur; the tax laws must reward investment; there must be adequate and appropriate protection for intellectual property; and there must be laws and regulations that protect the public but also encourage experimentation.

To prosper in the future, we need to attend to all of these components of the innovation environment.

In summary, by almost any objective measure, the United States is doing very well at the moment. But, the prosperity and security that we now enjoy is the result of decades of investment, research, and education. We now see a pattern, a mosaic, of disinvestment, of a retreat from bold research, and of a declining interest of American youth in education in science and engineering. We see a pattern suggesting a shift from creating the new to protecting the status quo. No single tile in this mosaic is going to ruin the American economy, which perhaps makes it all the more dangerous. There is a chance that we won't take action until the consequences become apparent in a decade or two, at which point it may be too late.

Thank you for the opportunity to testify, Mr. Chairman.

[The prepared statement of Dr. Wulf follows:]

PREPARED STATEMENT OF WILLIAM A. WULF

Good afternoon, Mr. Chairman and Members of the Committee. My name is William (Bill) Wulf and, since 1996, I have been on leave from the University of Virginia to serve as President of the National Academy of Engineering (NAE).

Founded in 1964, the NAE provides engineering leadership in service to the Nation. It operates under the same congressional act of incorporation that established the National Academy of Sciences, signed in 1863 by President Lincoln. Under this charter the NAE is directed "whenever called upon by any department or agency of the government, to investigate, examine, experiment, and report upon any subject of science or art [technology]." The NAE's 1998 strategic plan, however, goes beyond this reactive, "whenever called upon," role to one in which we are to "Promote the technological health of the Nation. . .." It is much in the latter spirit that I am here today.

I am particularly delighted to be here in the company of Norm Augustine, former Chairman of the NAE, to testify on what I believe to be *the most important* (as opposed to urgent) issue facing our country. I was not a member of Norm's Committee, but I participated in its initial meeting and tracked its progress closely, so I first want to acknowledge and thank all of the stellar committee members for the enormous energy and creativity that went into producing the report. I hope that the Science Committee will appreciate that the Academies' committee's willingness to spend countless hours on this report was the result of their depth of concern over our nation's future.

I cannot hope to represent the content of "Rising Above the Gathering Storm" as well or as fully as Norm Augustine or Roy Vagelos, so I won't try—but I would like to draw attention to three points.

**First, unfortunately the problem is a "creeping crisis."**

Unfortunately the problems we are concerned about don't have a Sputnik-like wake-up call.

You all know the storied procedure for boiling a frog. They say that if you drop a frog in boiling water, it will jump out. But, if you put a frog in cool water and heat it very slowly, the frog won't jump out, and you'll get a boiled frog. The theory is that each small, incremental rise in temperature is not enough of a crisis to make the frog react. I don't know if this story is true, but it fits my purpose—the slowly warming water is a creeping crisis for the frog!

Our creeping crisis is not a slow, one-dimensional change like the frog's water temperature. We are facing a number of problems—each one like a tile in a mosaic.

No one of these problems by itself creates the sort of crisis that provokes action. But if you stand back and look at the collection of problems, a disturbing picture emerges—a pattern of short-term thinking and a lack of long-term investment. It's a pattern for preserving the status quo rather than reaching for the next big goal. It's a pattern that presumes that we in the United States are *entitled* to a better quality of life than others and that all we have to do is circle our wagons to defend that entitlement. It's a pattern that does not balance the dangers and opportunities in current circumstances.

I do not have the time to discuss all the tiles in this mosaic, and I would be largely redundant with the report that is the subject of this hearing if I did, but they include:

— The dramatic decline in industry-based basic research.
— The flat-to-declining federal support of research in the physical sciences and engineering.
— The increasingly short-term, risk-averse nature of the research that is supported.
— The discouraging effect on foreign students and scholars of our current visa policies, and its impact on our ability to get the world's best and brightest to come to the U.S. and contribute to our security and prosperity.
— The draconian proposals for handling of "deemed exports" in basic research, and their chilling impact on long-term basic research at universities.
— The rapid growth in the use of the category of "sensitive but unclassified" information, and its impact on the free flow of scientific information.

**Second, nonetheless the problem is both important and widely recognized.**

Although the problems depicted in "Rising Above the Gathering Storm" may not have a Sputnik-like wake-up event, that does not mean they are unimportant. Quite the contrary; in my view collectively they are the most important issue currently facing the United States. I am hardly alone in that view; there is an increasingly wide recognition of it. Below are references to recent reports from a variety of sources that reflect this deep concern:

— From the National Academies[1,2]
— From the private sector[3,4,5,6,7,8]
— From government agencies,[9,10,11,12] and
— From academia[13,14]

---

[1] National Academy of Engineering. 2005. *Engineering Research and America's Future: Meeting the Challenges of a Global Economy.* Washington, D.C.: Nation Academies Press.

[2] National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, Institute of Medicine. 2005. *Rising Above the Gathering Storm: Energizing and Employing America for a Brighter Economic Future.* Washington, D.C.: National Academies Press.

[3] AeA (American Electronics Association). 2005. *Losing the Competitive Advantage? The Challenge for Science and Technology in the United States.* Washington, D.C. AeA.

[4] Business Roundtable. 2005. *Tapping America's Potential: The Education for Innovation Initiative.* Washington, D.C.: U.S. Chamber of Commerce.

[5] Business Roundtable. March 2005. *Securing Growth and Jobs: Improving U.S. Prosperity in a Worldwide Economy.* Washington, D.C.: U.S. Chamber of Commerce.

[6] Council on Competitiveness. 2004. *Innovate America.* Washington, D.C.: Council on Competitiveness.

[7] Electronics Industry Alliance. 2004. *The Technology Industry at an Innovation Crossroads.* Arlington, VA. Electronic Industry Alliance.

[8] National Association of Manufacturers. 2005. *The Looming Workforce Crisis: Preparing American Workers for 21st Century Competition.* Washington, D.C.: National Association of Manufacturers.

[9] National Intelligence Council. 2004. *Mapping the Global Future: Report of the National Intelligence Committee's 2020 Project.* Washington, D.C.: National Intelligence Council.

[10] National Science Board. August 2003. *The Science and Engineering Workforce: Realizing America's Potential.* Report NSB 03–69. Arlington, Virginia: National Science Foundation.

[11] President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology. January 2004. *Sustaining the Nation's Innovation Ecosystems, Information Technology Manufacturing and Competitiveness.* Washington, D.C.

[12] President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology—Workforce Education Subcommittee. June 2004. *Sustaining the Nation's Innovation Ecosystem: Maintaining the Strength of Our Science & Engineering Capabilities.* Washington, D.C.

[13] Council of Graduate Schools. June 2005. *NDEA 21: A Renewed Commitment to Graduate Education.* Washington, D.C.: Council of Graduate Schools.

[14] American Association of Universities, To be released.

Despite the differing perspectives of the authoring organizations, there is surprising consistency among these reports. They all identify problems like the tiles in my mosaic as representing *serious* long-term problems for the country—problems that require action now! As is said in the American Electronics Association (AeA) report[33]:

> "We are slipping. Yes, the United States still leads in nearly every way one can measure, but that does not change the fact that the foundation on which this lead was built is eroding. Our leadership in technology and innovation has benefited from an infrastructure created by 50 years of continual investment, education and research. We are no longer maintaining this infrastructure."

In my view, the erosion alluded to by the AeA, if unchecked, will lead to a poorer quality of life for our grandchildren—and quite possibly to a world that is less secure and less free.

**Third and finally, it's all about innovation and the multi-faceted environment that supports innovation.**

There is wide agreement in the reports cited above that the U.S. ability to innovate has been the source of its prosperity—and hence that ensuring our ability to continue to innovate is central to our future prosperity and security. Each of these reports proposes specific policy options to do this—many of them are similar, but few are identical. I think that is because, in my view, there is no simple formula for innovation. There is, instead, a multi-component "environment" that collectively encourages, or discourages, innovation. Just to mention a few of the components of this environment:

- There must be a vibrant research base.
- There must be an educated workforce.
- There must be a culture that permits and even encourages risk-taking.
- There must be a social climate that attracts the best and brightest to practice engineering—whether from within the country or outside it.
- There must be "patient capital" available to the entrepreneur.
- The tax laws must reward investment.
- There must be adequate and appropriate protection for intellectual property.
- There must be laws and regulations that protect the public while also encouraging experimentation.

To prosper in the future we must attend to *all* the components of this innovation environment—and in particular we need to be sure that they are attuned to the current and future technologies rather than those of the past (when many of the components of the environment were first created).

**In Summary**

By almost any objective measure, the U.S. is doing very well at this moment. But, the prosperity and security that we now enjoy is the result of decades of investment, research and education. We now see a pattern, a "mosaic," of disinvestment, of a retreat from bold research, and of a declining interest of American youth in education in science and engineering. We see a pattern suggesting a shift from creating the new to protecting the status quo. No single tile in this mosaic is going to ruin the American economy—which perhaps makes it all the more dangerous. There is the chance that we won't take action until the consequences become apparent in a decade or two, at which point it will be too late.

Thank you for the opportunity to testify, Mr. Chairman. I would be pleased to answer any questions the Committee might have.

BIOGRAPHY FOR WILLIAM A. WULF

**Personal:**

Wm. A. Wulf, President, National Academy of Engineering, 2101 Constitution Ave., NW, Washington, DC; e-mail: wwulf@nae.edu

University Professor and AT&T Professor of Engineering and Applied Science, Department of Computer Science, Thornton Hall, University of Virginia

**Education:**

B.S., Engineering Physics, University of Illinois, 1961

M.S., Electrical Engineering, University of Illinois, 1963

Ph.D., Computer Science, University of Virginia, 1968

**Positions:**

President, National Academy of Engineering, 1996 to present.
AT&T Prof. of Engr., University of Virginia, 1988 to present.
Assistant Director, National Science Foundation, 1988 to 1990.
Chairman & CEO, Tartan Laboratories Inc., 1981 to 1987.
Professor, Carnegie-Mellon University, 1975 to 1981.
Associate Professor, Carnegie-Mellon University, 1973 to 1975.
Assistant Professor, Carnegie-Mellon University, 1968 to 1973.
Instructor, University of Virginia, 1963 to 1968.

**Descriptive Biography:**

Dr. Wulf was elected President of the National Academy of Engineering (NAE) in April 1997; he had previously served as Interim President beginning in July 1996. Together with the National Academy of Sciences, the NAE operates under a congressional charter and presidential executive orders that call on it to provide advice to the government on issues of science and engineering.

Dr. Wulf is on leave from the University of Virginia, where he is a University Professor and the AT&T Professor of Engineering and Applied Science. Among his activities at the University were a complete revision of the undergraduate Computer Science curriculum, research on computer architecture and computer security, and an effort to assist humanities scholars exploit information technology.

In 1988–90 Dr. Wulf was on leave from the University to be Assistant Director of the National Science Foundation (NSF) where he headed the Directorate for Computer and Information Science and Engineering (CISE). CISE is responsible for computer science and engineering research as well as for operating the National Supercomputer Centers and NSFNET. While at NSF, Dr. Wulf was deeply involved in the development of the High Performance Computing and Communication Initiative and in the formative discussions of the National Information Infrastructure.

Prior to joining Virginia, Dr. Wulf founded Tartan Laboratories and served as its Chairman and Chief Executive Officer. Before returning to academe, Dr. Wulf grew the company to about a hundred employees. Tartan developed and marketed optimizing compilers, notably for Ada. Tartan was sold to Texas Instruments in 1995.

The technical basis for Tartan was research by Dr. Wulf while he was a Professor of Computer Science at Carnegie-Mellon University, where he was Acting Head of the Department from 1978–1979. At Carnegie-Mellon Dr. Wulf's research spanned programming systems and computer architecture; specific research activities included: the design and implementation of a systems-implementation language (Bliss), architectural design of the DEC PDP–11, the design and construction of a 16 processor multiprocessor and its operating system, a new approach to computer security, and development of a technology for the construction of high quality optimizing compilers. Dr. Wulf also actively participated in the development of Ada, the common DOD programming language for embedded computer applications.

While at Carnegie-Mellon and Tartan, Dr. Wulf was active in the "high tech" community in Pittsburgh. He helped found the Pittsburgh High Technology Council and served as Vice President and Director from its creation. He also helped found the CEO Network, the CEO Venture Fund, and served as an advisor to the Western Pennsylvania Advanced Technology Center. In 1983 he was awarded the Enterprise "Man of the Year" Award for these and other activities.

Dr. Wulf is a member of the National Academy of Engineering, a Fellow of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, a Corresponding Member of the Academia Espanola De Ingeniera, a Member of the Academy Bibliotheca Alexandrina (Library of Alexandria), and a Foreign Member of the Russian Academy of Sciences. He is also a Fellow of five professional societies: the ACM, the IEEE, the AAAS, IEC, and AWIS. He is the author of over 100 papers and technical reports, has written three books, holds two U.S. Patents, and has supervised over 25 Ph.D.s in Computer Science.

## DISCUSSION

Chairman BOEHLERT. Thank you for leaving us with some degree of comfort by your closing statement, "By almost any objective, the United States is doing very well at this moment." Guess what?

That is not good enough. That might make us feel better, we may be doing very well, but our competition is doing a lot better a lot quicker. So this is serious business.

And Dr. Vagelos, you know, you emphasized something that is so very important. Right back to the basics, K–12 science and math education. You know, I am sort of tired of appearing before business groups, as I do frequently, and to get some guy raising his hand, I will call on him, and you know, he starts moaning and groaning about K–12 education and the high schools are graduating students that we can't hire because they can't function, and we have to start training them. And I listen to them moan and groan, and I acknowledge that it is a serious problem we have got to address, and then I will say to him and all of the other representatives of business in the audience, and I did this a couple of times at a Chamber of Commerce meeting and a National Association of Manufacturers, "All right, you hot shots in business. Let me ask you a question." All right. Well, that is sort of unusual. I say, "How many of your employees, Mr. President of this company, Mr. Manager of that company, how many of your employees serve on a local school board?" You know. The answer, usually the response is, "Gee, we don't know." "Go back and check, will you, please? And then, in a couple weeks, let me know." And I never hear back. You know why? They check and they don't run. Well, gee, we are in business to make a profit, and it is too important. And why not have them run for school boards?

And then the other thing is, and I am giving you some of my pet theories, but I want to work together, because I want to follow through on this and go forward on this. How many letters do you think the average Member of Congress gets from his or her constituents saying, "You know, we have got to invest more in basic research, as a government," or, "We should do better by the National Science Foundation," which is a primary funder of all university-based research? Do you know how many letters? Probably the average congressperson gets zero. And I doubt if there is a sitting Member of either the House or the Senate who campaigned on doing better by the science enterprise. You know, we have got to reform Social Security. We are going to get out of Iraq. We are going to do all of these things, but they don't talk about these things. And I say, once again, Mr. Augustine, I will say to people like the Chairman of the Board of Lockheed Martin, your former position, "Why don't you look at your Board of Directors?" It reads like a Who's Who in America. All well compensated, all very heavily influential in the political process, some Republican, some Democrat. They are all over the lot. I would suggest that if Board Member X from central Oklahoma or Board Member Y from northern Kansas called up his or her representative and said, "Look. Here is something that Congress is ignoring, and this is very important. You have got to do better by K–12 science and math education, and I don't see how the hell you propose to do so if you are cutting funding for the Education Directorate at the National Science Foundation, and I want you to do something about that." People would begin to take notice.

So I don't think this is too daunting a task, and I want to have some follow-through with you guys after this. You know, there are

435. You get 435 master cards, and we can get a file on each Member of Congress. And then we can just sort of work them and figure out how we can get them to focus on this subject area.

So with that, a sort of preamble of my speech, let me ask you this. Help us prioritize your recommendations. And help us explain how you decided on a 10 percent increase. Can we go with those two?

Mr. Augustine.

Mr. AUGUSTINE. Thank you.

I will be glad to begin.

The question of prioritizing, we feel, quite strongly, that one has to view our recommendations as a package. We did single out as the highest priority K–12, because that seemed to underpin everything we are doing. If we don't solve that problem, we have lost.

Beyond that, the reason we view it as a package is, for example, to create more scientists and engineers but to not increase the research budget for them to work on just creates people without jobs. And so this is a closely-knit package that we have proposed. We gathered 60 experts in various fields who came to Washington for two days with us, and they made recommendations as to what we should recommend to you. They made over 150 recommendations, which we boiled down and refined. So what you are seeing is our prioritized list of the very top ones. There were others we didn't consider.

Your question of why 10 percent, and you are referring to the increase in basic research in the specific fields. Our motivation was to, rather quickly, increase the budget in those fields, which have been basically flat in real dollars for 20 years. That contrasts sharply with the progress in the biological sciences. So we wanted to do it as quickly as we could, but we also want to be sure the money is spent efficiently. And it is our view that about 10 percent per year, this is obviously judgmental, is about what you can increase and spend very efficiently. It might be 15 percent. It might be eight percent, but it would be in that range.

The question of why we put the seven-year limit on it; it turns out, of course, that 10 percent per year for seven years roughly doubles the existing $8 billion budget in this area. That is encouraging to us, and seems rational in the sense that the Congress, with your leadership, recently proposed that the NIH budget be doubled. And the Administration supported that. That was through the authorization process, unfortunately not through the appropriations process.

So that would be my answer to your question. I am sorry. Did I say NIH? I meant NSF.

Chairman BOEHLERT. Yeah. Yeah. It is NSF. Well, you know, we are following the NIH model, and everybody got nervous, because we doubled the NIH budget over five years, and I really think the basic reason is because it does so much in research in things like Alzheimer's and cancer and everything else, and Members couldn't vote fast enough, because they had looked out and said there, but for the grace of God, go I and vote aye. And we ought to do the same thing with the physical sciences and following that model. And a lot of people with biological sciences interested in NIH were concerned that I was trying to cut their funding. I don't want to

cut their funding one dime. It is important. But I want to elevate NSF.

But the basic problem is, and this is our problem on Capitol Hill. We passed the legislation putting the NSF on a path to double its budget over five years. We had a big ceremony down at the White House. The president signed it, we patted each other on the back. Boy, we felt good. But that didn't appropriate one dime. And while we put the agency on a path with authorization from this committee to double a budget over five years, you know, the percentage increase is a little better than flat, but not a heck of a lot better. You know what the total budget is? I bet you if you asked the board members of Merck or Lockheed Martin or anybody else, what do you think NSF gets. You know, they sponsor, basically, all university-based research in America. They wouldn't know, $5 billion a year. You know what, they spend more than that in a coffee break over in the Pentagon. That is another place you are associated with. And I am for national defense, but we have got to get some priorities in order.

My time is expired.

Mr. Gordon.

Mr. GORDON. As I said earlier, I admire my Chairman's passion for this issue. I am also the beneficiary of, hopefully, some extra time that could be allocated to me over the next few weeks because of all of his passion here. And I do admire it.

As the Chairman said, the National Science Foundation, we passed an authorization to double it. It was signed by the President, yet the President never has made those requests. I think one of the benefits of your proposal is that you went beyond flowery rhetoric and gave us some specific recommendations.

You also have specific recommendations for an action plan. You gave us an action plan on what to do. What about an action plan on how to get it implemented, how to get the President to make these proposals, how to get Congress to go forward? Or do you feel like your job is over? Have you given us the sheet and now you all are going home? Mr. Augustine, is there another step?

Mr. AUGUSTINE. No, we believe that our job has just begun, and we do have a plan. I should say that we are in a difficult position, because the National Academies don't lobby, by policy. On the other hand, the National Academies do provide information, disseminate information, share views, and we intend to do a lot of that. And we would hope that we will have the opportunity to do that broadly with the Business Roundtable, with labor unions, with other organizations that are interested in this topic, with teachers. And indeed, we do plan to pursue this, and our members have——

Mr. GORDON. Good.

Mr. AUGUSTINE.—in fact, been——

Mr. GORDON. Well, I would hope that you would put together, around my office, I, you know, sort of have a, I don't know whether it is a saying, but if it is not written down, it is not a plan. And we would hope that, not as extensively as this, but that you might put together an action plan for implementing, whether informally or formally, meet with us and tell us how we can help. And we would all like to work together on that.

The second question that I have, back when the original President Bush was President, he and Congress got together and passed something called PAYGO. We had a big deficit, and we wanted to do something about it, and we all know that the first thing you do when you are in a hole, you stop digging. And that is what PAYGO tried to do. Every time there was legislation that came to the Floor, it had to have a fiscal note to say what it cost. And you had to have either additional revenue or you had to have offsets for that. That was passed two more times under, again, under two Presidents and several Congresses. Unfortunately, it expired in 2002, and we can't get the current Congress to renew that.

But going back to that same type of idea, it is going to be hard to get additional funds. Nobody likes to talk about taxes, and maybe we will just say fee or something here. Do you have any suggestions as to a fee that might be appropriate on, maybe, the business sector somewhere that would be dedicated for this $10 billion? You know, and that it would be a, you know, somewhat of a tit for tat if we have, you know, one-eighth of a percent additional something here that would go to these various teaching programs? Do you have any recommendations on that?

Mr. AUGUSTINE. I am afraid I will have to disappoint you here, because our committee's charter really didn't include looking for offsets of——

Mr. GORDON. Well, I am just asking you as informed individuals and——

Mr. AUGUSTINE. As an individual, and not speaking for the committee, you know, kind of the way I look at it is that we have gross domestic product of $12 trillion. The Federal Government spends, as you know, $2 trillion a year. Last year, I am told that our citizens lost $7 billion betting on the Super Bowl. The cost of litigation to corporations in America is about 10 to 20 times what we have asked for here. And so it is our belief that this kind of money can be found. Now I have my own personal list, as I am sure everybody else does, of, you know, where I would start looking for money, but it is not particularly relevant, because I have no expertise in the subject.

Mr. GORDON. Well, we are not voting on a budget today, because there wasn't the ability, the will, or whatever to go from a $35 billion reduction to $50 billion. So that was $15 billion that apparently couldn't be found. And it was a pretty hard effort. Now maybe they will find it next week, I don't know. So yes, there is probably, you know, there is enough money sloshing around. But if that is the answer, then we are not going to get this done.

Mr. AUGUSTINE. Well, you know, I, as an individual, feel, I can't speak for other CEOs. I feel so strongly that it is in the best interest of our companies that if it requires an additional tax of some kind to fix some of these problems, and it is not a huge amount of money in the grand scheme of things, I personally would support that kind of thing. But again, I can't speak for the——

Mr. GORDON. Well, I think that would be another, again, the follow-up, both in the action plan and implementing this, and if the business community thinks it is important, it would give a lot of credibility and a lot of cover for folks. And I think that we want it as small as possible. It needs to be dedicated so that you know

where it is going, and this old PAYGO kind of process. So I would hope that, again, with all of those big thinkers as you are around doing big thinking, that that might be added to the agenda.

And again, thank you all for your, well, let me add, does anyone else want to comment on any of those subjects?

Dr. VAGELOS. Mr. Gordon, I haven't really thought on the source, but there are sources, even within the current research budget of the government that I think could be reallocated. I would not like to discuss them at this time, because I—they just haven't been generalized, but I certainly have ideas. And I certainly would support, also, an increase in taxes that would cover these subjects.

But let me say that although the statements that I have heard today that corporations are not doing enough is a general statement that doesn't cover all corporations. And let me give you an example. At Merck, 15 years ago, we started what we called the Merck Institute for Science Education and developed a program for K–6 students in the region around our locations in the United States, of which there are several. And we have a person who heads that, Carlo Parravano, who is previously a professor of physical chemistry at a university and with a passion for teaching young people. And the idea is to train teachers in the K–6 level to understand some level of hands-on science in order to excite and demystify science for young children, because it demystifies for those teachers who are exposed in summer institutes, and then they are followed by master teacher visitations during the course of a year to get the children excited about science. Merck started this program about 15 years ago, and it has continued. It is so good that the NSF actually is replicating some of it. And Merck continues to invest in that regard.

So some companies, at least, are doing that. And I know of other companies doing similar programs. So I would like not to leave with a negative thought of all corporations not being interested in K–12, because they are, indeed. And certainly in higher education, many research corporations invest in universities and in high schools to bring up the number of people who are going into technology because they are looking at their future workforce, frankly. It really benefits them to have better people coming through the pipelines.

Mr. GORDON. Yeah, I don't think, hopefully no one overtly or insinuated that everyone is in that boat. What we want is to find incentives to increase that leadership.

But thank you very much.

Chairman BOEHLERT. Thank you.

Mr. GORDON. I would also, in fact, I would like to request if you do have any kind of material on the Merck program——

Dr. VAGELOS. Yes.

Mr. GORDON.I would like to see that so we might be able to see how we could replicate it, also.

Chairman BOEHLERT. Well, just let me stress that what Merck has done, what Lockheed is doing, Westinghouse scholarships, corporate America is magnificent in its generosity in so many instances, so I don't want anyone to go away from this with the impression that this committee, particularly, does not acknowledge the great contributions corporate America is making. But they need

to do a better job, and so do we. And you know, before we start asking you to do a better job, we have got to look ourselves in the mirror and say are we doing a better job. And I hope it—yes, Doctor. Did you want to make an observation?

Dr. VAGELOS. I just want to say something about the long-term investment in research, because it is so crucial to what we are talking about. First of all, we have to have people who can do it, so that is K–12 and higher education. But are corporations really making a difference? And have we impacted health? Yeah, we have spent, the Nation has spent, you know, billions in the last 25 years. Has it been worth it? Well, I will give, as an example, what happened in 1981. There was the identification of a new thing called AIDS. It turned out a couple years later, the virus was identified through work at NIH and the Pasteur Institute, but then the universities and industry both focused on how do you handle this virus, a virus which caused the disease which was 100 percent lethal. And within, you know, a decade, you have the development of several different mechanisms of antiretroviral drugs that, in combination, converted a 100-percent lethal disease to a disease, which is a chronic infection where people leave hospitals, go back to work, and live normal lives. Now that is the interaction between basic research investing by government and research investment by industry.

There are other things that are coming today. We heard in the paper today an advance in breast cancer outcomes using Herceptin, a drug that has been around for a while, but it is a monochromal antibody. Here is a technology that has been essentially developed in the United States over the last 25 years and is having an impact now. There is a vaccine being developed both by Merck and by GSK that will prevent cervical cancer. This is against human papilloma virus. This has come from years of basic research now converted to—do you know how long it takes to make a vaccine?

Chairman BOEHLERT. Oh, I know that.

Dr. VAGELOS. And do you know the panic now over influenza, avian flu?

Chairman BOEHLERT. Well, that gets into a different subject. Let us get to Ms. Biggert, because she will get us back on course here, because this is such an enthusiastic group that we all could talk forever, but I hope it should not go unnoticed that we have a higher percentage of both sides of the aisle participating in this hearing than I will bet you any other hearing on Capitol Hill, which is a testament to the importance that we view the subject and to the distinguished panel we have.

Ms. Biggert.

Ms. BIGGERT. Thank you, Mr. Chairman.

First of all, I just wanted to mention that I did serve as President of my local high school school board, and I appreciate all that you are doing. The problem that we always had was, first of all, to find the teachers that were the best and the brightest for what we wanted in our school. And then the second was to keep up with technology and the equipment that changed so to have available for the students.

But I really wanted to talk about or ask questions to focus attention on energy and your proposal for the creation of a DARPA-like entity at the Department of Energy.

It has been my experience representing a DOE National Lab, and serving as the Chairman of the Subcommittee on Energy here in this committee, that the bigger problem is technology transfer, getting new technologies or the products of government-funded research from the lab to the market. And I know that so many times things, for example, right after 9/11, we found that the labs really had done the research, had the products that then could go, for example, to the subway to identify, you know, foreign chemicals in there and things like that that were there, but nobody had ever really processed that or gone further.

So my first question is what specific problem was the committee trying to address through this recommendation, recommendation B5?

Mr. AUGUSTINE. There you go. Your question is a very good one and touches on a number of points we have debated at length. Really, the problem we saw, maybe I should say, in the way of background, the company I had the privilege of serving has operated for the DOE a number of National Labs, and so we had some experience with the challenges. And the notion with ARPA–E was to do for the Department of Energy what DARPA has done for the Department of Defense, specifically to take high-risk, very high-payoff transformational research, support that research, and then to transfer it into industry, and to where it could produce products. There does seem to be a gap between the DOE's ability to produce great new products, great new ideas, just as you have cited, and to make something happen. And our hope was that this might provide that transformational mechanism.

The reason we think it could well work is that ARPA–E, the Advanced Research Projects Agency–Energy that we have proposed, would not do research itself. It would support research that was done in universities and done in industry and possibly in the labs of National Labs themselves. It would be competitively awarded, and so there would be a built-in involvement of industry and of universities that you don't have in the labs themselves. And part of the reason we don't have it in the labs is the well-meaning conflict of interest rules we have that makes it hard for companies to access some of this information.

Ms. BIGGERT. I understand that there were a couple, one or more members, that did not agree with this recommendation, and——

Mr. AUGUSTINE. Yes, of all of the 20 recommendations we made, one member disagreed with one recommendation, and it was this one. And this particular individual felt, and I hope I can do justice to his views, that we already are spending a great deal of money on energy research in the government and that the industrial firms in the field are also devoting a great deal of money to research. And this individual believed that there was no more money needed at this point and also that the government would be in a position of picking winners and losers in terms of research and companies, and that wouldn't be healthy. Now I personally don't share that view, but I think I have done justice to his position.

Ms. BIGGERT. Well, it sounds like, then, that this really is a way to move from the lab to market. Is that the major focus of it, or just the basic research itself?

Mr. AUGUSTINE. Well, I think it is two things. The first is what you said. It is a way to build a bridge to getting ideas and research out and applied. The second is to be able to spend more money on transformational, breakthrough, high-risk, long-term research that companies just won't perform and that the NSF and the NIH and Defense Department are all doing much less of because of their risk aversion.

Ms. BIGGERT. So much, particularly in the labs, it seems like, you know, the basic research in physical sciences, so many times, what might start out to be a project to work on one item will be able to discover something else, and it will probably, you know, be much more of the thing that is going to change the world or whatever. Will this destroy that at all by having to compete for these grants on specific types of research?

Mr. AUGUSTINE. Not at all. And your point is such a good one. And that is one reason, of course, why industry is reluctant to invest in basic research, because what you come up with may help your competitor more than it helps you, and whereas the ARPA-E idea would promote that.

In addition, we had another recommendation that you are familiar with, I am sure, that the government labs be provided latitude to spend eight percent of their budget at the discretion of the people in the lab that know better than the central managers where those other opportunities are popping up.

Ms. BIGGERT. I think some people have tried to cut that back, which is disturbing, because that is a very——

Chairman BOEHLERT. The gentlelady's time has expired. Thank you very much.

Ms. BIGGERT. Thank you.

Chairman BOEHLERT. Mr. Miller, the Floor is yours for 300 seconds.

Mr. MILLER. Thank you, Mr. Chairman.

Mr. Chairman, I rarely pass the chance to ask questions to amplify some point, but this panel has made all of the points that I think need to be made.

Mr. Chairman, I will disagree with you on one point. You said you thought no Member of Congress campaigns on the need to fund basic research to provide for science education and to try to move ideas, the product research, from the laboratory to the market. Mr. Chairman, I do. I represent a textile District. I represent a District that has lost a lot of jobs, and I voted against CAFTA, but I tell the folks who ask me all of the time not how are we bringing the jobs back, but where are the new jobs coming from, that our future can not be having low-skilled jobs in labor-intensive industries. It has to be the most innovative economy in the world, and that means research, funding research. It means science education. It means a commitment to community colleges where people learn new job skills throughout their lifetimes and will have to go back again and again. And it means efforts to move to provide the funding and the assistance to take research out of the laboratory to the marketplace.

So Mr. Chairman, I am delighted to be here, and my enthusiasm for this topic, I think, may be the equal of yours.

Chairman BOEHLERT. Dr. Ehlers.

Mr. EHLERS. Thank you, Mr. Chairman.

And I will join Mr. Miller in the ranks of those who campaign for science. In fact, my very first election, I scored a coup on a live TV debate when all of the attorneys running against me were saying that they would come here and straighten out the laws, the business people were coming here saying they would come here to balance the budget. And I pointed out that if we elected an attorney, we would add one to the 175 already here, and I didn't think that would make much difference. If we elected a businessperson, we would add one to the 137 already here, and I didn't think that would make much difference. But if they elected me, they would double the number of scientists in the Congress, and that would make a difference, and it seemed to resonate with the people.

I also am in somewhat the same camp as Mr. Miller. When I read your executive summary, I haven't had time to read the whole report yet, but I just checked them off, and virtually everything, with one small exception, is exactly what I have been advocating for 12 years here. And I want to thank you very, very much for an excellent report, not just because you agree with me, but because you make the case well, and it is what this country needs. And now it is up to us, as a Congress, to implement that.

So I congratulate you. I am afraid I have to go vote somewhere else, but let me just try to clarify one point.

We talked about ARPA–E. And by the way, I think it would be better to call it "DARPE," and maybe you could have a stuffed doll named "DARPE," you know, as a symbol. Come up with something catchy. But DARPA has been a powerful force in basic research in this country. All right.

Chairman BOEHLERT. Only a physicist would have his cell phone with Beethoven's Fifth.

Mr. EHLERS. No, it is only a fourth. I don't drink.

But DARPA has been extremely successful, but it has been very much a basic research agency. And yet, in the discussion I just heard, it sounded like you are talking about this as much a tech transfer as a basic research entity. And I think the Department of Energy badly needs this sort of thing. I am not questioning that, but it is not clear to me precisely what you are trying to accomplish here. If the goal is to have the Department of Energy address, in a more direct way, the national problems that we face, I would heartily welcome that. We have huge energy problems here, and I would like to see that happen. But tech transfer, we have CRADAs. I don't know if they are still around, but they were very successful. And we could address technology transfer through an MEP-like type of program or agriculture extension program, which I would also favor.

But could you just give me a little clarification, a little more clarification I would say? What are you really trying to achieve with the ARPA–E proposal?

Mr. AUGUSTINE. I am glad you asked to give us an opportunity to clarify, and I will call on my colleagues, with your permission, to add, and so I will be brief.

The intent with the ARPA–E is, indeed, to focus on basic research of a specific kind, namely high-risk, high-payoff, long-term, generic applications. That is the focus. I think where I misled you is I was addressing the question of how, once you have done that, do you get that applied, get it out where it becomes useful. And my answer to that was that ARPA–E would not do research of its own, but rather, with funds, work by others, including universities, industry, and the National Labs competitively awarded. And that is the way I was suggesting that the knowledge could be transferred.

Mr. EHLERS. Yeah. I guess my response to that, and I heard that answer, but that, in itself, won't transfer it unless you have industrial partners for each grant, or something of that sort. But NSF gives direct grants to universities, and that doesn't guarantee the results get transferred. I think you really have to build in a specific mechanism to do it, and that is what I was trying to clarify.

Dr. VAGELOS. May I add something to that, Norm, and that is there is the feeling on the committee, as the majority of the committee, that there are ideas and basic observations that are made at universities principally which are not mature enough to be picked up by either industry or the VCs. And these just will not be funded, because they are sort of falling in between the cracks. People are not yet recognizing that these can be applied, and therefore, there would be a committee that includes industry people, who are identifying these ideas that are otherwise not going to be funded, but the best of these to be brought along so that they would gain the visibility so that they would be either picked up by industry or capitalized in some other way.

Mr. EHLERS. So you basically want to bridge the valley of death?

Dr. VAGELOS. Exactly.

Mr. EHLERS. Yeah. Well, thank you very, very much for an excellent report. I really appreciate what you have done. Thank you.

Mr. HALL. [Presiding] The Chair recognizes Mr. Green, the gentleman from Texas.

Mr. GREEN. Thank you, Mr. Chairman. And I thank the Ranking Member as well.

Mr. Augustine, your comments were quite shocking, and I appreciate the way you presented them. They were very much an awakening, to a certain extent. And I appreciate each member of the panel for what you have presented.

I would like to start, if I may, with Dr. Wulf.

Dr. Wulf, sir, your colleagues had indicated that they would support a tax increase, if you will. Do you have a similar view?

Dr. WULF. Well, of course, I am not a captain of industry like the two gentlemen sitting to my right, but I have to say that more than one CEO has said to me that they can't invest in research within their own company easily, because that detracts from the bottom line, and it is an optional cost. And so the market, Wall Street, will penalize them for doing that. And I think Norm has a marvelous story about that. But if they were taxed the same amount and that money was guaranteed to go into research, they would be happy.

Mr. GREEN. Thank you.

A quick comment. It appears that with reference to fixing, as it was articulated, K–12, it appears that many of our young people, and even their parents, don't see education as the way out. And I

think that is very unfortunate, but the Powerball, lottery, athletics, rock stars, they seem to dominate the persona of the successful person. And unfortunately, there is this belief among too many young people that that is the way out for them.

So my first question is, is there a one-size-fits-all remedy for fixing K–12, because you have urban versus rural, you have inner city versus outer city, you have some cultural concerns that, in my opinion, will have to be addressed? How do we make sure that when we fix K–12, we fix it for all of the children, regardless of whether they are rural or they are urban, whether they are inner city or outer city? It seems that there is a little bit more to concern ourselves with, if we truly want to leave no child behind.

And I would like for each of you, if you would, to address the aspect of leaving no child behind. And I will start with you, Mr. Augustine, if you would, please.

Mr. AUGUSTINE. Well, thank you for that question. And I am very glad you asked it.

Certainly, there has been a change that today the students don't look at education or being a physicist, by and large, as the way out. In my own case, I was the first in my family to go to college. I was the second to go to high school. But my parents made very clear to me that the way out, the way ahead, was education. And that was just fundamental. We have lost that, to a great degree.

The way I think that we address this question of the different backgrounds, different interests of students, is through the teachers, because the one thing that all of those students have in common is the teachers. And if we give them good teachers that show them that know their subject, that know what they are talking about, that inspire them, demand excellence, I don't think it matters where you come from, that is going to make a difference in your life, I think. So that is why we focused on teachers.

Roy?

Dr. VAGELOS. Yeah, well, you took the words right out of my mouth on focusing on teachers and getting them to understand the subjects that they teach.

Mr. Green, you come from the State of Texas, and you may have caught, I don't know whether you have caught or were in the room when I mentioned that the advanced placement incentive program, which originated in Dallas, really introduces the concept that you can train teachers who are already teaching to be able to teach advanced placement. You can incentivize students to take that by offering them the courses and a $100 bonus, if they pass. And taking a school district, which is largely poor and has many immigrants and under-served minorities, you can increase the number of students taking advanced placement courses and passing them by tenfold with such a program, it is those students, they won't be stars, or they may not be all of the athletes, but you can increase, including minority students, the number of students taking these advanced programs and the advanced programs are in math and science. So that is one thing that can affect every city. And that is one of the programs we are recommending.

Dr. WULF. Just to answer your question very directly, no, I do not believe that one size fits all. I think all of my adult life we have been collectively, as a society, talking about the problems we have

with K–12 education. And we have made, in my view, very, very little progress. We have this seminal event of "A Nation at Risk" being published and getting a lot of attention focused on the problem, and yet, I think if you objectively look at where we are relative to, what, 15 years ago, when that report was published, I would find it very hard to argue that we have made very much progress. And I think a lot of the reason is that people have advanced one silver bullet after the next and that is not just going to work. We have to attack it on a very broad front. I happen to concur that focusing on teachers is a very, very, very important piece of it, but that is not all of it, either.

Chairman BOEHLERT. Thank you very much.

The gentleman's time has expired.

Let me point out that we created a scholarship program, an incentive program, to get the best and the brightest in the undergraduate years majoring in science, math, and engineering, and agreed to give them a stipend each year and in exchange for an agreement to teach for two years, and we had that on the books authorized from this committee for several years before we got one thin dime. And now we are spending a grand total, I think, of about $5 million a year on it. That shows you where our priorities are, unfortunately.

Mr. Hall.

Mr. HALL. I thank you. And I thank this panel here. And I thank the very distinguished Mr. Chairman, you have mentioned the attendance here. It is no wonder when you read the array of men and women who are giving their time. And Norm Augustine is no stranger here. The Augustine report was a bible for us for about 10 years in the '80s. Thank you for that and others of you.

And I think it is very, very important that we seek ability to compete in this century with jobs and especially for older people. You know, Norm, I am the oldest guy in Congress, or in the House, and when that guy from West Virginia finally takes everybody's advice and leaves, well, I will be the oldest in Congress. And jobs are important. Other than my opponents, my wife has even suggested that, you know, I should quit, but at 82, I checked with Wal-Mart, and they weren't hiring any greeters. I didn't have a cap and a pistol. I couldn't be a crossing guard for anybody, but what a wonderful thing it is for you to give your valuable time, and your time to prepare to get here, to give us your time here, and your time staying here.

You know, with China calling us out on the world energy allocation and their end of the space program now, we have got so many, so many reasons to listen to this group here.

But let me ask you this, the 60 subject matter experts, are they of the same caliber? And how do you all work together? And when do the 20 and the 60 ever get together?

Dr. VAGELOS. Well, sure. These were experts that were recommended largely by the committee. The committee was invited by the President of the National Academy of Sciences. Twenty-one people were called, as I understand it. Twenty people responded, which is an incredible response rate.

Mr. HALL. Right.

Dr. VAGELOS. Now they were asked to suggest their priorities individually and other experts in the United States who would be able to speak to these subjects, and they also were asked to prioritize their recommendations. And then there was one major long weekend around-the-clock meeting, and then numerous conference calls and trading of tons of information through the Internet. That is the way we ran the thing.

Mr. HALL. Peter O'Donnell is a special friend of mine, and——

Dr. VAGELOS. He was right in the middle of it.

Mr. HALL.—a great and giving person in our part of the country. And because I was late getting here, I have been on other committees, I don't know what questions have been asked, but if I have any questions, I will submit them to you later, but I am sure that the Chairman and Ranking Member have asked, probably, the proper questions, and I can refer to the record for that.

And I thank you for your time. Very much I thank you for giving your ability to your country.

I yield back.

Chairman BOEHLERT. Thank you very much.

Mr. Honda.

Mr. HONDA. Thank you, Mr. Chairman.

I will be real quick and to the point, because we are going to be asked to vote.

I went through the report and just generally perused the recommendations and everything, and I was captivated by the term "innovation" running through the whole report, but you have never addressed the concept of teaching innovation creativity. And I think that that is the piece that we are missing. And when I speak with some of the other folks in education and who have just recently retired from high tech or, you know that their main concern is that if we are talking about producing more science students and more folks adept at math and science, that we will still be outperformed by India and China, because they are going to do the same thing. When we talk about the history of Silicon Valley, we know that Silicon Valley is not only a geographic place, but it is a phenomena of a combination of folks or of factors. And one of the factors is the talent and the people. And one of the factors of the talent of the people is their innate ability to be creative and inventive. We don't teach that, and it is a teachable skill to be able to teach innovation and creativity.

What is your opinion about making education a goal for this nation, the teaching of innovation and creativity? And what do you think the costs may be and with the insights you have from your own report?

Dr. WULF. One of the things that I have focused a lot of my attention on in the last nine years that I have been President of the Academy has been engineering education reform. And a strong theme running through that is that engineering is all about creativity. It is all about—as Theodore von Karman said, "creating what has never been." And so making engineering education better adapted and suited to the actual environment that engineers are going to practice in really involves teaching creativity and innovation.

Mr. HONDA. But there——

Dr. WULF. And so that is starting to happen.

Mr. HONDA. Right. But there is no curricula that speaks to creativity or innovation, and in the discussion in the report, I don't see that as being highlighted or important. It is mentioned, but you know, teaching math and science, if we keep teaching the way we have taught, we still teach youngsters and people a compartmentalized approach to math and science, and it should be multi-disciplinary and integrated and then teaching how to teach innovation and creativity. And if that is not a stated goal, how will we understand and know that that is going to be one of the outcomes?

Dr. WULF. There actually are a number of engineering schools around the country now, which make innovation and creativity central to the curriculum.

Mr. HONDA. Would you be willing to have a long discussion on that——

Dr. WULF. I sure would.

Mr. HONDA.—in your report?

Dr. WULF. Well, the report is the report.

Mr. HONDA. Well, the report is a document that people look at to refer to from experts in the field, and if it is not specifically mentioned as a goal, but it is only mentioned as one of the things that we look for, but is not specifically addressed, I wonder whether it is going to have the impact that we are looking for.

Dr. WULF. I would be happy to share with you another pair of reports, which collectively have the title, "The Engineer of 2020"——

Mr. HONDA. Okay. Thank you.

Dr. WULF.—which focuses on that.

Mr. HONDA. Dr. Vagelos, I thought maybe you might have a comment.

Dr. VAGELOS. Well, the teaching innovation, I think, is very difficult than you are suggesting. Because the innovators, you can have great scientists who make key observations and then someone else comes along and takes that observation to the next step. An example, the discovery of penicillin, which was about 1928, something like that, by Fleming, and it sat around in his lab for a couple of years, and he essentially gave up. This was taken up by a scientist about 10 years later who saw that it was important, and they took the step to make it in large amounts and discover what this substance was that was able to kill organisms and might be a drug. And so it takes certain kinds of people. And I don't know that it is. A lot of it is innate. There were lots of people thinking about programming when Bill Gates came along. There is only one Bill Gates.

Mr. HONDA. But to say that teaching innovation and creativity is difficult is to beg the issue of whether it should be taught or not, and it is a teachable skill. As a teacher, I know that processes are important. And to have our youngsters in our schools subjected to traditional instruction and not being challenged to think outside the box is, you know. We have a lot of Ph.D.s in my valley that are unemployed. And if we are going to be competitive, I think that, you know, to think out of the box and have them be able to grasp this concept or this ability to innovate——

Chairman BOEHLERT. Point well taken.

Mr. HONDA.—we will lose——

Chairman BOEHLERT. The gentleman's time has expired. We have a vote on the Floor.

Mr. Carnahan, we would like to get you in. You have been faithful here all morning.

Mr. CARNAHAN. Thank you, Mr. Chairman, and thank you. I share your passion for this, and Mr. Matheson, I guess I have join him, because I talked about this back home as well, research and innovation, and had a fascinating tour back home in St. Louis recently with the company there who is competing internationally, and not just competing, actually expanding their operations, and they are able to do that because of innovation in unique products. And so it was a great boost for me to see a local company doing that, and to see the power of that innovation.

I also want to compliment all of you for your big ideas and for your frankness about how to really go to the next steps and what this is going to cost, but also talk about how you believe it is worth the cost, because it is so important to our future.

I really wanted to focus on a couple of questions in our short time here.

I think your idea about the scholarships for younger, newer teachers is a good idea. There are some of those out there, but I think we can do more there. I also like the idea of trying to get some of our scientists and engineers that may be laid off or retired to try to get them into teaching programs. But the bottom line is, our ability, I believe, to really improve our system is so much based upon our teachers. And salary levels, we all know, drive that. You know, what about including in these initiatives, you know, doubling the salaries of our teachers in our country? To me, that is fundamental, and I would like your comments about that.

Thank you.

Mr. AUGUSTINE. You have raised a point that was difficult for our committee in the sense that we were asked to address things that could be done at the federal level, and so we didn't spend a lot of time on teachers unions, on increasing teachers' salaries. But I think it would be safe to say there is not a one of us that wouldn't think that teachers' salaries should be substantially increased. But I suspect most of us would have added the footnote that the increase should be merit-based and performance-based, that we shouldn't just double every teachers' salary tomorrow. I am sure you didn't imply that. But I think that we would strongly support an increase in teachers' salaries, if it was based on performance. Yes.

Dr. VAGELOS. And we did, in part, in some of our recommendations, suggested that the teachers who go through these programs go back with an additional salary increase of $10,000. This is a recommendation, but of course these school districts have to decide what they are going to pay. We can make these recommendations. And if the private sector gets in and buys into these programs, as they have done into the advanced placement incentive program in Texas, then the extra funds can come privately to complement what is being done otherwise.

Mr. CARNAHAN. I just want to say in closing, I came from our state legislature, where I had served on our Education Appropria-

tions Committee. Not once did we ever hear from anyone from the business community talking about education policy. So to me, it is another important thing. I know you are talking about federal level recommendations, but since the bulk of our education funding and policy is driven at the state level, I think it is vital that we engage policy-makers at the State level to begin some of these innovations and also address some of these key funding issues.

So thank you very much.

Chairman BOEHLERT. Thank you very much.

And unfortunately, time has run out. We have to get over to the Floor for a series of votes, and we are not going to ask you to remain. We understand your busy schedules. We will be submitting, Ms. Jackson Lee, Mr. Wu, and others will be submitting questions, and we would ask that you would consider them and respond in a timely manner.

Let me just conclude the hearing by saying how much we appreciate the service that all of you have contributed to the Nation. The compensation is not high in terms of material value. As a matter of fact, it is zero. But I always tell people that serve as well as you do and as effectively as you do, and Mr. Augustine, I am so familiar with your work over the years, and Dr. Wulf, too. Doctor, I don't mean to exclude you, but I know you by reputation. Now I have had the privilege of meeting you. Your compensation is a rich and rewarding experience, and the satisfaction of knowing you have contributed something of significance.

And with that, the hearing will adjourn, but not before I remind Mr. Augustine of an outstanding invitation to participate in the December 6 conference summit on competitiveness, and we have just had confirmation this morning that Dr. Jack Marburger, the President's Science Advisor, will be a participant.

And I will tell you what my goal is, Norm, for this summit. I want people to be madder than hell that they didn't get an invitation, because we have got a small group, and you got one of them, and I want you to respond in a positive way.

With that, the hearing is adjourned.

Mr. AUGUSTINE. Thank you.

[Whereupon, at 11:42 a.m., the Committee was adjourned.]

# Appendix 1:

## Answers to Post-Hearing Questions

ANSWERS TO POST-HEARING QUESTIONS

*Responses on behalf of Norman R. Augustine, Retired Chairman and CEO, Lockheed Martin Corporation; P. Roy Vagelos, Retired Chairman and CEO, Merck & Co.; and, William A. Wulf, President, National Academy of Engineering*

**Questions submitted by Representative Bart Gordon**

*Q1. Is there a mismatch between the skill sets of graduating scientists and engineers in the U.S. and industry's needs? Did the NAS committee consider whether there is a need to rethink the Ph.D. degree, or the relative production of Ph.D.s versus professional masters degrees or some another type of advanced degree that would be more valuable to industry?*

*A1.* This is a recurrent question about American universities that needs to be revisited periodically. In 1995, for example, the National Academies Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy (COSEPUP) released a report titled "Reshaping the Graduate Education of Scientists and Engineers."

As part of that effort, COSEPUP surveyed employers and asked for their evaluation of Ph.D. training. In sum, these employers indicated that they were satisfied with the current structure and concept of Ph.D. training and affirmed U.S. superiority in graduate education, although there are some specific difficulties in the relationship between academe and the profession. Some specific comments include the need for an:

- Understanding of the nature of industrial research and an appreciation for applied programs;
- Faster response by graduate programs to changing national policies and industrial needs;
- Education with more breadth as opposed to narrow specialization;
- Expansion of educational experiences beyond the academic environment through hands-on experiences and in multi-disciplinary teams;
- Training in communication skills including teaching and mentoring.

This survey was conducted 10 years ago and conditions may have changed. It is also likely that some progress has been made on these issues since that point.

In terms of the need to rethink the Ph.D., we still support the recommendations in the COSEPUP graduate education report. This report recommended the following:

- Offer a broader range of academic options, while maintaining local initiative and not compromising the need to maintain research excellence, control time to degree, and attract women and minority-group members. Specific actions include:
  - Discourage students from overspecializing
  - Enhance communication skills and the ability to work in teams
  - Focus federal financial support mechanisms for graduate students on traineeships as opposed to research assistantships.
- Provide better information and guidance to graduate students and engineers and their advisers so they can make informed decisions about professional careers. Specific actions should include:
  - Development by the National Science Foundation, in concert with other federal agencies, a national database on employment options and trends;
  - Provision of career information and advice by academic departments to both prospective and current students in a timely manner;
  - Encouragement of students once they have met their qualifying requirements to consider the current job market and then reflect on three alternative pathways—Master's degree, traditional Ph.D., or Ph.D. with a dissertation of high standards, but designed for non-academic career and which would take less time to complete.
- Devise a national human resource policy for advanced scientists and engineers that would involve examination of the goals, policies, conditions, and unresolved issues of graduate level human resources.

On the issue of the relative production of Master's degree versus Ph.D.s, we have insufficient information to answer that question. In addition, the answer is likely

to change over time. However, based on personal experience, it is the opinion of one of us (Augustine) that there is a need, from a industrial standpoint, to greatly increase emphasis on the Master's degree—not at the expense of the Ph.D. but rather at the expense of the Bachelor's as a terminal degree.

*Q2. In addition to sponsoring more basic research, should the Federal Government focus more resources on applied, pre-competitive research aimed at the gap between support for basic discovery and support for development up to the stage where the private sector is willing to assume the risk of commercialization? Did the NAS committee consider the need for greater federal support for this kind of bridge funding for applied research between basic research and proof-of-concept?*

*A2.* The committee that developed the Gathering Storm report agrees that it is important to address this gap—which some have called the "valley of death." It discussed many different options, and among those, placed priority on the establishment of the Advanced Research Projects Agency–Energy (APRA–E). If it proves successful, it could be replicated for other national goals as well.

*Q3. During the past two years the Science Committee has heard from academic and industry witnesses about the need for bridge funding, and these witnesses have strongly urged funding for the Advanced Technology Program (ATP). Did the NAS committee consider the ATP program or other possible approaches for addressing this issue?*

*A3.* The committee did discuss the ATP and other related programs. The strengths and weaknesses of ATP have been assessed in prior National Academies studies.

It did not re-evaluate these programs per se, but it did determine that they were insufficient to address the gap described above and so recommended ARPA–E.

**Questions submitted by Representative Jerry F. Costello**

*Q1. I fully agree with your belief that we need better science and math education in our schools. The scholarship idea to provide math, science and engineering students with teaching certificates seems a good idea. But how attractive will teaching be to these students in the long-term? For example, how does the average teacher salary compare to that of a scientist or engineer? How do you think this issue will factor into a student's decision on which track to pursue?*

*A1.* Economic studies do indicate that the compensation paid to a teacher affects both the teaching pool and teacher tenure. Certainly, the committee would encourage any efforts to enhance compensation for effective science, mathematics, and technology teachers; however, the committee was asked to address actions that could be taken at the federal level not the State or local level where compensation issues are generally addressed. The committee did, however, develop several mechanisms to enhance teacher compensation through bonuses as opposed to salary increases. For example,

- New teacher recruitment program (action A–1) provides scholarships of up to $20,000 per year and $10,000 per year bonuses for those who teach in underserved schools in inner cities and rural areas;
- Current teachers (action A–2) who participate in the continuing education programs (summer institutes, Master's programs, advanced placement/international baccalaureate (AP/IB) teacher training) would receive incentive stipends of $10,000 annually as long as they engage in classroom and leadership activities;
- AP/IB teachers receive a $100 bonus for each student who passes the AP or IB exam in mathematics or science.

Also important are mentoring programs, particularly for new teachers, which are also recommended as part of these programs.

*Q2. The perception of many college students is that science and engineering jobs are not remunerative, important and exciting career options. How can careers in science and engineering be made more attractive to students who have the option of pursuing other well paid professional careers with shorter preparation time? Is it enough to offer new scholarships and fellowships as recommended in the NAS report?*

*A2.* The excitement of science and engineering is best conveyed through inquiry-based education and teachers who have a science, engineering, or mathematics background themselves. The committee believes that by enhancing the science and

engineering background of those who teach at the middle and high school level, the excitement of those careers can be conveyed to students. Those students will then take the classes necessary for them to pursue science and engineering careers.

The time for preparation at the Bachelor degree level is somewhat longer in engineering than that in other fields, but the starting compensation is also higher (it is not widely appreciated that the average salary in engineering is very close to that of lawyers, which involves an additional two years of study). Unfortunately, compensation for engineering tends to peak at a lower level than for those business, management, banking, or other such fields. At the graduate level there are also disparities. The National Academies have recommended in past reports that the time to Ph.D. be decreased.

In terms of compensation, salary is just one motivator of those interested in science and engineering careers. Perhaps a bigger influence than compensation on those deciding whether or not to pursue graduate level education is the potential for viable employment and interesting research opportunities. The committee's recommendations in the "Sowing the Seeds" section of the report are meant to address those concerns.

*Q3. We know that other nations are increasing their science and technology capabilities and are developing large and very capable technical workforces. In addition, U.S. companies are moving, not only manufacturing, but R&D operations abroad. In light of these trends, what kinds of skills will U.S. scientists and engineers need to be able to command a premium in salary over foreign scientists and engineers? That is, how do we compete in the global economy without lowering U.S. salaries and standard of living?*

*A3.* The United States will continue to be challenged to compete on a pure salary basis with developing countries such as India and China; the primary way to respond to that challenge is to increase the *value* of our engineers and scientists. The primary mechanism for this is improved education at all levels—which is what the committee suggests. Innovation has been a key U.S. national advantage, and enhancing our emphasis on it at all educational levels plays to our strength. When innovations occur in the United States, it is able to capture at least the near-term market in that innovation area. To maintain the Nation's innovation capacity the Nation needs to invest regularly in its people and its research.

**Question submitted by Representative David Wu and Representative Jerry F. Costello**

*Q1. The report contains convincing arguments and recommendations to foster a climate of innovation in the U.S. But an important question is whether innovations generated in the U.S. will be exploited in the U.S., or abroad. For example, VCR technology was developed in the U.S., but the market was taken over by Asian countries. Traditionally, it has been the exploitation of new technologies, producing products and delivering novel services, which created new, high-paying jobs. What do we need to do to ensure that the fruits of research and innovation result in the creation of substantial numbers of good jobs in the U.S.?*

*A1.* As indicated in the question, traditionally it has been the exploitation of new technologies, producing products and delivering novel services, that have created high paying jobs. For the United States to benefit from the jobs created by that innovation, the research that led to that innovation needs to occur to the United States and the environment in the U.S. must be conducive to innovation in general. That research will only occur in the United States if there are economic incentives for companies to stay here as opposed to moving overseas and if the human talent is available to develop and implement the ideas.

In its report, the committee calls for a study that will focus on developing the best economic policies to enable the United States to be one of the most attractive places in the world for long-term innovation-related investment. As time passes, some industries will migrate overseas when the technical skills are adequate and the labor market is less expensive. But that does not happen immediately, and until it does the U.S. is able to benefit in terms of the jobs created by that innovation. This is less likely to be the case if the innovation occurs elsewhere.

The U.S. patent system is the Nation's oldest element of policy on intellectual property. A sound system for patent enhances social welfare by encouraging invention and the dissemination of useful technical information. So, in addition, the United States should enhance intellectual property protection for the 21st century global economy to ensure that systems for protecting patents and other forms of in-

tellectual property underlie the emerging knowledge economy but allow research to enhance innovation. The patent system requires reform of four specific kinds:

- Provide the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office with sufficient resources to make intellectual property protection more timely, predictable, and effective.
- Reconfigure the U.S. patent system by switching to a "first-inventor-to-file" system and by instituting administrative review after a patent is granted. Those reforms would bring the U.S. system into alignment with patent systems in Europe and Japan.
- Shield research uses of patented inventions from infringement liability. One recent court decision could jeopardize the long-assumed ability of academic researchers to use patented inventions for research.
- Change intellectual property laws that act as barriers to innovation in specific industries, such as those related to data exclusivity (in pharmaceuticals) and those that increase the volume and unpredictability of litigation (especially in information-technology industries).

**Questions submitted by Representative Eddie Bernice Johnson**

*Q1. Action A–1 of the NAS report's recommendations suggests awarding "competitive four-year scholarships." However, I am concerned that minority and under-served students will be at a disadvantage for these awards because they are already noncompetitive due to their circumstances. Why did the Academy not consider this issue?*

*A1.* We share the Congresswoman's concern; however, the committee did consider this issue and identified a wide range of existing federal and non-federal awards available for minority and under-served students should these students decide to become scientists and engineers. The challenge is not so much funding these students at the undergraduate level, but rather providing them with the resources they need at the middle and high school level—these students particularly need teachers with science and engineering backgrounds who will excite them about science and engineering and encourage them to pursue careers in these areas. Action A–1, therefore, provides a $10,000 bonus to teachers who graduate from this program and who teach in under-served schools in inner cities and rural areas. It is committee's belief that strengthening the teaching of science and math in the early grades will benefit all students and better prepare all students to compete in life.

*Q2. The total cost of the Academy's Implementation recommendation is between $9.2 to $23.8 billion per year. The entire NIH budget is around $30 billion per year. How realistic is it that this plan will be implemented and how do we get the public to agree to such an expensive proposition?*

*A2.* This proposal includes far more than research funding and should be viewed as an investment in the Nation's future, rather than an expense. All four recommendations in the report are part of the fundamental building blocks for the Nation's economy.

Supporting innovation is a cornerstone of the report's conclusions and innovation requires much more than research. To be sure a vibrant research base is essential, but so are an educated workforce, a culture that supports risk-taking, a tax climate the encourages investment, and a host of other things. The report presents a package of proposals that revitalize many of these necessary components of the "innovation ecosystem."

Without quality science, mathematics, and technology teachers, our students will not be prepared to be part of a highly technical workforce.

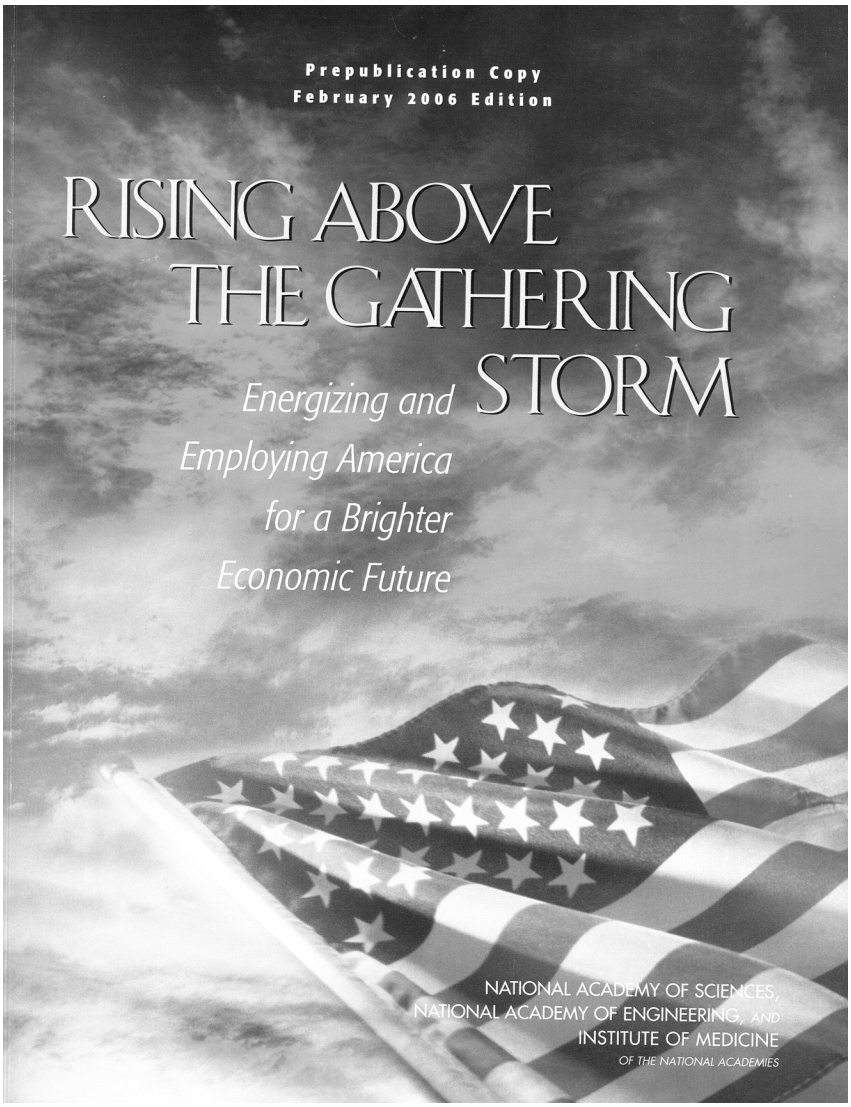
Without students who are well-educated and excited about science and engineering, too few Americans will pursue undergraduate and graduate education in science, engineering, and mathematics. And, if we discourage international talent from coming to the U.S., we will have even less talent available.

If the Nation lacks scientific and technical talent, it will not be able to generate the innovative ideas that create whole new industries. And, if industries relocate overseas because other countries offer better financial incentives, then we won't have high-quality jobs for those in science and engineering or Americans in general. Americans may not fully appreciate the importance of research, but they do recognize the benefits that flow from such research and understand the importance of well paying jobs.

In short, if the Nation's leaders assign as high a priority to the concerns which have been raised, as does this National Academies committee, the proposed funding will be able to compete very strongly with other demands on the federal budget.

# Appendix 2:

## Additional Material for the Record


Prepublication Copy
February 2006 Edition
RISING ABOVE THE GATHERING STORM
Energizing and Employing America for a Brighter Economic Future
NATIONAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES,
NATIONAL ACADEMY OF ENGINEERING, AND
INSTITUTE OF MEDICINE
OF THE NATIONAL ACADEMIES

# Rising Above The Gathering Storm

## Energizing and Employing America for a Brighter Economic Future

**Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century: An Agenda for American Science and Technology**

Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy

**PRE-PUBLICATION VERSION**
**February 2006 Edition**

**THE NATIONAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES,**
**THE NATIONAL ACADEMY OF ENGINEERING,** *AND*
**THE INSTITUTE OF MEDICINE**
*OF THE NATIONAL ACADEMIES*

**THE NATIONAL ACADEMIES PRESS 500 Fifth Street, NW Washington, DC 20001**

NOTICE: The project that is the subject of this report was approved by the Governing Board of the National Research Council, whose members are drawn from the councils of the National Academy of Sciences, the National Academy of Engineering, and the Institute of Medicine. The members of the committee responsible for the report were chosen for their special competences and with regard for appropriate balance.

Support for this project was provided by the National Academies. Any opinions, findings, conclusions, or recommendations expressed in this publication are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the organizations or agencies that provided support for the project.

International Standard Book Number **0-309-10045-3**

For more information about the Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, see http://www.nationalacademies.org/cosepup.

Available from the National Academies Press, 500 Fifth Street, NW, Lockbox 285, Washington, DC 20055; (800) 624-6242 or (202) 334-3313 (in the Washington metropolitan area); Internet, http://www.nap.edu

Copyright 2006 by the National Academy of Sciences. All rights reserved.

Printed in the United States of America

# THE NATIONAL ACADEMIES

*Advisers to the Nation on Science, Engineering, and Medicine*

The **National Academy of Sciences** is a private, nonprofit, self-perpetuating society of distinguished scholars engaged in scientific and engineering research, dedicated to the furtherance of science and technology and to their use for the general welfare. Upon the authority of the charter granted to it by the Congress in 1863, the Academy has a mandate that requires it to advise the federal government on scientific and technical matters. Dr. Ralph J. Cicerone is president of the National Academy of Sciences.

The **National Academy of Engineering** was established in 1964, under the charter of the National Academy of Sciences, as a parallel organization of outstanding engineers. It is autonomous in its administration and in the selection of its members, sharing with the National Academy of Sciences the responsibility for advising the federal government. The National Academy of Engineering also sponsors engineering programs aimed at meeting national needs, encourages education and research, and recognizes the superior achievements of engineers. Dr. Wm. A. Wulf is president of the National Academy of Engineering.

The **Institute of Medicine** was established in 1970 by the National Academy of Sciences to secure the services of eminent members of appropriate professions in the examination of policy matters pertaining to the health of the public. The Institute acts under the responsibility given to the National Academy of Sciences by its congressional charter to be an adviser to the federal government and, upon its own initiative, to identify issues of medical care, research, and education. Dr. Harvey V. Fineberg is president of the Institute of Medicine.

The **National Research Council** was organized by the National Academy of Sciences in 1916 to associate the broad community of science and technology with the Academy's purposes of furthering knowledge and advising the federal government. Functioning in accordance with general policies determined by the Academy, the Council has become the principal operating agency of both the National Academy of Sciences and the National Academy of Engineering in providing services to the government, the public, and the scientific and engineering communities. The Council is administered jointly by both Academies and the Institute of Medicine. Dr. Ralph J. Cicerone and Dr. Wm. A. Wulf are chair and vice chair, respectively, of the National Research Council.

**www.national-academies.org**

## COMMITTEE ON PROSPERING IN THE GLOBAL ECONOMY OF THE 21ST CENTURY

**NORMAN R. AUGUSTINE** (Chair), Retired Chairman and CEO, Lockheed Martin Corporation, Bethesda, MD
**CRAIG BARRETT,** Chairman of the Board, Intel Corporation, Chandler, AZ
**GAIL CASSELL,** Vice President, Scientific Affairs, and Distinguished Lilly Research Scholar for Infectious Diseases, Eli Lilly and Company, Indianapolis, IN
**STEVEN CHU,** Director, E. O. Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, Berkeley, CA
**ROBERT GATES,** President, Texas A&M University, College Station, TX
**NANCY GRASMICK,** Maryland State Superintendent of Schools, Baltimore, MD
**CHARLES HOLLIDAY JR.,** Chairman of the Board and CEO, DuPont Company, Wilmington, DE
**SHIRLEY ANN JACKSON,** President, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, Troy, NY
**ANITA K. JONES,** Lawrence R. Quarles Professor of Engineering and Applied Science, University of Virginia, Charlottesville, VA
**JOSHUA LEDERBERG,** Sackler Foundation Scholar, Rockefeller University, New York, NY
**RICHARD LEVIN,** President, Yale University, New Haven, CT
**C. D. (DAN) MOTE JR.,** President, University of Maryland, College Park, MD
**CHERRY MURRAY,** Deputy Director for Science and Technology, Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory, Livermore, CA
**PETER O'DONNELL JR.,** President, O'Donnell Foundation, Dallas, TX
**LEE R. RAYMOND,** Chairman and CEO, Exxon Mobil Corporation, Irving, TX
**ROBERT C. RICHARDSON**, F. R. Newman Professor of Physics and Vice Provost for Research, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY
**P. ROY VAGELOS,** Retired Chairman and CEO, Merck, Whitehouse Station, NJ
**CHARLES M. VEST,** President Emeritus, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge, MA
**GEORGE M. WHITESIDES,** Woodford L. & Ann A. Flowers University Professor, Harvard University, Cambridge, MA
**RICHARD N. ZARE,** Marguerite Blake Wilbur Professor in Natural Science, Stanford University, Stanford, CA

*Principal Project Staff*
**DEBORAH STINE**, Study Director
**PETER HENDERSON,** Senior Program Officer
**JO HUSBANDS,** Senior Program Officer
**LAUREL HAAK,** Program Officer
**TOM ARRISON,** Senior Program Officer
**DAVID ATTIS,** Policy Consultant
**ALAN ANDERSON,** Consultant Writer
**STEVE OLSON,** Consultant Writer
**RACHEL COURTLAND**, Research Associate
**NEERAJ P. GORKHALY,** Senior Program Assistant
**JOHN SLANINA,** Christine Mirzayan Science and Technology Policy Graduate Fellow
**BENJAMIN NOVAK,** Christine Mirzayan Science and Technology Policy Graduate Fellow
**NORMAN GROSSBLATT**, Senior Editor
**KATE KELLY,** Editor

**COMMITTEE ON SCIENCE, ENGINEERING, AND PUBLIC POLICY**

**GEORGE M. WHITESIDES** (Chair), Woodford L. & Ann A. Flowers University Professor, Harvard University, Cambridge, MA
**RALPH J. CICERONE** (Ex officio), President, National Academy of Sciences, Washington, DC
**UMA CHOWDHRY**, Vice President, Central Research and Development, DuPont Company, Wilmington, DE
**R. JAMES COOK,** Interim Dean, College of Agriculture and Home Economics, Washington State University, Pullman, WA
**HAILE DEBAS,** Executive Director, Global Health Sciences, and Maurice Galante Distinguished Professor of Surgery, University of California, San Francisco, CA
**HARVEY FINEBERG** (Ex officio), President, Institute of Medicine, Washington, DC
**MARYE ANNE FOX** (Ex officio), Chancellor, University of California, San Diego, CA
**ELSA GARMIRE,** Professor, School of Engineering, Dartmouth College, Hanover, NH
**M.R.C. GREENWOOD** (Ex officio), Provost and Senior Vice President for Academic Affairs, University of California, Oakland, CA
**NANCY HOPKINS**, Amgen Professor of Biology, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge, MA
**WILLIAM H. JOYCE** (Ex officio), Chairman and CEO, Nalco, Naperville, IL
**MARY-CLAIRE KING,** American Cancer Society Professor of Medicine and Genetics, University of Washington, Seattle, WA
**W. CARL LINEBERGER,** Professor of Chemistry, Joint Institute for Laboratory Astrophysics, University of Colorado, Boulder, CO
**RICHARD A. MESERVE,** President, Carnegie Institution of Washington, Washington, DC
**ROBERT M. NEREM,** Parker H. Petit Professor and Director, Institute for Bioengineering and Bioscience, Georgia Institute of Technology, Atlanta, GA
**LAWRENCE T. PAPAY,** Retired Sector Vice President for Integrated Solutions, Science Applications International Corporation, San Diego, CA
**ANNE PETERSEN,** Senior Vice President, Programs, W. K. Kellogg Foundation, Battle Creek, MI
**CECIL PICKETT,** President, Schering-Plough Research Institute, Kenilworth, NJ
**EDWARD H. SHORTLIFFE,** Professor and Chair, Department of Biomedical Informatics, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY
**HUGO SONNENSCHEIN,** Charles L. Hutchinson Distinguished Service Professor, Department of Economics, University of Chicago, Chicago, IL
**SHEILA E. WIDNALL,** Abby Rockefeller Mauze Professor of Aeronautics, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge, MA
**WM. A. WULF** (Ex officio), President, National Academy of Engineering, Washington, DC
**MARY LOU ZOBACK**, Senior Research Scientist, Earthquake Hazards Team, US Geological Survey, Menlo Park, CA

*Staff*
**RICHARD BISSELL,** Executive Director
**DEBORAH STINE,** Associate Director
**LAUREL HAAK,** Program Officer
**MARION RAMSEY,** Administrative Coordinator
**CRAIG REED**, Financial Associate

# PREFACE

"Ninety-nine percent of the discoveries are made by one percent of the scientists."
Julius Axelrod, Nobel Laureate[1]

The prosperity the United States enjoys today is due in no small part to investments the nation has made in research and development at universities, corporations, and national laboratories over the last 50 years. Recently, however, corporate, government, and national scientific and technical leaders have expressed concern that pressures on the science and technology enterprise could seriously erode this past success and jeopardize future US prosperity. Reflecting this trend is the movement overseas not only of manufacturing jobs but also of jobs in administration, finance, engineering, and research.

The councils of the National Academy of Sciences and the National Academy of Engineering, at their annual joint meeting in February 2005, discussed these tensions and examined the position of the United States in today's global knowledge-discovery enterprise. Participants expressed concern that a weakening of science and technology in the United States would inevitably degrade its social and economic conditions and in particular erode the ability of its citizens to compete for high-quality jobs.

On the basis of the urgency expressed by the councils, the National Academies' Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy (COSEPUP) was charged with organizing a planning meeting, which took place May 11, 2005. One of the speakers at the meeting was Senator Lamar Alexander, the former secretary of education and former president of the University of Tennessee.

Senator Alexander indicated that the Energy Subcommittee of the Senate Energy and Natural Resources Committee, which he chairs, had been given the authority by the full committee's chair, Senator Pete Domenici, to hold a series of hearings to identify specific steps that the federal government should take to ensure the preeminence of America's science and technology enterprise. Senator Alexander asked the National Academies to provide assistance in this effort by selecting a committee of experts from the scientific and technical community to assess the current situation and, where appropriate, make recommendations. The committee would be asked to identify urgent challenges and determine specific steps to ensure that the United States maintains its leadership in science and engineering to compete successfully, prosper, and be secure in the 21st century.

On May 12, 2005, the day after the planning meeting, three members of the House of Representatives who have jurisdiction over science and technology policy and funding announced that a conference would be held in fall 2005 on science, technology, innovation, and manufacturing. Appearing at a Capitol Hill press briefing to discuss the conference were representatives Frank Wolf, Sherwood Boehlert, and Vern Ehlers. Representative Boehlert said of the conference: "It can help forge a national consensus on what is needed to retain US leadership in innovation. A summit like this, with the right leaders, under the aegis of the federal government, can bring renewed attention to science and technology concerns so that we can remain the nation that the world looks to for the newest ideas and the most skilled people."

In describing the rationale for the conference, Representative Wolf recalled meeting with a group of scientists and asking them how well the United States was doing

[1] Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society, Vol. 149, No. 2, June 2005.

in science and innovation. None of the scientists, he reported, said that the nation was doing "okay". About 40% said that we were "in a stall", and the remaining 60% said that we were "in decline". He asked a similar question of the executive board of a prominent high-technology association, which reported that in its view the United States was "in decline".

Later, the National Academies received a bipartisan letter addressing the subject of America's competitiveness from Senators Lamar Alexander and Jeff Bingaman. The letter, dated May 27, 2005, requested that the National Academies conduct a formal study on the issue to assist in congressional deliberations. That was followed by a bipartisan letter from Representatives Sherwood Boehlert and Bart Gordon, of the House Committee on Science, which expanded on the Senate request. In response, the National Academies initiated a study with its own funds.

To undertake the study, COSEPUP established the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century: An Agenda for American Science and Technology. The committee members included presidents of major universities, Nobel laureates, CEOs of Fortune 100 corporations, and former presidential appointees. They were asked to investigate the following questions:

- What are the top 10 actions, in priority order, that federal policy-makers could take to enhance the science and technology enterprise so the United States can successfully compete, prosper, and be secure in the global community of the 21st century?
- What implementation strategy, with several concrete steps, could be used to implement each of those actions?

This study and report were carried out with an unusual degree of urgency—only a matter of weeks elapsed from the committee's initial gathering to release of its report. The process followed the regular procedures for an independent National Research Council study, including review of the report, in this case, by 37 experts. The report relies on customary reference to the scientific literature and on consensus views and judgments of the committee members.

The committee began by assembling the recommendations of 13 issue papers summarizing past studies of topics related to the present study. It then convened five focus groups consisting of 66 experts in K–12 education, higher education, research, innovation and workforce issues, and national and homeland security and asked each group to recommend three actions it considered to be necessary for the nation to compete, prosper, and be secure in the 21st century. The committee used those suggestions and itsown judgment to make its recommendations. The key thematic issues underlying these discussions was the nation's need to create jobs and need for affordable, clean, and reliable energy.

In this report, a description of the key elements of American prosperity in the 21st century is followed by an overview of how science and technology are critical to that prosperity. The report then evaluates how the United States is doing in science and technology and provides recommendations for improving our nation's prosperity. Finally, it posits the status of prosperity if the United States maintains a narrow lead (the current situation), falls behind, or emerges as the leader in a few selected fields of science and technology.

We strayed from our charge in that we present not 10 actions but four recommendations and 20 specific actions to implement them. The committee members deeply believe in the fundamental linkage of all the recommendations and their integrity as a coordinated set of policy actions. To emphasize one or neglect another, the members

decided, would substantially weaken what should be viewed as a coherent set of high-priority actions to create jobs and enhance the nation's energy supply in an era of globalization. For example, there is little benefit in producing more researchers if there are no funds to support their research.

The committee thanks the focus-group members, who took precious personal time in midsummer to donate the expertise that would permit a highly focused, detailed examination of a question of extraordinary complexity and importance. We thank the staff of the National Academies. They quickly mobilized the knowledge resources and practical skills needed to complete this study in a rapid, thorough manner.

Norman R. Augustine
Chair, Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century

CRAIG BARRETT

GAIL CASSELL

STEVEN CHU

ROBERT GATES

NANCY GRASMICK

CHARLES HOLLIDAY, JR.

SHIRLEY ANN JACKSON

ANITA K. JONES

JOSHUA LEDERBERG

RICHARD LEVIN

C. D. (DAN) MOTE, JR.

CHERRY MURRAY

PETER O'DONNELL, JR

LEE R. RAYMOND

ROBERT C. RICHARDSON

P. ROY VAGELOS

CHARLES M. VEST

GEORGE M. WHITESIDES

RICHARD N.ZARE

# ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This report is the product of many people. First, we thank all the focus-group members, listed in Appendix C, for contributing their time and knowledge at the focus-group session in August 2005. Second, we would like to thank all the committees and analysts at other organizations who have gone before us, producing reports and analyses on the topics discussed in this report. There are too many to mention here, but they are cited throughout the report and range from individual writers and scholars, such as Thomas Friedman and Richard Freeman, to committees and organizations, such as the Glenn Commission on K-12 education, the Council on Competitiveness, the Center for Strategic and International Studies, the Business Roundtable, the Taskforce on the Future of American Innovation, the President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology, the National Science Board, and other National Academies committees. Without their insight and analysis, this report would not have been possible.

This report has been reviewed in draft form by persons chosen for their diverse perspectives and technical expertise in accordance with procedures approved by the National Research Council's Report Review Committee. The purpose of this independent review is to provide candid and critical comments that will assist the institution in making the published report as sound as possible and to ensure that the report meets institutional standards of objectivity, evidence, and responsiveness to the study charge. The review comments and draft manuscript remain confidential to protect the integrity of the deliberative process.

We wish to thank the following for their review of this report:
Miller Adams, Boeing Phantom Works; John Ahearne, Sigma Xi; Robert Aiken, CISCO Systems, Inc.; Bruce Alberts, University of California, San Francisco; Richard Atkinson, University of California, San Diego; William Badders, Cleveland Municipal School District; Roger Beachy, Ronald Danforth Plant Service Center; George Bugliarello, Polytechnic University; Paul Citron, Medtronic, Inc.; Michael Clegg, University of California, Irvine; W. Dale Compton, Purdue University; Robert Dynes, University of California, San Diego; Joan Ferrini-Mundy, Michigan State University; Richard Freeman, Harvard University; William Friend, Bechtel Group, Inc. (retired); Lynda Goff, University of California, Santa Cruz; William Happer, Princeton University; Robert Hauser, University of Wisconsin; Ron Hira, Rochester Institute of Technology; Dale Jorgenson, Harvard University; Thomas Keller, Medomak Valley High School, Maine; Edward Lazowska, University of Washington; W. Carl Lineberger, University of Colorado, Boulder; James Mongan, Partners Healthcare System; Gilbert Omenn, University of Michigan; Helen Quinn, Stanford Linear Accelerator Center; Mary Ann Rankin, University of Texas; Barbara Schaal, Washington University; Thomas Südhof, Howard Hughes Medical Institute; Michael Teitelbaum, Sloan Foundation; C. Michael Walton, University of Texas; Larry Welch, Institute for Defense Analyses; and Sheila Widnall, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Although the reviewers listed above have provided many constructive comments and suggestions, they were not asked to endorse the conclusions or recommendations, nor did they see the final draft of the report before its release. The review of this report was overseen by Floyd Bloom, Robert Frosch, and M.R.C. Greenwood, appointed by the Report Review Committee, who were responsible for making certain that an independent examination of the report was carried out in accordance with institutional procedures and that all review comments were carefully considered. Responsibility for the final content of the report rests entirely with the author committee and the institution.

Finally, we would like to thank the staff who supported this project, including Deborah Stine, study director and associate director of the Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy (COSEPUP), who managed the project; program officers Peter Henderson (higher education), Jo Husbands (national security), Thomas Arrison (innovation), Laurel Haak (K–12 education), and (on loan from the Council on Competitiveness) policy consultant David Attis (research funding and management), who conducted research and analysis; Alan Anderson, Steve Olson, and research associate Rachel Courtland, the science writers and editors for this report; Rita Johnson, the managing editor for reports; Norman Grossblatt and Kate Kelly, editors; Neeraj P. Gorkhaly, senior program assistant, who coordinated and provided support throughout the project with assistance of Marion Ramsey and Judy Goss; science and technology policy fellows John Slanina, Benjamin Novak, and Ian Christensen who provided research and analytic support; Brian Schwartz, who compiled the bibliography; and Richard Bissell, executive director of COSEPUP and of Policy and Global Affairs.

# CONTENTS

**EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

1. **A DISTURBING MOSAIC** 1-1
    - Cluster 1: Tilted Jobs in a Global Economy, 1-3
    - Cluster 2: Disinvestment in the Future, 1-6
        - Loss of Human Capital, 1-6
        - Higher Education as a Private Good, 1-7
        - Trends in Corporate Research, 1-8
        - Funding for Research in the Physical Sciences and Engineering, 1-8
    - Cluster 3: Reactions to 9/11, 1-9
        - New Visa Policies, 1-9
        - The Use of Export Controls, 1-10
        - Sensitive but Unclassified Information, 1-11
    - The Public Recognizes the Challenges, 1-11
    - Discovery and Applications: Keys to Competitiveness and Prosperity, 1-12
    - Action Now, 1-13
    - Conclusion, 1-14

2. **WHY ARE SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY CRITICAL TO AMERICA'S PROSPERITY IN THE 21st CENTURY?** 2-1
    - Ensuring Economic Well-Being, 2-6
    - Creating New Industries, 2-10
    - Promoting Public Health, 2-14
    - Caring for the Environment, 2-19
        - Water Quality, 2-19
        - Automobiles and Gasoline, 2-19
        - Refrigeration, 2-19
        - Agricultural Mechanization, 2-10
    - Improving the Standard of Living, 2-21
        - Electrification and Household Appliances, 2-21
        - Transportation, 2-23
        - Communication, 2-23
        - Disaster Mitigation, 2-23
        - Energy Conservation, 2-27
    - Understanding How People Learn, 2-28
    - Securing the Homeland, 2-28
    - Conclusion, 2-28

3. **HOW IS AMERICA DOING NOW IN SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY?** 3-1
Science and Engineering Advantage, 3-2
Other Nations Are Following Our Lead and Catching Up, 3-3
International Competition for Talent, 3-10
Strains on Research in the Private Sector, 3-14
Restraints on Public Funding, 3-21
Expanded Mission for Federal Laboratories, 3-23
Educational Challenges, 3-24
K–12 Performance, 3-24
Student Interest in Science and Engineering Careers, 3-27
Balancing Security and Openness, 3-32
Conclusion, 3-33

4. **METHOD**
4-1 Review of Literature and Past Committee Recommendations, 4-1
Focus Groups, 4-2
Committee Discussion and Analysis, 4-3
Cautions, 4-4
Conclusion, 4-4

5. **WHAT ACTIONS SHOULD AMERICA TAKE IN K-12 SCIENCE AND MATHEMATICS EDUCATION TO REMAIN PROSPEROUS IN THE 21st CENTURY?: 10,000 TEACHERS-10 MILLION MINDS** 5-1
Action A-1: 10,000 Teachers for 10 Million Minds, 5-4
Action A-2: A Quarter of a Million Teachers Inspiring Young Minds Every Day, 5-8
Part 1: Summer Institutes, 5-9
Part 2: Science and Mathematics Master's Programs, 5-12
Part 3: Advanced Placement, International Baccalaureate, and Pre-AP-IB Education, 5-14
Part 4: K–12 Curricular Materials Modeled on World-Class Standards, 5-15
Action A-3: Expand the Pipeline, 5-16
Effective, Continuing Programs, 5-20
Statewide Specialty High Schools, 5-20
Inquiry-Based Learning, 5-20
Conclusion, 5-20

6. **WHAT ACTIONS SHOULD AMERICA TAKE IN SCIENCE AND ENGINEERING RESEARCH TO REMAIN PROSPEROUS IN THE 21st CENTURY?: SOWING THE SEEDS** 6-1
Action B-1: Funding for Basic Research, 6-2
Action B-2: Early-Career Researchers, 6-8
Action B-3: Research Infrastructure, 6-9
Action B-4: High- Risk Research, 6-12
Action B-5: Use DARPA As a Model for Energy Research, 6-15
Action B-6: Prizes and Awards, 6-21
Conclusion, 6-22

7. **WHAT ACTIONS SHOULD AMERICA TAKE IN SCIENCE AND ENGINEERING HIGHER EDUCATION TO REMAIN PROSPEROUS IN THE 21st CENTURY?:BEST AND BRIGHEST** 7-1
Action C-1: Undergraduate Education, 7-4
Action C-2: Graduate Education, 7-6
Action C-3: Continuing Education, 7-10
Action C-4: Improving Visa Processing, 7-11
Action C-5: Extending Visa and Expedite Residence Status of S&E PhDs, 7-14
Action C-6: Skill-based Immigration, 7-15
Action C-7: Reform the current system of "deemed exports", 7-17
Conclusion, 7-18

8. **WHAT ACTIONS SHOULD AMERICA TAKE IN ECONOMIC AND TECHNOLOGY POLICY TO REMAIN PROSPEROUS IN THE 21st CENTURY?: INCENTIVES FOR INNOVATION** 8-1
Action D-1: Enhance the Patent System, 8-4
Action D-2: Strengthen the R&D Tax Credit, 8-9
Action D-3: Provide Incentives for US-Based Innovation, 8-13
Action D-4: Ensure Ubiquitous Broadband Internet Access, 8-14
Conclusion, 8-16

9. **WHAT MIGHT THE UNITED STATES BE LIKE IF IT IS NOT COMPETITIVE IN SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY?** 9-1
The American Century, 9-1
New Global Innovation Economy, 9-2
Emerging Markets, 9-2
Innovation-Based Development, 9-4
The Global Innovation Enterprise, 9-5
The Emerging Global Labor Market, 9-6
Aging and Entitlements, 9-7
Scenarios for America's Future in Science and Technology, 9-8
Scenario 1: Baseline, America's Narrowing Lead, 9-9
Scenario 2: Pessimistic Case, America Falls Behind, 9-13
Scenario 3: Optimistic Case, America Leads in Key Areas, 9-14
Conclusion, 9-17

**APPENDIX**

A **Committee and Professional Staff Biographic Information,** A-1
B **Task Statements,** B-1
C **Focus Group Sessions,** C-1
D **Background Papers,** D-1
- K–12 Science, Mathematics, and Technology Education, K12-1
- Attracting the Most Able US Students to Science and Engineering, TS-1
- Undergraduate, Graduate, and Postgraduate Education in Science, Technology, Engineering, and Mathematics, HE-1
- Implications of Changes in the Financing of Public Higher Education, PHE-1
- International Students and Researchers in the United States, IS-1
- Achieving Balance and Adequacy in Federal S&T Funding, R&D-1
- The Productivity of Scientific and Technological Research, RP-1
- Investing in High-Risk and Breakthrough Research, HRR-1
- Ensuring That the United States Is At the Forefront in Critical Fields of Science and Technology, EL-1
- Understanding Trends in Science and Technology Critical To US Prosperity, UT-1
- Ensuring That the United States Has the Best Environment for Innovation, EI-1
- Scientific Communication and Security, SC&C-1
- Science and Technology Issues in National and Homeland Security, NHS-1

E. **Recommendation Cost Estimate,** E-1
F. **K–12 Recommendation Supplementary Information,** F-1
G. **Senate Energy Testimony,** G-1
H. **References,** H-1

**BOXES:**

1-1 Another Point of View: The World Is Not Flat, 1-2
2-1 Another Point of View: Science, Technology, and Society, 2-2
2-2 Twenty Great Engineering Achievements of the 20th Century, 2-4
3-1 Pasteur's Quadrant, 3-4
3-2 Another Point of View: US Competitiveness, 3-5
6-1 Another Point of View: Research Funding, 6-3
6-2 DARPA, 6-14
6-3 Another Point of View: ARPA-E, 6-16
6-4 Energy and the Economy, 6-19
6-5 The Invention of the Transistor, 6-19
6-6 Illustration of Energy Technologies, 6-20
7-1 Another Point of View: Science and Engineering Human Resources, 7-3
7-2 National Defense Education Act, 7-7
7-3 The 214b provision of the Immigration and Nationality Act, 7-13
8-1 Another Point of View: Innovation Incentives, 8-2
8-2 A Data-Exclusivity Case Study, 8-8
8-3 Finland, 8-17
8-4 South Korea, 8-17
8-5 Ireland, 8-17
8-6 Singapore, 8-18
8-7 Canada, 8-18

**FIGURES:**


2-1 The 20th century saw dramatic reductions in disease incidence in the US, 2-3
2-2 Increase in US farm labor output brought about by advancements in S&T, 2-6
2-3 In the 20th century, US GDP rose almost sevenfold, 2-8
2-4 Examples of critical technologies patented by US researchers, 2-12
2-5 Moore's law, 2-13
2-6 Many US children have access to and use computers and the Internet, 2-14
2-7a Global life expectancy, particularly in the last century, 2-15
2-7b US life expectancy, particularly in the last century, 2-16
2-8a Relative cancer survival rates, 2-17
2-8b Heart disease mortality, 2-17
2-9a Infant mortality, 2-18
2-9b Maternal mortality, 2-18
2-10 US air quality, 2-21
2-11 US homes, 2-22
2-12a Ground transportation, 2-25
2-12b Air travel, 2-25
2-13 Telephones, 2-26
2-14 Energy Efficiency, 2-27
3-1 R&D expenditures as a percentage of GDP, 3-6
3-2 US patent applications, 3-7
3-3 Total science and engineering articles with international coauthors, 3-7
3-4 Disciplinary strengths in the US, the 15 EU nations, and the UK, 3-8
3-5 United States trade balance for high-technology products, 3-10
3-6 Doctorate production in science and engineering, 3-11
3-7 Doctorates awarded by US institutions, by field and citizenship status, 3-12
3-8 The majority of people with S&E doctorates obtain nonacademic jobs, 3-14
3-9a US R&D funding, By Source of Funds, 3-16
3-9b R&D shares of US gross domestic product, 3-16
3-10 Venture capital funding, 3-17
3-11 Offshored services market size, 3-21
3-12 Expenditures in the 6.1 portion of the DOD budget for basic research, 3-22
3-13 Trends in Federal Research by Discipline, FY 1970 -2004, 3-23
3-14 Student achievement on the mathematics portion of the NAEP, 3-25
3-15 Student achievement on the science portion of the NAEP, 3-26
3-16a Percentage of 24-year-olds with first university degrees in the natural sciences or engineering, relative to all first university degree recipients, 3-28
3-16b Percentage of 24-year-olds with first university degrees in the natural sciences or engineering relative to all 24-year-olds, 3-29
3-17 Science and engineering bachelor's degrees, by field, 3-30
5-1a Students recommended for secondary teaching certification in mathematics and science at UT Austin, 5-6
5-1b UTeach minority enrollment, quality of undergraduate students in the program, student retention and performance, 5-7
5-2 Professional development of teachers increases student achievement in science,5-11
5-3 The number of AP examinations in mathematics, science, and English taken in APIP schools in the Dallas Independent School District (DISD), 5-19

6-1 Research and development shares of US gross domestic product, 6-4
6-2 Trends in federal research funding, 6-5
9-1 Growth of emerging markets, 9-3
9-2 International production of science and engineering doctorates compared with US production, 9-12

**TABLES:**

2-1 Annual Rate of Return on Public R&D Investment, 2-9
2-2 Annual Rate of Return on Private R&D Investment, 2-10
2-3 Sales and Employment in the IT Industry, 2-11
3-1 Publications and Citations Weighted by Total Population and Number of University Researchers, 3-6
3-2 Change in Applications, Admissions, and Enrollment of International Graduate Students, 3-13
3-3 R&E Tax Claims and US Corporate Tax Returns, 3-19
3-4 Early-Stage Venture Capital, Including SBIR, ATP, and Private Sources, 3-20
5-1 Students in US Public Schools Taught by Teachers with No Major or Certification in the Subject Taught, 5-2
5-2 Six-Year Graduation Rate of Students Who Passed AP Examinations and Students Who Did Not Take AP Examinations, 5-17
5-3 Achievement of US AP Calculus and Physics Students Who Participated in the Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMSS) Compared with Average International Scores, 5-18
6-1 Specific Recommendations for Federal Research Funding, 6-7
6-2 Annual Number of PECASE Awards, by Agency, 6-9
8-1 Overview of R&D Tax Incentives in Other Countries, 8-11

# EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The United States takes deserved pride in the vitality of its economy, which forms the foundation of our high quality of life, our national security, and our hope that our children and grandchildren will inherit ever-greater opportunities. That vitality is derived in large part from the productivity of well-trained people and the steady stream of scientific and technical innovations they produce. Without high-quality, knowledge-intensive jobs and the innovative enterprises that lead to discovery and new technology, our economy will suffer and our people will face a lower standard of living. Economic studies conducted even before the information-technology revolution have shown that as much as 85% of measured growth in US income per capita was due to technological change.[1]

Today, Americans are feeling the gradual and subtle effects of globalization that challenge the economic and strategic leadership that the United States has enjoyed since World War II. A substantial portion of our workforce finds itself in direct competition for jobs with lower-wage workers around the globe, and leading-edge scientific and engineering work is being accomplished in many parts of the world. Thanks to globalization, driven by modern communications and other advances, workers in virtually every sector must now face competitors who live just a mouse-click away in Ireland, Finland, China, India, or dozens of other nations whose economies are growing. This has been aptly referred to as "the Death of Distance."

## CHARGE TO THE COMMITTEE

The National Academies was asked by Senator Lamar Alexander and Senator Jeff Bingaman of the Committee on Energy and Natural Resources, with endorsement by Representative Sherwood Boehlert and Representative Bart Gordon of the House Committee on Science, to respond to the following questions:

> What are the top 10 actions, in priority order, that federal policymakers could take to enhance the science and technology enterprise so that the United States can successfully compete, prosper, and be secure in the global community of the 21st century? What strategy, with several concrete steps, could be used to implement each of those actions?

The National Academies created the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century to respond to this request. The charge constitutes a challenge both daunting and exhilarating: to recommend to the nation specific steps that can best strengthen the quality of life in America—our prosperity, our health, and our security. The committee has been cautious in its analysis of information. The available information is only partly adequate for the committee's needs. In addition, the time allotted to develop the report (10 weeks from the time of the committee's first gathering to report release) limited the ability of the committee to conduct an exhaustive analysis. Even if unlimited time were available, definitive analyses on many issues are not possible given the uncertainties involved.[2]

This report reflects the consensus views and judgment of the committee members. Although the committee consists of leaders in academe, industry, and government—including several current and former industry chief executive officers, university presidents, researchers (including three Nobel prize winners), and former presidential appointees—the array of topics and policies covered is so broad that it was not possible to assemble a committee of 20 members with direct expertise in each relevant area. Because of those limitations, the committee has relied heavily on the judgment of many experts in the study's focus groups, additional consultations via e-mail and telephone with other experts, and an unusually large panel of reviewers. Although other solutions are undoubtedly possible, the committee believes that its recommendations, if implemented, will help the United States achieve prosperity in the 21st century.

---

[1] For example, work by Robert Solow and Moses Abramovitz published in the middle 1950s demonstrated that as much as 85% of measured growth in US income per capita during the 1890-1950 period could not be explained by increases in the capital stock or other measurable inputs. The unexplained portion, referred to alternatively as the "residual" or "the measure of ignorance", has been widely attributed to the effects of technological change.

[2] Since the prepublication version of the report was released in October, certain changes have been made to correct editorial and factual errors, add relevant examples and indicators, and ensure consistency among sections of the report. Although modifications have been made to the text, the recommendations remain unchanged, except for a few corrections, which have been footnoted.

## FINDINGS

Having reviewed trends in the United States and abroad, the committee is deeply concerned that the scientific and technological building blocks critical to our economic leadership are eroding at a time when many other nations are gathering strength. We strongly believe that a worldwide strengthening will benefit the world's economy—particularly in the creation of jobs in countries that are far less well-off than the United States. But we are worried about the future prosperity of the United States. Although many people assume that the United States will always be a world leader in science and technology, this may not continue to be the case inasmuch as great minds and ideas exist throughout the world. We fear the abruptness with which a lead in science and technology can be lost—and the difficulty of recovering a lead once lost, if indeed it can be regained at all.

The committee found that multinational companies use such criteria[3] as the following in determining where to locate their facilities and the jobs that result:

- Cost of labor (professional and general workforce).
- Availability and cost of capital.
- Availability and quality of research and innovation talent.
- Availability of qualified workforce.
- Taxation environment.
- Indirect costs (litigation, employee benefits such as healthcare, pensions, vacations).
- Quality of research universities.
- Convenience of transportation and communication (including language).
- Fraction of national research and development supported by government.
- Legal-judicial system (business integrity, property rights, contract sanctity, patent protection).
- Current and potential growth of domestic market.
- Attractiveness as place to live for employees.
- Effectiveness of national economic system.

Although the US economy is doing well today, current trends in each of those criteria indicate that the United States may not fare as well in the future without government intervention. This nation must prepare with great urgency to preserve its strategic and economic security. Because other nations have, and probably will continue to have, the competitive advantage of a low wage structure, the United States must compete by optimizing its knowledge-based resources, particularly in science and technology, and by sustaining the most fertile environment for new and revitalized industries and the well-paying jobs they bring. We have already seen that capital, factories, and laboratories readily move wherever they are thought to have the greatest promise of return to investors.

## RECOMMENDATIONS

The committee reviewed hundreds of detailed suggestions—including various calls for novel and untested mechanisms—from other committees, from its focus groups, and from its own members. The challenge is immense, and the actions needed to respond are immense as well.

The committee identified two key challenges that are tightly coupled to scientific and engineering prowess: creating high-quality jobs for Americans, and responding to the nation's need for clean, affordable, and reliable energy. To address those challenges, the committee structured its ideas according to four basic recommendations that focus on the human, financial, and knowledge capital necessary for US prosperity.

---

[3] D.H. Dalton, M.G. Serapio, Jr., P.G. Yoshida. 1999. *Globalizing Industrial Research and Development*. US Department of Commerce, Technology Administration, Office of Technology Policy. Grant Gross. 2003, October 9. "CEOs defend moving jobs offshore at tech summit." *InfoWorld*. Mehlman, Bruce. 2003. *Offshore Outsourcing and the Future of American Competitiveness*. "High tech in China: is it a threat to Silicon Valley?" 2002, October 28. *Business Week* online. B. Callan, S. Costigan, K. Keller. 1997. *Exporting U.S. High Tech: Facts and Fiction about the Globalization of Industrial R&D*, Council on Foreign Relations, New York, NY.

The four recommendations focus on actions in K–12 education (*10,000 Teachers, 10 Million Minds*), research (*Sowing the Seeds*), higher education (*Best and Brightest*), and economic policy (*Incentives for Innovation*) that are set forth in the following sections. Also provided are a total of 20 implementation steps for reaching the goals set forth in the recommendations.

Some actions involve changes in the law. Others require financial support that would come from reallocation of existing funds or, if necessary, from new funds. Overall, the committee believes that the investments are modest relative to the magnitude of the return the nation can expect in the creation of new high-quality jobs and in responding to its energy needs.

The committee notes that the nation is unlikely to receive some sudden "wakeup" call; rather, the problem is one that is likely to evidence itself gradually over a surprisingly short period.

## 10,000 TEACHERS, 10 MILLION MINDS, AND K–12 SCIENCE AND MATHEMATICS EDUCATION

**Recommendation A:** ***Increase America's talent pool by vastly improving K–12 science and mathematics education.***

### Implementation Actions

The highest priority should be assigned to the following actions and programs. All should be subjected to continuing evaluation and refinement as they are implemented.

**Action A-1: Annually recruit 10,000 science and mathematics teachers by awarding 4-year scholarships and thereby educating 10 million minds.** Attract 10,000 of America's brightest students to the teaching profession every year, each of whom can have an impact on 1,000 students over the course of their careers. The program would award competitive 4-year scholarships for students to obtain bachelor's degrees in the physical or life sciences, engineering, or mathematics with concurrent certification as K–12 science and mathematics teachers. The merit-based scholarships would provide up to $20,000 a year for 4 years for qualified educational expenses, including tuition and fees, and require a commitment to 5 years of service in public K–12 schools. A $10,000 annual bonus would go to participating teachers in underserved schools in inner cities and rural areas. To provide the highest-quality education for undergraduates who want to become teachers, it would be important to award matching grants, on a one-to-one basis, of $1 million a year for up to 5 years, to as many as 100 universities and colleges to encourage them to establish integrated 4-year undergraduate programs leading to bachelor's degrees in the physical and life sciences, mathematics, computer sciences, or engineering *with teacher certification.* The models for this action are the UTeach at the University of Texas and California Teach at the University of California.

**Action A-2: Strengthen the skills of 250,000 teachers through training and education programs at summer institutes, in master's programs, and in Advanced Placement (AP) and International Baccalaureate (IB) training programs.** Use proven models to strengthen the skills (and compensation, which is based on education and skill level) of 250,000 *current* K–12 teachers.

- *Summer institutes:* Provide matching grants to state and regional 1- to 2-week summer institutes to upgrade the skills and state-of-the-art knowledge of as many as 50,000 practicing teachers each summer. The material covered would allow teachers to keep current with recent developments in science, mathematics, and technology and allow for the exchange of best teaching practices. The Merck Institute for Science Education is one model for this action.
- *Science and mathematics master's programs:* Provide grants to research universities to offer, over 5 years, 50,000 current middle school and high school science, mathematics, and technology teachers (with or without undergraduate science, mathematics, or engineering degrees) 2-year, part-time master's degree programs that focus on rigorous science and mathematics content and pedagogy. The model for this action is the University of Pennsylvania Science Teachers Institute.
- *AP, IB, and pre-AP or pre-IB training:* Train an additional 70,000 AP or IB and 80,000 pre-AP or pre-IB instructors to teach advanced courses in science and mathematics. Assuming satisfactory performance, teachers may receive incentive payments of $1,800 per year, as well as $100 for each student who passes an AP or

IB exam in mathematics or science. There are two models for this program: the Advanced Placement Incentive Program and Laying the Foundation, a pre-AP program.

- *K–12 curriculum materials modeled on a world-class standard:* Foster high-quality teaching with world-class curricula, standards, and assessments of student learning. Convene a national panel to collect, evaluate, and develop rigorous K–12 materials that would be available free of charge as a *voluntary* national curriculum. The model for this action is the Project Lead the Way pre-engineering courseware.

**Action A-3: Enlarge the pipeline of students who are prepared to enter college and graduate with a degree in science, engineering, or mathematics by increasing the number of students who pass AP and IB science and mathematics courses.** Create opportunities and incentives for middle school and high school students to pursue advanced work in science and mathematics. By 2010, increase the number of students who take at least one AP or IB mathematics or science exam to 1.5 million, and set a goal of tripling the number who pass those tests to 700,000.[4] Student incentives for success would include 50% examination fee rebates and $100 mini-scholarships for each passing score on an AP or IB science or mathematics examination.

Although it is not included among the implementation actions, the committee also finds attractive the expansion of two approaches to improving K–12 science and mathematics education that are already in use:

- *Statewide specialty high schools:* Specialty secondary education can foster leaders in science, technology, and mathematics. Specialty schools immerse students in high-quality science, technology, and mathematics education; serve as a mechanism to test teaching materials; provide a training ground for K–12 teachers; and provide the resources and staff for summer programs that introduce students to science and mathematics.
- *Inquiry-based learning:* Summer internships and research opportunities provide especially valuable laboratory experience for both middle-school and high-school students.

## SOWING THE SEEDS THROUGH SCIENCE AND ENGINEERING RESEARCH

**Recommendation B:** ***Sustain and strengthen the nation's traditional commitment to long-term basic research that has the potential to be transformational to maintain the flow of new ideas that fuel the economy, provide security, and enhance the quality of life.***

### Implementation Actions

**Action B-1: Increase the federal investment in long-term basic research by 10% each year over the next 7 years** through reallocation of existing funds[5] or, if necessary, through the investment of new funds. Special attention should go to the physical sciences, engineering, mathematics, and information sciences and to Department of Defense (DoD) basic-research funding. This special attention does not mean that there should be a disinvestment in such important fields as the life sciences or the social sciences. A balanced research portfolio in all fields of science and engineering research is critical to US prosperity. Increasingly, the most significant new scientific and engineering advances are formed to cut across several disciplines. This investment should be evaluated regularly to realign the research portfolio to satisfy emerging needs and promises—unsuccessful projects and venues of research should be replaced with research projects and venues that have greater potential.

**Action B-2: Provide new research grants of $500,000 each annually, payable over 5 years, to 200 of the nation's most outstanding *early-career* researchers.** The grants would be made through existing federal research agencies—the National Institutes of Health (NIH), the National Science Foundation (NSF), the

[4] This sentence was incorrectly phrased in the original October 12, 2005 edition of the executive summary and has now been corrected.
[5] The funds may come from anywhere in government, not just other research funds.

Department of Energy (DOE), DOD, and the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA)—to underwrite new research opportunities at universities and government laboratories.

**Action B-3: Institute a National Coordination Office for Advanced Research Instrumentation and Facilities to manage a fund of $500 million in incremental funds per year over the next 5 years**—through reallocation of existing funds or, if necessary, through the investment of new funds—to ensure that universities and government laboratories create and maintain the facilities, instrumentation, and equipment needed for leading-edge scientific discovery and technological development. Universities and national laboratories would compete annually for these funds.

**Action B-4: Allocate at least 8% of the budgets of federal research agencies to discretionary funding** that would be managed by technical program managers in the agencies and be focused on catalyzing high-risk, high-payoff research of the type that often suffers in today's increasingly risk-averse environment.

**Action B-5: Create in the Department of Energy an organization like the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) called the Advanced Research Projects Agency-Energy (ARPA-E).**[6] The director of ARPA-E would report to the under secretary for science and would be charged with sponsoring specific research and development programs to meet the nation's long-term energy challenges. The new agency would support creative "out-of-the-box" transformational generic energy research that industry by itself cannot or will not support and in which risk may be high but success would provide dramatic benefits for the nation. This would accelerate the process by which knowledge obtained through research is transformed to create jobs and address environmental, energy, and security issues. ARPA-E would be based on the historically successful DARPA model and would be designed as a lean and agile organization with a great deal of independence that can start and stop targeted programs on the basis of performance and do so in a timely manner. The agency would itself perform no research or transitional effort but would fund such work conducted by universities, startups, established firms, and others. Its staff would turn over approximately every 4 years. Although the agency would be focused on specific energy issues, it is expected that its work (like that of DARPA or NIH) will have important spinoff benefits, including aiding in the education of the next generation of researchers. Funding for ARPA-E would start at $300 million the first year and increase to $1 billion per year over 5-6 years, at which point the program's effectiveness would be evaluated and any appropriate actions taken.

**Action B-6: Institute a Presidential Innovation Award to stimulate scientific and engineering advances in the national interest.** Existing presidential awards recognize lifetime achievements or promising young scholars, but the proposed new awards would identify and recognize persons who develop unique scientific and engineering innovations in the national interest at the time they occur.

[6] One committee member, Lee Raymond, does not support this action item. He does not believe that ARPA-E is necessary, because energy research is already well funded by the federal government, along with formidable funding by the private sector. Also, ARPA-E would, in his view, put the federal government into the business of picking "winning energy technologies"--a role best left to the private sector.

## BEST AND BRIGHTEST
## IN SCIENCE AND ENGINEERING HIGHER EDUCATION

**Recommendation C:** ***Make the United States the most attractive setting in which to study and perform research so that we can develop, recruit, and retain the best and brightest students, scientists, and engineers from within the United States and throughout the world.***

### Implementation Actions

**Action C-1: Increase the number and proportion of US citizens who earn bachelor's degree in the physical sciences, the life sciences, engineering, and mathematics by providing 25,000 new 4-year competitive undergraduate scholarships each year to US citizens attending US institutions.** The Undergraduate Scholar Awards in Science, Technology, Engineering, and Mathematics (USA-STEM) would be distributed to states on the basis of the size of their congressional delegations and awarded on the basis of national examinations. An award would provide up to $20,000 annually for tuition and fees.

**Action C-2: Increase the number of US citizens pursuing graduate study in "areas of national need" by funding 5,000 new graduate fellowships each year.** NSF should administer the program and draw on the advice of other federal research agencies to define national needs. The focus on national needs is important both to ensure an adequate supply of doctoral scientists and engineers and to ensure that there are appropriate employment opportunities for students once they receive their degrees. Portable fellowships would provide a stipend of $30,000[7] annually directly to students, who would choose where to pursue graduate studies instead of being required to follow faculty research grants, and up to $20,000 annually for tuition and fees.

**Action C-3: Provide a federal tax credit to encourage employers to make continuing education available (either internally or though colleges and universities) to practicing scientists and engineers.** These incentives would promote career-long learning to keep the workforce productive in an environment of rapidly evolving scientific and engineering discoveries and technological advances and would allow for retraining to meet new demands of the job market.

**Action C-4: Continue to improve visa processing for international students and scholars** to provide less complex procedures and continue to make improvements on such issues as visa categories and duration, travel for scientific meetings, the technology alert list, reciprocity agreements, and changes in status.

**Action C-5: Provide a 1-year automatic visa extension to international students who receive doctorates or the equivalent in science, technology, engineering, mathematics, or other fields of national need at qualified US institutions to remain in the United States to seek employment. If these students are offered jobs by US-based employers and pass a security screening test, they should be provided automatic work permits and expedited residence status.** If students are unable to obtain employment within 1 year, their visas would expire.

**Action C-6: Institute a new skills-based, preferential immigration option.** Doctoral-level education and science and engineering skills would substantially raise an applicant's chances and priority in obtaining US citizenship. In the interim, the number of H-1B visas should be increased by 10,000, and the additional visas should be available for industry to hire science and engineering applicants with doctorates from US universities.[8]

---

[7] An incorrect number was provided for the graduate student stipend in the original October 12, 2005 edition of the executive summary.

[8] Since the report was released, the committee has learned that the Consolidated Appropriations Act of 2005, signed into law on December 8, 2004, exempts individuals that have received a master's or higher education degree from a US university from the statutory cap (up to 20,000). The bill also raised the H-1b fee and allocated funds to train American workers. The committee believes that this provision is sufficient to respond to its recommendation—even though the 10,000 additional visas recommended is specifically for science and engineering doctoral candidates from US universities, which is a narrower subgroup.

**Action C-7: Reform the current system of "deemed exports".** The new system should provide international students and researchers engaged in fundamental research in the United States with access to information and research equipment in US industrial, academic, and national laboratories comparable with the access provided to US citizens and permanent residents in a similar status. It would, of course, exclude information and facilities restricted under national-security regulations. In addition, the effect of deemed-exports [9] regulations on the education and fundamental research work of international students and scholars should be limited by removing from the deemed-exports technology list all technology items (information and equipment) that are available for purchase on the overseas open market from foreign or US companies or that have manuals that are available in the public domain, in libraries, over the Internet, or from manufacturers.

## INCENTIVES FOR INNOVATION

**Recommendation D:** ***Ensure that the United States is the premier place in the world to innovate; invest in downstream activities such as manufacturing and marketing; and create high-paying jobs based on innovation by such actions as modernizing the patent system, realigning tax policies to encourage innovation, and ensuring affordable broadband access.***

### Implementation Actions

**Action D-1: Enhance intellectual-property protection for the 21st-century global economy** to ensure that systems for protecting patents and other forms of intellectual property underlie the emerging knowledge economy but allow research to enhance innovation. The patent system requires reform of four specific kinds:

- Provide the US Patent and Trademark Office with sufficient resources to make intellectual-property protection more timely, predictable, and effective.
- Reconfigure the US patent system by switching to a "first-inventor-to-file" system and by instituting administrative review *after* a patent is granted. Those reforms would bring the US system into alignment with patent systems in Europe and Japan.
- Shield research uses of patented inventions from infringement liability. One recent court decision could jeopardize the long-assumed ability of academic researchers to use patented inventions for research.
- Change intellectual-property laws that act as barriers to innovation in specific industries, such as those related to data exclusivity (in pharmaceuticals) and those that increase the volume and unpredictability of litigation (especially in information-technology industries).

**Action D-2: Enact a stronger research and development tax credit to encourage private investment in innovation.** The current Research and Experimentation Tax Credit goes to companies that *increase* their research and development spending above a base amount calculated from their spending in prior years. Congress and the Administration should make the credit permanent,[10] and it should be increased from 20% to 40% of the qualifying increase so that the US tax credit is competitive with those of other countries. The credit should be extended to companies that have consistently spent large amounts on research and development so that they will not be subject to the current de facto penalties for having previously invested in research and development.

**Action D-3: Provide tax incentives for US-based innovation.** Many policies and programs affect innovation and the nation's ability to profit from it. It was not possible for the committee to conduct an exhaustive examination, but alternatives to current economic policies should be examined and, if deemed beneficial to the

[9] The controls governed by the Export Administration Act and its implementing regulations extend to the transfer of technology. Technology includes "*specific information* necessary for the 'development,' 'production,' or 'use' of a product". Providing information that is subject to export controls—for example, about some kinds of computer hardware—to a foreign national within the United States may be "deemed" an export, and that transfer requires an export license. The primary responsibility for administering controls on deemed exports lies with the Department of Commerce, but other agencies have regulatory authority as well.

[10] The current R&D tax credit expires in December 2005.

United States, pursued. These alternatives could include changes in overall corporate tax rates and special tax provisions providing incentives for the purchase of high-technology research and manufacturing equipment, treatment of capital gains, and incentives for long-term investments in innovation. The Council of Economic Advisers and the Congressional Budget Office should conduct a comprehensive analysis to examine how the United States compares with other nations as a location for innovation and related activities with a view to ensuring that the United States is one of the most attractive places in the world for long-term innovation-related investment and the jobs resulting from that investment. From a tax standpoint, that is not now the case.

**Action D-4: Ensure ubiquitous broadband Internet access.** Several nations are well ahead of the United States in providing broadband access for home, school, and business. That capability can be expected to do as much to drive innovation, the economy, and job creation in the 21st century as did access to the telephone, interstate highways, and air travel in the 20th century. Congress and the administration should take action—mainly in the regulatory arena and in spectrum management—to ensure widespread affordable broadband access in the very near future.

## CONCLUSION

The committee believes that its recommendations and the actions proposed to implement them merit serious consideration if we are to ensure that our nation continues to enjoy the jobs, security, and high standard of living that this and previous generations worked so hard to create. Although the committee was asked only to recommend actions that can be taken by the federal government, it is clear that related actions at the state and local levels are equally important for US prosperity, as are actions taken by each American family. The United States faces an enormous challenge because of the disparity it faces in labor costs. Science and technology provide the opportunity to overcome that disparity by creating scientists and engineers with the ability to create entire new industries—much as has been done in the past.

It is easy to be complacent about US competitiveness and preeminence in science and technology. We have led the world for decades, and we continue to do so in many research fields today. But the world is changing rapidly, and our advantages are no longer unique. Some will argue that this is a problem for market forces to resolve—but that is exactly the concern. Market forces are *already at work* moving jobs to countries with less costly, often better educated, highly motivated workforces and friendlier tax policies.

Without a renewed effort to bolster the foundations of our competitiveness, we can expect to lose our privileged position. For the first time in generations, the nation's children could face poorer prospects than their parents and grandparents did. We owe our current prosperity, security, and good health to the investments of past generations, and we are obliged to renew those commitments in education, research, and innovation policies to ensure that the American people continue to benefit from the remarkable opportunities provided by the rapid development of the global economy and its not inconsiderable underpinning in science and technology.

## SOME COMPETITIVENESS INDICATORS

**US Economy**

- The United States is today a net importer of *high-technology* products. Its trade balance in high-technology manufactured goods shifted from *plus* $54 billion in 1990 to *negative* $50 billion in 2001.[1]
- In one recent period, low-wage employers, such as Wal-Mart (now the nation's largest employer) and McDonald's, created 44% of the new jobs while high-wage employers created only 29% of the new jobs.[2]
- The United States is one of the few countries in which industry plays a major role in providing health care for its employees and their families. Starbucks spends more on healthcare than on coffee. General Motors spends more on health care than on steel.[3]
- US scheduled airlines currently outsource portions of their aircraft maintenance to China and El Salvador.[4]
- IBM recently sold its personal computer business to an entity in China.[5]
- Ford and General Motors both have junk bond ratings.[6]
- It has been estimated that within a decade nearly 80% of the world's middle-income consumers would live in nations outside the currently industrialized world. China alone could have 595 million middle-income consumers and 82 million upper-middle-income consumers. The total population of the United States is currently 300 million and it is projected to be 315 million in a decade.[7]
- Some economists estimate that about half of US economic growth since World War II has been the result of technological innovation.[8]
- In 2005, American investors put more new money in foreign stock funds than in domestic stock portfolios.[9]

**Comparative Economics**

- Chemical companies closed 70 facilities in the United States in 2004 and tagged 40 more for shutdown. Of 120 chemical plants being built around the world with price tags of $1 billion or more, one is in the United States and 50 are in China. No new refineries have been built in the United States since 1976.[10]
- The United States is said to have 7 million illegal immigrants,[11] but under the law the number of visas set aside for "highly qualified foreign workers," many of whom contribute significantly to the nation's innovations, dropped to 65,000 a year from its 195,000 peak.[12]
- When asked in spring 2005 what is the most attractive place in the world in which to "lead a good life", respondents in only one (India) of the 16 countries polled indicated the United States.[13]
- A company can hire nine factory workers in Mexico for the cost of one in America. A company can hire eight young professional engineers in India for the cost of one in America.[14]
- The share of leading-edge semiconductor manufacturing capacity owned or partly owned by US companies today is half what it was as recently as 2001.[15]
- During 2004, China overtook the United States to become the leading exporter of information-technology products, according to the OECD.[16]
- The United States ranks only 12th among OECD countries in the number of broadband connections per 100 inhabitants.[17]

**K-12 Education**

- Fewer than one-third of US 4th grade and 8th grade students performed at or above a level called "proficient" in mathematics; "proficiency" was considered the ability to exhibit competence with challenging subject matter. Alarmingly, about one-third of the 4th graders and one-fifth of the 8th graders lacked the competence to perform even basic mathematical computations.[18]
- In 1999, 68% of US 8th grade students received instruction from a mathematics teacher who did not hold a degree or certification in mathematics.[19]
- In 2000, 93% of students in grades 5-9 were taught physical science by a teacher lacking a major or certification in the physical sciences (chemistry, geology, general science, or physics).[20]
- In 1995 (the most recent data available), US 12th graders performed below the international average for 21 countries on a test of general knowledge in mathematics and science.[21]
- US 15-year-olds ranked 24th out of 40 countries that participated in a 2003 administration of the Program for International Student Assessment (PISA) examination, which assessed students' ability to apply mathematical concepts to real-world problems.[22]
- According to a recent survey, 86% of US voters believe that the United States must increase the number of workers with a background in science and mathematics or America's ability to compete in the global economy will be diminished.[23]
- American youth spend more time watching television[24] than in school.[25]
- Because the United States does not have a set of national curricula, changing K-12 education is challenging, given that there are almost 15,000 school systems in the United States and the average district has only about 6 schools.[26]

**Higher Education**

- In South Korea, 38% of all undergraduates receive their degrees in natural science or engineering. In France, the figure is 47%, in China, 50%, and in Singapore 67%. In the United States, the corresponding figure is 15%.[27]
- Some 34% percent of doctoral degrees in natural sciences (including the physical, biological, earth, ocean, and atmospheric sciences) and 56% of engineering PhDs in the United States are awarded to foreign-born students.[28]
- In the U.S. science and technology workforce in 2000, 38% of PhDs were foreign-born. [29]
- Estimates of the number of engineers, computer scientists, and information technology students who obtain 2- 3-, or 4-year degrees vary. One estimate is that in 2004, China graduated about 350,000 engineers, computer scientists, and information technologists with 4-year degrees, while the United States graduated about 140,000. China also graduated about 290,000 with 3-year degrees in these same fields, while the US graduated about 85,000 with 2- or 3-year degrees.[30] Over the past 3 years alone, both China[31] and India[32] have doubled their production of 3- and 4-year degrees in these fields, while the United States[33] production of engineers is stagnant and the rate of production of computer scientists and information technologists doubled.
- About one-third of US students intending to major in engineering switch majors before graduating.[34]
- There were almost twice as many US physics bachelor's degrees awarded as in 1956, the last graduating class before Sputnik than in 2004.[35]
- More S&P 500 CEOs obtained their undergraduate degrees in engineering than in any other field.[36]

**Research**

- In 2001 (the most recent year for which data are available), US industry spent more on tort litigation than on research and development.[37]
- In 2005, only four American companies ranked among the top 10 corporate recipients of patents granted by the *United States* Patent and Trademark Office.[38]
- Beginning in 2007, the most capable high-energy particle accelerator on Earth will, for the first time, reside outside the United States.[39]
- Federal funding of research in the physical sciences, as a percentage of GDP, was 45% less in FY 2004 than in FY 1976.[40] The amount invested annually by the US federal government in research in the physical sciences, mathematics, and engineering combined equals the annual increase in US health care costs incurred every 20 days.[41]

**PERSPECTIVES**

- "We go where the smart people are. Now our business operations are two-thirds in the U.S. and one-third overseas. But that ratio will flip over the next ten years." —Intel spokesman Howard High[42]
- "If we don't step up to the challenge of finding and supporting the best teachers, we'll undermine everything else we are trying to do to improve our schools."—Louis V. Gerstner, Jr., Former Chairman, IBM[43]
- "If you want good manufacturing jobs, one thing you could do is graduate more engineers. We had more sports exercise majors graduate than electrical engineering grads last year." —Jeffrey R. Immelt, Chairman and Chief Executive Office, General Electric[44]
- "If I take the revenue in January and look again in December of that year 90% of my December revenue comes from products which were not there in January." —Craig Barrett, Chairman of the Intel Corporation[45]
- "When I compare our high schools to what I see when I'm traveling abroad, I am terrified for our workforce of tomorrow." —Bill Gates, Chairman and Chief Software Architect of Microsoft Corporation[46]
- "Where once nations measured their strength by the size of their armies and arsenals, in the world of the future knowledge will matter most." —President Bill Clinton[47]
- "Science and technology have never been more essential to the defense of the nation and the health of our economy."—President George W. Bush[48]

NOTES for *SOME COMPETITIVENESS INDICATORS AND PERSPECTIVES*

[1] For 2001, the dollar value of high-technology imports was $561 billion; the value of high-technology exports was $511 billion. See National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. Appendix Table 6-01. Page A6-5 provides the export numbers for 1990 and 2001 and page A6-6 has the import numbers.

[2] Steve Roach.. *More Jobs, Worse Work.* New York Times. July 22, 2004.

[3] Chris Noon. 2005. "Starbuck's Schultz Bemoans Health Care Costs." *Forbes.com*, September 19. Available at http://www.forbes.com/facesinthenews/2005/09/15/starbuckshealthcarebenefitscx_cn_0915autofacescan01.html?partner=yahooti; Ron Scherer. 2005. "Rising Benefits Burden." *Christian Science Monitor,* June 9. Available at http://www.csmonitor.com/2005/0609/p01s01-usec.html

[4] Sara Kehaulani Goo. *Airlines Outsource Upkeep.* Washington Post. August 21, 2005. Available at http://www.washingtonpost.com/wp-dyn/content/article/2005/08/20/AR2005082000979.html
Sara Kehaulani Goo. *Two-Way Traffic in Airplane Repair.* Washington Post June 1 2004. Available at http://www.washingtonpost.com/wp-dyn/articles/A5138-2004May31.html

[5] Michael Kanellos. 2004. "IBM Sells PC Group to Lenovo." News.*com*. December 8. Available at http://news.com.com/IBM+sells+PC+group+to+Lenovo/2100-1042_3-5482284.html

[6] http://www.nytimes.com/2005/05/05/business/05cnd-auto.html?ex=1137128400&en=ac63687768634c6d&ei=5070

[7] In China, Paul A. Laudicina, *World Out of Balance: Navigating Global Risks to Seize Competitive Advantage*. New York: McGraw Hill, 2005, p. 76. For the United States, see US Census Bureau. US. Population Clock. Available at www.census.gov for current population and for the projected population, see Population Projections Program, Population Division, U.S. Census Bureau. Population Projections of the United States by Age, Sex, Race, Hispanic Origin, and Nativity: 1999 to 2100. Washington, D.C. January 13, 2000. Available at http://www.census.gov/population/www/projections/natsum-T3.html.

[8] Michael J. Boskin and Lawrence J. Lau. 1992. Capital, Technology, and Economic Growth. in Nathan Rosenberg, Ralph Landau, and David C. Mowery, eds. Technology and the Wealth of Nations. Stanford, Calif.: Stanford University Press.

[9] Paul J. Lim. *Looking Ahead Means Looking Abroad.* New York Times. January 8th 2006.

[10] Michael Arndt. 2005. "No Longer the Lab of the World: U.S. Chemical Plants are Closing in Droves as Production Heads Abroad." *BusinessWeek*, May 2. Available at http://www.businessweek.com/magazine/content/05_18/b3931106.htm and http://www.usnews.com/usnews/biztech/articles/051010/10energy.htm

[11] As of 2000, the unauthorized resident population in the United States was 7 million. See US Citizenship and Immigration Services. 2003. "Executive Summary: Estimates of the Unauthorized Immigrant Population Residing in the United States: 1990 to 2000." January 31. Available at http://uscis.gov/graphics/shared/statistics/publications/2000ExecSumm.pdf.

[12] Section 214(g) of the Immigration and Nationality Act (Act) sets an annual limit on the number of aliens that can receive H-1B status in a fiscal year. For FY2000 the limit was set at 115,000. The American Competitiveness in the Twenty-First Century Act increased the annual limit to 195,000 for 2001, 2002 and 2003. After that date the cap reverts back to 65,000. H-1B visas allow employers to have access to highly educated foreign professionals who have experience in specialized fields and who have at least a bachelor's degree or the equivalent. The cap does not apply to educational institutions. In November 2004, Congress created an exemption for 20,000 foreign nationals earning advanced degrees from US universities. See Immigration and Nationality Act Section 101(a)(15)(h)(1)(b). See US Citizenship and Immigration Services. 2005. "Public Notice: "USCIS Announces Update Regarding New H-1B Exemptions" July 12. Available at http://uscis.gov/graphics/publicaffairs/newsrels/H1B_06Cap_011806PR.pdf
and US Citizenship and Immigration Services. 2000. "Questions and Answers: Changes to the H-1B Program" November 21. Available at http://uscis.gov/graphics/publicaffairs/questsans/H1BChang.htm.

[13] Pew Research Center. 2005 "U.S. Image Up Slightly, But Still Negative, American Character Gets Mixed Reviews" Pew Global Attitudes Project. Washington, DC. Available at http://pewglobal.org/reports/display.php?ReportID=247
The interview asked nearly 17,000 people the question: "Suppose a young person who wanted to leave this country asked you to recommend where to go to lead a good life – what country would you recommend ?" Except for respondents in India, Poland, and Canada, no more than one-tenth of the people in the other nations said they would recommend the United States. Canada and Australia won the popularity contest.

[14] United States Bureau of Labor Statistics. 2005. International Comparisons Of Hourly Compensation Costs For Production Workers In Manufacturing, 2004. November 18. Available at ftp://ftp.bls.gov/pub/news.release/History/ichcc.11182005.news

[15] Semiconductor Industry Association. 2005. "Choosing to Compete." December 12. Available at http://www.sia-online.org/downloads/FAD%20'05%20-%20Scalise%20Presentation.pdf.

[16] OECD. 2005. "China Overtakes U.S. As World's Leading Exporter of Information Technology Goods." December 12.

Available at http://www.oecd.org/document/60/0,2340,en_2649_201185_35834236_1_1_1_1,00.html. The main categories included in OECD's definition of ICT (information and communications technology) goods are electronic components, computers and related equipment, audio and video equipment and telecommunication equipment.

[17] OECD. 2005. "OECD Broadband Statistics, June 2005." October 20. Available at http://www.oecd.org/document/16/0,2340,en_2649_201185_35526608_1_1_1_1,00.html#data2004

[18] National Center for Education Statistics.. (2006), "The Nation's Report Card: Mathematics 2005." See http://nces.ed.gov/nationsreportcard/pdf/main2005/2006453.pdf.

[19] National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. Chapter 1.

[20] National Center for Education Statistics (2004), Schools and Staffing Survey, 2004. "Qualifications of the Public School Teacher Workforce: Prevalence of Out-of-Field Teaching 1987-88 to 1999-2000 (Revised)," p. 10. See http://nces.ed.gov/pubs2002/2002603.pdf.

[21] National Center for Education Statistics (1999), *Highlights from TIMSS.* See http://nces.ed.gov/pubs99/1999081.pdf.

[22] National Center for Education Statistics (2005), "International Outcomes of Learning in Mathematics Literacy and Problem Solving: PISA 2003 Results from the U.S. Perspective," pp. 15 & 29. See http://nces.ed.gov/pubs2005/2005003.pdf.

[23] The Business Roundtable. 2006. "Innovation and U.S. Competitiveness: Addressing the Talent Gap. Public Opinion Research." January 12. Available at: http://www.businessroundtable.org/pdf/20060112Two-pager.pdf

[24] American Academy of Pediatrics. "Television- How it Affects Children." Available at http://www.aap.org/pubed/ZZZGF8VOQ7C.htm?&sub_cat=1 The American Academy of Pediatrics reports that "Children in the United States watch about four hours of TV every day"; this works out to be 1460 hours per year.

[25] National Center for Education Statistics. 2005. *The Condition of Education*. Table 26-2 Average Number of Instructional Hours Per Year Spent in Public School, By Age or Grade of Student and Country: 2000 and 2001. Available at http://nces.ed.gov/programs/coe/2005/section4/table.asp?tableID=284. NCES reports that in 2000 US 15 year-olds spent 990 hours in school, during the same year 4th graders spent 1040 hours.

[26] National Center for Education Statistic (2006), "Public Elementary and Secondary Students, Staff, Schools, and School Districts: School Year 2003–04". See http://nces.ed.gov/pubs2006/2006307.pdf.

[27]Analysis conducted by the Association of American Universities. 2006. *National Defense Education and Innovation Initiative.* based on data in National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. Appendix Table 2-33. For countries with both short and long degrees, the ratios are calculated with both short and long degrees as the numerator.

[28] National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. Chapter 2 Figure 2-23.

[29] National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation

[30] G. Gereffi and V. Wadhwa. 2005. Framing the Engineering Outsourcing Debate: Placing the United States on a Level Playing Field with China and India. See http://memp.pratt.duke.edu/downloads/duke_outsourcing_2005.pdf.

[31] Ministry of Science and Technology (MOST). 2004. *Chinese Statistical Yearbook 2004.* People's Republic of China, Chapter 21, Table 21-11. Available at http://www.stats.gov.cn/english/statisticaldata/yearlydata/yb2004-e/indexeh.htm. The extent to which engineering degrees from China are comparable to those from the United States is uncertain.

[32] NASSCOM. 2005. *Strategic Review 2005.* National Association of Software and Service Companies, India. Chapter 6. Sustaining the India Advantage. Available at: http://www.nasscom.org/strategic2005.asp

[33] National Center for Education Statistics. 2004. *Digest of Education Statistics 2004*. Institute of Education Sciences, Department of Education, Washington DC, Table 250. Available at http://nces.ed.gov/programs/digest/d04/tables/dt04_250.asp.

[34] Myles Boylan. (2004) Assessing Changes in Student Interest in Engineering Careers Over the Last Decade. CASEE, National Academy of Engineering. Available at http://www.nae.edu/NAE/caseecomnew.nsf/weblinks/NFOY-6GHJ7B/$file/Engineering%20Interest%20-%20HS%20through%20College_V21.pdf; Clifford Adelman. (1998) Women and Men on the Engineering Path: A Model for Analysis of Undergraduate Careers. Washington DC: US Department of Education. See http://www.nae.edu/nae/diversitycom.nsf/98b72da8aad70f1785256da20053deaf/85256cfb00484b5c85256da000002f83/$FILE/Adelman_Women_and_Men_of_the_Engineering_Path.pdf). According to this Department of Education analysis, the majority of students who switch from engineering majors complete a major in business or other non-science and engineering fields.

[35] National Center for Education Statistics Digest of Education Statistics. The American Institute of Physics Statistical Research Center.

[36] Spencer Stuart. 2005. "2004 CEO Study: A Statistical Snapshot of Leading CEOs." Available at http://content.spencerstuart.com/sswebsite/pdf/lib/Statistical_Snapshot_of_Leading_CEOs_relB3.pdf#search='ceo%20educational%20background'.

[37] US research and development spending in 2001 was $273.6 billion, of which industry performed $194 billion and funded about $184 billion. National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. One estimate of tort litigation costs in the United States was $205 billion in 2001. Jeremey A. Leonard. 2003. "How Structural Costs Imposed on U.S. Manufacturers Harm Workers and Threaten Competitiveness." Prepared for the Manufacturing Institute of the National Association of Manufacturers. Availbale at http://www.nam.org/s_nam/bin.asp?CID=216&DID=227525&DOC=FILE.PDF.
[38] US Patent and Trademark Office2006. USPTO Annual List of Top 10 Organizations Receiving Most U.S. Patents. January 10, 2006. See http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/com/speeches/06-03.htm
[39] CERN. Internet Homepage. http://public.web.cern.ch/Public/Welcome.html.
[40] AAAS. 2004. "Trends in Federal Research by Discipline, FY 1976-2004." October. Available at http://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/disc04tb.pdf and http://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/discip04c.pdf
[41] Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. 2005. *National Heath Expenditures*. Available at http://www.cms.hhs.gov/NationalHealthExpendData/downloads/tables.pdf
[42] In: Wallace, Kathryn. 2005. "America's Brain Drain Crisis Why Our Best Scientists are Disappearing, and What's Really at Stake." *Readers Digest*. December.
[43] Louis V. Gerstner, Jr. Former Chairman, IBM in The Teaching Commission. 2004. Teaching at Risk: A Call to Action. New York: City University of New York. See www.theteachingcommission.org.
[44] Remarks by Jeffrey R. Immelt to Economic Club of Washington as reported in Irwin, Neil. 2006. "US Needs More Engineers, GE Chief Says." Washington Post. January 23, 2006.
[45] Craig Barrett. 2006. Comments at public briefing on the release of The Gathering Storm report. October 12, 2005. See http://www.nationalacademies.org/morenews/20051012.html.
[46] Bill Gates. 2005. Speech to the National Education Summit on High Schools. February 26. Available at http://www.gatesfoundation.org/MediaCenter/Speeches/BillgSpeeches/BGSpeechNGA-050226.htm
[47] *William Jefferson Clinton.* "Commencement Address at Morgan State University in Baltimore, Maryland." May 18, 1997 Government Printing Office. *1997 Public Papers of the Presidents of the United States, Books I and II.* Available at http://www.gpoaccess.gov/pubpapers/wjclinton.html
[48] Remarks by President George W. Bush in Meeting with High-Tech Leaders. March 28, 2001. Available at http://www.whitehouse.gov/news/releases/2001/03/20010328-2.html.

# 1

## A DISTURBING MOSAIC[1]

In *The World Is Flat: A Brief History of the Twenty-First Century,*[2] Thomas Friedman asserts that the international economic playing field is now "more level" than it has ever been.[3] The causes of this "flattening" include easier access to information technology and rising technical competences abroad that have made it possible for US companies to locate call centers in India, coordinate the complex supply chains and work flows that enable manufacturing in China, and conduct "back office" service functions abroad. It is not uncommon for radiologists in India, for example, to read x-ray pictures of patients in US hospitals. Architects in the United States have their drawings made in Brazil. Software is written for US firms in Bangalore. Ireland has successfully put into place a set of policies to attract companies and their research activities, as has Finland. The European Union is actively pursuing policies to enhance the innovation environment, as are Singapore, China, Japan, South Korea, Taiwan, and many other countries.

Friedman argues that, despite the dangers, a flat world is on balance a *good thing*—economically and geopolitically. Lower costs benefit consumers and shareholders in developed countries, and the rising middle class in India and China will become consumers of those countries' products as well as ours. That same rising middle class will have a stake in the "frictionless" flow of international commerce—and hence in stability, peace, and the rule of law. Such a desirable state, writes Friedman, will not be achieved without problems, and whether global flatness is good for a particular country depends on whether that country is prepared to compete on the global playing field, which is as rough and tumble as it is level.

---

[1] Major portions of this chapter were adapted from an article of the same name by Wm. A. Wulf, president of the National Academy of Engineering in the fall 2005 issue of *The Bridge*, a journal of the National Academies.
[2] T. L. Friedman, *The World Is Flat: A Brief History of the Twenty-First Century*, New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux, 2005.
[3] An alternative point of view is presented in Box 1-1

**BOX 1-1**
**Another Point of View: The World Is Not Flat[4]**

Some believe that although the world is certainly a more competitive place, it is not "flat". It is more competitive because access to knowledge is easier than ever before, but the rise of scientific competence and the apparent flight of high-technology jobs abroad is no more likely to dislodge the United States from its science and technology leadership than were previous challenges from the Soviet Union in the 1950s and 1960s or from Japan in the 1980s.

For example, Americans are alarmed to read of the large numbers of well-educated, English-speaking young people in India vying with US workers for jobs via the Internet. In fact, only about 6% of Indian students make it to college; of those who do, only two-thirds graduate. Just a small fraction of India's citizenry can read English; of these, a smaller fraction can speak it well enough to be understood by Americans. In China, where the numbers of engineers and other technically trained people are rising, government skepticism about the Internet and aspects of free markets is likely to hinder the advance of national power.

China and India indeed have low wage structures, but the United States has many other advantages. These include better a science and technology infrastructure, stronger venture-capital markets, an ability to attract talent from around the world, and a culture of inventiveness. Comparative advantage shifts from place to place over time and always has; the earth cannot really be flattened. The US response to competition must include proper retraining of those who are disadvantaged and adaptive institutional and policy responses that make the best use of opportunities that arise.

Friedman asks rhetorically whether his own country is proving its readiness by "investing in our future and preparing our children the way we need to for the race ahead". Friedman's answer, not surprisingly, is no.

This report addresses the possibility that our lack of preparation will reduce the ability of the United States to compete in such a world. Many underlying issues are technical; some are not. Some are "political"—not in the sense of partisan politics, but in the sense of "bringing the rest of the body politic along". Scientists and engineers often avoid such discussions, but the stakes are too high to keep silent any longer.

Friedman's term *quiet crisis*, which others have called a "creeping crisis", is reminiscent of the folk tale about boiling a frog. If a frog is dropped into boiling water, it will immediately jump out and survive. But a frog placed in cool water that is heated slowly until it boils won't respond until it is too late.

Our crisis is not the result of a one-dimensional change; it is more than a simple increase in water temperature. And we have no single awakening event, such as Sputnik. The United States is instead facing problems that are developing slowly but surely, each like a tile in a mosaic. None by itself seems sufficient to provoke action. But the collection of problems reveals a disturbing picture—a recurring pattern of abundant short-term thinking and insufficient long-term investment. Our collective reaction thus far seems to presuppose that the citizens of the United States and their children are *entitled* to a better quality of life than others, and that all Americans need do is circle the wagons to defend that entitlement. Such a presupposition does

[4] This box was adapted from Jagdish Bhagwati. *The world is not flat.* The Wall Street Journal. August 4, 2005. p. A12.

not reflect reality and neither recognizes the dangers nor seizes the opportunities of current circumstances. Furthermore, it won't work.

In 2001, the Hart–Rudman commission on national security, which foresaw large-scale terrorism in America and proposed the establishment of a cabinet-level Homeland Security organization before the terrorist attacks of 9/11, put the matter this way:[5]

> The inadequacies of our system of research and education pose a greater threat to U.S. national security over the next quarter century than any potential conventional war that we might imagine.

President George W. Bush has said that

> "Science and technology have never been more essential to the defense of the nation and the health of our economy."[6]

A letter from the leadership of the National Science Foundation to the President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology put the case even more bluntly: [7]

> Civilization is on the brink of a new industrial order. The big winners in the increasingly fierce global scramble for supremacy will not be those who simply make commodities faster and cheaper than the competition. They will be those who develop talent, techniques and tools so advanced that there is no competition.

This chapter addresses the relevant issues in three related clusters. Later chapters examine each cluster in more detail and recommend ways to address the problems that are identified.

## CLUSTER 1: TILTED JOBS IN A GLOBAL ECONOMY

Is the world flat, or is it tilted? Many people who once had jobs in the textile, furniture, apparel, automotive, and other manufacturing industries might be forgiven for saying that world is decidedly slanted. They watched their jobs run downhill to countries where the workforce earns far lower wages. The movement of jobs has accelerated sharply in the last 5 years, surprising many employers and employees and disrupting the lives of those who have been underbid by "hungry", skilled job-seekers abroad.

Large companies use various criteria in making a decision to relocate administrative, production, or research and development (R&D) facilities, and they often have a number of options. Some reasons cited for relocations in past studies include capitalizing on:

- Foreign R&D personnel (scientists, engineers, and programmers)[8] who are highly skilled and eager to work.[9]

---

[5] United States Commission on National Security, *Road Map for National Security*: Imperative for Change, 2001·
[6] Remarks by the President in Meeting with High-Tech Leaders, March 28, 2001,
[7] The President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology, *Sustaining the Nation's Innovation Ecosystems*, Report on Information Technology Manufacturing and Competitiveness, January 2004
[8] D.H. Dalton, M.G. Serapio, Jr., P.G. Yoshida. 1999. *Globalizing Industrial Research and Development.* U.S. Department of Commerce, Technology Administration, Office of Technology Policy.
[9] Grant Gross. *CEOs defend moving jobs offshore at tech summit.* InfoWorld. October 9, 2003.

- New science and technology in fresh environments.[10]
- Technological developments abroad.[11]
- Joint and cooperative research products.[12]
- Proximity to offshore manufacturing.[13]
- Lower costs of conducting R&D, particularly labor costs.[14]
- Reduced labor costs associated with employing foreign workers.[15]
- Proximity to growing markets.
- US regulation and R&D climates, including strict regulatory regimes, high risks of legal liability, and technology transfer limitations.[16]
- High-technology centers with skilled personnel, world-class R&D infrastructure, vibrant research cultures, government incentives, and intellectual-property protection. [17]
- Lower corporate tax rates and special tax incentives.
- Increasingly high-quality research universities.

The global forces that affect employment have swirled into the service sector, once thought secure from international competition. First, there was outsourcing, which allows employers to reassign some jobs by contracting them to specialty firms that can do the jobs better or more cheaply. At first, jobs were outsourced within the United States, but "offshoring" soon sent jobs overseas, beyond the reach of US workers. That practice has become especially controversial, and there has been an outcry for measures to protect those jobs for the domestic market. In some states, legislation has been proposed to curb outsourcing through such initiatives as Opportunity Indiana, the Keep Jobs in Colorado Act, and the American Jobs Act of Wisconsin.[18]

Offshoring has become established, however, and it is merely one logical outcome of a flatter world. Furthermore, protectionist measures have historically proved counterproductive. For several years, US companies that outsource information-technology jobs have all but ordered their contractors to send some portion of the work overseas to gain hiring flexibility, cut employment costs—by 40% in some cases[19]—and cut overhead costs for the home company.[20] Employers also hire offshore workers to gain access to better-trained workers or those with specialized skills, to move the workforce closer to manufacturing or production facilities, or to gain access to desirable markets.[21] In India, US companies can hire insurance-claims processors,

---

[10] Dalton, 1999.
[11] Dalton, 1999.
[12] Dalton, 1999.
[13] Mehlman, Bruce. 2003. *Offshore Outsourcing and the Future of American Competitiveness.*
[14] Dalton, 1999.
[15] See, for example, "High tech in China: is it a threat to Silicon Valley?" *Business Week* online. October 28, 2002
[16] B. Callan, S. Costigan, K. Keller. 1997. *Exporting U.S. High Tech: Facts and Fiction about the Globalization of Industrial R&D*, Council on Foreign Relations, New York, NY.
[17] Dalton, 1999.
[18] Dinesh C. Sharma and Mike Yamamoto. How India is handling international backlash. *CNET news.com*, May 6, 2004. .
[19] The Gartner Group, an organization that analyzes the information-technology sector, estimates that companies can achieve cost savings of 25%–30% through successful outsourcing. But Gartner also warns that offshoring could produce lower savings than estimated if backup service and other costs are not considered, .
[20] Julia King. Its itinerary: Offshore outsourcing is inevitable. *Computerworld*, Sept. 15, 2003,
[21] Ron Hira, Rochester Institute of Technology, presentation to Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, Workshop on International Students and Postdoctoral Scholars, National Academies, July 2004.

medical transcriptionists, accountants, engineers, computer scientists, and other English-speaking workers for, on average, about one-fifth the salaries those employees would earn here. Because about three-fourths of all US jobs are now in the service sector,[22] millions of US employees are at risk of losing their jobs to overseas workers.[23]

Offshoring also could place downward pressure on wages at home.[24] Fewer than a million jobs have been sent overseas so far,[25] but even that number could be broadly affecting the economy as displaced workers seek jobs held by others or are forced to accept lower wages to keep their existing jobs.

Because offshoring of service-sector jobs is a recent phenomenon, few analysts offer predictions about its long-term effects on the US economy. The classical view of free trade, as articulated nearly 2 centuries ago by British economist David Ricardo, states that if a nation specializes in making a product in which it has a comparative cost advantage and if it trades with another nation for a product in which that nation has a similar cost advantage, both countries will be better off than if they had each made both products themselves.[26] But does that theory hold in a world where not only goods but many services are tradable as well? Will wages merely fall worldwide as more knowledge workers enter the jobs arena?

Most economists believe that Ricardo is still correct—that there will be gains for all such nations. They acknowledge that there might be a transition phase in which wages for lower-skilled workers in a rich country like the United States will fall. Some say that there is, however, no reason to believe that wages for highly skilled workers will fall in either the short run or the long run.[27] Economist Paul Romer [28] argues that technological change continues to increase the demand for workers with high levels of education.[29] As a result, wages for US workers with at least a college education continue to rise faster than wages for other workers. The low wages for highly skilled workers seen in such countries as China and India are not a sign that the worldwide supply of highly skilled workers is so large that worldwide wages are now falling or are about to fall, says Romer. In those economies, wages for skilled workers are low because these workers were previously cut off from the deep and rapidly growing pool of technological knowledge that existed outside their borders. As they have opened up their economies so that this knowledge can now flow in, wages for highly skilled workers have grown rapidly.

With the collapse of the high-technology bubble, some highly skilled workers in the United States have experienced a fall in their wages from the values that prevailed at the peak. Moreover, at every level of education, there is wide variation in compensation and career paths. Some engineers and scientists, even now, are unemployed or underemployed, just as some physicians, MBAs, and lawyers are unemployed or underemployed. It would be a mistake,

---

[22] Geoffrey Colvin. *Can Americans compete? Is America the world's 97-lb. weakling?* Fortune. July 25, 2005.
[23] Forrester Research, a technology and market research company, estimates that 3.3 million white-collar jobs could be sent offshore by 2015. "Tom Pohlman. Topic Overview, Outsourcing, Q3 2005." September 12, 2005, Available at: http://www.forrester.com/Research/Document/0,7211,37613,00.html.
[24] Richard Freeman. *It's a flat world, after all.* The New York Times. April 3, 2005. Section 6; Column 1; Magazine Desk; Pg. 33
[25] Colvin, ibid.
[26] The Concise Encyclopedia of Economics. "Biography of David Ricardo." Available at: http://www.econlib.org/library/Enc/bios/Ricardo.html.
[27] T. L. Friedman. *The World Is Flat: A Brief History of the Twenty-First Century*, p. 227.
[28] E-mail communication from P. Romer to D. Stine, Sept. 22, 2005.
[29] Autor, David, Katz, Lawrence, and Melissa Kearney. 2005. *Trends in U.S. Wage Inequality: Re-Assessing the Revisionists*. National Bureau of Economic Research. Working Paper 11627 for a recent summary of the evidence on this point.

according to Romer, for public policy to limit the training of new physicians only because some of them end up with careers that are not as lucrative or rewarding as they had hoped. In the same way, public-policy decisions about the supply of scientists and engineers should not be guided by an attempt to provide a guaranteed high level of income for every recipient of an advanced degree. It is also important that scientists and engineers tend, through innovation, to create new jobs not only for themselves but also for workers throughout the economy.

Some economists believe that there might be a transition phase in some fields during which wages fall, but they assert that there is no reason to believe that such a dip would be permanent, because the global economic pie keeps growing.[30]

It has also been argued that in a period of tectonic change such as the one that the global community is now undergoing, there will inevitably be nations and individuals that are winners or losers. It is the view of this committee that the determining factors in such outcomes are the extent of a nation's commitment to get out and compete in the global marketplace.

New generations of US scientists and engineers, assisted by progressive government policies, could lead the way to US leadership in the new, flatter world—as long as US workers remain among the best educated, hardest-working, best trained, and most productive in the world.

That, of course, is the challenge.

## CLUSTER 2: DISINVESTMENT IN THE FUTURE

The most effective way for the United States to meet the challenges of a flatter world would be to draw heavily and quickly on its investments in human capital. We need people who have been prepared for the kinds of knowledge-intensive occupations in which the nation must excel. Yet the United States has for a number of decades fallen short in making the kinds of investments that will be essential in a global economy.

### Loss of Human Capital

An educated, innovative, motivated workforce—human capital—is the most precious resource of any country in this new, flat world. Yet there is widespread concern about our K–12 science and mathematics education system, the foundation of that human capital in today's global economy. A recent Gallup poll[31] asked respondents, "Overall, how satisfied are you with the quality of education students receive in kindergarten through grade twelve in the U.S. today—would you say you are completely satisfied, somewhat satisfied, somewhat dissatisfied or completely dissatisfied?" More than 50% were either "completely dissatisfied" or "somewhat dissatisfied" with our schooling. According to the poll results, the critical required change would be to produce better educated, higher-quality teachers.[32] This committee shares that view, particularly in connection with education in science and mathematics. By far the highest leverage

[30] T. L. Friedman, *The World Is Flat: A Brief History of the Twenty-First Century*, p. 227.
[31] Gallup Poll, August 8-11, 2005, ± 3% margin of error, sample size= 1,001. As found at http://www.gallup.com/poll/content/default.aspx?ci=18421 on 14 Sept. 2005.
[32] Gallup Poll, August 9-11, 2004, ± 3% margin of error, sample size= 1,017. As found at on 14 Sept. 2005.

to be found in our education system resides with teachers, if for no other reason than that they influence such a large number of future workers.

Students in the United States are not keeping up with their counterparts in other countries. In 2003 the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development's Programme for International Student Assessment[33] measured the performance of 15-year-olds in 49 industrialized countries. It found that US students scored in the middle or in the bottom half of the group in three important ways: our students placed 16th in reading, 19th in science literacy, and 24th in mathematics.[34] In 1996 (the most recent data available), US 12th graders performed below the international average of 21 countries on a test of general knowledge in mathematics and science.[35]

After secondary school, fewer US students pursue science and engineering degrees than is the case of students in other countries. About 6% of our undergraduates major in engineering; that percentage is the second lowest among developed countries. Engineering students make up about 12% of undergraduates in most of Europe, 20% in Singapore, and more than 40% in China. Students throughout much of the world see careers in science and engineering as the path to a better future.

**Higher Education as a Private Good**

Our culture has always considered higher education a public good—or at least we have seemed to do so. We have agreed as a society that educated citizens benefit the whole society; that the benefit accrues to us all and not just to those who receive the education. That was a primary reason for the creation in the 1860s of the land-grant college system; it is why early in the 20th century universal primary and secondary schooling was supported; it is why a system of superior state universities was created and generously supported and scholarships were given to needy students; and it is why the Serviceman's Readjustment Act of 1944—the GI Bill—was established and why the National Defense Education Act was passed in 1958 shortly after the launch of Sputnik.

Now, however, funding for state universities is dwindling, tuition is rising, and students are borrowing more than they receive in grants. These seem to be indications that our society increasingly sees higher education as a private good, of value only to the individual receiving it. A disturbing aspect of that change is its consequences for low-income students. College has been a traditional path for upward mobility—and this has been particularly true in the field of engineering for students who were first in their family to attend college. The acceptance of higher education as a personal benefit rather than a public good, the growth of costly private K–12 schooling, and the shift of the cost burden to individuals have made it increasingly difficult for low-income students to advance beyond high school. In the long run, the nation as a whole will suffer from the lack of new talent that could have been discovered and nurtured in affordable, accessible, high-quality public schools, colleges, and universities.

---

[33] Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development. "Program for International Student Assessment." Available at: http://www.pisa.oecd.org.

[34] The report included results from 49 countries, http://www.pisa.oecd.org/dataoecd/1/63/34002454.pdf.

[35] National Science Board. 2004. Science and Engineering Indicators 2004 (NSB 04-01). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. Chapter 1.

**Trends in Corporate Research**

The US research structure that evolved after World War II was a self-reinforcing triangle of industry, academe, and government. Two sides of that triangle—industrial research and government investment in R&D as a fraction of GDP have changed dramatically. Some of the most important fundamental research in the 20th century was accomplished in corporate laboratories—Bell Labs, GE Research, IBM Research, Xerox PARC, and others. Since that time, the corporate research structure has been significantly eroded. One reason might be the challenge of capturing the results of research investments within one company or even a single nation on a long-term basis. The companies and nation can, however, capture high-technology discoveries at least for the near term (5-10 years) and enhance the importance of innovation in jobs. [36] For example, the United States has successfully capitalized on research in monoclonal antibodies, network systems, and speech recognition. As a result, corporate funding of certain applied research has been enhanced at such companies as Google and Intel and at many biotechnology companies. Nonetheless, the increasing pressure on corporations for short-term results has made investments in research highly problematic.

**Funding for Research in the Physical Sciences and Engineering**

Although support for research in the life sciences increased sharply in the 1990s and produced remarkable results, funding for research in most physical sciences, mathematics, and engineering has declined or remained relatively flat—in real purchasing power—for several decades. Even to those whose principal interest is in health or health care, that seems short-sighted: Many medical devices and procedures—such as endoscopic surgery, "smart" pacemakers, kidney dialysis, and magnetic resonance imaging—are the result of R&D in the physical sciences, engineering, and mathematics. The need is to strengthen investment in the latter areas while not disinvesting in those areas of the health sciences that are producing promising results. Many believe that federal funding agencies—perhaps influenced by the stagnation of funding levels in the physical sciences, mathematics and engineering—have become increasingly risk-averse and focused on short-term results. For example, even the generally highly effective Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) has been criticized in this regard in congressional testimony.[37]

Widespread, if anecdotal, evidence shows that even the National Science Foundation and the National Institutes of Health (NIH) have changed their approach in this regard. A recent National Academies study[38] revealed that the average age at which a principal investigator receives his or her *first* grant is 42 years—partly because of requirements for evidence of an extensive "track record" to reduce risk to the grant-makers. [39] But reducing the risk for individual

[36] COSEPUP: 1999. *Capitalizing on Investments in S&T*. National Academy Press. Washington DC.
[37] See House Science Committee. http://www.house.gov/science/hearings/full05/may12/. The current director of DARPA, however, points out that DARPA's job has always been to mine fundamental research, looking for those ideas whose time has come to move on to applied developmental research.
[38] *Bridges to Independence: Fostering the Independence of New Investigators in Biomedical Research*, Board on Life Sciences, National Research Council, National Academies Press, Washington, D.C., 2004.
[39] Other observers note that part of the reason for this is the length of the biomedical PhD and postdoctoral period and the difficulty of young biomedical researchers in finding initial tenure-track positions, for which many institutions require principal-investigator status on an NIH grant proposal. These trends, which are occurring in spite

research projects *increases* the likelihood that breakthrough, "disruptive" technologies will not be found—the kinds of discoveries that often yield huge returns. History also suggests that young researchers make disproportionately important discoveries. The NIH roadmap[40] established in FY 2004, recognizes this concern, but the amount of funds devoted to long-term, high-payoff, high-risk research remains very limited.

## CLUSTER 3: REACTIONS TO 9/11

Three other pieces in the mosaic also appear to provide short-term security but little long-term benefit. These relate to the events of 9/11, which profoundly changed our world and made it necessary to re-examine national security issues in an entirely new context. This re-examination led to changes in visa policies, export controls, and the treatment of "sensitive but unclassified" information. There appears today to be a need to better balance security concerns with the benefits of an open, creative society.

### New Visa Policies

Much has been written about new immigration and visa policies for students and researchers. Although there have been improvements in the last several months (at this writing, the average time to process a student visa is less than 2 weeks), there is still concern about response times in particular cases. Some promising students wait a year or more for visas; some senior scholars are subjected to long and sometimes demeaning review processes. Those cases, not the shorter *average* processing time, are emphasized in the international press. The United States is portrayed less as a welcoming land of opportunity than as a place that is hostile to foreigners.

Immigration procedures implemented since 9/11 have discouraged students from applying to US programs, prevented international research leaders from organizing conferences here, and dampened international collaboration. As a result, we are damaging the image of our country in the eyes of much of the world. Although there are recent signs of improvement, the matter remains a concern.

This committee is generally not privy to whatever evidence lies in the government's library of classified information, but it is important to recognize that our nation's borders have been crossed by more than 10 million people who are still residing illegally in the United States. Set against this background, a way is needed to quickly, legally, and safely admit to our shores the relatively small numbers of highly talented people who possess the skills needed to make major contributions to our nation's future competitiveness and well-being.

Some observers are also concerned that encouraging international students to come to the United States will ultimately fill jobs that could be occupied by American citizens. Others worry

---

of the recent doubling of the NIH grants budget, suggest an imbalance between demand for and supply of recent PhDs.

[40] The purpose of the roadmap was to identify major opportunities and gaps in biomedical research that no single NIH institute could tackle alone but that the agency as a whole must address to make the biggest impact on the progress of medical research.

that such visitors will reduce the compensation that scientists and engineers receive—diminishing the desire of Americans to enter those professions. Studies show, however, that the financial impact is minimal, especially at the PhD level. Furthermore, scientists and engineers tend to be creators of new jobs and not simply consumers of fixed a set of existing jobs. If Americans make up a larger percentage of a graduating class, a larger percentage of Americans will be hired by corporations. In the end, the United States needs the smartest people, wherever they come from throughout the world. The United States will be more prosperous if those people live and work in the United States rather than elsewhere. History has emphatically proven this point.

**The Use of Export Controls**

Export controls were first instituted in the United States in 1949 to keep weapons technology out of the hands of potential adversaries. They have since been used, on occasion, as an economic tool against competitors.

The export of controlled technology requires a license from the Department of Commerce or from the Department of State. Since 1994, the disclosure of information regarding a controlled technology to some foreign nationals—even when the disclosure takes place inside the United States, a practice sometimes called "deemed export"—has been considered the same as the export of the technology itself and thus requires an export license.

Some recent reports[41] suggest that implementation of the rules that govern deemed exports should be tightened even further—for example, by altering or eliminating the exemption for basic research and by broadening the definition of "access" to controlled technology.

The academic research community is deeply concerned that a literal interpretation of these suggestions could prevent foreign graduate students from participating in US-based research and would require an impossibly complex system of enforcement. Given that 55% of the doctoral students in engineering in the United States are foreign-born and that many of these students currently remain in the United States after receiving their degrees, the effect could be to drastically reduce our talent pool.

The United States is not the world's only country capable of performing research; China and India, for example, have recognized the value of research universities to their economic development and are investing heavily in them. By putting up overly stringent barriers to the exchange of information about basic research, we isolate ourselves and impede our own progress. At the same time, the information we are protecting often is available elsewhere.

The current fear that foreign students in our universities pose a security risk must be balanced against the great advantages of having them here. It is, of course, prudent to control entry to our nation, but as those controls become excessively burdensome they can unintentionally harm us. In this regard, it should be noted that Albert Einstein, Edward Teller, Enrico Fermi, and many other immigrants enabled the United States to develop the atomic bomb and bring World War II to an earlier conclusion than would otherwise have been the case. In addition, immigrant scientists and engineers have contributed to US economic growth throughout

[41] Reports from the inspectors general of the US Departments of Commerce, Defense, and State. As an example, see Bureau of Industry and Security, *Deemed Export Controls May Not Stop the Transfer of Sensitive Technology to Foreign Nationals in the U.S.*, Final Inspection Report No. IPE-16176—March 2004, Office of Inspections and Program Evaluations.

the nation's history by founding or cofounding new technology-based companies. Examples include Andrew Carnegie (US Steel, born in Scotland), Alexander Graham Bell (AT&T, born in Scotland), Herbert Henry Dow (Dow Chemical, born in Canada), Henry Timken (Timken Company, born in Germany), Andrew Grove (Intel, born in Hungary), Davod Lam (Lam Research, born in China), Vinod Khosla (Sun Microsystems, born in India), and Sergey Brin (Google, born in Russia).

Similarly, it has been noted that

- Many students from abroad stay here after their education is complete and contribute greatly to our economy.
- Foreign students who do return home often are our best ambassadors.
- The United States benefits economically from open trade, and our security is reinforced by rising living standards in developing countries.
- The quality of life in the United States has been improved as a result of shared scientific results. Some foreign-born students do return home to work as competitors, but others join in international collaborations that help us move faster in the development and adaptation of new technology and thereby create new jobs.

Yet, Section 214b of the Immigration and Nationality Act requires applicants for student or exchange visas to provide convincing evidence that they plan to return to their home countries—a challenging requirement.

### Sensitive but Unclassified Information

Since 9/11, the amount of information designated sensitive but unclassified (SBU) by the US government has presented a problem that is less publicized than visas or deemed exports but is a complicating factor in academic research. The SBU category, as currently applied, is inconsistent with the philosophy of building high fences around small places associated with the traditional protection of scientific and technical information. There are no laws, no common definitions, and no limits on who can declare information "SBU", nor are there provisions for review and disclosure after a specific period. There is little doubt that the United States would profit from a serious discussion about what kinds of information should be classified, but such a discussion is not occurring.

## THE PUBLIC RECOGNIZES THE CHALLENGES

Does the public truly see the challenge to our prosperity? In recent months, polls have indicated persistent concern not only about the war in Iraq and issues of terrorism but also, and nearly equally, about jobs and the economy. One CBS-New York Times poll showed security leading economic issues by only 1%;[42] another[43] showed that our economy and job security are

[42] CBS News-New York Times poll, June 10–15, 2005; 1,111 adults nationwide; 19% found the war in Iraq the most important problem, 18% cited the economy and jobs. Available at: http://www.cbsnews.com/htdocs/CBSNews_polls/bush616.pdf.

of slightly greater concern to respondents than are issues of national security and terrorism. On the eve of the 2004 presidential election, the Gallup organization asked respondents what issues concerned them most. Terrorism was first, ranked "extremely important" by 45% of respondents; next came the economy (39%), health care (33%), and education (32%).[44] Only 35% say that now is a good time to find a high-quality job; 61% say that it is not.[45] Polls, of course, only provide a snapshot of America's thinking, but presumably one can conclude that Americans are generally worried about jobs—if not for themselves then for their children and grandchildren.

Investors are worried, too. According to a Gallup poll, 83% percent of US investors say job outsourcing to foreign countries is currently hurting the investment climate "a lot" (61%) or "a little" (22%). The numbers who are worried about outsourcing are second only to the numbers who are worried about the price of energy, according to a July 2005 Gallup poll on investor concerns.[46]

## DISCOVERY AND APPLICATION: KEYS TO COMPETITIVENESS AND PROSPERITY

A common denominator of the concerns expressed by many citizens is the need for and use of knowledge. Well-paying jobs, accessible health care, and high-quality education require the discovery, application, and dissemination of information and techniques. Our economy depends on the knowledge that fuels the growth of business and plants the seeds of new industries, which in turn provides rewarding employment for commensurately educated workers. Chapter 2 explains that US prosperity since World War II has depended heavily on the excellence of its "knowledge institutions": high-technology industries, federal R&D agencies, and research universities that are generally acknowledged to be the best in the world.

The innovation model in place for a half-century has been so successful in the United States that other nations are now beginning to emulate it. The governments of Finland, Korea, Ireland, Canada, and Singapore have mapped and implemented strategies to increase the knowledge base of students and researchers, strengthen research institutions, and promote exports of high-technology products—activities in which the United States has in the past excelled.[47] China formally adopted a pro-R&D policy in the middle of the 1990s and has been moving rapidly to raise government spending on basic research, to reform old structures in a fashion that supports a market economy, and to build indigenous capacity in science and technology.[48]

The United States is now part of a connected, competitive world in which many nations are empowering their indigenous "brainware" and building new and effective performance

---

[43] ABC News-Washington Post poll, June 2-5, 2005, 1,002 adults nationwide. Of those polled, 30% rated the economy and jobs of highest concern, 24 % rated Iraq of highest concern.

[44] Dennis Jacob, Gallup chief economist, in "More Americans see threat, not opportunity, in foreign trade: Most investors see outsourcing as harmful." Available at: http://www.gallup.com/poll/content/default.aspx?ci=14338 .

[45] Frank Newport, Gallup poll editor-in-chief, "Bush approval, economy, election 2008, Iraq, John Roberts, civil rights" Aug. 9, 2005. Available at http://www.gallup.com/poll/content/?ci=17758&pg=1.

[46] Gallup poll, June 24-26, 2005, ± 3% margin of error, sample size= 1,009. Available at http://www.gallup.com/poll/content/?ci=17605&pg=1 on 14 Sept. 2005.

[47] OECD. *Main Science & Technology Indicators, 2005.* Available at: http://www.oecd.org/document/26/0,2340,en_2649_34451_1901082_1_1_1_1,00.html

[48] *China's Science and Technology Policy for the Twenty-First Century—A View from the Top*, Report from the US Embassy, Beijing, November 1996.

partnerships—and they are doing so with remarkable focus, vigor, and determination. The United States must match that tempo if it hopes to maintain the degree of prosperity it has enjoyed in the past.

**ACTION NOW**

Indeed, if we are to provide prosperity and a secure environment for our children and grandchildren, we cannot be complacent. The gradual change in England's standing in the world since the 1800s and the sudden change in Russia's standing since the end of the Cold War are but two examples that illustrate how dramatically power can shift. Simply maintaining the status quo is insufficient when other nations push ahead with desire, energy, and commitment.

Today, we see in the example of Ireland how quickly a determined nation can rise from relative hunger to burgeoning prosperity. In the 1980s, Ireland's unemployment rate was 18%, and during that decade 1% of the population—mostly young people—left the country, largely to find jobs.[49] In response, a coalition of government, academic institutions, labor unions, farmers, and others forged an ambitious and sometimes painful plan of tax and spending cuts and aggressively courted foreign investors and skilled scientists and engineers. Today, Ireland is, on a per capita basis, one of Europe's wealthiest countries.[50] In 1990, Ireland's per capita GDP of $12,891 (in current US dollars) ranked it 23rd of the 30 OCED member countries. By 2002, Ireland's per capita GDP had grown to $32,646, making it 4th highest among OECD member countries.[51] Ireland's unemployment rate (as a percentage of the total percentage of total labor force) was 13.4% in 1990. By 1993, it had risen to 15.6%. By 2004 unemployed declined to 4.5%.[52] Since 1995, Ireland's economic growth has averaged 7.9%. Over the same time period, economic growth averaged 2% in Europe and 3.3% in the United States. [53]

History is the story of people mobilizing intellectual and practical talents to meet demanding challenges. World War II saw us rise to the military challenge, quickly developing nuclear weapons and other military capabilities. After the launch of Sputnik[54] in 1957, we accepted the challenge of the space race, landed twelve Americans on the moon, and fortified our science and technology capacity.

Today's challenge is economic—no Pearl Harbor, Sputnik, or 9/11 will stir quick action. It is time to shore up the basics, the building blocks without which our leadership will surely decline. For a century, many in the United States took for granted that most great inventions would be homegrown—such as electric power, the telephone, the automobile, and the airplane—and would be commercialized here as well. But we are less certain today who will create the next generation of innovations, or even what they will be. We know that we need a more secure Internet, more-efficient transportation, new cures for disease, and clean, affordable, and reliable sources of energy. But who will dream them up, who will get the jobs they create, and who will profit from them? If our children and grandchildren are to enjoy the prosperity that our forebears

---

[49] William C. Harris, director general, Science Foundation Ireland, personal communication, Aug. 15, 2005.
[50] Thomas Friedman. The End of the Rainbow. New York Times. June 29, 2005.
[51] OECD, OECD Factbook 2005. Available at: http://puck.sourceoecd.org/vl=2095292/cl=23/nw=1/rpsv/factbook/
[52] OECD, OECD Factbook 2005. Available at: http://puck.sourceoecd.org/vl=2095292/cl=23/nw=1/rpsv/factbook
[53] Robert Samuelson. *The world is still round*. Newsweek. July 25, 2005.
[54] The fall 1957 launch of Sputnik I, the first artificial satellite, caused many in the United States to believe that we were quickly falling behind the USSR in science education and research. That concern led to major policy reforms in education, civilian and military research, and federal support for researchers. Within a year, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration and DARPA were founded. In that era, science and technology became a major focus of the public, and a presidential science adviser was appointed.

earned for us, our nation must quickly invigorate the knowledge institutions that have served it so well in the past and create new ones to serve in the future.

## CONCLUSION

A few of the tiles in the mosaic are apparent; many other problems could be added to the list. The three clusters discussed in this chapter share a common characteristic: short-term responses to perceived problems can give the *appearance* of gain but often bring real, long-term losses.

This report emphasizes the need for world-class science and engineering—not simply as an end in itself but as the principal means of creating new jobs for our citizenry as a whole as it seeks to prosper in the global marketplace of the 21st century. We must help those who lose their jobs; they need financial assistance and retraining. It might even be appropriate to protect some selected jobs for a very short time. But in the end, the country will be strengthened only by learning to compete in this new, flat world.

2

## WHY ARE SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY CRITICAL TO AMERICA'S PROSPERITY IN THE 21st CENTURY?

Since the Industrial Revolution, the growth of economies throughout the world has been driven largely by the pursuit of scientific understanding, the application of engineering solutions, and continual technological innovation.[1] Today, much of everyday life in the United States and other industrialized nations, as evidenced in transportation, communication, agriculture, education, health, defense—and jobs, is the product of investments in research and in the education of scientists and engineers.[2] One need only think about how different our daily lives would be without the technological innovations of the last century or so.

The products of the scientific, engineering, and health communities are, in fact, easily visible—the work-saving conveniences in our homes; medical help summoned in emergencies; the vast infrastructure of electric power, communication, sanitation, transportation, and safe drinking water we take for granted.[3] To many of us, that universe of products and services defines modern life, freeing most of us from the harsh manual labor, infectious diseases, and threats to life and property that our forebears routinely faced. Now, few families know the suffering caused by smallpox, tuberculosis, polio, diphtheria, cholera, typhoid, or whooping cough. All those diseases have been greatly suppressed or eliminated by vaccines (Figure 2-1).

We enjoy and rely on world travel, inexpensive and nutritious food, easy digital access to the arts and entertainment, laptop computers, graphite tennis rackets, hip replacements, and quartz watches. Box 2-2 lists a few examples of how completely we depend on scientific research and its application—from the mighty to the mundane.

Science and engineering have changed the very nature of work. At the beginning of the 20th century, 38% of the labor force was needed for farm work, which was hard and often dangerous. By 2000, research in plant and animal genetics, nutrition, and husbandry together with innovation in machinery had transformed farm life. Over the last half-century, yields per acre have increased about 2.5 times,[4] and overall output per person-hour has increased fully 10-fold for common crops, such as wheat and corn (Figure 2-2). Those advances have reduced the farm labor force to less than 3% of the population.

---

[1] Another point of view is provided in Box 2-1.

[2] S. W. Popper and C. S. Wagner. *New Foundations for Growth: The U.S. Innovation System Today and Tomorrow*. Santa Monica, CA: RAND Corporation. The authors state: "The transformation of the U.S. economy over the past twenty years has made it clear that innovations based on scientific and technological advances have become a major contributor to our national well being," p. ix.

[3] One study argues that "there has been more material progress in the United States in the 20th century than there was in the entire world in all the previous centuries combined," and most of the examples cited have their basis in scientific and engineering research. S. Moore and J. L. Simon. The greatest century that ever was: 25 miraculous trends of the last 100 years. *Policy Analysis* No. 364. Washington, DC: Cato Institute, Dec. 15, 1999.

[4] National Research Council. *Frontiers in Agricultural Research: Food, Health, Environment, and Communities*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2003.

Similarly, the maintenance of a house a century ago without today's labor-saving devices left little time for outside enjoyment or work to produce additional income.

The visible products of research, however, are made possible by a large enterprise mostly hidden from public view—fundamental and applied research, an intensively trained workforce, and a national infrastructure that provides risk capital to support the nation's science and engineering innovation enterprise. All that activity, and its sustaining public support, fuels the steady flow of knowledge and provides the mechanism for converting information into the products and services that create jobs and improve the quality of modern life. Maintaining that vast and complex enterprise during an age of competition and globalization is challenging, but it is essential to the future of the United States.

**Box 2-1**
**Another Point of View: Science, Technology and Society**

For all the practical devices and wonders that science and technology have brought to society, it has also created its share of problems. Researchers have had to reapply their skills to create solutions to unintended consequences of many innovations, including finding a replacement for chlorofluorocarbon-based refrigerants, eliminating lead emissions from gasoline-powered automobiles, reducing topsoil erosion caused by large-scale farming, researching safer insecticides to replace DDT, and engineering new waste-treatment schemes to reduce hazardous chemical effluents from coal power plants and chemical refineries.

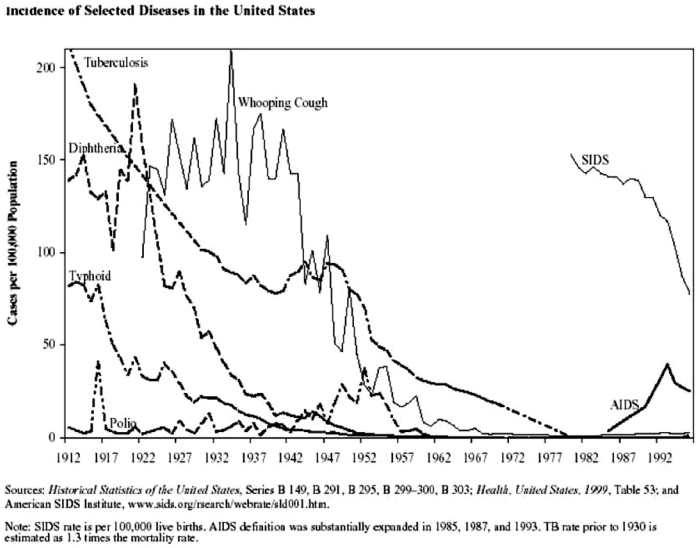


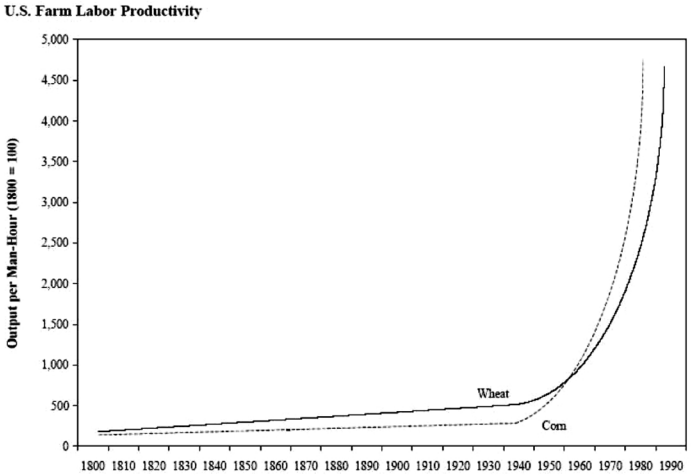

FIGURE 2-1 The 20th century saw dramatic reductions in disease incidence in the United States.
SOURCE: S. Moore, J. L. Simon and the CATO Institute. The greatest century that ever was: 25 miraculous trends of the past 100 years. *Cato Policy Analysis*, No. 364, Dec. 15, 1999, pp. 1-32. based on *Historical Statistic of the United States,* Series B 149,B 291,B299-300, B 303; *Health, United States, 1999, Table 53; and American SID Institute,* www.sids.org/research/webrates/sld001.htm
Note: SIDS rate is per 100,000 live births. AIDS definition was substantially expanded in 1985, 1987, and 1993. TB rate prior to 1930 is estimated as 1.3 times the mortality rate.

**BOX 2-2**
**Twenty Great Engineering Achievements of the 20th Century**

**Electricity:** steam turbine generators; long-distance, high-voltage transmission lines; pulverized coal; large-scale electric grids
**Automotive:** machine tools, assembly line, self-starting ignition, balloon tire, safety-glass windshield, electronic fuel injection and ignition, airbags, antilock brakes, fuel cells
**Aeronautics:** aerodynamic wing and fuselage design, metal alloys and composite materials, stressed-skin construction, jet propulsion, fly-by-wire control systems, collision warning systems, Doppler weather radar
**Water supply and distribution:** chlorination, wastewater treatment, dams, reservoirs, storage tanks, tunnel-boring equipment, computerized contaminant detection, desalination, large-scale distillation, portable ultraviolet devices
**Electronics:** triodes, semiconductors, transistors, molecular-beam epitaxy, integrated circuits, digital-to-optical recording (CD-ROM), microprocessors, ceramic chip carriers
**Radio and television:** alternators, triodes, cathode-ray tubes, super heterodyne circuits, AM/FM, videocassette recorders, flat-screen technology, cable and high-definition television, telecommunication satellites
**Agriculture:** tractors, power takeoff, rubber tires, diesel engines, combine, corn-head attachments, hay balers, spindle pickers, self-propelled irrigation systems, conservation tillage, global-positioning technology
**Computers:** electromechanical relays; Boolean operations; stored programs; programming languages; magnetic tape; software, supercomputers, minicomputers, and personal computers; operating systems; the mouse; the Internet
**Telephony:** automated switchboards, dial calling, touch-tone, loading coils, signal amplifiers, frequency multiplexing, coaxial cables, microwave signal transmission, switching technology, digital systems, optical-fiber signal transmission, cordless telephones, cellular telephones, voice-over-Internet protocols
**Air conditioning and refrigeration:** humidity-control technology, refrigerant technology, centrifugal compressors, automatic temperature control, frost-free cooling, roof-mounted cooling devices, flash-freezing
**Highways:** concrete, tar, road location, grading, drainage, soil science, signage, traffic control, traffic lights, bridges, crash barriers
**Aerospace:** rockets, guidance systems, space docking, lightweight materials for vehicles and spacesuits, solar power cells, rechargeable batteries, satellites, freeze-dried food, Velcro
**Internet:** packet-switching, ARPANET, e-mail, networking services, transparent peering of networks, standard communication protocols, TCP/IP, World Wide Web, hypertext, web browsers
**Imaging:** diagnostic x-rays, color photography, holography, digital photography, cameras, camcorders, compact disks, microprocessor etching, electron microscopy, positron-emission tomography, computed axial tomography, magnetic-resonance imaging, sonar, radar, sonography, reflecting telescopes, radiotelescopes, photodiodes, charge-coupled devices

**Household appliances:** gas ranges, electric ranges, oven thermostats, nickel-chrome resistors, toasters, hot plates, electric irons, electric motors, rotary fans, vacuum cleaners, washing machines, sewing machines, refrigerators, dishwashers, can openers, cavity magnetrons, microwave ovens
**Health technology:** electrocardiography; heart–lung machines; pacemakers; kidney dialysis; artificial hearts; prosthetic limbs; synthetic heart valves, eye lenses, replacement joints; manufacturing techniques and systems design for large-scale drug delivery; operating microscopy; fiber-optic endoscopy; laparoscopy; radiologic catheters; robotic surgery
**Petroleum and petrochemical technology:** thermal-cracking oil refining; leaded gasoline; catalytic cracking; oil byproduct compounds; synthetic rubber; coal tar distillation byproduct compounds, plastics, polyvinyl chloride, polyethylene, synthetic fibers; drilling technologies; drill bits; pipelines; seismic siting; catalytic converters; pollution-control devices
**Lasers and fiber optics:** maser, laser, pulsed-beam laser, compact-disk players, barcode scanners, surgical lasers, fiber optic communication
**Nuclear technology:** nuclear fission, nuclear reactors, electric-power generation, radioisotopes, radiation therapy, food irradiation
**High-performance materials:** steel alloys, aluminum alloys, titanium superalloys; synthetic polymers, Bakelite, Plexiglas; synthetic rubbers, neoprene, nylon; polyethylene, polyester, Saran Wrap, Dacron, Lycra spandex fiber, Kevlar; cement, concrete; synthetic diamonds; superconductors; fiberglass, graphite composites, Kevlar composites, aluminum composites

SOURCE: G. Constable and B. Somerville. *A Century of Innovation: Twenty Engineering Achievements That Transformed Our Lives.* Washington, DC: Joseph Henry Press, 2003.




Source: Authors' calculations from data in I. Welfeld, *Where We Live* (New York: Simon and Schuster, 1988).

FIGURE 2-2 From 1800 to 2000, there was a hundredfold increase in US farm labor output, much of it brought about by advancements in science and technology.
SOURCE: S. Moore, J. L. Simon and the CATO Institute. The greatest century that ever was: 25 miraculous trends of the past 100 years. *Cato Policy Analysis*, No. 364, Dec. 15, 1999, pp. 1-32.

**ENSURING ECONOMIC WELL-BEING**

Knowledge acquired and applied by scientists and engineers provides the tools and systems that characterize modern culture and the raw materials for economic growth and well-being. The knowledge density of modern economies has steadily increased, and the ability of a society to produce, select, adapt, and commercialize knowledge is critical for sustained economic growth and improved quality of life.[5,6] Robert Solow demonstrated that productivity depends on more than labor and capital.[7] Intangible qualities—research and development (R&D), or the acquisition and application of knowledge—are crucial.[8] The earlier national commitment to make a substantial public investment in R&D was based partly on that assertion (Figure 2-3).

Since Solow's pioneering work, the economic value of investing in science and technology has been thoroughly investigated. Published estimates of return on investment (ROI) for publicly funded R&D range from 20% to 67% (Table 2-1).Although most early studies focused on agriculture, recent work shows high rates of return for academic science research in the aggregate (28%),[9] and slightly higher rates of return for pharmaceutical products in particular (30%).[10] Modern agriculture continues to respond, and the average return on investment for public funding of agricultural research for member countries of the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development is estimated at 45%.[11]

Starting in the middle 1990s, investments in computers and information technology started to show payoffs in US productivity. The economy grew faster and employment rose more than had seemed possible without fueling inflation. Policy-makers previously focused almost entirely on changes in demand as the determinant of inflation, but the surge in productivity showed that changes on the supply side of the economy could be just as important and in some cases even more important.[12] Such data serve to sustain the US commitment to invest substantial public funds in science and engineering.[13]

---

[5] L. B. Holm-Nielsen. Promoting science and technology for development: The World Bank's Millennium Science Initiative. Paper delivered on April 30, 2002, to the First International Senior Fellows meeting, The Wellcome Trust, London, UK.

[6] The Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) concludes that "underlying long-term growth rates in OECD economies depend on maintaining and expanding the knowledge base. *Technology, Productivity, and Job Creation: Best Policy Practices.* Paris, France: OECD, 1998, p. 4.

[7] R. M. Solow." Technical change and the aggregate production function." *The Review of Economics and Statistics* 39(1957):312-320 and R,M Solow. "Investment and Technical Progress", 1960, in Arrow, Karlin & Suppes, editors, *Mathematical Models in Social Sciences.* For more on Solow's work, see http://nobelprize.org/economics/laureates/1987/index.html.

[8] R. M. Solow. "Technical change and the aggregate production function." *The Review of Economics and Statistics* 39(1957):312-320.

[9] E. Mansfield. Academic research and industrial innovation. *Research Policy* 20(1991):1-12.

[10] A. Scott, S. Grové, A. Geuna, S. Brusoni, and E. Steinmeuller. The economic returns of basic research and the benefits of university-industry relationships. Report for the office of Science and Techology. Science and Technology Policy Research: Brighton, 2001. Available at http://www.sussex.ac.uk/spru/documents/review_for_ost_final.pdf

[11] R. E. Evenson. Economic impacts of agricultural research and extension. *In Handbook of Agricultural Economics Vol 1*, eds. B. L. Gardner and G. C. Rausser, pp. 573-628 Rotterdam: North Holland, 2001

[12] E. L. Andrews. The doctrine was not to have one; Greenspan will leave no road map to his successor. New York Times, Aug. 26, 2005. p. C1.

[13] Committee on Science, US House of Representatives. Unlocking Our Future: Toward a New National Science Policy (the "Ehlers Report").Washington, DC: US Congress, 1998. The report notes that "the growth of economies

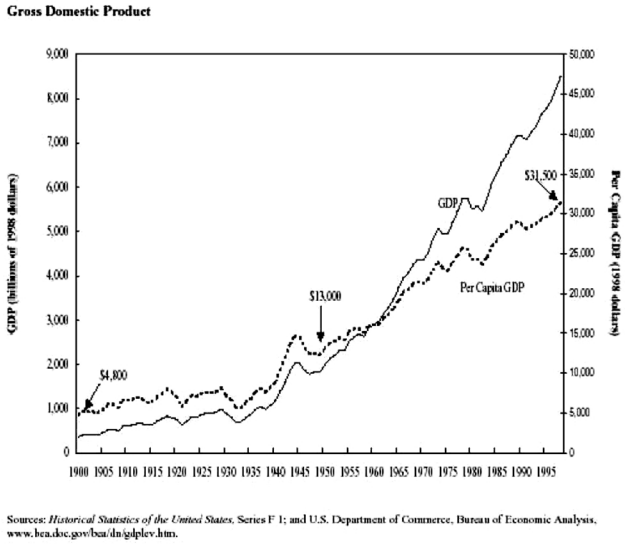



FIGURE 2-3 In the 20th century, US per capita gross domestic product (GDP) rose almost sevenfold.
SOURCE: S. Moore, J. L. Simon and the CATO Institute. The greatest century that ever was: 25 miraculous trends of the past 100 years. *Cato Policy Analysis,* No. 364, Dec. 15, 1999, pp. 1-32.

Of equal interest are studies of the rate of return on *private* investments in R&D.[14] The return on investment to the nation is generally higher than is the return to individual investors (Table 2-2).[15] One reason that knowledge tends to spill over to other people and other businesses, so research results diffuse to the advantage of those who are prepared to apply them. Those "social rates of return"[16] on investments in R&D are reported to range from 20% to 100%, with

throughout the world since the industrial revolution began has been driven by continual technological innovation through the pursuit of scientific understanding and application of engineering solutions" (p. 1).

[14] Council of Economic Advisors. Supporting Research and Development to Promote Economic Growth: The Federal Government's Role. Washington, DC: White House, October 1995.

[15] Center for Strategic and International Studies. *Global Innovation / National Competitiveness.* Washington, DC: CSIS, 1996.

[16] "Social rate of return" is defined in C. I. Jones and J. C. Williams. Measuring the social return to R&D. Working Paper 97002. Stanford University Department of Economics. 1997. Available at http://www.econ.stanford.edu/faculty/workp/swp97002.pdf#search='R&D%20social%20rate%20of%20return. They state, "One can think of knowledge as an 'asset' purchased by society, held for a short period of time to reap a dividend, and then sold. The return can then be thought of as a sum of a dividend and a capital gain (or loss) . . . The dividend associated with an additional idea consists of two components. First, the additional knowledge directly

an average of nearly 50%.[17] As a single example, in recent years, graduates from one US university have founded 4,000 companies, created 1.1 million jobs worldwide, and generated annual sales of $232 billion.[18]

**TABLE 2-1 Annual Rate of Return on Public R&D Investment**

| Studies | Subject | Rate of return to public R&D |
|---|---|---|
| Griliches (1958) | Hybrid corn | 20-40% |
| Peterson (1967) | Poultry | 21-25% |
| Schmitz-Seckler (1979) | Tomato harvester | 37-46% |
| Griliches (1968) | Agricultural research | 35-40% |
| Evenson (1968) | Agricultural research | 28-47% |
| Davis (1979) | Agricultural research | 37% |
| Evenson (1979) | Agricultural research | 45% |
| Davis and Peterson (1981) | Agricultural research | 37% |
| Mansfield (1991) | All academic science research | 28% |
| Huffman and Evenson (1993) | Agricultural research | 43-67% |
| Cockburn and Henderson (2000) | Pharmaceuticals | 30% + |

Scott AH et al (2001) compiled following Salter and Martin (2001). [Sources: Griliches (1995), OTA (1986), and further additions by Scott et al. Salter and Martin point out that many of these authors caution about the reliability of the numerical results obtained.]

SOURCE: A. Scott, G. Steyn, A. Geuna, S. Brusoni, and W.E. Steinmueller. The economic returns of basic research and the benefits of university-industry relationships. Report for the UK Government Office of Science and Techology. SPRU (Science and Technology Policy Research), University of Sussex: Brighton, 2001. Available at http://www.sussex.ac.uk/spru/documents/review_for_ost_final.pdf.

raises the productivity of capital and labor in the economy. Second, the additional knowledge changes the productivity of future R&D investment because of either knowledge spillovers or because subsequent ideas are more difficult to discover" (pp. 6-8).+

[17] M. I. Nadiri. *Innovations and technological spillovers.* Economic Research Reports, RR 93-31. New York: C. V. Starr Center for Applied Economics. New York University Department of Economics, August 1993. Nadiri adds, "The channels of diffusion of the spillovers vary considerably and their effects on productivity growth are sizeable. These results suggest a substantial underinvestment in R&D activity."

[18] W. M. Ayers. *MIT: The Impact of Innovation*. Boston, MA: Bank Boston, 2002. Available at http://web.mit.edu/newsoffice/founders/Founders2.pdf

**TABLE 2-2 Annual Rate of Return on Private R&D Investment**

| Researcher | Estimated Rate of Return % | |
|---|---|---|
| | Private | Social |
| Nadiri (1993) | 20–30 | 50 |
| Mansfield (1977) | 25 | 56 |
| Terleckyj (1974) | 29 | 48–78 |
| Sveikauskas (1981) | 7–25 | 50 |
| Goto-Suzuki (1989) | 26 | 80 |
| Bernstein-Nadiri (1988) | 10–27 | 11–111 |
| Scherer (1982, 1984) | 29–43 | 64–147 |
| Bernstein-Nadiri (1991) | 15–28 | 20–110 |

SOURCE: Center for Strategic and International Studies. *Global Innovation/National Competitiveness.* Washington, DC: CSIS, 1996.

Although return-on-investment data vary from study to study, most economists agree that federal investment in research pays substantial economic dividends. For example, Table 2-3 shows the large number of jobs and revenues created by information technology manufacturing and services—an industry that did not exist until the recent past. The value of public and private investment in research is so important that has been described as "fuel for industry".[19] The economic contribution of science and technology can be understood by examining revenue and employment figures from technology- and service-based industries, but the largest economic influence is in the productivity gains that follow the adoption of new products and technologies.[20]

[19] Council of Economic Advisers, 1995 Economic report of the President. United States Government Printing Office, Washington, DC.
[20] D. J. Wilson. Is embodied technological change the result of upstream R&D? Industry-level evidence. *Review of Economic Dynamics* 5(2)(2002):342-362.

**TABLE 2-3 Sales and Employment in the Information Technology (IT) Industry, 2000**

| | NAICS[a] Code | Sales Revenues ($ billions) | Number of Jobs (1,000) |
|---|---|---|---|
| **IT Manufacturing** | | | |
| Computer and peripheral equipment | 3341 | $110.0 | 190 |
| Communications equipment | 3342 | 119.3 | 291 |
| Software | 5112 | 88.6 | 331 |
| Semiconductors and other electronic components | 3344 | 168.5 | 621 |
| **IT Services** | | | |
| Data processing services | 5142 | 42.9 | 296 |
| Telecommunications services | 5133 | 354.2 | 1,165 |

SOURCE: National Research Council. *Impact of Basic Research on Industrial Performance*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2003.

## CREATING NEW INDUSTRIES

The power of research is demonstrated not only by single innovations but by the ability to create entire new industries—some of them the nation's most powerful economic drivers.

Basic research on the molecular mechanisms of DNA has produced a new field, molecular biology, and recombinant-DNA technology, or gene splicing, which in turn has led to new health therapies and the enormous growth of the biotechnology industry. The potential of those developments for health and health care is only beginning to be realized.

Studies of the interaction of light with atoms led to the prediction of stimulated emission of coherent radiation. That, together with the quest for a device to produce high frequency microwaves, led to the development of the laser, a ubiquitous device with uses ranging from surgery, precise machining, and nuclear fusion to sewer alignment, laser pointers, and CD and DVD players.

Enormous economic gains can be traced to research in harnessing electricity, which grew out of basic research (such as that conducted by Michael Faraday and James Maxwell) and applied research (such as that by Thomas Edison and George Westinghouse). Furthermore, today's semiconductor integrated circuits can be traced to the development of transistors and integrated circuits, which began with basic research into the structure of the atom and the development of quantum mechanics by Paul Dirac, Wolfgang Pauli, Werner Heisenberg, and Erwin Schrodinger[21] and was realized through the applied research of Robert Noyce and Jack Kilby.

In virtually all those examples, the original researchers did not—or could not—foresee the consequences of the work they were performing, let alone its economic implications. The fundamental research typically was driven by the desire to answer a specific question about nature or about an application of technology. The greatest influence of such work often is

[21] J. I. Friedman. Will innovation flourish in the future? *Industrial Physicist*, 8(6)(Dec. 2002/Jan. 2003): 22-25.

removed from its genesis,[22] but the genius of the US research enterprise has been its ability to afford its best minds the opportunity to pursue fundamental questions (Figures 2-4, 2-5, 2-6).

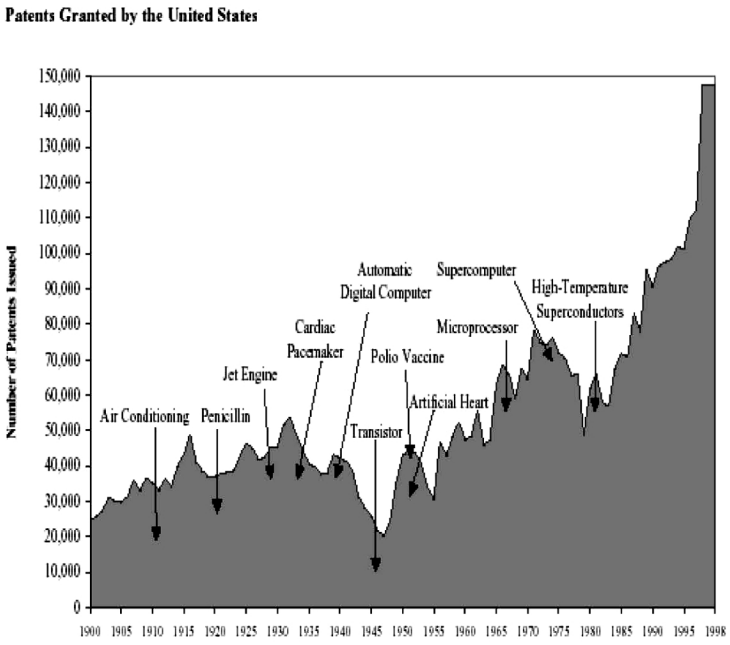



FIGURE 2-4 Examples of critical technologies patented by US researchers.

SOURCE: S. Moore, J. L. Simon and the CATO Institute. The greatest century that ever was: 25 miraculous trends of the past 100 years. *Cato Policy Analysis,* No. 364, Dec. 15, 1999, pp. 1-32.

[22] See, for example, National Research Council. *Evolving the High Performance Computing and Communications Initiative to Support the Nation's Information Infrastructure.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1995.

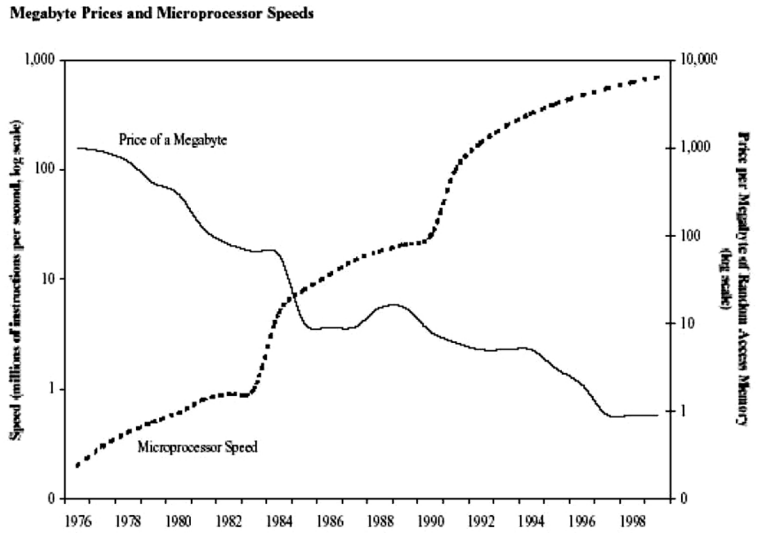



FIGURE 2-5 Moore's law maintained: megabyte prices decrease as microprocessor speeds increase.

Source: S. Moore, J. L. Simon and the CATO Institute. The greatest century that ever was: 25 miraculous trends of the past 100 years. *Cato Policy Analysis*, No. 364, Dec. 15, 1999, pp. 1-32.

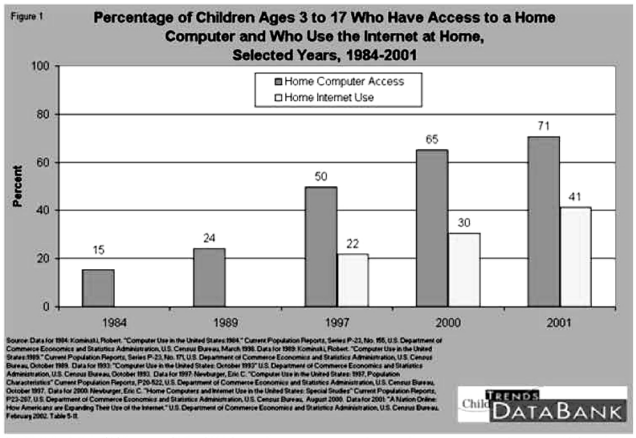



FIGURE 2-6 Many US children have access to and use computers and the Internet.

SOURCE: Child Trends Data Bank. Available at http://www.childtrendsdatabank.org/figures/78-Figure-2.gif.

## PROMOTING PUBLIC HEALTH

One straightforward way to view the practical application of research is to compare US life expectancy (Figure 2-7) in 1900 (47.3 years)[23] with that in 1999 (77.0 years).[24] Our cancer and heart-disease survival rates have improved (Figure 2-8), and accidental-death rates and infant and maternal mortality (Figure 2-9) have fallen dramatically since the early 20th century.[25]

Improvements in the nation's health are, of course, attributable to many factors, some as straightforward as the engineering of safe drinking-water supplies. Also responsible are the large-scale production, delivery, and storage of nutritious foods and advances in diagnosis, pharmaceuticals, medical devices, and treatment methods.[26]

Medical research also has brought economic benefit. The development of lithium as a mental-health treatment, for example, saves $9 billion in health costs each year. Hip - fracture prevention in postmenopausal women at risk for osteoporosis saves $333 million annually. Treatment for testicular cancer has resulted in a 91% remission rate and annual savings of $166 million.[27]

---

[23] US Bureau of the Census. *Historical Statistics of the United States, Colonial Times to 1970*. Part 1, Series B 107-15, p. 55.

[24] US Census Bureau. *Statistical Abstract of the United States: 2000*. Table 116, p. 84.

[25] F. Hobbs and N. Stoops. *Demographic Trends in the 20th Century*. US Census Bureau, CENSR-4. Washington, DC: US Bureau of the Census, November 2004.

[26] National Academy of Engineering. *A Century of Innovation* Washington, DC: National Academy Press. (2003)

[27] W.D. Nordhaus. 1999. *The Health of Nations: The Contribution of Improved Health and Living Standards*. Albert and Mary Lasker Foundation. Available at http://www.laskerfoundation.org/reports/pdf/economic.pdf.; Exceptional Returns: The Economic Value of America's Investment in Medical Research. 2000.

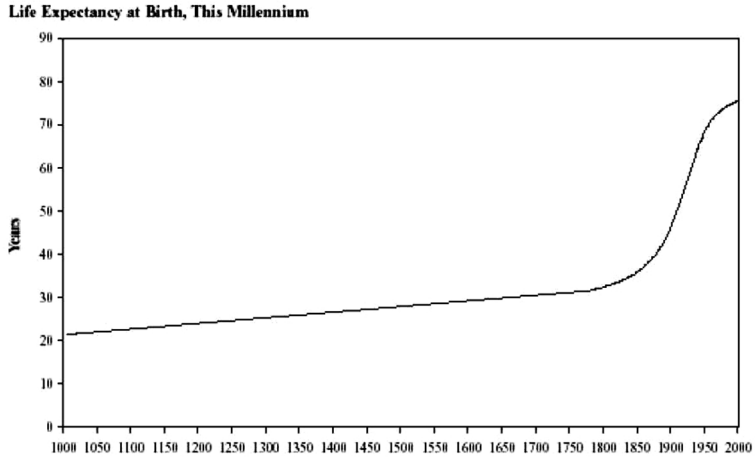



**FIGURE 2-7a** Life expectancy has increased, particularly in the last century.
SOURCE: S. Moore, J. L. Simon and the CATO Institute. The greatest century that ever was: 25 miraculous trends of the past 100 years. *Cato Policy Analysis*, No. 364, Dec. 15, 1999, pp. 1-32.
.

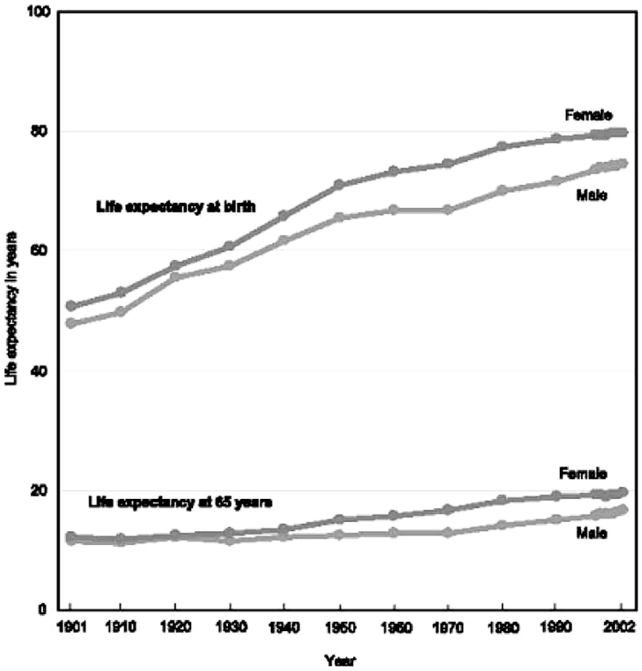



**FIGURE 2-7b** Life expectancy has increased in the United States, particularly in the last century.
SOURCE: Center for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Health Statistics, National Vital Statistic System.

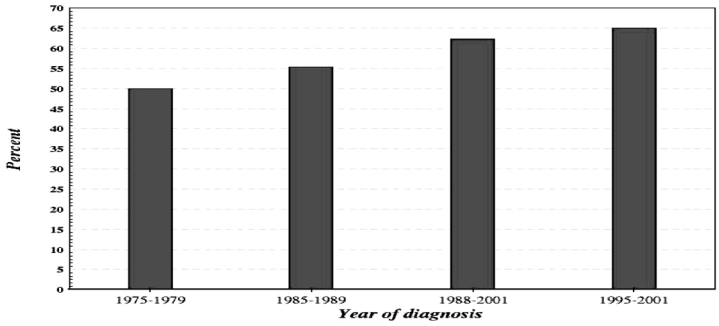



FIGURE 2-8a Relative cancer survival rates.
SOURCE: Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program (www.seer.cancer.gov) SEER*Stat Database: Incidence - SEER 9 Regs Public-Use, Nov 2004 Sub (1973-2002), National Cancer Institute, DCCPS, Surveillance Research Program, Cancer Statistics Branch, released April 2005, based on the November 2004 submission.

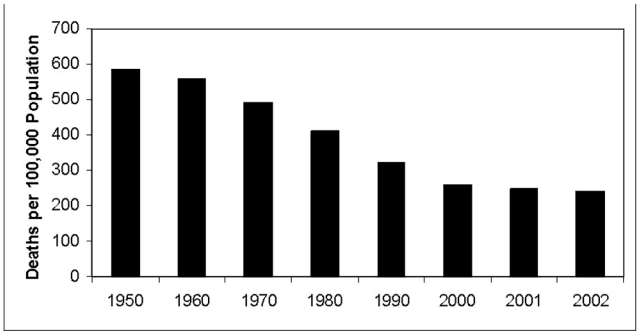



FIGURE 2-8b Heart disease mortality.
SOURCE: National Center for Health Statistics, United States, 2005, Table 29
http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/hus/hus05.pdf

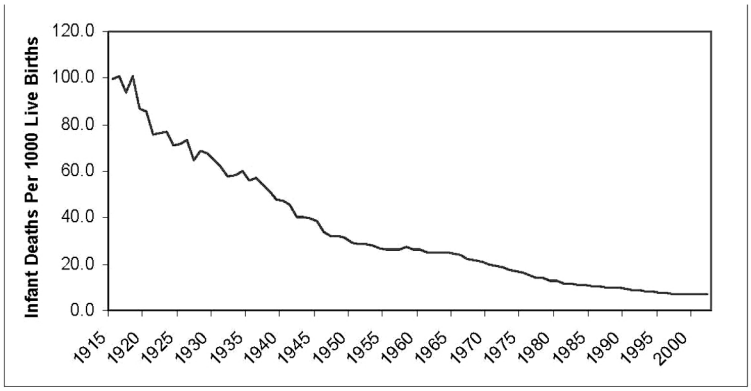



FIGURE 2-9a Infant mortality.

SOURCE: Deaths: Final Data for 2002. Table 11. NVSR Volume 53, Number 5. 116
http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/products/pubs/pubd/nvsr/53/53-21.htm

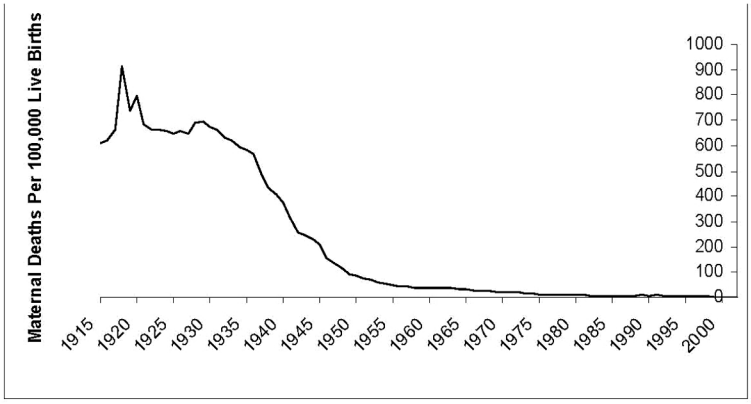



FIGURE 2-9b Maternal mortality.

SOURCE: Deaths: Final Data for 2002. Table 11. NVSR Volume 53, Number 5. 116
http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/products/pubs/pubd/nvsr/53/53-21.htm

## CARING FOR THE ENVIRONMENT

Advances in our understanding of the environment have led to better systems to promote human health and the health of our planet. Weather satellites, global positioning systems, and airborne-particle measurement technologies also have helped us to monitor and mitigate unexpected environmental problems. Unfortunately, some of these problems have been the consequence of unexpected side-effects of technological advances. Fortunately, in many cases additional technological understanding was able to overcome unintended consequences without forfeiting the underlying benefits.

### Water Quality

Early in the 20th century, when indoor plumbing was rare, wastewater often was dumped directly into streets and rivers. Waterborne diseases—cholera, typhoid fever, dysentery, and diarrhea—were rampant and among the leading causes of death in the United States. Research and engineering for modern sewage treatment and consequent improvements in water quality have dramatically affected public and environmental health. Water-pollution controls have mitigated declines in wildlife populations, and research into wetlands and riparian habitats has informed the process of engineering water supplies for our population.

### Automobiles and Gasoline

In the 1920s, engineers discovered that adding lead to gasoline caused it to burn more smoothly and improved the efficiency of engines. However, they did not predict the explosive growth of the automobile industry. The widespread use of leaded gasoline resulted in harmful concentrations of lead in the air,[28] and by the 1970s the danger was apparent. New formulations developed by petrochemical researchers not requiring the use of lead have resulted in vastly reduced emissions and improved air quality (Figure 2-10). Parallel advances in petroleum refining and the adoption and improvement of catalytic converters increased engine efficiency and removed harmful byproducts from the combustion process. Those achievements have reduced overall automobile emissions by 31%, and carbon monoxide emissions per automobile are 85% lower than in the 1970s.[29]

### Refrigeration

In the early 1920s, scientists began working on nontoxic, nonflammable replacements for ammonia and other toxic refrigerants then in use. In 1928, Frigidaire synthesized the world's first chlorofluorocarbon (CFC), trademarked as Freon. By the 1970s, however, it had become clear that CFCs contribute to losses in the atmosphere's protective layer of ozone. In 1974, scientists identified a chain reaction that begins with CFCs and sunlight and ends with the production of

---

[28] As noted in Unlocking Our Future, "Pursuing freedom requires confidence about our ability to manage the challenges raised by our increasing technological capabilities."
United States Congress, House of Representatives Committee on Science. Unlocking our future: toward a new national science policy. September 24, 1998. p. 38. Available at Http://www.house.gov/science/science_policy_report.htm.

[29] National Energy Policy Development Group. *National Energy Policy*. US Government Printing Office. Washington DC. May 2001.

chlorine atoms. A single chlorine atom can destroy as many as 100,000 ozone molecules. The consequences could be long-lasting and severe, including increased cancer rates and global warming.[30]

In 1987, the Montreal Protocol began a global phase-out of CFC production. That in turn provided the market force that fueled the development of new, non-CFC refrigerants. Although the results of CFC use provide an example of the unintended negative consequences of technology, the response demonstrates the influence of science in diagnosing problems and providing effective solutions.

**Agricultural Mechanization**

Advances in agriculture have vastly increased farm productivity and food production. The food supply for the world's population of more than 6 billion people comes from a land area that is 80% of what was used to feed 2.5 billion people in 1950. However, injudicious application of mechanization also led to increased soil erosion. Since 1950, 20% of the world's topsoil has been lost—much of it in developing countries. Urban sprawl, desertification, and over-fertilization have reduced the amount of arable land by 20%.[31] Such improvements as conservation tillage, which includes the use of sweep plows to undercut wheat stalks but leave roots in place, have greatly reduced soil erosion caused by traditional plowing and have promoted the conservation of soil moisture and nutrients. Advances in agricultural biotechnology have further reduced soil erosion and water contamination because they have reduced the need for tilling and for use of pesticides.

[30] National Academy of Sciences. *Ozone Depletion, Beyond Discovery Series*. April 1996.
[31] P. Raven. Biodiversity and Our Common Future. 2005. Bulletin of the American Academy of Arts & Sciences 58:20-24.

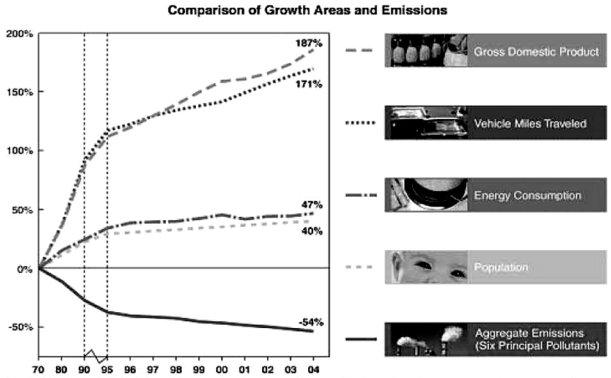



FIGURE 2-10 US air quality has improved despite increases in gross domestic product, vehicle miles traveled, and energy consumption since the 1970s.

SOURCE: US Environmental Protection Agency. *Air Emissions Trends - Continued Progress Through 2004*. Available at http://www.epa.gov/airtrends/2005/econ-emissions.html.

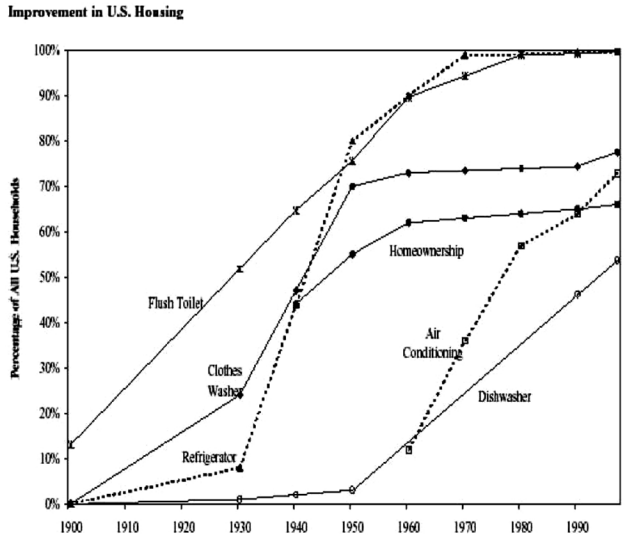
## IMPROVING THE STANDARD OF LIVING

Improvements attributable to declining mortality and better environmental monitoring are compounded by gains made possible by other advances in technology. The result has been a general enhancement in the quality of life in the United States as viewed by most observers.

### Electrification and Household Appliances

Advances in technology in the 20th century resulted in changes at home and in the workplace. In 1900, less than 10% of the nation was electrified; now virtually every home in the United States is wired (Figure 2-11).[32] Most of us give little thought to the vast array of electrical appliances that surround us.

[32] US Department of Labor. *Report on the American Workforce, 2001*. Department of Labor. Washington, DC. Available at http://www.bls.gov/opub/rtaw/pdf/rtaw2001.pdf.



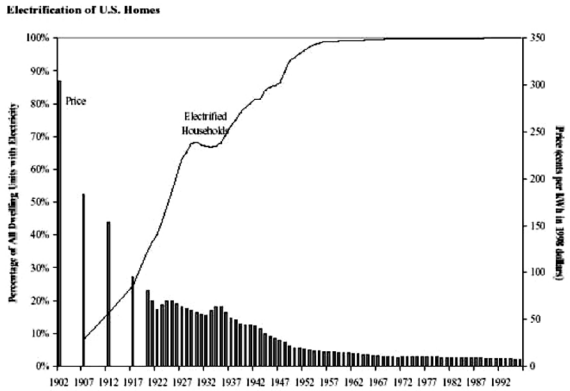




FIGURE 2-11 The number of US homes with electricity, plumbing, refrigeration, and basic appliances soared in the middle of the 20th century.
SOURCE: S. Moore,J. L. Simon and the CATO Institute. The greatest century that ever was: 25 miraculous trends of the past 100 years. *Cato Policy Analysis,* No. 364, Dec. 15, 1999, pp. 1-32.

### Transportation

As workers left farms to move to cities, transportation systems developed to get them to work and home again. Advances in highway construction in turn fueled the automotive industry. In 1900, one-fourth of US households had a horse, and many in urban areas relied on trolleys and trams to get to work and market. Today, more than 90% of US households own at least one car (Figure 2-12). Improvements in refrigeration put a refrigerator in virtually every home, and the ability to ship food across the country made it possible to keep those refrigerators stocked. The increasing speed, safety, and reliability of aircraft spawned yet another global industry that spans commercial airline service and overnight package delivery.

### Communication

At the beginning of the 20th century slightly more than 1 million telephones were in use in the United States. The dramatic increase in telephone calls per capita over the following decades was made possible by advances in cable bundling, fiber optics, touch-tone dialing, and cordless communication (Figure 2-13). Cellular-telephone technology and voice-over-Internet protocols have added even more communication options. At the beginning of the 21st century, there were more than 300 million telephone communication devices and cellular telephone lines in the United States.

Radio and television revolutionized the mass media, but the Internet has provided altogether new ways of communicating. Interoperability between systems makes it possible to use one device to communicate by telephone, over the Internet, in pictures, in voice, and in text. The "persistent presence" that those devices make possible and the eventual widespread availability of wireless and broadband services will spawn another revolution in communication. At the same time, new R&D will be needed to reduce the energy demands of the new devices and their sensor-net support infrastructures.

### Disaster Mitigation

Structural design, electrification, transportation, and communication come together in coordinating responses to natural disasters. Earthquake engineering and related technologies now make possible quake-resistant skyscrapers in high-risk zones. The 1989 Loma Prieta earthquake in central California caused 60 deaths and more than $6 billion in property damage, but occupants of the 49-story Transamerica Pyramid building in San Francisco were unharmed, as was the building itself, even though its top swayed from side to side by more than 1 ft for more than a minute.[33] In December 1988, an earthquake in Georgia in the former USSR of the same magnitude as Loma Prieta led to the deaths of 22,000 people—illustrating the impact of the better engineered building protection available in California.

---

[33] US Geological Survey. *Building Safer Structures. Fact Sheet 167-95*. Reston, VA: USGS, June 1998. Available at http://quake.wr.usgs.gov/prepare/factsheets/SaferStructures/SaferStructures.pdf.

A US Geological Survey radio system increases safety for cleanup crews during aftershocks. After Loma Prieta, workers in Oakland were given almost a half hour notice of aftershocks 50 miles away, thanks to the speed differential between radio and seismic waves.[34]

Weather prediction, enabled by satellites and advances in imaging technology, has helped mitigate losses from hurricanes. Early-warning systems for tornadoes and tsunamis offer another avenue for reducing the effects of natural disasters—but only when coupled with effective on-the-ground dissemination. As is the case for many technologies, this last step of getting a product implemented, especially in underserved areas or developing countries, can be the most difficult. Furthermore, as hurricane Katrina in New Orleans demonstrated, early warning is not enough—sound structural design and a coordinated human response are also essential.

[34] US Geological Survey. *Speeding Earthquake Disaster Relief. Fact Sheet 097-95*. Reston, VA: USGS, June 1998. Available at http://quake.wr.usgs.gov/prepare/factsheets/Mitigation/Mitigation.pdf.

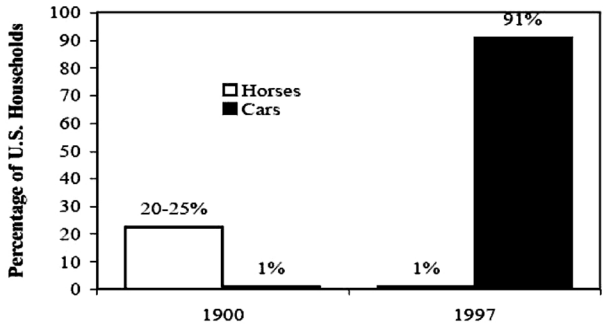



FIGURE 2-12a Ground transportation: horses to horsepower, 1900 and 1997.

SOURCE: S. Moore and J. L. Simon. The greatest century that ever was: 25 miraculous trends of the past 100 years. *Cato Policy Analysis,* No. 364, Dec. 15, 1999, pp. 1-32.

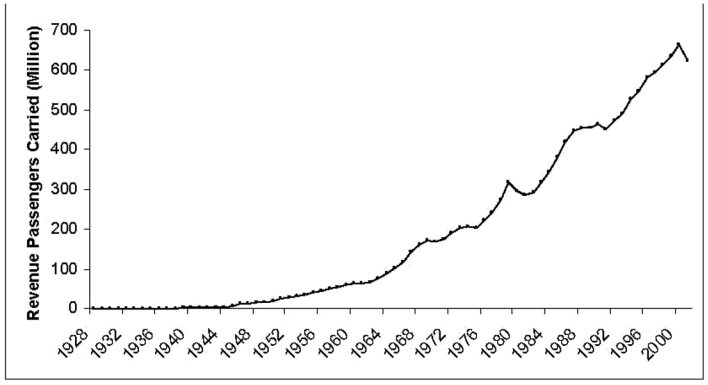



FIGURE 2-12b Air travel, United States, 1928-2002.

SOURCE: Source: Statistical Abstract of the United States US Census Bureau
http://www.census.gov/statab/hist/HS-41.pdf

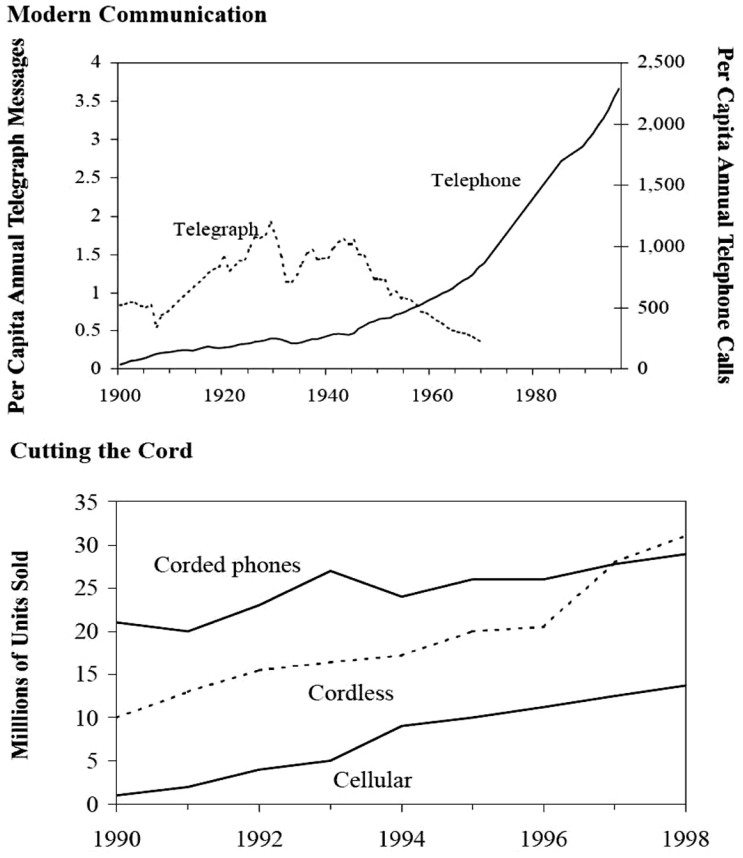



FIGURE 2-13 More telephones than ever are used to make more calls per capita, thanks to enormous technological advances in a host of disciplines.
SOURCE: S. Moore, J. L. Simon and the CATO Institute. The greatest century that ever was: 25 miraculous trends of the past 100 years. *Cato Policy Analysis,* No. 364, Dec. 15, 1999, pp. 1-32.

**Energy Conservation**

The last century saw demonstrations of the influence of technology in every facet of our lives. It also revealed the urgent need to use resources wisely. Resource reduction and recycling are expanding across the United States. Many communities, spurred by advances in recycling technologies, have instituted trash-reduction programs. Industries are producing increasingly energy-efficient products, from refrigerators to automobiles. Today's cars use about 60% of the gasoline per mile driven that was used in 1972. With the advent of hybrid automobiles, further gains are now being realized. Similarly, refrigerators today require one-third of the electricity that they needed 30 years ago. In the 1990s, manufacturing output in the United States expanded by 41%, but industrial consumption of electricity grew by only 11%. The introduction and use of energy-efficient products have enabled the US economy to grow by 126% since 1973 while energy use has increased by only 30% (Figure 2-14).[35] Those improvements in efficiency are the result of work in a broad spectrum of science and engineering fields.

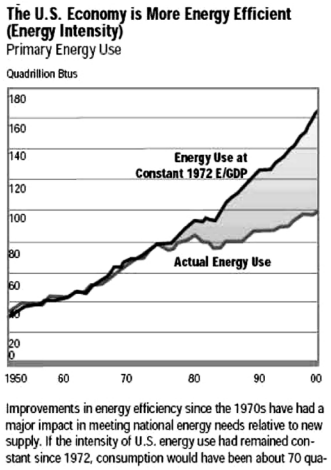



FIGURE 2-14 The efficiency of energy use has improved substantially over the last 3 decades.
SOURCE: National Energy Policy Development Group. National Energy Policy. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, May 2001.

[35] National Energy Policy Development Group. National Energy Policy. Washington, DC: DOE, May 2001.

## UNDERSTANDING HOW PEOPLE LEARN

Today, an extraordinary scientific effort is being devoted to the mind and the brain, the processes of thinking and learning, the neural processes that occur during thought and learning, and the development of competence. The revolution in the study of the mind that has occurred in recent decades has important implications for education.[36] A new theory of learning now coming into focus will lead to very different approaches to the design of curriculum, teaching, and assessment from those generally found in schools today.

Research in the social sciences has increased understanding of the nature of competent performance and the principles of knowledge organization that underlie people's abilities to solve problems in a wide variety of fields, including mathematics, science, literature, social studies, and history. It has also uncovered important principles for structuring learning experiences that enable people to use what they have learned in new settings. Collaborative studies of the design and evaluation of learning environments being conducted by cognitive and developmental psychologists and educators are yielding new knowledge about the nature of learning and teaching in a variety of settings.

## SECURING THE HOMELAND

Scientific and engineering research demonstrated its essential role in the nation's defense during World War II. Research led to the rapid development and deployment of the atomic bomb, radar and sonar detectors, nylon that revolutionized parachute use, and penicillin that saved battlefield lives. Throughout the Cold War the United States relied on a technological edge to offset the larger forces of its adversaries and thus generously supported basic research. The US military continues to depend on new and emerging technologies to respond to the diffuse and uncertain threats that characterize the 21st century and to provide the men and women in uniform with the best possible equipment and support.[37]

Just as Vannevar Bush described a tight linkage between research and security,[38] the Hart-Rudman commission a half-century later argued that security can be achieved only by funding more basic research in a variety of fields.[39] In the wake of the 9/11 attacks and the anthrax mailings, it is clear that innovation capacity and homeland security are also tightly coupled. There can be no security without the economic vitality created by innovation, just as there can be no economic vitality without a secure environment in which to live and work.[40] Investment in R&D for homeland security has grown rapidly; however, most of it has been in the form of development of new technologies to meet immediate needs.

Human capacity is as important as research funding. As part of its comprehensive overview of how science and technology could contribute to countering terrorism, for example, the National Research Council recommended a human-resources development program similar

---

[36] National Research Council. *How People Learn*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2000.
[37] Joint Chiefs of Staff. Joint Vision 2020. Washington, DC: Department of Defense, 2000; Department of Defense. Quadrennial Defense Review Report. Washington, DC: Department of Defense, 2001.
[38] Vannevar Bush report. Science: The Endless Frontier. Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office, 1945.
[39] U.S. Commission on National Security. Road Map for National Security: Imperative for Change. Washington, DC: The Commission. 2001.
[40] Council on Competitiveness, Innovation America. Washington DC: Council on Competitiveness. 2005 p. 19.

to the post-Sputnik National Defense Education Act (NDEA) of 1958.[41] A Department of Defense proposal to create and fund a new NDEA is currently being examined in Congress.[42]

## CONCLUSION

The science and technology research community and the industries that rely on that research are critical to the quality of life in the United States. Only by continuing investment in advancing technology—through the education of our children, the development of the science and engineering workforce, and the provision of an environment conducive to the transformation of research results into practical applications—can the full innovative capacity of the United States be harnessed and the full promise of a high quality of life realized.

[41] National Research Council. *Making the Nation Safe: The Role of Science and Technology in Countering Terrorism*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2001.
[42] See H.R. 1815, National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2006, Sec. 1105. Science, Mathematics, and Research for Transformation (SMART) Defense Education Program—National Defense Education Act (NDEA), Phase I. Introduced to the House on Apr. 26, 2005; on Jun. 6, 2005 referred to Senate committee; status as of Jul. 26, 2005: received in the Senate and read twice and referred to the Committee on Armed Services.

# 3

## HOW IS AMERICA DOING NOW IN SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY?

By most available criteria, the United States is still the undisputed leader in the performance of basic and applied research (see Box 3-1). In addition, many international comparisons put the United States as a leader in applying research and innovation to improve economic performance. In the latest IMD *World Competitiveness Yearbook*, the United States ranks first in economic competitiveness, followed by Hong Kong and Singapore.[1] The survey compares economic performance, government efficiency, business efficiency, and infrastructure. Larger economies are further behind, with Zhejiang (China's wealthiest province), Japan, the United Kingdom, and Germany ranked 20 though 23, respectively.[2] An extensive review by the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) concludes that since World War II, US leadership in science and engineering has driven its dominant strategic position, economic advantages, and quality of life.[3]

Researchers in the United States lead the world in the volume of articles published and in the frequency with which those papers are cited by others.[4] US-based authors were listed on one-third of all scientific articles worldwide in 2001.[5] Those publication data are significant because they reflect original research productivity and because the professional reputations, job prospects, and career advancement of researchers depend on their ability to publish significant findings in the open peer-reviewed literature.

The United States also excels in higher education and training. A recent comparison concluded that 38 of the world's 50 leading research institutions—those that draw the greatest interest of science and technology students—are in the United States.[6] Since World War II, the United States has been the destination of choice for science and engineering graduate students and for postdoctoral scholars choosing

---

[1] IMD International. World Competitiveness Yearbook. 2005: Lausanne, Switzerland, 2005. The United States leads the world (with a score of 100), followed in order by Hong Kong (93), Singapore, Iceland, Canada, Finland, Denmark, Switzerland, Australia, and Luxembourg (80).

[2] Mainland China ranks 31st.

[3] Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. Science, Technology and Industry Scoreboard, 2003, R&D Database. Available at http://www1.oecd.org/publications/e-book/92-2003-04-1-7294/. The scoreboard uses four indicators in its ranking: the creation and diffusion of knowledge; the information economy; the global integration of economic activity; and productivity and economic structure. In the United States, investment in knowledge—the sum of investment in R&D, software, and higher education—amounted to almost 7% of GDP in 2000, well above the share for the European Union or Japan.

[4] D. A. King. The scientific impact of nations. *Nature* 430(6997)(July 15, 2004):311-316.

[5] National Science Board. S&E Indicators, 2004. Chap. 5. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004.

[6] Shanghai's Jiao Tong University Institute of Higher Education. Academic Ranking of World Universities, 2004. Available at http://ed.sjtu.edu.cn/rank/2004/2004Main.htm. The ranking emphasizes prizes, publications, and citations attributed to faculty and staff, as well as the size of institutions. The Times Higher Education Supplement need cit. has provided similar results in comparing universities worldwide.

to study abroad. Our nation—about 6% percent of the world's population—has for decades produced more than 20% of the world's doctorates in science and engineering.[7]

Because of globalization in the fields of science and engineering, however, it is difficult to compare research leadership among countries. Research teams commonly include members from several nations, and industries have dispersed many activities, including research, across the globe.

## SCIENCE AND ENGINEERING ADVANTAGE

The strength of science and engineering in the United States rests on many advantages: the diversity, quality, and stability of its research and teaching institutions; the strong tradition of public and private investment in research and advanced education; the quality of academic personnel; the prevalence of English as the language of science and engineering; the availability of venture capital; a relatively open society in which talented people of any background or nationality have opportunities to succeed; the; US custom, unmatched in other countries, of providing positions for postdoctoral scholars;[8] and the strength of the US peer-review and free-enterprise systems in weeding out noncompetitive academic and business pursuits.

In addition to such tangible advantages, US leadership might also be attributed to many favorable public policy priorities: research activities funded by public and private sources that have led to new industries, products, and jobs; an economic climate that encourages investment in technology-based companies; an outward-looking international economic policy; and support for lifelong learning.[9]

However, things are changing, as noted in *Innovate America,* a 2004 report from the Council on Competitiveness:[10]

- Innovation is diffusing at an ever-increasing rate. It took 55 years for automobile use to spread to a quarter of the US population, 35 years for the telephone, 22 years for the radio, 16 years for the personal computer, 13 years for the cell phone, and just 7 years for the World Wide Web once the Internet had matured (through technology and policy developments) to the point of takeoff.
- Innovation is increasingly multidisciplinary and technologically complex, arising from the intersection of different fields and spheres of activity.
- Innovation is collaborative. It requires active cooperation and communication among scientists and engineers and between creators and users.
- Innovation is creative. Workers and consumers demand ever more new ideas, technologies, and content.
- Innovation is global. Advances come from centers of excellence around the world and are prompted by the demands of billions of customers.

Central to the strength of US innovation is our tradition of public funding for science and engineering research. Graduate education in the United States is supported mainly by federal grants from the National Science Foundation (NSF) and the National Institutes of Health (NIH) to faculty researchers,

---

[7] National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004..p. 2-36.
[8] COSEPUP. International Students and Postdocs, p. 81. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press.
[9] K. H. Hughes. Facing the global competitiveness challenge. *Issues in Science and Technology* 21(summer 2005):72-78.
[10] Council on Competitiveness, National Innovation Initiative. Innovate America. Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004, p. 6.

buttressed by a smaller volume of federally funded fellowships. One study reported that 73% of applicants for US patents said that publicly funded research formed part or all of the foundation for their innovations.[11] Much of the nation's research in engineering and the physical sciences is performed in federal laboratories, part of whose mission is to assist the commercialization of new technology.

## OTHER NATIONS ARE FOLLOWING OUR LEAD—AND CATCHING UP[12]

It is no surprise that as the value of research becomes more widely understood, other nations are strengthening their own programs and institutions. If imitation is flattery, we can take pride in watching as other nations eagerly adopt major components of the US innovation model.[13] Their strategies include the willingness to increase public support for research universities, to enhance protections for intellectual property rights, to promote venture capital activity, to fund incubation centers for new businesses, and to expand opportunities for innovative small companies.[14]

Many nations have made research a high priority. To position the European Union (EU) as the most competitive knowledge-based economy in the world and enhance its attractiveness to researchers worldwide, EU leaders are urging that, by 2010, member nations spend 3% of gross domestic product (GDP) on research and development (R&D).[15] In 2000, R&D as a percentage of GDP was 2.72 in the United States, 2.98 in Japan, 2.49 in Germany, 2.18 in France, and 1.85 in the United Kingdom.[16] Many nations also are investing more aggressively in higher education and increasing their public investments in R&D (Figure 3-1). Those investments are stimulating growth in the number of research universities in those countries; the number of researchers; the number of papers listed in the *Science Citation Index;* the number of patents awarded; and the number of doctoral degrees granted (Table 3-1, Figures 3-2, 3-3, 3-4).[17]

---

[11] M. I. Nadiri. Innovations and Technical Spillovers. Working Paper 4423. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research, 1993.

[12] For another point of view, see Box 3-2.

[13] Council on Competitiveness, National Innovation Initiative. Innovate America. Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004, p. 6.

[14] K. H. Hughes. Facing the global competitiveness challenge. *Issues in Science and Technology* Vol. 21 No. 4(Summer 2005):72-78. See also M. Enserink. France hatches 67 California wannabes. Science 309(2005):547.

[15] R. M. May. Raising Europe's game. Nature 430(2004):831; P. Busquin. Investing in people. Science 303(2004):145.

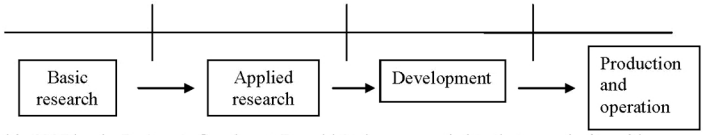
[16] National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004, Appendix Table 4-43.

[17] D. Hicks. 2004. Asian countries strengthen their research. Issues in Science and Technology Vol.20 No. 4(Summer 2004):75-78. The author notes that the number of doctoral degrees awarded in China has increased 50-fold since 1986.

**BOX 3-1**
**Pasteur's Quadrant**

The writers of this report, like many others, faced a semantic question in the discussions of different kinds of research. *Basic research,* presumably pursued for the sake of fundamental understanding but without thought of use, generally is distinguished from *applied research,* which is pursued to convert basic understanding into practical use.

But that classification quickly breaks down in the real world because "basic" discoveries often emerge from "applied" or even "developmental" activities:




In his 1997 book, *Pasteur's Quadrant,*[a] Donald Stokes responded to that complexity with a more nuanced classification that describes research according to intention. He distinguishes four types:

- Pure basic research, performed with the goal of fundamental understanding (such as Bohr's work on atomic structure).
- Use-inspired basic research, to pursue fundamental understanding but motivated by a question of use (such as Pasteur's work on the biologic bases of fermentation and disease).
- Pure applied research, motivated by use but not seeking fundamental understanding (such as that leading to Edison's inventions).
- Applied research that is not motivated by a practical goal (such as plant taxonomy).

In Stokes's argument, research is better depicted as a box than as a line:

| | | Consideration of use? No | Consideration of use? Yes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Quest for fundamental understanding? | Yes | Pure basic research (Bohr) | Use-inspired basic research (Pasteur) |
| | No | | Pure applied research (Edison) |

In contrast to the basic–applied dichotomy, Stokes's taxonomy explicitly recognizes research that is simultaneously inspired by a use but that also seeks fundamental knowledge, which he calls "Pasteur's quadrant".

[a] D. Stokes. *Pasteur's Quadrant.* Washington, DC: Brookings Institution Press, 1997.

**BOX 3-2**
**Another Point of View: US Competitiveness**

"Americans are having another Sputnik moment", writes Robert J. Samuelson, "one of those periodic alarms about some foreign technological and economic menace. It was the Soviets in the 1950s and early 1960s, the Germans and Japanese in the 1970s and 1980s, and now it's the Chinese and Indians."[a] Sputnik moments come when the nation worries about its scientific and technological superiority and its ability to compete globally. And, according to Samuelson, the nation tends to be overly concerned.

Sputnik led to the theory of a "missile gap that turned out to be a myth. The competitiveness crisis of the 1980s suggested that Japan would surge ahead of us because they were better savers, innovators, workers, and managers. But in 2004, per capita US income averaged $38,324 compared to $26,937 for Germany and $29,193 for Japan."

Similarly, Samuelson argues that our current fears are unfounded, another "illusion" in which "a few selective happenings" are transformed into a "full blown theory of economic inferiority or superiority." He argues that low wages and rising skills in China and India could cost us some jobs, but that US gains and losses in response to the rising economic power of those countries will tend to balance out.

Samuelson indicates that he believes "the apparent American deficit in scientists and engineers is also exaggerated." He notes that only about one-third of our science and engineering graduates work in science and engineering occupations and that if there were a shortage, salaries for those jobs would increase and scientists and engineers would return to them. Of greater importance, Samuelson concludes, is that the United States must continue to draw on the strengths that overcome its weaknesses: "ambitiousness; openness to change (even unpleasant change); competition; hard work; and a willingness to take and reward risk".

[a] R.J. Samuelson. Sputnik scare, updated. Washington Post, Aug. 26, 2005, pA27

**TABLE 3-1 Publications and Citations Weighted by Total Population and Number of University Researchers**

| | United States | European Union |
|---|---|---|
| Publications | 1,265,608 | 1,347,985 |
| Publications/population | 4.64 | 3.60 |
| Publications/researcher | 6.80 | 4.30 |
| Researchers/population | 0.68 | 0.84 |
| Citations | 10,850,549 | 8,628,152 |
| Citations/population | 39.75 | 23.03 |
| Citations/researcher | 58.33 | 27.52 |
| Top 1% publications | 23,723 | 14,099 |
| Top 1% publications/population | 0.09 | 0.04 |
| Top 1% publications/researcher | 0.13 | 0.04 |

Number of publications, citations, and top 1% publications refers to 1997–2001. Population (measured in thousands) and number of university researchers (measured in full-time equivalents) refers to 1999. Each cited paper is allocated once to every author. European Union totals are adjusted to account for duplications by removing papers with multiple EU national authorship to give an accurate net total.
SOURCE:G. Dosi, P. Llerena, and M. S. Labini. Evaluating and Comparing the Innovation Performance of the United States and the European Union. Expert report prepared for the Trend Chart Policy Workshop (Jun. 29, 2005). Available at http://trendchart.cordis.lu/scoreboards/scoreboard2005/pdf/EIS%202005%20EU%20versus%20US.pdf.

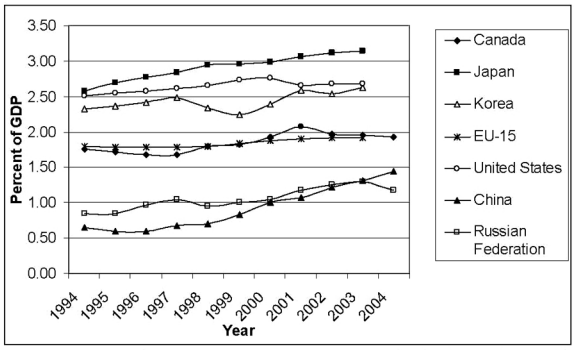



**FIGURE 3-1** R&D expenditures as a percentage of GDP are beginning to rise worldwide
SOURCE: Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. Main Science and Engineering Indicators. Paris: OECD, 2005.

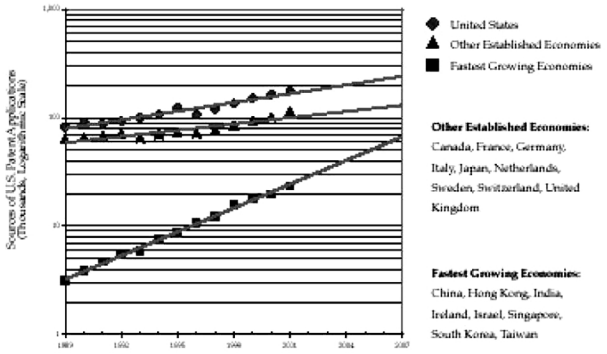



**FIGURE 3-2** US patent applications.

Source: Task Force on the Future of American Innovation based on data from National Science Foundation. Science and Engineering Indicators 2004, Appendix Table 6-11. Arlington: APS Office and Public Affairs.

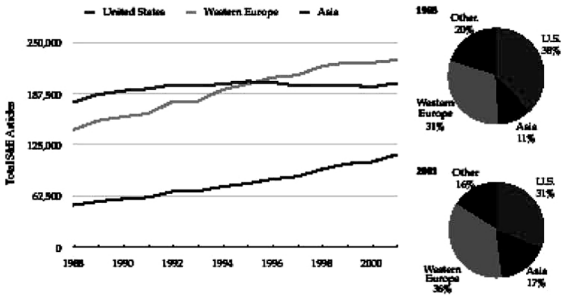



**FIGURE 3-3** Total science and engineering articles with international coauthors. Note: Internationally coauthored articles were counted more than once for each country where work was performed represented on the author list. So if an article was written by authors from the US and Switzerland, it would be included in the count for both countries.

SOURCES: Task Force on the Future of American Innovation based on data from National Science Foundation. Science and Engineering Indicators 2004, Appendix Table 6-11. Arlington: APS Office and Public Affairs. National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004*. NSB 04-1. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004, Table 5-30.

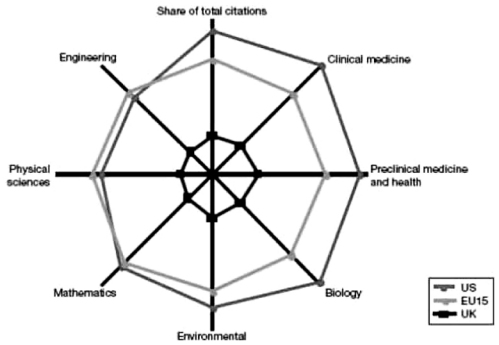



**FIGURE 3-4** Disciplinary strengths in the United States, the 15 European Union nations in the comparator group (EU15), and the United Kingdom. The distance from the origin to the data point is proportional to citation share.
SOURCE: D. A. King. The scientific impact of nations. *Nature* 430(2004) 311-316. Data are from citations in ISI Thompson.

China is emulating the US system as well. The Chinese Science Foundation is modeled after our National Science Foundation, and peer review methodology and startup packages for junior faculty are patterned on US practices. In China, national spending in the past few years for all R&D activities rose 500%, from $14 billion in 1991 to $65 billion in 2002. US R&D spending increased 140%, from $177 billion to $245 billion, in the same period.[18]

The rapid rise of South Korea as a major science and engineering power has been fueled by the establishment of the Korea Science Foundation—funded primarily by the national sports lottery—to enhance public understanding, knowledge, and acceptance of science and engineering throughout the nation.[19] Similarly, the government uses contests and prizes specifically to stimulate the scientific enterprise and public appreciation of scientific knowledge.

Other nations also are spending more on higher education and providing incentives for students to study science and engineering. To attract the best graduate students from around the world, universities in Japan, Switzerland, and elsewhere are offering science and engineering courses in English. In the 1990s, both China and Japan increased the number of students pursuing science and engineering degrees and there was steady growth in South Korea.[20]

Some consequences of this new global science and engineering activity are already apparent—not only in manufacturing but also in services. India's software services exports rose from essentially zero in 1993 to about $10 billion in 2002.[21] In broader terms, the US share of global exports has fallen in the past 20 years from 30% to 17%, while the share for emerging countries in Asia grew from 7% to 27%.[22] The United States now has a negative trade balance even for high-technology products (Figure 3-5). That deficit raises concern about our competitive ability in important areas of technology.[23]

Although US scientists and engineers still lead the world in publishing results, new trends emerge from close examination of the data. From 1988 to 2001, world publishing in science and engineering increased by almost 40%,[24] but most of that increase came from Western Europe, Japan, and several emerging East Asian nations (South Korea, China, Singapore, and Taiwan). US publication in science and engineering has remained essentially constant since 1992.[25] Since 1997, researchers in the 15 EU countries have published more papers than have their US counterparts, and the gap in citations between the United States and other countries has narrowed steadily.[26] The global increase in the production of scientific knowledge eventually benefits all countries. Yet trends in publication could be a troubling bellwether about our competitive position in the global science community.

---

[18] OECD. Science, Technology and Industry Outlook 2004. Paris, France: OECD, 2004, p. 190. The United States spends significantly more than China on R&D in gross terms and in percentage of R&D. However, if China's US$65 billion in R&D spending were adjusted based on purchasing power parity, it would approach US$300 billion.
[19] Korean Ministry of Science and Engineering (MOST). Available at http://www.most.go.kr/most/english/link_2.jsp.
[20] National Science Board. S&E Indicators, 2004. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004, p. 2-35.
[21] S. S. Athreye. The Indian software industry. Carnegie Mellon Software Industry Center Working Paper 03-04. Pittsburg, PA : Carngie-Mellon University, Oct. 2003.
[22] For 2004, the dollar value of high-technology imports was $560 billion; the value of high-technology exports was $511 billion.
[23] D. R. Francis. U.S. runs a high-tech trade gap. Christian Science Monitor. Vol 96. No. 131. (June 2, 2004) p.1-1.
[24] National Science Board. S&E Indicators, 2004. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004, Chap. 5.
[25] Ibid., Table 5-30.
[26] D. A. King. The scientific impact of nations. *Nature* 430(6997)(July 15, 2004):311-316.

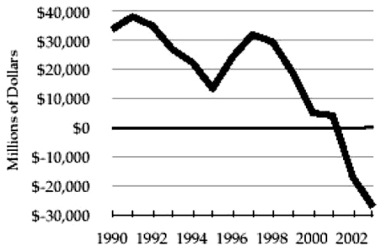



**FIGURE 3-5** United States trade balance for high-technology products, 1990-2003.
SOURCE: Task Force on the Future of American Innovation based on data from U.S. Census Bureau Foreign Trade Statistics, *U.S. International Trade in Goods and Services.* Complied by APS Office of Public Affairs.

## INTERNATIONAL COMPETITION FOR TALENT

The graduate education of our scientists and engineers largely follows an apprenticeship model. Graduate students and postdoctoral scholars gain direct experience under the guidance of veteran researchers. The important link between graduate education and research that has been forged through a combination of research assistantships, fellowships, and traineeships has been tremendously beneficial to students and researchers and is a critical component of our success in the last half-century.

One measure of other nations' successful adaptation of the US model is doctoral production, which increased rapidly around the world but most notably in China and South Korea (Figure 3-6). In South Korea, doctorate production rose from 128 in 1975 to 2,865 in 2001. In China, doctorate production was essentially zero until 1985, but 15 years later, 7,304 doctorates were conferred. In 1975, the United States conferred 59% of the world's doctoral degrees in science and engineering; by 2001, our share had fallen to 41%. China's 2001 portion was 12%.[27]

Another challenge for US research institutions is to attract the overseas students on whose talents the nation depends. The US research enterprise, especially at the graduate and postdoctoral levels, has benefited from the work of foreign visitors and immigrants. They came first from Europe, fleeing fascism, and more recently they have come from China, India, and the former Soviet Union, seeking better education and more economic opportunity. International students account for nearly half the US doctorates awarded in engineering and computer science[28] (Figure 3-7). Similarly, more than 35% of US engineering and computer science university faculty are foreign-born.[29] According to US Census data from 2000, the proportion of doctoral-level employees in the science and engineering research labor force is about equivalent to the percentage of doctorates produced by US universities.

---

[27] S National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Appendix Table 2-38.
[28] National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004.
[29] Ibid.

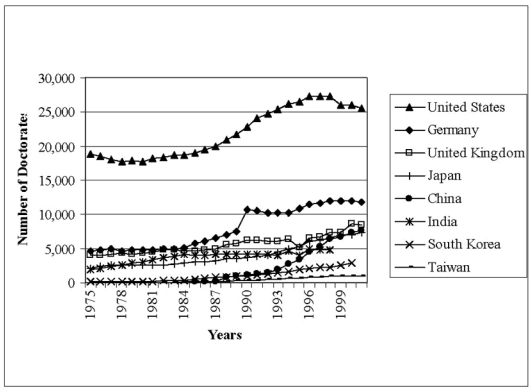



**FIGURE 3-6** US doctorate production in science and engineering is decreasing; EU and Asian production is rising but is still well below US levels.
SOURCE: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004.* NSB 04-1. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004, Table 5-30.

Many nations are seeking to reap the benefits of advanced education, including strong positive effects on GDP growth. They are working harder to attract international students and to encourage the movement of skilled personnel into their countries.[30]

- China implemented an "opening-up" policy in 1978 and began to send large numbers of students and scholars abroad to gain the skills they need to bolster that country's economic and social development.
- India liberalized its economy in 1991 and started encouraging students to go abroad for advanced education and training. Since 2001, the Indian government has been providing money ($5 billion in fiscal year 2005) for "soft loans", which require no collateral, to students who wish to travel abroad for their education. In 2002, India surpassed China as the largest exporter of graduate students to the United States.[31]
- The United Kingdom's points-based Highly Skilled Migrant Programme, which began in the mid-1990s, has increased the number of work permits issued to skilled workers.
- The Irish government permits relatively easy immigration of skilled workers in information technology and biotechnology through intra-company transfers from non-Irish to Irish locations.

[30] Conference Board of Canada. The Economic Implications of International Education for Canada and Nine Comparator Countries: A Comparison of International Education Activities and Economic Performance. Ottawa: Department of Foreign Affairs and International Trade, 1999.
[31] Institute for International Education. Open Doors Report on International Educational Exchange. New York: Institute for Internal Education, 2004.

- Several EU countries and the EU itself have programs that facilitate networking among students and researchers working abroad, providing contact information, collaborative possibilities, and funding and job opportunities in the EU. The German Academic Exchange Service has launched GAIN (German Academic International Network); the Italian Ministry of Foreign Affairs has launched DAVINCI, an Internet database that tracks the work of Italian researchers overseas; and the EU has its Researcher's Mobility Portal.
- Nigeria and other oil-producing nations use petroleum profits to support the overseas education of thousands of students.

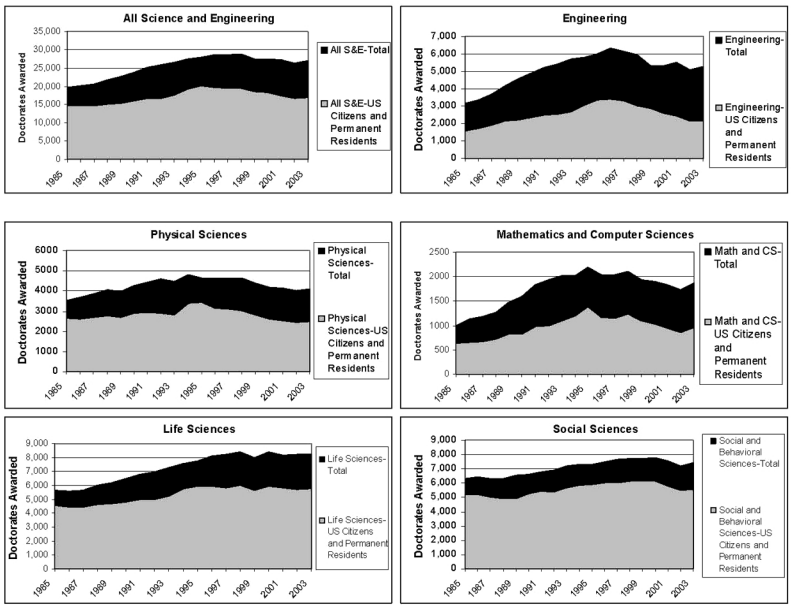



**FIGURE 3-7** Doctorates awarded by US institutions, by field and citizenship status, 1985-2003. US citizens and permanent residents earn about 62% of the doctorates in all fields of science and engineering, about 60% in the physical sciences, and 41% of those awarded in engineering and the combined fields of mathematics and computer sciences.
SOURCE: National Science Foundation. 2005. Survey of Earned Graduates. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation

In addition to sending students abroad for training, emerging economic powers, notably India and China, have lured their skilled scientists and engineers to return home by coupling education-abroad programs with strategic investments in the science and engineering infrastructure—in essence sending students away to gain skills and providing jobs to draw them back.[32]

The global competition for talent was already under way when the events of September 11, 2001, disrupted US travel and immigration plans of many international graduate students, postdoctoral researchers, and visiting scholars. The intervening years have seen security-related changes in federal visa and immigration policy that, although intended to restrict the illegal movements of only a few, have had a wider effect on many foreign-born graduate students and postdoctoral scholars who either were already in the United States or were contemplating studying here. Many potential visitors who in the past might have found the United States welcoming them for scientific meetings and sabbaticals now look elsewhere or stay home.[33] Much of this is to our detriment: Hosting international meetings and visiting researchers is essential to staying at the forefront of international science.

The flow of graduate students and postdoctoral researchers is unlikely to be curtailed permanently, at least as long as the world sees the United States as the best place for science and engineering education, training, and technology-based employment (Table 3-2). If that perception shifts, and if international students find equally attractive educational and professional opportunities in other countries, including their own, the difficulty of visiting the United States could gain decisive importance.[34]

**TABLE 3-2 Change in Applications, Admissions, and Enrollment of International Graduate Students, 2003-2005**

| | Total | Engineering | Life Sciences | Physical Sciences |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Applications | –28% (–5%) | –36% (–7%) | –24% (–1%) | –26% (–3%) |
| Admissions | –18% | –24% | –19% | –17% |
| Enrollment | –6% | –8% | –10% | +6% |

NOTE: There have been large declines in applications and admissions and a more moderate decrease in enrollment. The admissions data for the 2005 academic year are shown in parentheses.
SOURCES: H. Brown and M. Doulis. *Findings from the 2005 CGS International Graduate Survey I.* Washington, DC: Council of Graduate Schools, 2005. H. Brown. *Council of Graduate Schools Finds Decline in New International Graduate Student Enrollment for the Third Consecutive Year.* Washington, DC: Council of Graduate Schools, Nov. 4, 2004.

[32] R. A. Mashelkar. India's R&D: Reaching for the top. Science 307(2005):1415-1417; L. Auriol. Why do we need indicators on careers of doctorate holders? Workshop on User Needs for Indicators on Careers of Doctorate Holders. OECD: Paris, Sept. 27, 2004. Available at http://www.olis.oecd.org/olis/2004doc.nsf.
[33] COSEPUP.Policy Implications of International Graduate Students and Postdoctoral Scholars, p. 61. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press.
[34] Ibid., p. 79.

**STRAINS ON RESEARCH IN THE PRIVATE SECTOR**

A large fraction of all those with doctorates in science and engineering in the United States—more than half in some fields—find employment in industry (Figure 3-8). There they make major contributions to innovation and economic growth. US industry has traditionally excelled at innovation and at capitalizing on the results of research.[35] For decades after World War II, corporate central research laboratories paid off in fledgling technologies that grew into products or techniques of profound consequence. Researchers at Bell Laboratories pursued lines of groundbreaking research that resulted in the transistor and the laser, which revolutionized the electronics industry and led to several Nobel prizes.[36]

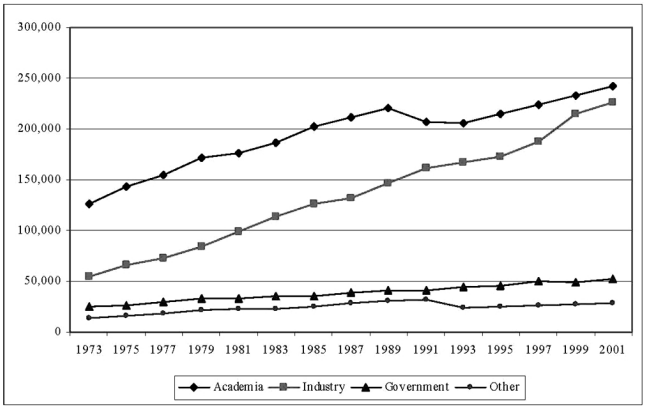



**FIGURE 3-8** The majority of people with science or engineering doctorates obtain nonacademic jobs. About equal numbers work in academic and industrial settings, and about 15% work in government or other sectors.
SOURCE: National Science Foundation. Survey of Doctoral Recipients. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004.

Although industry-funded R&D has increased steadily overall (Figure 3-9a), that new money has gone overwhelmingly to activities that are near-term and incremental rather than to long-term or discovery-oriented research and R&D as a share of gross domestic product has declined (Figure 3-9b). Several explanations are offered for industry's turn away from fundamental research. First, the Bell Laboratories

[35] Steven W. Popper and Caroline S. Wagner. New foundations for growth: The US innovation system today and tomorrow. RAND: Arlington, VA, January 2002.
The authors note the following advantages of industry: rapid responses, flexibility and adaptability, efficiency, fast entry and exit, smooth capital flows, and mobility.
[36] United States Congress, House of Representatives Committee on Science. Unlocking our future: toward a new national science policy. September 24, 1998. p. 38 Available at http://www.house.gov/science/science_policy_report.htm.

model was supported by funding from a monopoly that now is dismantled and no longer relevant to the organization of science and engineering research in the United States. Second, Wall Street analysts increasingly focus on quarterly financial results and assign little value to long-term (and therefore risky) research investments or to social returns. Third, companies cannot always fully capture a return that justifies long-term research with results that often spill over to other researchers, sometimes including those of competitors. Fourth, private-sector research is more fragmented across national boundaries in the era of globalization. Capital follows opportunity with little attention to geopolitical borders—this may lead more multinational companies to pursue opportunities outside the United States.

The National Science Board[37] has made the following observations:

- Two-thirds of the R&D performed overseas in 2000 by US-owned companies ($13.2 billion of $19.8 billion) was conducted in 6 countries: the United Kingdom, Germany, Canada, Japan, France, and Sweden. At the same time, emerging markets—such as those in Singapore, Israel, Ireland, and China—were increasingly attracting R&D activities by subsidiaries of US companies. In 2000, each of those emerging markets reached US-owned R&D expenditures of $500 million or more, considerably more than in 1994.
- Three manufacturing sectors dominated overseas R&D activity by US-owned companies: transportation equipment, computer and electronic products, and chemicals and pharmaceuticals. The same industries accounted for most foreign-owned R&D in the United States, implying a high degree of R&D globalization in those industries.

As some large companies reduce their investment in basic research, smaller research-based enterprises often assume risk as the only way to break into a competitive market. Those startup companies commonly rely on the initial capital provided by their investors to finance early research, coupled with the granting of potential future financial gains in the form of stock options to compensate employees. If the money runs out, they can seldom interest venture capital firms until they have grown considerably larger. Many of those companies thus expire before reaching commercialization.[38]

The overall amount of venture capital invested also has collapsed since the stock market decline of 2000, sinking in 2002 to one-fifth the amount invested in 2000[39] (Figure 3-10). Venture capital investments in US companies have since stabilized at around $20 billion in 2003 and 2004[40], just one-fifth of their 2000 peak but well above 1998 funding. Led by a resurgence in late-stage financing, total venture capital investment rose 10.5% to $20.9 billion in 2004, according to the MoneyTree Survey by PricewaterhouseCoopers, Thomson Venture Economics, and the National Venture Capital Association (NVCA).[41] With stock values rising, the climate for initial public offerings and acquisitions has improved, attracting capital from investors considering exit opportunities.

---

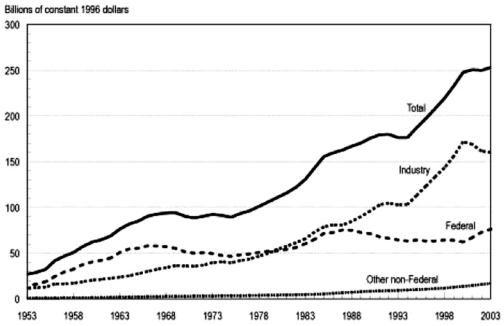
[37] National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. p. 4-65.

[38] National Research Council. Board on Science, Technology, and Economic Policy. *The Small Business Innovation Research Program: An Assessment Of The Department Of Defense Fast Track Initiative*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press. 2000. Available at: http://books.nap.edu/catalog/9985.html
Committee on Science, US House of Representatives. Unlocking Our Future: Toward a New National Science Policy (the "Ehlers Report").Washington, DC: US Congress, 1998. p. 39

[39] National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Appendix Table 6-15.

[40] National Venture Capital Association. http://www.nvca.org/ffax.html

[41] PricewaterhouseCoopers. "MoneyTree Survey." Available at http://www.pwcmoneytree.com/moneytree/index.jsp. Accessed December 20, 2005.




SOURCE: National Science Foundation, Division of Science Resources Statistics, *National Patterns of R&D Resources*, annual series. See appendix tables B-2 and B-22.

**FIGURE 3-9a** US R&D funding, By Source of Funds, 1953-2003.
SOURCE: NSF Division of Science Resources Statistics. *National Patterns of Research Development Resources,* annual series. Appendix table B-2 and B-22. http://www.nsf.gov/statistics/nsf05308/secta.htm

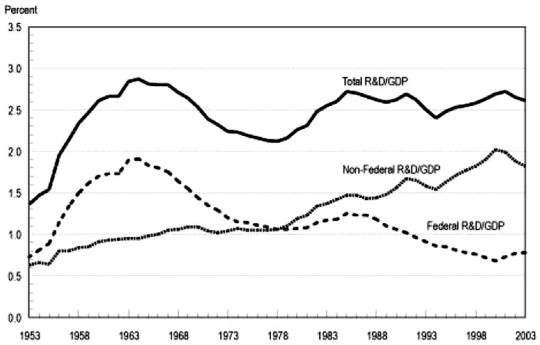



**FIGURE 3-9b** R&D shares of US gross domestic product: 1953-2003.
SOURCE: NSF Division of Science Resources Statistics. *National Patterns of Research Development Resources,* annual series. Appendix table B-9. http://www.nsf.gov/statisics nsf05308/sectd.htm

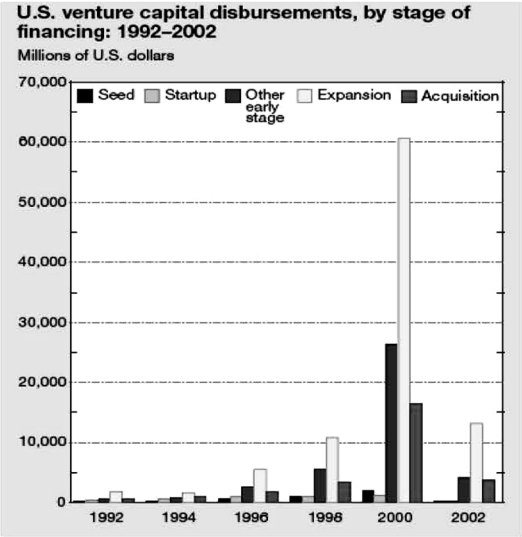



**FIGURE 3-10** Venture capital funding is returning to pre-2000 levels.
SOURCES: Thompson Venture Economics, special tabulations, June 2003. See appendix table 6-16. Science & Engineering Indicators-2004

Another positive sign is a recent increase in capital raised by venture funds, suggesting an improving attitude toward risk taking. According to NVCA and Thomson Venture Economics,[42] venture funds raised $17.6 billion in 2004, more than in the prior 2 years combined (albeit at just one-sixth their 2000 peak). There is a strong funding pipeline to support venture capital investments in 2005, especially early-stage investments with particular emphasis on biotechnology.

In addition to private venture capital, small companies can obtain federal tax incentives and other help through the research and experimentation (R&E) tax credit (Table 3-3) and the federal Small Business Innovation Research (SBIR) program and Advanced Technology Program[43] (Table 3-4).

The US workforce faces the additional pressure of competing with workers in nations with lower wage structures. A US company can hire five chemists in China or at least that many engineers (depending on the field) in India for the cost of one employee of equivalent training in the United States.[44] The upshot has been the growing trend of corporations moving work offshore because of wage disparities (Figure 3-11).Wage differences at the factory and clerical levels are even more pronounced.

A recent McKinsey and Company study[45] reported that the supply of young professionals (university graduates with up to 7 years of experience) in low-wage countries vastly outstrips the supply in high-wage countries. There were 33 million people in that category in 28 low-wage countries, and 15 million in 8 high-wage countries, including 7.7 million in the United States.[46] With opportunities to study or work abroad or to work at home for a multinational corporation, workers in low-wage countries increasingly will be in direct competition with workers from developed nations.

---

[42] PricewaterhouseCoopers. "MoneyTree Survey." Available at http://www.pwcmoneytree.com/moneytree/index.jsp. Accessed December 20, 2005.

[43] The other two programs are the Advanced Technology Program (ATP) in the Department of Commerce and the Manufacturing Technology Program in the Department of Defense. The ATP was nearly eliminated this year, before Congress restored its modest level of funding in a last-minute effort.

[44] The website http://www.payscale.com/about.asp tracks and compares pay scales in many countries. R. Hira, of the University of Rochester, calculates average salaries for engineers in the United States and India as $70,000 and $13,580, respectively.

[45] McKinsey and Company. The Emerging Global Labor Market: Part II—The Supply of Offshore Talent in Services. New York: McKinsey and Company, Jun. 2005.

[46] Ibid.

**TABLE 3-3: R&E Tax Claims and US Corporate Tax Returns, 1990-2001**

| R&E Tax Credit Claims | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Year** | **Current Dollars (millions)** | **2000 Constant Dollars (millions)** | **Returns** |
| **1990** | **1,547** | **1,896** | **8,699** |
| **1991** | **1,585** | **1,877** | **9,001** |
| **1992** | **1,515** | **1,754** | **7,750** |
| **1993** | **1,857** | **2,101** | **9,933** |
| **1994** | **2,423** | **2,684** | **9,150** |
| **1995** | **1,422** | **1,544** | **7,877** |
| **1996** | **2,134** | **2,274** | **9,709** |
| **1997** | **4,398** | **4,609** | **10,668** |
| **1998** | **5,208** | **5,399** | **9,849** |
| **1999** | **5,281** | **5,396** | **10,019** |
| **2000** | **7,079** | **7,079** | **10,495** |
| **2001** | **6,356** | **6,207** | **10,388** |

NOTE: Data exclude IRS forms 1120S (S corporations), 1120-REIT (Real Estate Investment Trusts), and 1120-RIC (Regulated Investment Companies). Constant dollars based on calendar year 2000 GDP price deflator. The R&E credit is designed to stimulate company R&D over time by reducing after-tax costs. Companies that qualify may deduct or subtract from corporate income taxes an amount equal to 20% of qualified research expenses above a base amount. For established companies, that amount depends on historical expenses over a statutory base period relative to gross receipts; startups follow other provisions.
SOURCE: US Internal Revenue Service, Statistics of Income program, unpublished tabulations.

**TABLE 3-4 Early-Stage Venture Capital, Including SBIR, ATP, and Private Sources**

| Federally and Privately Funded Early-Stage Venture Capital, in millions of dollars. | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Year** | **Federal SBIR** | **Federal ATP** | **Private Early-Stage Venture Capital** |
| **1990** | **461** | **46** | **1,148** |
| **1991** | **483** | **93** | **826** |
| **1992** | **508** | **48** | **1,186** |
| **1993** | **698** | **60** | **2,100** |
| **1994** | **718** | **309** | **1,581** |
| **1995** | **835** | **414** | **2,143** |
| **1996** | **916** | **19** | **2,658** |
| **1997** | **1,107** | **162** | **3,373** |
| **1998** | **1,067** | **235** | **4,700** |
| **1999** | **1,097** | **110** | **10,995** |
| **2000** | **1,190** | **144** | **20,260** |
| **2001** | **1,294** | **164** | **764** |
| **2002** | **NA** | **156** | **1,813** |

Notes: ATP, Advanced Technology Program; NA, not available; SBIR, Small Business Innovation Research

Data reflect disbursements funded publicly through federal SBIR and ATP and privately through US venture capital funds.

Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. p.6-31

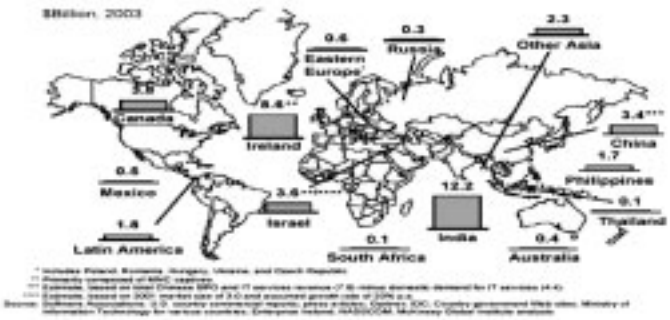



**FIGURE 3-11** Offshored services market size (Business Process Outsourcing and Information Technology, Captive and Outsourced), for 2003, billion of dollars.
SOURCE: McKinsey and Company. The Emerging Global Labor Market: Part II—The Supply of Offshore Talent in Services. New York McKinsey and Company, Jan. 2005.

The same study estimates, however, that only 13% of the potential talent supply in low-wage nations is suited to work for multinational corporations because these individuals lack language skills, because of low-quality domestic education systems, and because of a lack of cultural fit. For the United States to compete, then, its workers can and must bring to the workplace not only technical skills and knowledge but other valuable skills, including knowledge of other cultures, the ability to interact comfortably with diverse clientele, and the motivation to apply their skills. US workers also must be able to communicate effectively orally and in writing, lead teams, manage projects, and solve problems. Although much of our education system is working to teach those skills, there is much to do to prepare US students for work in a more competitive global economy—as well as to provide the rudimentary skills needed in any economy.

## RESTRAINTS ON PUBLIC FUNDING

Public financial support is the backbone of America's research establishment. In the 1960s and 1970s, university researchers could look to a dozen or so federal sources for grant support, including NSF, NIH, predecessors of the Office of Science in the Department of Energy (DoE),[47] the Department of Defense (DoD), the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, and the Department of Agriculture. Funding from those sources, combined with private money, provided flexibility and generosity unmatched in any other nation. Large numbers of today's senior scientists and engineers owe their ability to pursue their professions to grants from those federal agencies.

Several trends cast doubt on our continuing commitment to the above strategy. The first accompanied the end of the Cold War, when reductions in military funding had the perhaps unintentional

[47] The Department of Energy Office of Science began as a component of the Atomic Energy Commission.

effect of cutting basic and applied DoD research budgets. The portion of funding DoD devoted to basic research (the "6.1 account") declined from 3.3% in fiscal year 1994 to about 1.9% in fiscal year 2005[48] (Figure 3-12). Military research funding has gradually shifted from basic and applied research toward the more immediate needs of the combat forces.

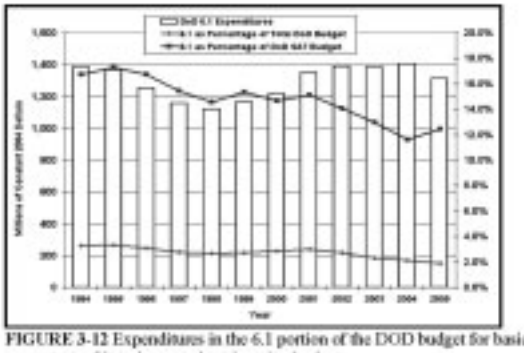


FIGURE 3-12 Expenditures in the 6.1 portion of the DOD budget for basic research are decreasing as a percentage of its science and engineering budget.
SOURCE: National Science Board. S&E Indicators, 2004. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004.

Public funding for science and engineering rose through the 1990s, but virtually all of the increase went to biomedical research at NIH. Federal spending on the physical sciences remained roughly flat, and increases for mathematics and engineering only slightly surpassed inflation (Figure 3-13). Funding for important areas of the life sciences—plant science, ecology, environmental research—supported by agencies other than NIH also has leveled off. The lack of new funding for research in the physical sciences, mathematics, and engineering raises concern about the overall health of the science and engineering research enterprise, including that of the health sciences. Yet, these are disciplines that lead to innovation across the spectrum of modern life.[49]

Figure 3-9b shows that total R&D as a percentage of GDP bottomed out in the late 1970s at around 2.1%, then rebounded to about 2.6%. That rate of investment has stayed relatively constant since the early 1980s. Federal R&D as a percentage of GDP peaked in the early 1960s and has fallen since then.

[48] National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia: National Science Foundation. 2004.
[49] The National Academies. Observations on the President's Fiscal Year 2003 Federal Science and Technology Budget. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2002, pp. 14-16.

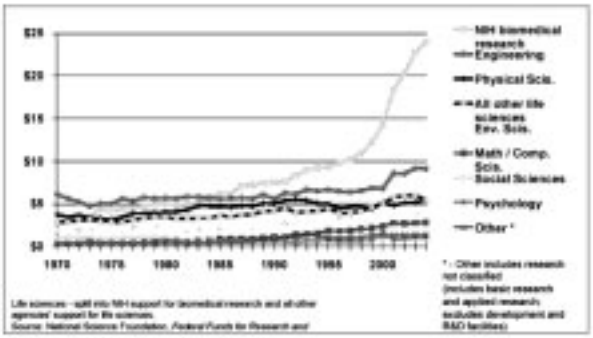



**FIGURE 3-13** Trends in Federal Research by Discipline, FY 1970 -2004
SOURCE: AAAS based on NSF, Federal Funds for Research and Development FY 2002, 2003, 2004. FY 2003 and 2004 data are preliminary. Constant-dollar conversions based on OMB's GDP deflator.

## EXPANDED MISSION FOR FEDERAL LABORATORIES

Among the nation's most significant investments in R&D are some 700 laboratories funded directly by the federal government, about 100 of which are considered significant contributors to the national innovation system.[50] Work performed by the government's own laboratories accounts for about 35% of the total federal R&D investment.[51] The largest and best known of these laboratories are run by DoD and DoE. NIH also has an extensive research facility in Maryland. The DOE laboratories focus mainly on national security research, as at Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory, or more broadly on scientific and engineering research, as at Oak Ridge National Laboratory or Argonne National Laboratory.

The national laboratories could potentially fill the gap left when the large corporate R&D laboratories reduced their commitment to high-risk, long-term research in favor of short-term R&D work, often conducted in overseas laboratories close to their manufacturing plants and to potential markets for their products. The payoff for the US economy from the old corporate R&D system was huge. Today, that work is difficult for business to justify: Its profitability is best measured in hindsight, after many years of sustained investment, and the probability for the success of any single research project often is small.

Nonetheless, it was that type of corporate research which provided the disruptive technologies and technical leaps that fueled US economic leadership in the 20th century. If properly managed and adequately funded, the large multidisciplinary DoE laboratories could assist in filling the void left by the shift in corporate R&D emphasis. The result would be a stable, world-class science and engineering workforce focused both on high-risk, long-term basic research and on applied research for technology development. The national laboratories now offer the right mix of basic scientific inquiry and practical application. They

[50] In contrast, there are approximately 14,000 industrial laboratories with about 1,000 that are considered to be substantive contributors to national innovation according to M. Crow and B. Bozeman. Limited by Design: R&D Laboratories and the U.S. National Innovation System. Columbia University Press: New York 1998.
[51] M. Crow and B. Bozeman. Limited by Design: R&D Laboratories and the U.S. National Innovation System. Columbia University Press: New York, 1998, pp. 3-6.

often promote collaboration with research universities and with large teams of applied scientists and engineers, and the enterprise has demonstrated an early ability to translate prototypes into commercial products. National defense-homeland security and new technologies for clean, affordable, and reliable energy are particularly appropriate areas of inquiry for the national laboratory system.

## EDUCATIONAL CHALLENGES

The danger exists that Americans may not know enough about science, technology, or mathematics to significantly contribute to, or fully benefit from, the knowledge-based society that is already taking shape around us. Moreover, most of us do not have enough understanding of the importance of those skills to encourage our children to study those subjects—both for their career opportunities and for their general benefit. Other nations have learned from our history, however, and they are boosting their investments in science and engineering education because doing so pays immense economic and social dividends.

The rise of new international competitors in science and engineering is forcing the United States to ask whether its education system can meet the demands of the 21st century. The nation faces several areas of challenge: K–12 student preparation in science and mathematics, limited undergraduate interest in science and engineering majors, significant student attrition among science and engineering undergraduate and graduate students, and science and engineering education that in some instances inadequately prepares students to work outside universities.

### K–12 Performance

Education in science, mathematics, and technology has become a focus of intense concern within the business and academic communities. The domestic and world economies depend more and more on science and engineering. But our primary and secondary schools do not seem able to produce enough students with the interest, motivation, knowledge, and skills they will need to compete and prosper in the emerging world.

Although there was steady improvement in mathematics test scores from 1990 through 2005, only 36% of 4th grade students and 30% of 8th grade students who took the 2005 National Assessment of Educational Progress (NAEP) performed at or above the "proficient" level in mathematics (Figure 3-14). (Proficiency was demonstrated by competence with "challenging subject matter".)[32] The results of the science 2000 NAEP test were similar. Only 29% of 4th grade students, 32% of 8th grade students, and 18% of 12th grade students performed at or above the proficient level. (Figure 3-15). Without fundamental knowledge and skills, the majority of students scoring below this level—particularly those below the basic level—lack the foundation for good jobs and full participation in society.

Our 4th grade students perform as well in mathematics and science as do their peers in other nations, but in the most recent assessment (1999) 12th graders were almost last among students who participated in the Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study.[30] Of the 20 nations assessed in advanced mathematics and physics, none scored significantly *lower* than did the United States in either subject. The relative standing of US high-school students in those areas has been attributed both to inadequate quality of teaching and to a weak curriculum.

---

[32] Educational Programs. Available at http://nces.ed.gov/pubsearch/pubsinfo.asp?pubid=2005451. Accessed December 20, 20052 J. S. Braswell, G. S. Dion, M. C. Daane, and Y. Jin. The Nation's Report Card. NCES 2005451. Washington, DC: US Department of Education, 2004. Based on National Assessment of 5.

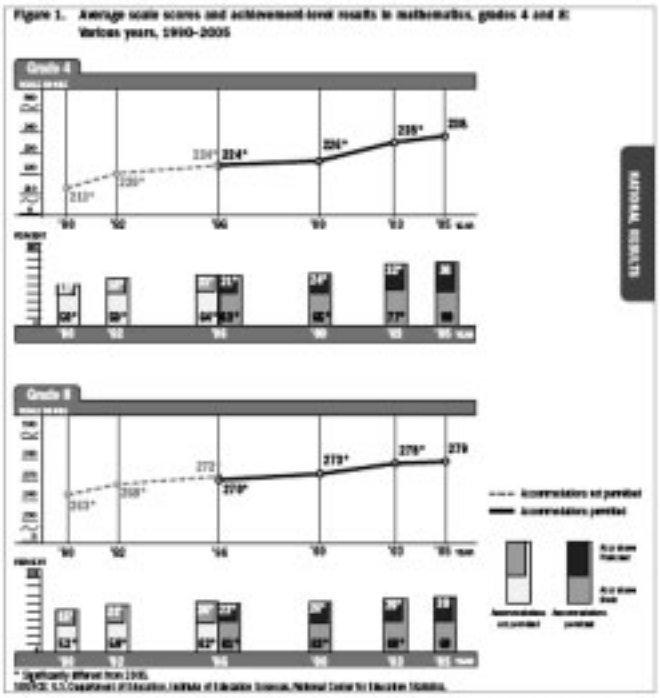


**FIGURE 3-14** Student achievement on the mathematics portion of the National Assessment of Educational Progress (NAEP).
SOURCE: National Center for Education Statistics. Available at http://nces.ed.gov/nationsreportcard

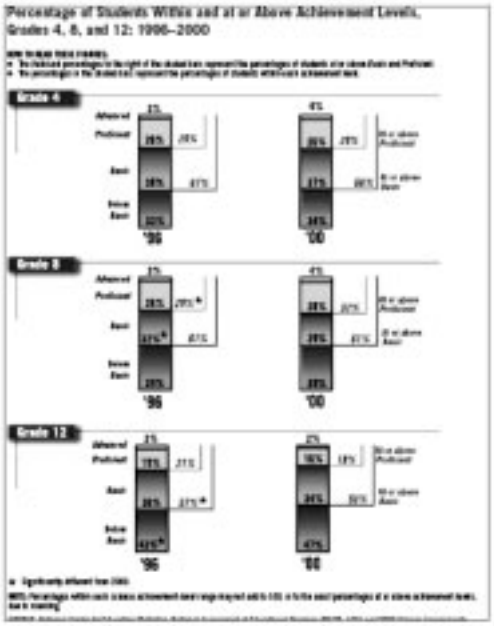



**FIGURE 3-15** Student achievement on the science portion of the National Assessment of Educational Progress (NAEP).
SOURCE: National Center for Education Statistics. Available at http://nces.ed.gov/nationsreportcard

There has, however, been some arguably good news about student achievement.[32] Our 8th graders did better on an international assessment of mathematics and science in 2003 than the same age group did in 1995. Unfortunately, in both cases they ranked poorly in comparison with students from other nations. The achievement gap that separates African American and Hispanic students from white students narrowed during that period. However, a recent assessment by the OECD Programme for International Student Assessment revealed that US 15-year-olds are near the bottom worldwide in their ability to solve practical

problems that require mathematical understanding. Test results for the last 30 years show that although scores of US 9- and 13-year-olds have improved, scores of 17-year-olds have remained stagnant.[19]

One key to improving student success in science and mathematics is to increase interest in those subjects,[53] but that is difficult because mathematics and science teachers are, as a group, largely ill-prepared. Furthermore, many adults with whom students come in contact seemingly take pride in "never understanding" or "never liking" mathematics. Analyses of the teacher pool indicate that an increasing number do not major or minor in the discipline they teach, although there is growing pressure from the No Child Left Behind Act for states to hire more highly qualified teachers (see Table 5-1). About 30% of high school mathematics students and 60% of those enrolled in physical science have teachers who either did not major in the subject in college or are not certified to teach it. The situation is worse for low-income students: 70% of their middle school mathematics teachers majored in some other subject in college.

Meanwhile, an examination of curricula reveals that middle-school mathematics and science courses lack focus, cover too many topics, repeat material, and are implemented inconsistently. That could be changing, at least in part because of new science and mathematics teaching and learning standards that emphasize inquiry and detailed study of fewer topics.[54]

Another major challenge—and opportunity—has been the diversity of the student population and the large variation in quality of education between schools and districts, particularly between suburban, urban, and rural schools. Some schools produce students who consistently score at the top of national and international tests; while others consistently score at the bottom. Furthermore, accelerated mathematics and science courses are less frequently offered in rural and city schools than in suburban ones. How to achieve an equitable distribution of funding and high-quality teaching should be a top-priority issue for the United States. It is an issue that is exacerbated by the existence of almost 15,000 school districts, each containing an average of six schools.

### Student Interest in Science and Engineering Careers

The United States ranks 16 of 17 nations in the proportion of 24-year-olds who earn degrees in natural science or engineering as opposed to other majors (Figure 3-16a) and 20 of 24 nations when looking at all 24 year olds (Figure 3-16b).[55] The number of bachelor's degrees awarded in the United States fluctuates greatly (see Figure 3-17).

About 30% of students entering college in the United States (more than 95% of them US citizens or permanent residents) intend to major in science or engineering. That proportion has remained fairly constant over the past 20 years. However, undergraduate programs in those disciplines report the lowest retention rates among all academic disciplines, and very few students transfer into these fields from others. Throughout the 1990s, fewer than half of undergraduate students who entered college intending to earn a

---

[19] Programme for International Student Assessment (PISA) website at http://www.pisa.oecd.org/. PISA, a survey every three years (2000, 2003, 2006, etc.) of 15-year-olds in the principal industrialized countries, assesses to what degree students near the end of compulsory education have acquired some of the knowledge and skills that are essential for full participation in society.

[55] National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia: National Science Foundation. 2004. Appendix Table 2-23 places the following countries ahead of the United States: Finland (13.2), Hungary (11.9), France (11.2), Taiwan (11.1), South Korea (10.9), United Kingdom (10.7), Sweden (9.5), Australia (9.3), Ireland (8.5), Russia (8.5), Spain (8.1), Japan (8.0), New Zealand (8.0), Netherlands (6.8), Canada (6.7), Lithuania (6.7), Switzerland (6.5), Germany (6.4), Latvia (6.4), Slovakia (6.3), Georgia (5.9), Italy (5.9), and Israel (5.8). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.

science or engineering major completed a degree in one of those subjects.[35] Undergraduates who opt out of those programs by switching majors are often among the most highly qualified college entrants,[36] and they are disproportionately women and students of color. The implication is that potential science or engineering majors become discouraged well before they can join the workforce.[37]

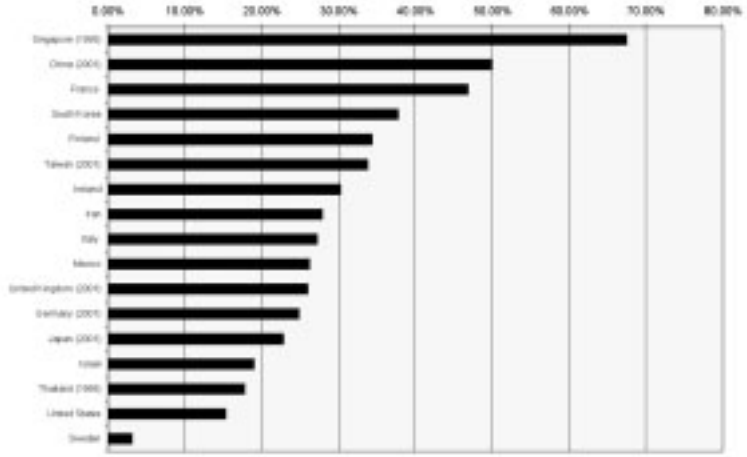



**FIGURE 3-16a** Percentage of 24-year-olds with first university degrees in the natural sciences or engineering, relative to all first university degree recipients in 2000 or most recent year available.
SOURCE: Analysis conducted by the Association of American Universities. 2006. *National Defense Education and Innovation Initiative* based on data from Appendix Table 2-35 in National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01).

---

[35] L. K Berkner, S. Cuccaro-Alamin, and A. C. McCormick. Descriptive Summary of 1989-90 Beginning Postsecondary Students: 5 Years Later with an Essay on Postsecondary Persistence and Attainment. NCES 96155 Washington, DC: National Center for Education Statistics, 1996; T. Smith. The Retention and Graduation Rates of 1993-1999 Entering Science, Mathematics, Engineering, and Technology Majors in 175 Colleges and Universities. Norman, OK: Center for Institutional Data Exchange and Analysis, University of Oklahoma, 2001.

[36] S. Tobias S. *They're Not Dumb, They're Different. Stalking the Second Tier*. Tucson, AZ: Research Corporation, 1990; E. Seymour and N. Hewitt. Talking About Leaving: Why Undergraduates Leave the Sciences. Boulder, CO: Westview Press, 1997; M. W. Ohland, G. Zhang, B. Thorndyke, and T. J. Anderson. Grade-Point Average, Changes of Major, and Majors Selected by Students Leaving Engineering. 34th ASEE/IEEE Frontiers in Education Conference. Session T1G:12-17, 2004. presentation?book?

[37] M. F. Fox and P. Stephan. Careers of young scientists: Preferences, prospects, and reality by gender and field. Social Studies of Science 31(2001) 109-122; D. L. Tan. Majors in Science, Technology, Engineering, and Mathematics: Gender and Ethnic Differences in Persistence and Graduation. Norman, OK: University of Oklahoma, 2002. Available at http://www.ou.edu/education/csar/literature/tan_paper3.pdf. Building Engineering and Science Talent (BEST). The Talent Imperative: Diversifying America's Science and Engineering Workforce. San Diego: BEST, 2004; G. D. Heyman, B. Martyna, and S. Bhatia. Gender and achievement-related beliefs among engineering students. Journal of Women and Minorities in Science and Engineering 8(2002) 33-45.

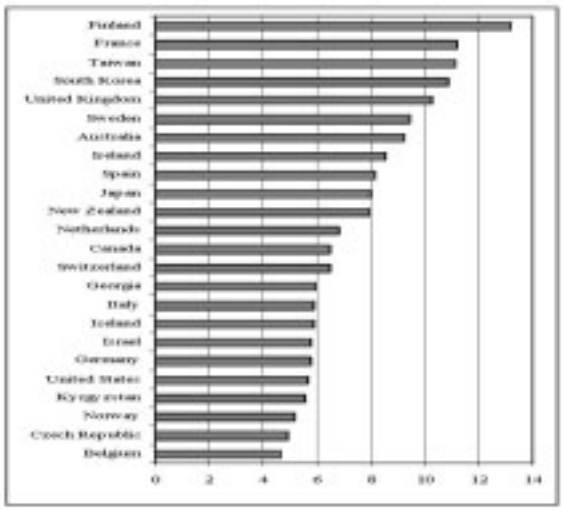



**FIGURE 3-16b** Percentage of 24-year-olds with first university degrees in the natural sciences or engineering relative to all 24-year-olds, in 2000 or most recent year available.
Note: Natural sciences and engineering include the physical, biological, agricultural, computer, and mathematical sciences and engineering.
SOURCE: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004*. NSB 04-1. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004.

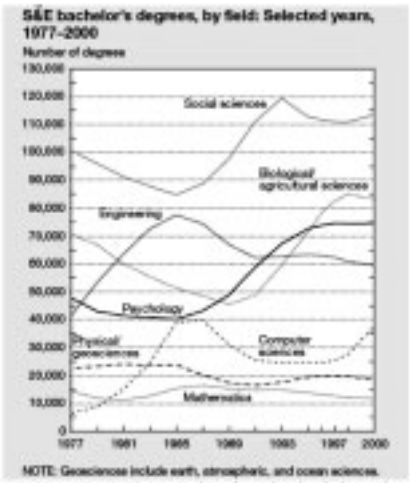



**FIGURE 3-17** Science and engineering bachelor's degrees, by field: selected years, 1977-2000.
Source: National Science Board. 2004. *S&E Indicators 2004* – appendix table 2-23.
Notes: Degree production for many STEM fields increased and computer science decreased in 2001. See graphs in the *Attracting the Most Able US Students to Science and Engineering* paper.

Graduate school enrollments in science and engineering in the United States have been relatively stable since 1993, at 22%-26% of the total enrollment. More women and under represented minorities participate than has been the case in the past, but a relative decline in the enrollment of US whites and males in the late 1990s has been reversed only since 2001.[58] Indeed, for the past 15 years, growth in the number of doctorates awarded is attributable primarily to the increased number of international students. Attrition is generally lower in the doctoral programs than among undergraduates in science, technology, engineering, and mathematics, but doctoral programs in the sciences nonetheless report dropout rates from 24% to 67%, depending on the discipline.[59] If the primary objective is to maintain excellence, a major challenge is to determine how to continue to attract the best international students and still encourage the best domestic students to enter the programs—and to remain in them.

Student interest in research careers is dampened by several factors. First, there are important prerequisites for science and engineering study. Students who choose not to or are unable to finish algebra 1 before 9th grade—which is needed for them to proceed in high school to geometry, algebra 2, trigonometry, and precalculus—effectively shut themselves out of careers in the sciences. In contrast, the decision to pursue a career in law or business typically can wait until the junior or senior year of college, when students begin to commit to postgraduate entrance examinations.

Science and engineering education has a unique hierarchical nature that requires academic preparation for advanced study to begin in middle school. Only recently have US schools begun to *require* algebra in the 8th grade curriculum. The good news is that more schools are now offering integrated science curricula and more districts are working to coordinate curricula for grades 7–12.[60]

For those students who do wish to pursue science and engineering, there are further challenges. Introductory science courses can function as "gatekeepers" that intentionally foster competition and encourage the best students to continue, but in so doing they also can discourage highly qualified students who could succeed if they were given enough support in the early days of their undergraduate experience

Beyond the prospect of difficult and lengthy undergraduate and graduate study and postdoctoral requirements, career prospects can be tenuous. At a general level, news about companies that send jobs overseas can foster doubt about the domestic science and engineering job market. Graduate students are sometimes discouraged by a perceived mismatch between education and employment prospects in the academic sector. The number of tenured academic positions is decreasing, and an increasing majority of those with doctorates in science or engineering now work outside of academia. Doctoral training, however, still typically assumes students will work in universities and often does not prepare graduates for other careers.[61] Finally, it is harder to stay current in science and engineering than it is to keep up with developments in many other fields. Addressing the issues of effective lifelong training, time-to-degree, attractive career options, and appropriate type and amount of financial support are all critical to recruiting and retaining students at all levels.

---

[58] National Science Foundation. Graduate Enrollment Increases in Science and Engineering Fields, Especially in Engineering and Computer Sciences. NSF 03-315. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2003.

[59] Council of Graduate Schools. 2004. Ph.D. Completion and Attrition: Policy, Numbers, Leadership, and Next Steps. The Council of Graduate Schools' PhD Completion Project's goal is to improve completion and attrition rates of doctoral candidates. This 3-year project had provided funding to 21 major universities to create intervention strategies and pilot projects and to evaluate the impact of these projects on doctoral completion rates and attrition patterns.

[60] National Research Council. Learning and Understanding: Improving Advanced Study of Mathematics and Science in US High Schools. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2002.

[61] COSEPUP. Reshaping Graduate Education. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1995. National Research Council. Assessing Research-Doctorate Programs: A Methodology Study. Washington, D.C. National Academies Press, 2003.

Where are the top US students going, if not into science and engineering? They do not appear to be headed in large numbers to law school or medical school, where enrollments also have been flat or declining. Some seem attracted to MBA programs, which grew by about one-third during the 1990s. In the 1990s, many science and engineering graduates entered the workforce directly after college, lured by the booming economy. Then, as the bubble deflated in the early part of the present decade, some returned to graduate school. A larger portion of the current crop of science and engineering graduates seems to be interested in graduate school.[62] In 2003, enrollment in graduate science and engineering programs reached an all-time high, gaining 4% over 2002 and 9% over 1993, the previous peak year. Increasingly, the new graduate students are US citizens or permanent residents—67% in 2003 compared with 60% in 2000[63] — and their prospects seem good: In 2001, the share of top US citizen scorers on the Graduate Record Exam quantitative scale (above 750) heading to graduate school in the natural sciences and engineering was 31% percent higher than in 1998. That group had declined by 21% in the previous 6 years.[64]

There is still ample reason for concern about the future. A number of analysts expect to see a leveling off of the number of US-born students in graduate programs. If the number of foreign-born graduate students decreases as well, absent some substantive intervention, the nation could have difficulty meeting its need for scientists and engineers.

## BALANCING SECURITY AND OPENNESS

Science thrives on the open exchange of information, on collaboration, and on the opportunity to build on previous work. The United States gained and maintained its preeminence in science and engineering in part by embracing the values of openness and by welcoming students and researchers from all parts of the world to America's shores. Openness has never been unqualified, of course, and the nation actively seeks to prevent its adversaries from acquiring scientific information and technology that could be used to do us harm. Scientists and engineers are citizens too, and those communities recognize both their responsibility and their opportunity to help protect the United States, as they have in the past. This has been done by harnessing the best science and engineering to help counter terrorism and other national security threats, even though that could mean accepting some limitations on research and its dissemination.[65]

But now concerns are growing that some measures put in place in the wake of September 11, 2001, seeking to increase homeland security, will be ineffective at best and could in fact hamper US economic competitiveness and prosperity.[66] New visa restrictions have had the unintended consequence of discouraging talented foreign students and scholars from coming here to work, study, or participate in international collaborations. Fortunately, the federal agencies responsible for these restrictions have recently implemented changes.[67] Of principal concern now are other forms of disincentive:

---

[62] W. Zumeta and J. S. Raveling. The best and the brightest for science: Is there a problem here? In Innovation Policy in the Knowledge-Based Economy, eds. M. P. Feldman and A. N. Link, pp. 121-161. Boston: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2001.
[63] National Science Foundation. Graduate Enrollment in Science and Engineering Programs Up in 2003, but Declines for First-Time Foreign Students. NSF 05-317. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2005.
[64] W. Zumeta and J. S. Raveling. The Market for Ph.D. Scientists: Discouraging the Best and Brightest? Discouraging All? AAAS Symposium, Feb. 16, 2004. Press release available at http://www.eurekalert.org/pub_releases/2004-02/aow-mll021304.php.
[65] See, for example, National Research Council. Making the Nation Safer: The Role of Science and Technology in Countering Terrorism. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2002.
[66] Letter from the Presidents of the National Academies to Secretary of Commerce Carlos Gutierrez, Jun. 24, 2005; available at http://www.nationalacademies.org/newsnews/20050624.html.
[67] National Research Council. International Graduate Students and Postdocs, Washington, DC: National Academy Press. pp. 56-57.

- Expansion of the restrictions on "deemed exports", the passing of technical information to foreigners in the United States that requires a formal export license, is expected to cover a much wider range of university and industry settings.[68] Companies that rely on the international members of their R&D teams and university laboratories staffed by foreign graduate students and scholars could find their work significantly hampered by the new restrictions.
- Expanded or new categories of "sensitive but unclassified" information could restrict publication or other forms of dissemination. The new rules have been proposed or implemented even though many of the lists of what is to be controlled are sufficiently vague or obsolete that it could be difficult to ascertain compliance.[69] The result could be to force researchers to err on the side of caution and thus substantially impede the flow of scientific information.

Both approaches could undermine the protections for fundamental research established in National Security Decision Directive 189 (NSDD-189), the Reagan Administration's 1985 executive order declaring that publicly funded research, such as that conducted in universities and laboratories, should "to the maximum extent possible" be unrestricted.[70] Where restriction is considered necessary, the control mechanism should be formal classification: "No restrictions may be placed upon the conduct or reporting of federally-funded fundamental research that has not received national security classification, except as provided in applicable U.S. statutes." The NSDD-189 policy remains in force and has been reaffirmed by senior officials of the current administration,[71] but it appears to be at odds with other policy developments and some recent practices.

## CONCLUSION

Although the United States continues to possess the world's strongest science and engineering enterprise, its position is jeopardized both by evolving weakness at home and by growing strength abroad.[71] Because our economic, military, and cultural well-being depends on continued science and engineering leadership, the nation faces a compelling call to action. The United States has responded energetically to challenges of such magnitude in the past:

- Early in the 20th century, we determined to provide free education to all, ensuring a populace that was ready for the economic growth that followed World War II.
- The GI Bill eased the return of World War II veterans to civilian life and established postsecondary education as the fuel for the postwar economy.
- The Soviet space program spurred a national commitment to science education and research. The positive effects are seen to this day—for example, in much of our system of graduate education.

---

[68] In 2000, Congress mandated annual reports by the Offices of Inspector General (IG) on the transfer of militarily sensitive technology to countries and entities of concern; the 2004 reports focused on deemed exports. The individual agency IG reports and a joint interagency report concluded that enforcement of deemed export regulations had been ineffective, most of the agency reports recommended particular regulatory remedies.

[69] Center for Strategic and International Studies. Security Controls on Scientific Information and the Conduct of Scientific Research. Washington, DC: CSIS, Jan. 2005.

[70] Fundamental research is defined as "basic and applied research in science and engineering, the results of which ordinarily are published and shared broadly within the scientific community, as distinguished from proprietary research and from industrial development, design, production and product utilization, the results of which ordinarily are restricted for proprietary or national security reasons". National Security Decision Directive 189, Sept. 21, 1985. Available at http://www.aau.edu/research/TTAR-NSDD189.html

[71] Note that some do not believe this is the case. See Box 3-2.

- The decline of the US semiconductor manufacturing industry in the middle 1980s was met with Sematech, the government–industry consortium credited by many with stimulating the resurgence of that industry.

Today's challenges are even more diffuse and more complex than many of the challenges we have confronted in our past. Research, innovation, and economic competition are worldwide, and the nation's attention, unlike that of many competitors, is not focused on the importance of its science and engineering enterprise. If the United States is to retain its edge in the technology-based industries that generate innovation, quality jobs, and high wages, we must act to broker a new, collaborative understanding among the sectors that sustain our knowledge-based economy—industry, academe, and government—and we must do so promptly.

# 4

# METHOD

The charge to the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century constitutes a challenge both daunting and exhilarating: to recommend to the nation specific steps that can best strengthen the quality of life in America—our prosperity, our health, our security. This chapter is an overview of the committee's methods for arriving at its recommendations and for identifying the specific steps it proposes for their implementation. Chapters 5-8 identify the committee's list of action items. Appendix E is an overview of the committee's investment cost of its proposed actions and programs. Appendix F provides the rationale for the K-12 programs proposed in Chapter 5.

Despite a demanding schedule for completion of the study, members reviewed literature and case studies, studied the results of other expert panels, and convened focus groups with expertise in K–12 education, higher education, research, innovation and workforce issues, and national and homeland security to arrive at a slate of recommendations.

The focus groups, involving over 66 individual experts, were asked to identify, within their issue areas, the three recommendations they believed were of the highest urgency. The results became raw material for the committee's discussion of recommendations. The committee later met numerous times via conference call to refine its recommendations as it consulted with additional experts. Final coordination involved extensive e-mail interactions as the committee sought to avail itself of the technology that is pervading modern decision-making and making the world "flat", in the words of Thomas Friedman (see chapter 1).

## REVIEW OF LITERATURE AND PAST COMMITTEE RECOMMENDATIONS

Before meeting in person, the committee requested a compilation of the results of past studies on the topics it was likely to address. Appendix D provides these background papers on topics such as science, mathematics, and technology education; research funding and productivity; the environment for innovation; and science and technology issues in national and homeland security.

The committee used those documents as a means to review the work of many other groups. Some were individual writers and scholars[1] and others were blue ribbon groups, such as the one chaired by former Senator John Glenn, which produced the report *Before It's Too Late*[2] for the National Commission on Mathematics and Science Teaching for the 21st Century and others at the Council on Competitiveness,[3] Center for Strategic and International Studies,[4]

---

[1] Richard B. Freeman, *Does Globalization of the Scientific/Engineering Workforce Threaten US Economic Leadership?* NBER Working Paper 11457, Cambridge, MA.: National Bureau of Economic Research, 2005.
[2] *Before It's Too Late: A Report to the Nation from the National Commission on Mathematics and Science Teaching for the 21st Century*, Glenn Commission Report. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Education, 2000.
[3] Council on Competitiveness, *Innovate America*, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2005.
[4] Center for Strategic and International Studies, *Global Innovation/National Competitiveness*, Washington, DC: Center for Strategic and International Studies, 1996.

Business Roundtable,[5] Taskforce on the Future of American Innovation,[6] President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology,[7] National Science Board,[8] and other National Academies committees, such as those which produced *A Patent System for the 21st Century,*[9] *Policy Implications of International Graduate Students and Postdoctoral Scholars in the United States*[10] and *Advanced Research Instrumentation and Facilities.*[11] Others were the committee and analyst at other organizations who have gone before us producing reports focusing on the topics discussed in this report. There are too many to mention here, but they are cited throughout the report and range from individual scholars to the Glenn Commissioning on K-12 education, the Council on Competitiveness, the President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology, the National Science Board, and other National Academies committees. Such work and the reaction to it once published were invaluable to the committee's deliberations.

The committee decided to provide a "box" in each chapter containing alternative points of view as captured in a review of existing reports, studies, reviewer comments, and informal consultations with experts and policy-makers.

The committee examined numerous case studies to gain a better understanding of which policies had the most potential to influence national prosperity. For example, many of the recommendations on K–12 and higher education rely on extrapolating successful state or local programs to the national level. The committee also reviewed existing federal programs for higher education and research policy that work well in one place and could potentially be applicable to other parts of the federal infrastructure. The committee also studied other nations' experiences in implementing policy changes to encourage innovation.

## FOCUS GROUPS

The focus groups (Appendix C) convened experts in five broad areas—K–12 education, higher education, science and technology research policy, innovation and workforce issues, and homeland security. Group members were asked to identify ways the United States can successfully compete, prosper, and be secure in the global community of the 21st century.

Their contributions were compiled with the results of the literature search and with recommendations gathered during committee interviews. More than *150 concrete recommendations and implementation steps* were identified and discussed at a weekend focus group session in Washington, DC. Each focus group, following its own discussions, presented its top three proposed recommendations to the committee members and to other focus-group participants.

---

[5] Business Roundtable, *Tapping America's Potential*, Washington, DC: Business Roundtable, 2005.
[6] Task Force on the Future of American Innovation, *The Knowledge Economy: Is America Losing Its Competitive Edge?* Washington, DC: 2005
[7] The President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology, *Sustaining the Nation's Innovation Ecosystems*, Report on Information Technology Manufacturing and Competitiveness, January 2004.
[8] National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004*. NSB 04-1. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004.
[9] National Research Council. *A Patent System for the 21st Century*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2004.
[10] National Academies. *Policy Implications of International Graduate Students and Postdoctoral Scholars in the United States*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
[11] National Academies. *Advanced Research Instrumentation and Facilities*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2005.

## COMMITTEE DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

The committee itself met over that same weekend and then in weekly conference calls. Using the focus-group recommendations as a starting point, the committee developed four key recommendations (labeled A through D in this report), which it ranked, and 20 actions to implement them. It assigned ratings of either *most urgent* or *urgent* to each of the four recommendations. They are summarized here. Specific implementing actions are discussed in later sections of this report.

**Most Urgent**

**10,000 Teachers, 10 Million Minds, and K–12 Science and Mathematics Education.** Increase America's talent pool by vastly improving K–12 science and mathematics education.

**Sowing the Seeds through Science and Engineering Research.** Sustain and strengthen the nation's traditional commitment to long-term basic research that has the potential to be transformational to maintain the flow of new ideas that fuel the economy, provide security, and enhance the quality of life.

**Urgent**

**Best and Brightest in Science and Engineering Higher Education**. Make the United States the most attractive setting in which to study and perform research so that we can develop, recruit, and retain the best and brightest students, scientists, and engineers from within the United States and throughout the world.

**Incentives for Innovation.** Ensure that the United States is the premier place in the world to innovate; invest in downstream activities such as manufacturing and marketing; and create high-paying jobs that are based on innovation by modernizing the patent system, realigning tax policies to encourage innovation and the location of resulting facilities in the United States and ensuring affordable broadband access.

Unless the nation has the science and engineering experts and the resources to generate new ideas, and unless it encourages the transition of those ideas through policies that enhance the innovation environment, we will not continue to prosper in an age of globalization. Each recommendation represents one element of an interdependent system essential for US prosperity.

Some of the committee's proposed actions and programs involve changes in the law. Some require substantial investment. Funding would ideally come from reallocation of existing funds, but if necessary, via new funds. The committee believes the investments are small relative to the return the nation can expect in the creation of new high-quality jobs, inasmuch as economic studies show that the social rate of return on federal and private investment in research is often 30% or more (Tables 2-1 and 2-2). The committee fully recognizes the extant demands on the federal budget, but it believes that few problems facing the nation have more profound implications for America than the one addressed herein and, thus believes, that the investment demands it entails should be given high priority.

## CAUTIONS

The committee has been cautious in its analysis of information. However, the available information is, in some instances, insufficient for the committee's needs. In addition, the limited timeframe to develop the report (10 weeks from the time of the committee's meeting to report release) is inadequate to conduct an independent analysis. Even if unlimited time were available, definitive analysis of many issues is simply not possible given the uncertainties involved.

The recommendations in this report rely heavily on the experience, consensus views, and judgments of the committee members. Although the committee consists of leaders from academe, industry, and government—including several current and former industry chief executive officers, university presidents, researchers (including three Nobel prize winners), and former presidential appointees—the array of topics and policies covered in this study is so broad that it was impossible to assemble a committee of 20 members with directly relevant expertise in each. The committee has therefore relied heavily on the judgments of experts in the study's focus groups, additional consultations with other experts, and the panel of 37 expert reviewers.

The recommendations herein should be subjected to continuing evaluation and refinement. In particular, the committee encourages regular evaluations to determine the efficacy of its policy recommendations in reaching the nation's goals. If the proposals prove successful, more investment may be warranted. If not, programs should be modified or dropped from the portfolio.

## CONCLUSION

The committee's recommendations are the fundamental actions the nation should take if it is to prosper in the 21st century. Just as "reading, writing, and arithmetic" are essential for any student to succeed—regardless of career—"education, research, and innovation" are essential if the nation is to succeed in providing jobs for its citizenry.

5

## WHAT ACTIONS SHOULD AMERICA TAKE IN K–12 SCIENCE AND MATHEMATICS EDUCATION TO REMAIN PROSPEROUS IN THE 21st CENTURY?

### 10,000 TEACHERS, 10 MILLION MINDS,

**Recommendation A:** ***Increase America's talent pool by vastly improving K–12 science and mathematics education.***

The US system of public education must lay the foundation for developing a workforce that is literate in mathematics and science, among other subjects. It is the creative intellectual energy of our workforce that will drive successful innovation and create jobs for all citizens.

In 1944, during the final phases of a global war, President Franklin D. Roosevelt asked Vannevar Bush, his White House director of scientific research, to study areas of public policy having to do with science. The president observed that, "New frontiers of the mind are before us, and if they are pioneered with the same vision, boldness and drive with which we have waged this war, we can create a fuller and more fruitful employment and a fuller and more fruitful life." In the intervening years, our country appears to have lost sight of the importance of scientific literacy for our citizens, and it has become increasingly reliant on international students and workers to fuel our knowledge economy.

The lack of a natural constituency for science causes short- and long-term damage. Without basic scientific literacy, adults cannot participate effectively in a world increasingly shaped by science and technology. Without a flourishing scientific and engineering community, young people are not motivated to dream of "what can be", and they will have no motivation to become the next generation of scientists and engineers who can address persistent national problems, including national and homeland security, health care, the provision of energy, the preservation of the environment, and the growth of the economy, including the creation of jobs.

Laying a foundation for a scientifically literate workforce begins with developing outstanding K–12 teachers in science and mathematics.[1] A highly qualified corps of teachers is a critical component of the No Child Left Behind initiative.[2] Improvements in student achievement are solidly linked to teacher excellence, the hallmarks of which are thorough knowledge of content, solid pedagogical skills, motivational abilities, and career-long opportunities for continuing education.[3] Excellent teachers inspire young people to develop analytical and problem-solving skills, the ability to interpret information and communicate what they learn, and

---

[1] See, for example, The Glenn Commission *Before It's Too Late: A Report to the Nation from the National Commission on Mathematics and Science Teaching for the 21st Century.* Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Education, 2000.

[2] No Child Left Behind Act of 2001. Pub. L. No. 107-110, Signed by President George W. Bush on January 8, 2001, 107th Congress..

[3] National Research Council. *Learning and Understanding: Improving Advanced Study of Mathematics and Science in U.S. Schools.* Washington D.C.: National Academies Press, 2002

ultimately to master conceptual understanding. Simply stated, teachers are the key to improving student performance.

Today there is such a shortage of highly qualified K–12 teachers that many of the nation's 15,000 school districts[4] have hired uncertified or underqualified teachers. Moreover, middle and high school mathematics and science teachers are more likely than not to teach outside their own fields of study (Table 5-1). A US high school student has a 70% likelihood of being taught English by a teacher with a degree in English but about a 40% chance of studying chemistry with a teacher who was a chemistry major.

These problems are compounded by chronic shortages in the teaching workforce. About two-thirds of the nation's K–12 teachers are expected to retire or leave the profession over the coming decade, so the nation's schools will need to fill between 1.7 million and 2.7 million positions during that period,[5] about 200,000 of them in secondary science and mathematics classrooms.[6]

**TABLE 5-1 Students in US Public Schools Taught by Teachers with No Major or Certification in the Subject Taught, 1999–2000**

| Discipline | Grades 5–8 | Grades 9–12 |
|---|---|---|
| English | 58% | 30% |
| Mathematics | 69% | 31% |
| Physical science | 93% | 63% |
| Biology–life sciences | — | 45% |
| Chemistry | — | 61% |
| Physics | — | 67% |
| Physical education | 19% | 19% |

SOURCE: National Center for Education Statistics. *Qualifications of the Public School Teacher Workforce: Prevalence of Out-of-Field Teaching 1987-1988 to 1999-2000.* Washington, DC: US Department of Education, 2003.

We need to recruit, educate, and retain excellent K–12 teachers who fundamentally understand biology, chemistry, physics, engineering, and mathematics. The critical lack of technically trained people in the United States can be traced directly to poor K–12 mathematics and science instruction. Few factors are more important than this if the United States is to compete successfully in the 21st century.

The Committee on Prospering in the 21st Century recommends a package of K–12 programs that is based on tested models, including financial incentives for teachers and students

---

[4] National Center for Education Statistic (2006). "Public Elementary and Secondary Students, Staff, Schools, and School Districts: School Year 2003–04" (http://nces.ed.gov/pubs2006/2006307.pdf)

[5] National Center for Education Statistics. Predicting the Need for Newly Hired Teachers in the United States to 2008-09. NCES 1999-026. Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office, 1999. Available at http://nces.ed.gov/pubs99/1999026.pdf. According to the Bureau of Labor Statistics, job opportunities for K-12 teachers over the next 10 years will vary from good to excellent, depending on the locality, grade level, and subject taught. Most job openings will be attributable to the expected retirement of a large number of teachers. In addition, relatively high rates of turnover, especially among beginning teachers employed in poor, urban schools, also will lead to numerous job openings for teachers. Competition for qualified teachers among some localities will likely continue, with schools luring teachers from other states and districts with bonuses and higher pay. See http://stats.bls.gov/oco/ocos069.htm#emply.

[6] National Research Council. 2000. *Attracting Science and Mathematics Ph.D.s to Secondary School Education.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2000. Available at http://www.nap.edu/catalog/9955.html.

and high standards for, and measurable achievement by, teachers, students, and administrators. The programs will create broad-based academic leadership for K–12 mathematics and science, and they will provide for rigorous curricula. Support for the action items in this recommendation should have the highest priority for the federal government as it addresses America's ability to compete for quality jobs in the future.

The strengths of the proposed actions derive from their focus on *teachers*—those who are entering the profession and those who currently teach science and mathematics—*and on the students they will teach.* The recommendations cover the spectrum of K–12 teachers, and several programs are recommended to tailor education for different populations. Each recommendation has specific, measurable objectives. At the same time, we must emphasize the need for research and evaluation to serve as a foundation for change in K–12 mathematics and science education. In particular, a better understanding of what actions can be taken to excite children about science, mathematics, and technology would be useful in designing future educational programs.

The first two action items focus on K–12 teacher education and professional development. They are designed to give new K–12 science, mathematics and technology teachers a solid science, mathematics, and technology foundation; provide continuing professional development for current teachers and for those entering the profession from technology sector jobs so they gain mastery in science and mathematics and the means to teach those subjects; and provide continuing education for current teachers in grades 6–12 so they can teach vertically aligned advanced science and mathematics courses.[7] One fortunate spinoff of enhanced education of K–12 teachers is that salaries—in many school districts—are tied to teacher educational achievements.

---

[7] "Vertically aligned curricula" use sequenced materials over several years. An example is pre-algebra followed by algebra, geometry, trigonometry, pre-calculus, and calculus. The systematic approach to education reform emphasizes that teachers, school and district administrative personnel, and parents work together to align their efforts. See, for example, Southwest Education Development Laboratory. *Alignment to SEDL's Working Systemically Model, 2004 Progress Report to Schools and Districts.* Available at http://www.sedl.org/rel/resources/ws-report-summary04.pdf.

**10,000 TEACHERS FOR 10 MILLION MINDS**

**Action A-1: Annually recruit 10,000 science and mathematics teachers by awarding 4-year scholarships and thereby educating 10 million minds.** Our public education system must attract at least 10,000 of our best college graduates to the teaching profession each year. A competitive federal scholarship program will allow bright, motivated students to earn bachelors' degrees in science, engineering, and mathematics with concurrent certification as K–12 mathematics and science teachers.

Students could enter the program at any of several points and would receive annual scholarships of up to $20,000 per year for tuition and qualified educational expenses. Awards would be given on the basis of academic merit.[8] Each scholarship would carry a 5-year postgraduate commitment to teach in a public school.[9]

To provide the highest quality education for students who want to become teachers, it is important to award competitive matching grants of $1 million per year, to be matched on a one-for-one basis, for 5 years to help 100 universities and colleges establish integrated 4-year undergraduate programs that lead to bachelors' degrees in physical and life sciences, mathematics, computer science, and engineering *with teacher certification*.[10] To qualify, science, technology, engineering, and mathematics (STEM) departments would collaborate with colleges of education to develop teacher education and certification programs with in-depth content education and subject-specific education in pedagogy. STEM departments also would offer high-quality research experiences and thorough training in the use of educational technologies. Colleges or universities without education departments or schools could collaborate with such departments in nearby colleges or universities.

A well-prepared corps of teachers is central to the development of a literate student population.[11] The National Center for Teaching and America's Future unequivocally shows the positive effect of better teaching on student achievement.[12] The Center for the Study of

---

[8] Teacher education programs would be 4 years in duration with multiple entry points. A first-year student entering the program would be eligible for a 4-year scholarship, while students entering in their second or later undergraduate years would be eligible for fewer years of support.

[9] If the scholarship recipients do not fulfill the 5-year service requirement, they would be obligated to repay a prorated portion of their scholarship.

[10] The institutional awards would be matching grants awarded competitively to applicants who had identified partners, such as universities, industries, or philanthropic foundations, to contribute additional resources. Public-public and public-private consortia would be encouraged. Institutions that demonstrate success would be eligible for competitive renewals.

[11] National Research Council. *Attracting PhDs to K–12 Education: A Demonstration Program for Science, Mathematics, and Technology*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2002.

[12] National Center for Teaching and America's Future. *Doing What Matters Most: Teaching for America's Future*. New York: NCTAF, 1996. See also H. C. Hill, B. Rowan, and D. L. Ball. Effects of teachers' mathematical knowledge for teaching on student achievement. *American Educational Research Journal* 42(2)(2005): 371–406.

Teaching[13] reported that the most consistent and powerful predictor of student achievement in science and mathematics was the presence of teachers who were fully certified and had at least a bachelor's degree in the subjects taught. Teachers with content expertise, like experts in all fields, understand the structure of their disciplines and have cognitive "roadmaps" for the work they assign, the assessments they use to gauge student progress, and the questions they ask in the classroom.[14] The investment in educating those teachers is money well spent because they are likely to prepare internationally competitive students.

Some of the nation's top research universities are leading the way to prepare a cadre of highly skilled teachers. Two in particular have developed innovative programs that combine undergraduate degrees in science, technology, engineering, or mathematics with pedagogy education and teacher certification.

UTeach, a program in the College of Natural Sciences, headed by the Dean of Natural Sciences at the University of Texas at Austin, recruits from among the 25% of undergraduate science and mathematics students who express a serious desire to teach. As a result of this program, UT-Austin has been able to increase the number of science and math teachers it graduates who have both degrees in a science or mathematics as well as teacher certification.

Program enrollees have SAT scores above the average for the university's College of Natural Sciences, have higher grade point averages, and are retained in the degree program at more than twice the rate of other students in that college (Figure 5-1b). UTeach has a 26% minority enrollment, compared with 16% university-wide.

Each year the program graduates about 70 students who have teaching certification and bachelors' degrees in chemistry, physics, computer science, biology, or mathematics. Students receive strong practical education and continuing mentoring, especially in the critical first few years in the classroom, as that increases effectiveness and promotes professional retention as teachers. As also shown in Figure 5-1, UTeach graduates have deep disciplinary grounding, they know how to engage students in scientific inquiry, and they know how to use new technology to improve student achievement. The UTeach experience shows that an effective scholarship program must be coupled with a teacher education program that is interesting and attractive to students. The program's most effective tools are the field experience courses for first-year students and the use of master teachers as their supervisors.

Starting with the current academic year, the 10-campus University of California (UC) system offers its California Teach program, which, by 2010, should graduate a thousand highly qualified science and mathematics teachers each year.[15] California Teach provides every STEM student in the university with an opportunity to complete the STEM major and pedagogical training in a 4-year program. Early in the program, students work as paid classroom assistants in elementary and middle schools, supervised by mentor teachers. Students enroll in seminars taught by master teachers and participate in 10-week summer institutes to help them develop methods for teaching in a specific discipline. Students from throughout the university system in the California Teach program who satisfactorily complete their courses through the junior year

---

[13] L. Darling-Hammond. *Teacher Quality and Student Achievement: A Review of State Policy Evidence*. New York: Center for the Study of Teaching and Policy, 1999. Available at http://depts.washington.edu/ctpmail/Publications/PDF_versions/LDH_1999.pdf.

[14] National Research Council. *How People Learn: Brain, Mind, Experience, and School*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999. Available at http://books.nap.edu/catalog/8160.html.

[15] Even more teachers may come from a similar program being conducted by the California state university system.

participate in subject-area institutes. UC-San Diego, for example, might host a high school chemistry institute that would be open to students and faculty from all campuses.

At each institute, students and faculty (those from UC, those who are visiting, and master secondary school teachers) collaborate to develop case study videos of teaching methods and approaches that will be archived by the University of California television system for use by students and faculty in subsequent institutes and by teachers in the field. Students develop the portfolios that eventually will be required of teachers to become certified by a national board. Students who complete the institutes receive $5,000 scholarships.

Both the UTeach and California Teach programs provide a continuum of pre- and in-service teacher education and professional development and established cohorts and relationships that are crucial for retaining the most talented individuals in the profession. California Teach also will provide the nation with a large-scale experiment to show which elements of teacher preparation are most effective. Replicating the strong points of such programs around the country will transform the quality of our science and mathematics teaching.[16]

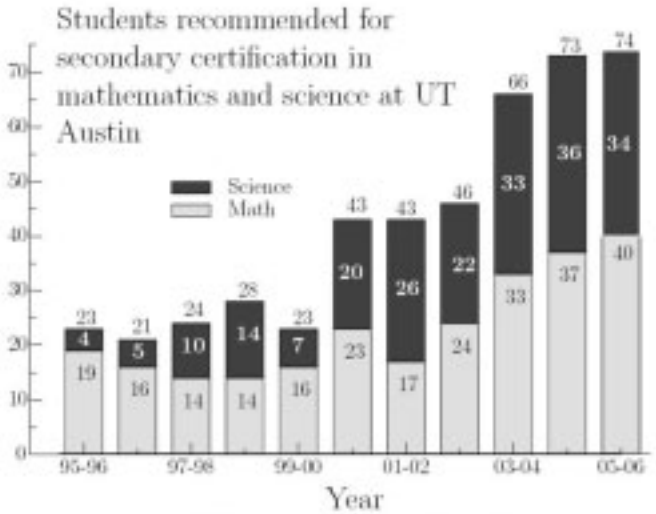



**FIGURE 5-1a:** Student recommended for secondary teaching certification in mathematics and science at UT, Austin.
SOURCE: Information based on Email from Michael Marder of UTeach to Deborah Stine dated February 2, 2006

---

[16] The National Academies has also published a report on demonstration programs for PhD K-12 teacher programs, National Research Council. *Attracting PhDs to K–12 Education: A Demonstration Program for Science, Mathematics, and Technology.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2002.

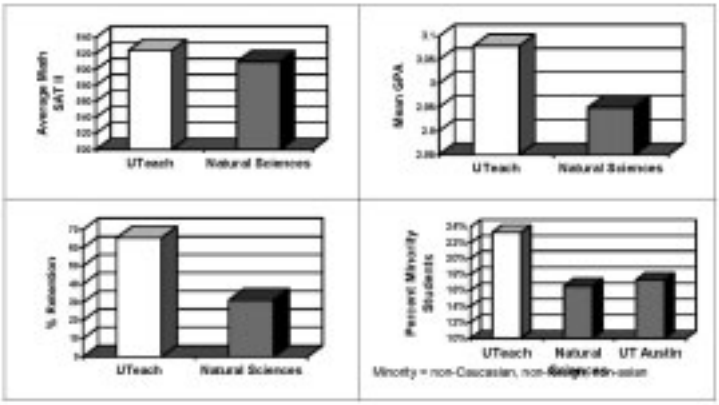



**FIGURE 5-1b**: UTeach minority enrollment, quality of undergraduate students in the program, student retention and performance compared with all students in University of Texas, Austin College of Natural Science.
SOURCE: Information based on Email from Michael Marder of UTeach to Deborah Stine dated February 2, 2006

**A QUARTER OF A MILLION TEACHERS INSPIRING YOUNG MINDS EVERY DAY**

**Action A-2: Strengthen the skills of 250,000 teachers through training and education programs at summer institutes, in master's programs, and in Advanced Placement(AP) and International Baccalaureate (IB) training programs.** Excellent professional development models exist to strengthen the skills of the 250,000 current mathematics and science teachers, but they reach too few in the profession. The four-part program recommended by the committee consists of (1) summer institutes, (2) master's degree programs in science and mathematics, (3) training for advanced placement and International Baccalaureate teachers, and (4) development of a voluntary national K–12 science and mathematics curriculum.

We need to reach all K–12 science and mathematics teachers and provide them with high-quality continuing professional development opportunities—specifically those that emphasize rigorous content education. High-quality, content-driven professional development has a significant effect on student performance, particularly when augmented with classroom practice, year-long mentoring, and high-quality curricular materials.[17]

About 10% of the nation's 3 million K–12 teachers provide instruction in science and mathematics in middle and high schools.[18] The No Child Left Behind Act requires all of them to participate regularly in professional development, and in most states professional development already is required to maintain teaching credentials. Funding for continuing education now comes from the No Child Left Behind appropriation and from the states.

As the number of programs has ballooned, many teachers report that they are "buried in opportunities" for continuing education. They also complain that it is difficult to know which programs are worthwhile and which are irrelevant and disconnected. The object of this implementation action is to identify outstanding programs that improve content knowledge and pedagogical skills, especially for those who enter the profession from other careers. Over 5 years, these programs could reach all teachers of middle and high school mathematics and science. Furthermore, as these teachers become more qualified, they can be provided increased financial rewards without confronting the historical culture that largely dismisses the concept of pay-for-performance.

---

[17] D. K. Cohen and H. C. Hill. Instructional policy and classroom performance: The mathematics reform in California. *Teachers College Record* 102(2)(2000): 294-343; W. H. Schmidt, C. McKnight, R. T. Houang, and D. E. Wiley. The Heinz 57 curriculum: When more may be less. Paper presented at the 2005 annual meeting of the American Education Research Association, Montreal, Quebec; National Research Council. *Educating Teachers of Science, Mathematics, and Technology: New Practices for a New Millennium.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2001; National Research Council. *Improving Teacher Preparation and Credentialing Consistent with the National Science Education Standards: Report of a Symposium.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1997.

[18] In 1999-2000, the latest year for which we have figures, of the total number of public K-12 teachers, 191,000 taught science (including biology, physics, and chemistry) and 160,000 taught mathematics.

**Action A-2 Part 1: Summer Institutes**

In the first implementation action, the committee recommends a summer education program for 50,000 classroom teachers each year. Matching grants would be provided on a one-for-one basis to state and regional summer institutes to develop and provide 1- to 2-week sessions. The expected federal investment per participant is about $1,200 per week, excluding participant stipends, which would be covered by local school districts.

Summer institutes for secondary school teachers of science and mathematics have existed in various forms at least since the 1950s, often with corporate sponsors.[19] The National Science Foundation (NSF) started funding teacher institutes in 1953, when shortages of adequately trained personnel in scientific and technical fields became increasingly evident.[20] In 2004, the NSF Math and Science Partnership began making awards under a new program, Teacher Institutes for the 21st Century.[21]

There is a particularly strong need for elementary and middle school teachers to have a deeper education in science and mathematics.[22] Many school children are systematically discouraged from learning science and mathematics because of their teachers' lack of preparation, or in some cases, because of their teachers' disdain for science and mathematics. In many school systems, no science at all is taught before middle school.

Teachers who are not required to teach science have little reason to increase their knowledge and skills through professional development. No Child Left Behind requirements, however, will expand testing to the sciences in 2007. Elementary school teachers thus need training now in many areas of science; they need to see the relationships between mathematics and the sciences; and, most important if they are to excite young minds, they need the ability to integrate information across disciplines. In short, *all* teachers need to be scientifically literate and preferably excited about science.

The Merck Institute for Science Education (MISE)[23] is an in-service professional development program for K–6 teachers established in 1993 with a 10-year commitment from Merck & Company. An intensive 3-year course combines multiple-year summer institutes in inquiry-based science instruction that is tied to state and national standards with in-classroom follow-up and reinforcement from September to June. MISE also provides curriculum materials and training in their use. The current participants are K–6 teachers in New Jersey and Pennsylvania public schools. In all, about 4,000 teachers have participated in the program.

---

[19] Summer institutes at Union College in Schenectady and at the Case Institute of Technology in Cleveland were supported by the General Electric Company, institutes at the University of Minnesota were supported by the Ford Foundation, and institutes at the University of Tennessee were supported by the Martin Marietta Corporation.

[20] Funding for institutes for the continuing education of high school science teachers began to decline in number in the late 1960s, when the shortages of technical personnel including science teachers, began to decline. After a leveling period during the 1970s, National Science Foundation support for teacher institutes was discontinued in 1982. Support for the teacher institute programs was resumed the following year following several national reports detailing the severe problems facing science teaching and with growing recognition of the shortage of qualified science teachers.

[21] These awards are directed to disciplinary faculty of higher education institutions to work with experienced teachers of mathematics and the sciences to deepen teachers' content knowledge and instructional skills so they may become school-based intellectual leaders in their fields.

[22] National Research Council. *Science for All Children: A Guide to Improving Elementary Science Education in Your School District.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1997.

[23] Merck Institute for Science Education (MISE). Available at http://www.mise.org/mise/index.jsp.

Analysis by an external evaluator indicates that students of teachers who participated in MISE professional development programs for at least 3 years substantially outperformed those whose teachers participated for a year or less.[24]

Local MISE programs have made science a priority in each district. New science frameworks and instructional materials developed by MISE have been adopted by all of the participating districts. Added benefits are seen in improvements in hiring and recruitment of teachers and administrators, increased expenditures for instructional materials, changes in how teachers are observed and evaluated in the classroom, augmented instructional support services, development of new district-wide science assessments, and the leveraging of significant additional external resources for science education programs. MISE also has helped to lead the way in the creation of statewide science content standards and professional development standards.

Similar to MISE in its focus on K–6 science education is the Washington State Leadership and Assistance for Science Education Reform (LASER) program,[25] which began in 1999 with a strategic planning institute to coordinate standards, curricula, and evaluation. Six more institutes have convened since then, and now 131 school districts, enrolling more than 60% of Washington's students, are at various stages of implementing an inquiry-based science program.[26]

In 2005, achievement in the 5th grade science portion of the Washington Assessment of Student Learning (WASL) was measured and correlated with teacher participation in LASER. Primary among the findings was a significant relationship between professional development among teachers and the percentage of students meeting the science standard on the 2004 test (Figure 5-2). LASER teachers' classroom practices changed incrementally until they had more than 80 hours of professional development; at that point, more dramatic shifts to inquiry-based methods were observed.

---

[24] Consortium for Policy Research in Education. 2002. *A Report on the Eighth Year of the Merck Institute for Science Education*. Philadelphia, PA: CPRE, University of Pennsylvania, 2002. Available at http://www.mise.org/pdf/cpre2000_2001.pdf . When MISE was created in 1995, there were no district-wide or state assessments in science in Pennsylvania or New Jersey, where MISE programs were based. The absence of assessment often meant that less attention was given to science in elementary classrooms, and it meant that there was no easy way to measure the impact of MISE's work on student learning. MISE has been exploring the use of performance tasks for district-wide assessment. For the past two years, performance tasks drawn from the Third International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMSS) have been administered in grades 3 and 7 in all four districts. This has been a collaborative project involving MISE staff, central office staff, and many interested teachers.

[25] Washington State Leadership and Assistance for Science Education Reform (LASER) program. Available at http://www.washingtonlaser.org/.

[26] "Inquiry" is a set of interrelated processes by which scientists and students pose questions about the natural world and investigate knowledge. Using an inquiry-based approach students learn science in a way that reflects how science actually works. See National Research Council. *National Science Education Standards*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1995.

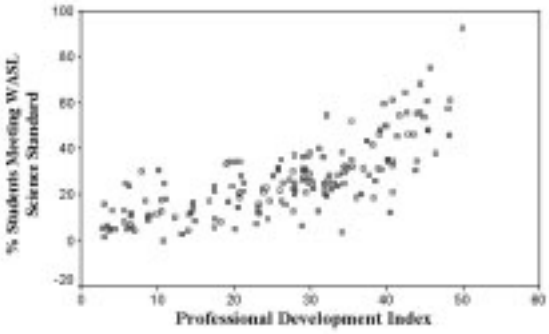



FIGURE 5-2 Professional development of teachers increases student achievement in science. The scatter plot shows the PD index (total professional development hours per 100 students provided over a 3-year period to the teachers of 5th graders who took the WASL in spring 2004) compared with the percentage of students who met the WASL standards. Each box represents a school. There is a gradual increase in the percentage of students meeting the standard as the PD index increases. The data suggest the rate of increase accelerated after teachers received a critical amount of professional development, although the exact point at which that change occurred cannot be determined without access to classroom-level aggregates and the ability to track the professional development of the teachers of individual students. The relationship between professional development and student achievement holds even after adjustments for the influence of percentage of students eligible for free and reduced-price lunches and for the percentage of Asian students.
SOURCE: D. Schutz, D. Weaver, and P. D. Finch. *Washington State LASER — Evaluation Results* (in preparation).

The system of national laboratories also can be tapped for continuing education of K–12 teachers. The Laboratory Science Teacher Professional Development program was designed by the Office of Science in the Department of Energy (DOE) to create a cadre of outstanding middle and high school science and mathematics teachers who will serve as leaders in their local and regional teaching communities.[27] Through this 3-year program, teachers establish long-term relationships with DOE mentor scientists and with teaching colleagues. Teachers are expected to spend at least 4 weeks at one of the DOE laboratories during the first year and at least 2 weeks at one of the laboratories for each of 2 years after that. If such a program were used to train two teachers from each of the 15,000 school districts in the country over a 10-year period, about 3,200 teachers each year would be brought into the 17 DOE laboratories, eventually reaching a 3-year steady state of 9,600 teachers. The Science and Mathematics Education Task Force of the Secretary of Energy Advisory Board is currently reviewing such a proposal.[28]

The National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) also has an educational program whose focus is to "inspire and motivate students to pursue careers in science, technology, engineering, and mathematics". It supports education in schools and also participates in informal education and public outreach efforts. NASA's programs focus on increasing elementary and secondary education participation in NASA programs; enhancing higher-education capability in science, technology, engineering, and mathematics disciplines; increasing participation by underrepresented and underserved communities; expanding e-education; and expanding NASA's participation with the informal-education community. Among its activities for teachers and students are summer academies at its flight centers and workshops.[29]

**Action A-2 Part 2: Science and Mathematics Master's Programs**

The second element of this implementation action would, through part-time 2-year master's degree programs granted by the colleges of science and engineering (working with the colleges of education) at the nation's research universities, enhance the education and skills of current middle and high school science, mathematics, and technology teachers as well as those with science, mathematics, and engineering degrees who decide to pursue teaching either upon graduation or later in their career.

The master's in science education programs (identified for each specific field) would take place over 3 full-time summers plus alternate weekends during the academic year in science, mathematics, and technology education for current teachers. Over the course of 5 years, it would enhance the education and skills of 50,000 current science, mathematics, and technology

---

[27] US Department of Energy. Office of Science. Office of Workforce Development for Teachers and Scientists. "Laboratory Science Teacher Professional Development Program: About LSTPD." Available at: http://www.scied.science.doe.gov/scied/LSTPD/about.htm.
[28] US Department of Energy. "Secretary of Energy Advisory Board: Subcommittees." Available at: http://www.seab.energy.gov/sub/committees.htm.
[29] NASA. "Overview: NASA Education Programs." February 1, 2004. Available at: http://education.nasa.gov/edprograms/overview/index.html.

teachers nationwide and qualify them for higher pay under existing rules in nearly all school districts.

To implement this action, the committee recommends that the federal government provide 100 to 125 academic research universities (2 or more per state) the ability to offer 4-5 programs in mathematics, biology, chemistry, physics, engineering, computer science, or integrated science for a total of 500 competitive institutional grants nationwide. The programs would focus on content education and pedagogy and would each provide in-classroom training and continuous evaluation for approximately 20 in-service middle and high school teachers and career changers.[30]

The program's master teachers[31] would provide leadership in their own districts for all the programs included in this recommendation. They would be mentors for new college graduates teaching in their schools and for the many very able current teachers who would welcome the opportunity to upgrade their skills through summer institutes or education to become AP or IB teachers or pre-AP–IB teachers. Teachers who complete the program would receive federally funded incentive stipends of $10,000 annually for up to 5 years provided that they remain in the classroom and engage in teaching leadership activities.[32] Once the 5-year limit has been reached, teachers can pursue national certification for which many states offer a financial bonus.

Students learn best from teachers who have strong content knowledge and pedagogical skills.[33] Unfortunately, it is uncertain what science and mathematics preparation, beyond the basics, is the best training for teachers. Nonetheless, it is known that teachers need to stay current with their disciplines. Master's degree programs, particularly those emphasizing content knowledge, keep teachers updated and provide working teachers the skills to teach for the future.

The Science Teacher Institute in the University of Pennsylvania's School of Arts and Sciences and Graduate School of Education [34] is a rigorous program that trains middle and high school science teachers. Eighty percent of the education is in a participant's scientific discipline and 20% percent is in pedagogy, emphasizing the secondary-classroom applications of inquiry-based instruction. At the end of 2 years (3 summers and alternate Saturdays during the school year), teachers graduate with master's of science degrees in chemistry education or integrated science education. Those teachers have demonstrated a major influence in their schools.[35] They mentor other teachers, update the schools' curricula, and recruit students into demanding science

---

[30] An example of such a program is Math for America's Newton fellowship program in New York City. In this 5 year program, new and mid-career scientists, engineers, and mathematics receive a stipend to pursue a master's level teaching program, obtain a teaching certificate, begin teaching, and are mentored, coached, and provided support as they begin their teaching career. See http://www.mathforamerica.org.

[31] This program may be even more effective if such master teachers would be nationally board certified, and would then become a national pool of teacher leaders.

[32] Such master teachers should also be eligible for some release time from classroom teaching to engage in leadership activities.

[33] National Research Council. *Learning and Understanding: Improving Advanced Study of Mathematics and Science in U.S. Schools.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2002; M. Cochran-Smith and K. M. Zeichner. *Studying Teacher Education.* Washington, DC: American Educational Research Association, 2005; M. Allen. 2003. *Eight Questions on Teacher Preparation: What does the Research Say?* Washington, DC: Education Commission of the States, 2003. Available at http://www.ecs.org/tpreport.

[34] Science Teacher Institute. Available at http://www.sas.upenn.edu/PennSTI/.

[35] C. Blasse and G. Palladino. Implementing the professional development standards: A research department's innovative masters degree program for high school chemistry teachers. *Journal of Chemical Education* 82(4)(2005):567-570.

courses. They are the "teachers of teachers" who provide the academic leadership so urgently needed in school districts across the country.

An additional 50,000 of those truly outstanding teachers could inspire and support students and other teachers to work harder at mathematics and science. Our recommendation would provide the funding and structure to reach about one-sixth of the nation's science and mathematics teachers—about 3 teachers in each of the more than 15,000 school districts in the nation.

**Action A-2 Part 3: Advanced Placement, International Baccalaureate, and Pre-AP–IB Education**

The third implementation action for the K-12 educational recommendation is a program to train an additional 70,000 AP and IB teachers and 80,000 pre-AP–IB teachers of mathematics and science (at present, the AP program serves many more students than does the IB program). Teachers from schools where there are few or no AP or IB courses would receive priority for this program. The model for this recommendation is the College Board's AP program, which has wide acceptance in secondary and higher education. It also could be implemented in schools certified by the International Baccalaureate organization. So long as they demonstrate satisfactory performance, AP and IB teachers would receive incentives to attend professional development seminars and to tutor and prepare students outside regular classroom hours. Under the proposed program, their development fees would be paid, and they would receive a bonus for each student who passed an AP or IB examination in mathematics or science. Implementation in each state would require the creation of a non-profit organization staffed by talented master teachers who would help local schools manage the program and enforce high standards.

The model for this recommendation is the Dallas-based AP Incentive Program (APIP),[16] which offers financial incentives to prepare teachers to teach demanding courses to ever-increasing numbers of secondary school students. To serve as large a percentage of students as possible, APIP has been coupled with a pre-AP program, Laying the Foundation, which begins in the 6th grade to help students prepare for 11th and 12th grade AP and IB examinations. Teachers use vertically aligned lessons based on national standards and final, comprehensive end-of-course examinations to measure mastery of essential concepts. The process continues through middle and high schools to ensure that graduating seniors are prepared for college work.

The foundation for each program is intensive, 4-year professional development, focused on content, delivered by the College Board and by master teachers in local school districts. Assuming satisfactory performance, AP-IB teachers can, under the proposed program, receive

---

[16] APIP is part of a statewide initiative to raise educational standards. See Texas Education Agency. Advanced Placement and International Baccalaureate Examination Results in Texas, 2001-02. Doc. No. GE03-601-08. Austin, TX: TEA, 2003. In 2001, the Texas Legislature enacted the Gold Performance Acknowledgement (GPA) system to acknowledge districts and campuses for high performance on indicators not used to determine accountability ratings (TEC, §39.0721, 2001). Included is an AP-IB indicator that measures the percentage of non-special-education students who take an AP or IB examination and the combined percentage of non-special-education examinees at or above the criterion score on at least one AP or IB examination (TEC §39.0721, 2001). The percentage of examinations with high scores on AP or IB was kept as a report-only performance indicator (TEA, 2002). GPA acknowledgement is given when non-special-education 11th and 12th graders take at least one AP or IB examination represent 15% or more of the non-special-education in 11th and 12th grade students and 50% or more of those examinees have at least 1 score of 3 or above on an AP examination or 4 or above on an IB examination.

annual incentive payments of $1800 and pre-AP teachers receive annual incentive payments of $1,000. AP-IB teachers also receive a $100 bonus for each student who passes an AP examination in mathematics or science. Pre-AP teachers receive a $25 bonus for each students who passes the end-of-course examination.

To reach currently underserved areas or populations of students with specific learning needs, it might be useful to consider implementing online learning. The University of California College Prep program (UCCP) makes AP courses available to students who enroll individually or as part of a school group. In either case, they have online access to teachers and tutors. The more than 5,000 students currently enrolled are taught by certified teachers and tutored by paid university undergraduates and graduate students.

**Action A-2 Part 4: K–12 Curricular Materials Modeled on World-Class Standards**

The fourth part of the K–12 recommendation asks the Department of Education to convene a national panel to collect K–12 science and mathematics teaching materials that have been proven effective or develop new ones where no effective models exist. All materials would be made available online, free of charge, as a voluntary national curriculum that would provide an effective high standard for K–12 teachers.

High-quality teaching is grounded in careful vertical alignment of curricula, assessments, and student achievement standards. Efforts to directly evaluate curricular quality have often foundered in the past,[37] but the need still exists. Excellent resources for the development of K–12 science, technology, and mathematics curricular materials include the National Science Education Standards,[38] Project 2061,[39] and numerous Web-based compendia, including the National Science Digital Library.[40] Gateway to Educational Materials (GEM), sponsored by the US Department of Education, is a collaborative effort to collect materials and provide them free to educators. The GEM Web site offers more than 20,000 educational resources, catalogued by type and grade level. Although GEM can be cumbersome to use, it has been lauded as an exemplary effort. GEM also has made it clear that teacher education programs need to add a technology component.[41]

---

[37] Math and Science Expert Panel. *Exemplary Promising Mathematics Programs.* Washington DC: US Department of Education, 1999; National Research Council. *On Evaluating Curricular Effectiveness: Judging the Quality of K-12 Mathematics Evaluations.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2004.

[38] National Research Council. *National Science Education Standards.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1996; National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. *Principles and Standards for School Mathematics.* Washington, DC: NCTM, 2000. Available at http://standards.nctm.org/.

[39] Project 2061, sponsored by the American Association for the Advancement of Science, is an initiative to reform K-12 education nationwide so that all high school graduates are science literate. In the first stage of its work, Project 2061 published *Science for All Americans*, which outlines what all students should know and be able to do in science, mathematics, and technology after 13 years of schooling. See: F. James Rutherford and Andrew Ahlgren. *Science For All Americans.* American Association for the Advancement of Science. October 1990. Available at: http://www.project2061.org/default_flash.htm.

[40] The National Digital Science Library. See: http://nsdl.org/.

[41] For example, see M. A. Fitzgerald and J. McClendon. 2002. The Gateway to Educational Materials: An Evaluation Study, Year 3. A technical report submitted to the US Department of Education, October 10, 2002. http://www.geminfo.org/Evaluation/Fitzgerald_02.10.pdf.

Project Lead the Way (PLTW) is a national program with partners in public schools, colleges and universities, and the private sector.[42] The project has developed a 4-year sequence of courses that, when combined with college preparatory mathematics and science, introduces students to the scope, rigor, and discipline of engineering and engineering technology. PLTW also has developed a middle school technology curriculum, Gateway to Technology. Students participating in PLTW courses are better prepared for college engineering programs than those exposed only to the more traditional curricula.

Comprehensive teacher education is a critical component of PLTW, and the curriculum uses cutting-edge technology and software that require specialized education. Continuing education supports teachers as they implement the program and provides for continuous improvement of skills.

**ENLARGE THE PIPELINE**

**Action A-3: Enlarge the pipeline of students who are prepared to enter college and graduate with a degree in science, engineering, or mathematics by increasing the number of students who pass AP and IB science and mathematics courses.** The competitiveness of US knowledge industries will be purchased largely in the K–12 classroom: We must invest in our students' mathematics and science education. A new generation of bright, well-trained scientists and engineers will transform our future only if we begin in the 6th grade to significantly enlarge the pipeline and prepare students to engage in advanced coursework in mathematics and science.

The "other side" of the classroom equation, of course, is the students,[43] our innovators of the future.[44] Despite expressing an interest in the subjects, many US students avoid rigorous high school work in mathematics and science.[45] All US students should be held to high expectations, and rigorous coursework should be available to all students. Particular attention should be paid to increasing the participation of those students in groups that are underrepresented in science, technology, and mathematics education, training, and employment.

The first goal of the proposed action is to have 1,500,000 students taking at least one AP or IB mathematics or science examination by 2010, an increase to 23% from 6.5% of juniors and seniors who took at least one AP or IB mathematics or science examination in 2004. We also must increase the number of students who pass those examinations from 230,000 in 2004 to at least 700,000 by 2010. AP and IB programs would be voluntary and open to all and would give students a head start by providing them with college-level courses taught by outstanding high school teachers.[46] The result will be better prepared undergraduates who will have a better

---

[42] PLTW is now offered in 45 states and the District of Columbia. See http://www.pltw.org/index.htm.

[43] National Research Council. 2004. *Engaging Schools: Fostering High-School Students' Motivation to Learn.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2004.

[44] K. Hunter. Education key to jobs, Microsoft CEO says. *Stateline.org*, Aug. 17, 2005.

[45] T. Lewin. Many Going to College Are Not Ready, Report Says. *New York Times*, August 17, 2005. Among those who took the 2005 ACT, only 51% achieved the benchmark in reading, 26% in science, and 41% in mathematics; the figure for English was 68%.

[46] One researcher estimates that each year 25,000 interested and adequately prepared students in the United States are told they cannot take AP or IB courses. He further speculates that another 75,000 or more students who could do well elect not to take them because no one encourages them to do so. See J. Mathews. *Class Struggle: What's Wrong (and Right) with America's Best Public High Schools.* New York: Times Books, 1998. Limiting access to advanced study occurs in all kinds of educational settings, including the most competitive high schools in

chance of completing their bachelor's degrees in science, engineering, and mathematics.[47] Table 5-2 shows that a student who passes an AP examination has a better chance overall—regardless of ethnicity—of completing a bachelor's degree within 6 years.

**TABLE 5-2 Six-Year Graduation Rate of Students Who Passed AP Examinations and Students Who Did Not Take AP Examinations**

| Ethnicity | Passed AP Examination | Did Not Take AP Examination |
|---|---|---|
| White | 72% | 30% |
| Hispanic | 62% | 15% |
| Blacks | 60% | 17% |

NOTES: Data are for all students graduating from Texas public high schools in 1998 and enrolling in a Texas public college or university (88,961 students). AP examinations were given in the core subjects of English, mathematics, science, and social studies to students in grades 10–12. The percentage shown is the proportion of students who obtained bachelor's degrees or higher within 6 years of secondary-school graduation.
SOURCE: National Center for Educational Accountability at http://www.nc4ea.org/.

This action is built on standards, testing, and incentives to achieve excellence in science and mathematics. The APIP program has been successful across gender, ethnicity, and economic groups. The program proposed herein would give students the further background they need to study science, engineering, and mathematics as undergraduates.

Such advanced coursework can provide the foundation for students to be internationally competitive in the fields of focus. For example, US students who passed AP calculus in 2000 were administered the 1995 Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMMS) test.[48] Their scores were significantly higher than the average 1995 US score, and they were higher than the 1995 average scores of the students from all 14 participating countries. Similarly, US students who passed AP physics in 2000 outperformed the 1995 US national TIMSS average and exceeded the 1995 scores for all participating countries except Norway (Table 5-3). It is clear that engaging K-12 students in challenging courses taught by qualified teachers will enhance their educational experiences and may increase the number of students who enter college and complete higher education degrees.

---

America—schools with adequate resources, qualified teachers, and well-prepared students. These schools, while typically advocating college preparation for everyone, create layers of curricular differentiation, such that only a select group of students are allowed entrance into certain AP and honors courses, other students are placed in less vigorous courses. See Paul Attewell. The winner take-all high school: Organizational adaptations to educational stratification. *Sociology of Education* 74(4)(2001): 267-296. For a larger discussion of access to advanced coursework, see National Research Council. 2002. *Learning and Understanding: Improving Advanced Study of Mathematics and Science in U.S. Schools.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2002.

[47] Academic opportunities such as AP and IB programs benefit students in several ways. High school students who participate in AP and IB courses and associated examinations are exposed to college-level academic content and are challenged to complete more rigorous coursework. Students with qualifying examination scores are provided the opportunity to earn college credit or advanced placement, depending on the college or university they attend. [Texas Education Agency. (2005) *Advanced Placement and International Baccalaureate Examination Result in Texas 2003-2004*, (Document no. GE05 601 11). Austin, TX. p6.

[48] See Chapter 3 or Appendix D for more detailed discussion of the exam http://nces.ed.gov/timss/.

**TABLE 5-3 Achievement of US AP Calculus and Physics Students Who Participated in the Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMSS) in 2000 Compared with Average International Scores from 1995**

| Mathematics | Average Score | Physics | Average Score |
|---|---|---|---|
| **US AP calculus students scoring 3, 4, or 5** | **596** | Norway | 581 |
| **US AP calculus students taking, but not passing the exam** | **573** | **US AP physics Students scoring 3, 4, or 5** | **577** |
| France | 557 | Sweden | 573 |
| Russian Federation | 542 | Russian Federation | 545 |
| Switzerland | 533 | **US AP physics students taking but not passing the exam** | **529** |
| Australia | 525 | Germany | 522 |
| Cyprus | 518 | Australia | 518 |
| Lithuania | 516 | ***International Average*** | ***501*** |
| Greece | 513 | Cyprus | 494 |
| Sweden | 512 | Latvia | 488 |
| Canada | 509 | Switzerland | 488 |
| ***International Average*** | ***501*** | Greece | 486 |
| Italy | 474 | Canada | 485 |
| Czech Republic | 469 | France | 466 |
| Germany | 465 | Czech Republic | 451 |
| **United States** | **442** | Austria | 435 |
| Austria | 436 | **United States** | **423** |

SOURCE: Eugenio J. Gonzalez, Kathleen M. O'Connor, Julie A. Miles. *How Well Do Advanced Placement Students Perform on the TIMSS Advanced Mathematics and Physics Tests?"* International Study Center, Lynch School of Education, Boston College, June, 2001. www.timss.org.

Note: Advanced placement scores on a 5-point scale; 3 is considered a passing score by the College Board, the organization that administers the courses, and colleges and universities generally require a score of 3, 4, or 5 to qualify for course credit.

Data from the Texas APIP demonstrate that combining incentives and teacher education can increase student participation (Figure 5-3), and APIP has increased academic performance for minority students in high school. The Dallas school district is the nation's 12th largest. It has a 93% minority enrollment, and 81% of its students come from low-income households. Yet Dallas students achieve outstanding AP results. African American and Hispanic students pass AP examinations in mathematics, science, and English at a rate four times higher than the national average for minority students, and female students pass the examinations at twice the national rate.[49]

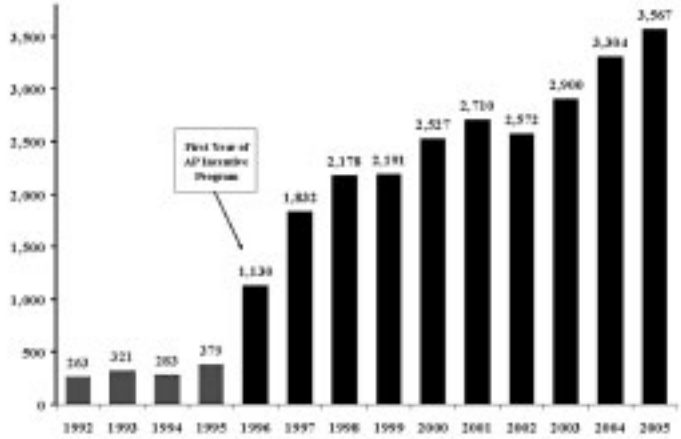



**FIGURE 5-3** The number of AP examinations in mathematics, science, and English taken in APIP schools in the Dallas Independent School District (DISD) has increased more than 9-fold over 10 years.
SOURCE: Advanced Placement Strategies. 2005. The 2004 results are based on updated data received from the Dallas Independent School District for AP examinations in mathematics, science, and English.

[49] Passing rate is calculated as number of students passing exam per 1,000 junior and senior high school students in the Dallas Independent School District compared with all of Texas and all of the United States.

## EFFECTIVE CONTINUING PROGRAMS

The committee proposed expansion of two additional approaches to improving K-12 science and mathematics education that are already in use:

- **Statewide Specialty High Schools.** An effective way to increase student achievement in science and mathematics is to provide an intensive learning experience for high-performing students.[50] These schools immerse students in high-quality science and mathematics education, serve as testing grounds for curricula and materials, provide in-classroom educational opportunities for K–12 teachers, and have the resources and staff for summer programs to introduce students to science and mathematics. One model is the North Carolina School of Science and Mathematics (NCSSM), which opened in 1980. NCSSM enrolls juniors and seniors from most of North Carolina's 100 counties. NCSSM's unique living and learning experience made it the model for 16 similar schools around the world. It is the first school of its kind in the nation—a public, residential high school where students study a specialized science and mathematics curriculum. At NCSSM, teachers come for a "sabbatical year", and the school has a structure and the personnel it needs to offer summer institutes for outstanding students.

- **Inquiry-Based Learning.** Summer research programs stimulate student interest and achievement in science, mathematics, and technology. Programs that involve several institutions or public–private partnerships should be encouraged, as should those designed to stimulate low-income and minority student participation.

## CONCLUSION

Public education is potentially our country's most valuable asset, yet our system has too long ignored the development of critical teaching and workforce skills.

The committee has examined a number of educational programs that have been demonstrated to work, identified core program components—strong content knowledge, practical pedagogical training, ongoing mentoring and education, and incentives—and recommended that programs be implemented as one would implement a research program: with built-in benchmarks, evaluations, and ongoing education—with the expectation that no one program will fit every situation.

Thorough education in science, mathematics, and technology will start students on the path to high-technology jobs in our knowledge economy. To develop an innovative workforce, we must begin now to improve public education in science and mathematics.[51]

Virtually all quality jobs in the global economy will require certain mathematical and scientific skills. The committee's objectives are to ensure that all students will gain these necessary skills and have the opportunity to become part of a cadre of world-class scientists and engineers who can create the new products that will in turn broadly enhance the nation's

---

[50] K. Powell. Science education: Hothouse High. *Nature* 435(June 16, 2005):874-875.
[51] For an alternative point of view on K-12 education reform, see Box 5-1.

standard of living. In short, our goal in producing highly qualified scientists and engineers is to ensure that, through their innovativeness, high-quality jobs are available to all Americans.

When fully implemented, the committee's recommendations will produce the academic achievement in science, mathematics, and technology that every student should exhibit and will afford numerous opportunities for further learning. Excellent teachers, increasing numbers of students meeting high academic standards, and measurable results will become the academic reality.

**Box 5-1: An Alternative Point of View: K-12 Education**

Some of those who provided comments to the committee questioned the ability of K-12 reform based on the existing US educational model to produce effective, long-lasting improvements in the way our children learn. The United States currently spends more per student than all but one other country (Switzerland),[52] but it is losing ground in educational performance. Its relatively low student achievement through high school clearly shows that the system is inefficient, and dedicating additional funding to this system is not a guarantee of success. In fact, the biggest concerns involve disparate quality among K-12 institutions and the difficulty of measuring success.

Some question whether K-12 education in the United States really suffers from low student achievement. International comparisons might serve merely to highlight the huge funding inequities among US school districts.[53] American scholastic achievement, unlike that in most other western nations, varies widely from school to school and even from state to state. Eighth graders in high-achieving states score even in mathematics with students in the highest-achieving foreign countries. Some in other states score, on the average, about even with schoolchildren in scarcely developed nations. In the United States, many more suburban school districts can provide smaller classes, better-paid teachers, and more computers than can the schools for most urban and rural children. The underprivileged groups struggle with gross overcrowding, decayed buildings, and inadequate funding even for basic instruction. Standardized test scores generally reflect the disparate distribution of resources.

Some commentators also argue that in industrialized countries there is no correlation between school achievement and economic success but that educational reforms often are the least controversial way of planning social improvement.[54] School changes are less threatening than are direct structural changes, which can involve confronting the whole organization of industry and government. Reforming education, it is claimed, is easier and less expensive than examining and correcting the societal problems that affect our schools directly—economic weaknesses, wealth and income inequality, an aging population, the prevalence of violence and drug abuse, and the restructuring of work.

Because there is not a well-developed literature on the effectiveness of K-12 learning and teaching interventions, it is challenging to recommend programs with high confidence. For example, some have argued that the International Baccalaureate program has established neither teacher qualifications nor standards for faculties and that the Advanced Placement curriculum needs better quality control.[55] Others have suggested that summer teacher-education programs are merely vehicles for textbook companies; others argue that any teacher-education programs are worthless unless there is a strong in-classroom, continuing mentoring component.

---

[52] Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development. Education at a Glance 2005. Paris: OECD, 2005. Available at http://www.oecd.org/dataoecd/41/13/35341210.pdf.
[53] D. C. Berliner and B. J. Biddle. *The Manufactured Crisis: Myths, Fraud, and the Attack on America's Public Schools.* New York: Addison-Wesley, 1995.
[54] Ibid.
[55] National Research Council. *Learning and Understanding: Improving Advanced Study of Mathematics and Science in U.S. Schools.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2002.

# 6

## WHAT ACTIONS SHOULD AMERICA TAKE IN SCIENCE AND ENGINEERING RESEARCH TO REMAIN PROSPEROUS IN THE 21st CENTURY? SOWING THE SEEDS

**Recommendation B:** ***Sustain and strengthen the nation's traditional commitment to long-term basic research that has the potential to be transformational to maintain the flow of new ideas that fuel the economy, provide security, and enhance the quality of life.***

Flat or declining research budgets for federal agencies and programs hamper long-term basic and high-risk research, funding for early-career researchers, and investments in infrastructure. Yet all of those activities are critical for attracting and retaining the best and brightest students in science and engineering and producing important research results. These factors are the seeds of innovation for the applied research and development on which our national prosperity depends.

The Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century has identified a series of actions that will help restore the national investment in research in mathematics, the physical sciences, and engineering. The proposals concern basic-research funding, grants for researchers early in their careers, support for high-risk research with a high potential for payoff, the creation of a new research agency within the US Department of Energy (DOE), and the establishment of prizes and awards for breakthrough work in science and engineering.

**ACTION B-1: Funding for Basic Research**

The United States must ensure that an adequate portion of the federal research investment addresses long-term challenges across all fields, with the goal of creating new technologies. The federal government should increase our investment in long-term basic research—ideally through reallocation of existing funds,[1] but if necessary via new funds—by 10% annually over the next 7 years. It should place special emphasis on research in the physical sciences, engineering, mathematics, and information sciences and basic research conducted by the Department of Defense (DOD). This special attention does not mean that there should be a disinvestment in such important fields as the life sciences (which have seen substantial growth in recent years) or the social sciences. A balanced research portfolio in all fields of science and engineering research is critical to US prosperity. Increasingly, the most significant new scientific and engineering advances are formed to cut across several disciplines. Investments should be evaluated regularly to reprioritize the research portfolio—dropping unsuccessful programs or venues and redirecting funds to areas that appear more promising.

The United States currently spends more on research and development (R&D) than the rest of the G7 countries combined. At first glance (see Box 6-1), it might seem questionable to argue that the United States should invest more than it already does in R&D. Furthermore, federal spending on nondefense research nearly doubled, after inflation, from slightly more than $30 billion in FY 1976 to roughly $55 billion in FY 2004.[1]

However, the committee believes that the commitment to *basic* research, particularly in the physical sciences, mathematics, and engineering, is inadequate. In 1965, the federal government funded more than 60% of all US R&D; by 2002 that share had fallen below 30%. During the same period, there was an extraordinary increase in corporate R&D spending: IBM, for example, now spends more than $5 billion annually[2]—more than the entire federal budget for physical sciences research. Corporate R&D has thus become the linchpin of the US R&D enterprise, but it cannot replace federal investment in R&D, because corporations fund relatively little basic research—for several reasons: basic research typically offers greater benefits to society than to its sponsor; it is almost by definition risky and shareholder pressure for short-term results discourages long-term, speculative investment by industry.

Although federal funding of R&D as a whole has increased in dollar terms, its share of the gross domestic product (GDP) dipped from 1.25% in 1985 to about 0.78% in 2003 (Figure 6-1). Furthermore, in recent years much of the federal research budget has been shifted to the life sciences. From 1998 to 2003, funding for the National Institutes of Health (NIH) doubled; funding for the physical sciences, engineering, and mathematics has remained relatively flat for 15 years (Figure 6-2).

---

[1] The funds could come from anywhere in an agency, not just other research funds.

[1] P. N. Spotts. Pulling the plug on science? *Christian Science Monitor*, Apr. 14, 2005.
[2] Corporate R&D scorecard. *Technology Review*, Sept. 2005, pp. 56-61.

**Box 6-1**
**Another Point of View: Research Funding**

The committee heard commentary from several respondents who believe that current R&D funding is robust and that significant additional federal funding for research is unjustified. Their arguments include the following:

- Overall, research and development spending in the United States is high by international standards and continues to increase. Total R&D spending (government and industry) has remained remarkably consistent as a percentage of the gross domestic product, indicating that R&D spending has kept pace with the relatively rapid growth of the US economy. The fraction of the US federal domestic *discretionary* budget devoted to science has remained practically constant for the last 30 years.
- Annual nondefense research spending by the federal government has nearly doubled in real terms since 1976 and exceeds $56 billion per year—more than that in the rest of the G-7 countries combined. Government funding of overall basic research is increasing in real dollars and holding its own as a percentage of GDP.
- Additional federal funds should not be committed without better programmatic justification and improved processes to ensure that such funds are used effectively. Increases in federal R&D funding should be based on specific demonstrated needs rather than on a somewhat arbitrary decision to increase funds by a given percentage.

Some critics also worry about the challenges of implementing a rapid increase in research funding. For example, they say that doubling the NIH budget was a precipitous move. It takes time to recruit new staff and expand laboratory space, and by the time capacity has expanded, the pace of budget increases has/ve slowed and researchers have difficulty in readjusting. Others fear that reallocating additional funds to basic research will draw resources away from the commercialization efforts that are a critical part of the innovation system.

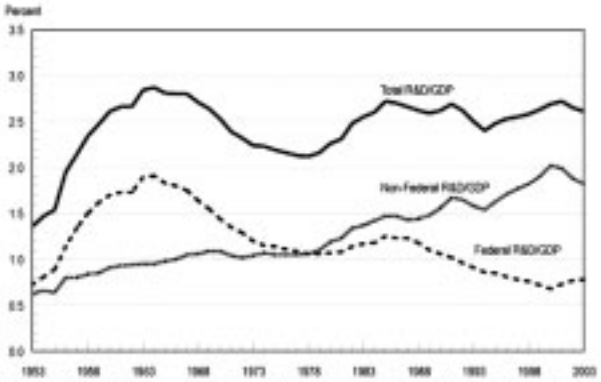



**FIGURE 6-1** Research and development shares of US gross domestic product; 1953-2003.
SOURCE: NSF Division of Science Resources Statistics. *National Patterns of Research Development Resources*, annual series. Appendix table B-9. http://www.nsf.gov/statistics/nsf05308/sectd.htm.

The case of the National Science Foundation (NSF) illustrates the trends. Despite the *authorization* in 2002 to double NSF's budget over a 5-year period, its funding has actually decreased in recent years[2]. This affects both the number and the grant size of researcher proposals funded. In 2004, for example, only 24% of all proposals to NSF were funded, the lowest proportion in 15 years.[4]

Ultimately, increases in research funding must be justified by the results that can be expected rather than by the establishment of overall budget targets. But there is a great deal of evidence today that agencies do not support high-potential research because funding will not allow it. Furthermore, because of lack of funds, NSF in 2004 declined to support $2.1 billion in proposals that its independent external reviewers rated as very good or excellent.[5]

---

[2] American Association for the Advancement of Science. *Historical data on federal R&D, FY 1976-2006*. Mar. 22, 2005. Available at http://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/his06p2.pdf.
[4] National Science Board. Report to the National Science Board on the National Science Foundation's Merit Review Process Fiscal Year 2004. NSB-05-12. Arlington, VA: NSB, 2004, p. 7.
[5] Report of the National Science Board on the National Science Foundation's Merit Review Process, Fiscal Year 2004 (Mar. 2005), Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. p. 21, p. 5.

FIGURE 6-2 Trends in federal research funding show the life sciences increasing rapidly in the late 1990s; funding for research in mathematics, computer sciences, the physical sciences, and engineering remained relatively steady.
SOURCE: American Association for the Advancement of Science, available athttp://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/discip04.pdf.

The DOD research picture is particularly troubling in this regard. As the US Senate Committee on Armed Services has noted, "investment in basic research has remained stagnant and is too focused on near-term demands."[6] A 2005 National Research Council panel's assessment is similar: "In real terms the resources provided for Department of Defense basic research have declined substantially over the past decade."[7] Reductions in funding for basic research at DOD—in the "6.1 programs"—have a particularly large influence outside the department. For example, DOD funds 40% of the engineering research performed at universities, including more than half of all research in electrical and mechanical engineering, and 17% of basic research in mathematics and computer science.[8]

The importance of DOD basic research is illustrated by its products—in defense areas these include night vision; stealth technology; near-real-time delivery of battlefield information; navigation, communication, and weather satellites; and precision munitions. But the investments pay off for civilian applications too. The Internet, communications and weather satellites, global positioning technology, the standards that became JPEG, and even the search technologies used by Google all had origins in DOD basic research. John Deutch and William Perry point out that, "the [Department of Defense] technology base program has also had a major effect on American

[6] The Senate Armed Services Committee. Report 108-046 accompanying S.1050 The FY04 National Defense Authorization Bill.
[7] National Research Council. *Assessment of Department of Defense Basic Research (2005)*. Washington, DC. National Academy Press. p. 4
[8] National Research Council, *Assessment of Department of Defense Basic Research (2005)*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press. p. 21.

industry. Indeed, it is the primary reason that the United States leads the world today in information technology."[9]

There is also a significant federal R&D budget for homeland security. For FY 2006 the total is nearly $4.4 billion across all agencies. The Department of Homeland Security itself has a $1.5 billion R&D budget, but only a small portion—$112 million—is earmarked for basic research. The rest will be devoted to applied research ($399 million), development ($746 million), and facilities and equipment ($210 million).[10]

Business organizations, trade associations, military commissions, bipartisan groups of senators and representatives, and scientific and academic groups have all reiterated the critical importance of increased R&D investment across our economic, military, and intellectual landscape (Table 6-1). After reviewing the proposals provided in the table and other related materials, the committee concluded that a 10% annual increase over a 7-year period would be appropriate. This achieves the doubling that was in principle part of the NSF Authorization Act of 2002 but would expand it to other agencies, albeit over a longer period. The committee believes that this rate of growth strikes an appropriate balance between the urgency of the issue being addressed and the ability of the research community to apply new funds efficiently.

The committee is recommending special attention to the physical sciences, engineering, mathematics, and the information sciences and to DOD basic research to restore balance to the nation's research portfolio in fields that are essential to the generation of both ideas and skilled people for the nation's economy and national and homeland security. Most assuredly, this does not mean that there should be a *disinvestment* in such important fields as the life sciences or the social sciences. A balanced research portfolio in all fields of science and engineering research is critical to US prosperity.

As indicated in the National Academies report *Science, Technology, and the Federal Government: National Goals for a New Era*, the United States needs to be among the world leaders in all fields of research so that it can

- Bring the best available knowledge to bear on problems related to national objectives even if that knowledge appears unexpectedly in a field not traditionally linked to that objective.
- Quickly recognize, extend, and use important research results that occur elsewhere.
- Prepare students in American colleges and universities to become leaders who can extend the frontiers of knowledge and apply new concepts.
- Attract the brightest young students both domestically and internationally.[11]

---

[9] J. M. Deutch and W. J. Perry. *Research worth fighting for.* New York Times, Apr. 13, 2005, p. ___.
[10] AAAS. *R&D Funding Update March 4, 2005 - Homeland Security R&D in the FY 2006 Budget.* Available at: http://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/hs06.html.
[11] COSEPUP. *Science, Technology, and the Federal Government: National Goals for a New Era.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1993.

**TABLE 6-1 Specific Recommendations for Federal Research Funding**

| Source | Report | Recommendation |
|---|---|---|
| Rep. Frank Wolf (R-Virginia), chair, Subcommittee on Science, and Related Agencies State, Justice, and Commerce | Letter to President George W. Bush, May 2005 | Triple federal basic R&D over the next decade |
| US Congress and President Bush | NSF Authorization Act of 2002, passed by Congress, signed by the President | Double the NSF budget over 5 years to reach $9.8 million by FY 2007 |
| US Commission on National Security in the 21st Century (Hart–Rudman) | *Road Map for National Security: Imperative for Change, The Phase III Report*, 2001 | Double the federal R&D budget by 2010 |
| Defense of Defense | *Quadrennial Defense Review Report*, 2001 | Allocate at least 3% of the total DOD budget for defense science and technology |
| President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology (PCAST) | *Assessing the US R&D Investment*, January 2003 | Target the physical sciences and engineering to bring them "collectively to parity with the life sciences over the next 4 budget cycles" |
| Coalition of 15 industry associations, including US Chamber of Commerce, National Association of Manufacturers, and Business Roundtable | *Tapping America's Potential: The Education for Innovation Initiative*, 2005 | Increase R&D spending, particularly for basic research in the physical sciences and engineering, at NSF, NIST, DOD, and DOE by at least 7% annually |
| 167 Members of Congress | Letter to Rep. Wolf, chair, Subcommittee on Science, State, and Related Agencies Justice, and Commerce, May 4, 2005 | Increase NSF budget to $6.1 billion in FY 2006, 6% above the FY 2005 request |
| 68 Senators | Letter to Sen. Pete Domenici (R-New Mexico), chair, Energy and Water Development Subcommittee | Increase funding for DOE Office of Science by an inflation-adjusted 3.2% over FY 2005 appropriation, a 7% increase over the Bush administration's FY06 request |
| Council on Competitiveness | *Innovate America*, 2004 | Allocate at least 3% of the total DOD budget for defense science and technology; direct at least 20% of that amount to long-term, basic research; intensify support for the physical sciences and engineering |
| National Science Board | *Fulfilling the Promise: A Report to Congress on the Budgetary and Programmatic Expansion of the National Science Foundation*, NSB-2004-15 | Fund NSF annually at $18.7 billion, including about $12.5 billion for R&D |

ABBREVIATIONS: NSF, National Science Foundation; DOD, Department of Defense; NIST, National Institute of Standards and Technology; DOE, Department of Energy.

**ACTION B-2: Early-Career Researchers**

The federal government should establish a program to provide 200 new research grants each year at $500,000 each, payable over 5 years, to support the work of outstanding early-career researchers. The grants would be funded by federal agencies (NIH, NSF, DOD, DOE, and the National Aeronautics and Space Administration [NASA]) to underwrite new research opportunities at universities and government laboratories.

About 50,000 people hold postdoctoral appointments in the United States.[12] Those early-career researchers are particularly important because they often are the forefront innovators. A report in the journal *Science* states that postdoctoral scholars (those who had completed doctorates but who had not yet obtained long-term research positions) comprised 43% of the first authors on the research articles it published in 1999.[13] However, as funding processes have become more conservative and as money becomes tighter, it has become more difficult for junior researchers to find support for new or independent research. In 2002, the median age at which investigators received a first NIH grant was 42 years, up from about 35 years in 1981.[14] At NSF, for the percentage of first-time applicants who received grant funding fell from 25% in 2000 to 17% in 2004.[15]

There is a wide divergence among fields in the use of postdoctoral researchers and in the percentages heading toward industry rather than academe. Recent trends suggest that more students are opting for postgraduate study and that the duration of postdoctoral appointments is increasing, particularly in the life sciences.[16] But new researchers face challenges across a range of fields.

The problem is particularly acute in the biomedical sciences. In 1980, investigators under the age of 40 received more than half of the competitive research awards; by 2003, fewer than 17% of those awards went to researchers under 40.[17] Both the percentage and the number of awards made to new investigators—regardless of age—have declined for several years; new investigators received fewer than 4% of NIH research awards in 2002.[18] One conclusion is that academic biomedical researchers are spending long periods at the beginning of their careers unable to set their own research directions or establish their independence. New investigators thus have diminished freedom to risk the pursuit of independent research, and they continue instead with their postdoctoral work or with otherwise conservative research projects.[19]

Postdoctoral salaries are relatively low,[20] although several federal programs support early-career researchers in tenure-track or equivalent positions. The NSF Faculty Early Career Development Program makes 350–400 awards annually, ranging from $400,000 to nearly $1 million over 5 years, to support career research and education.[21] Corresponding DOD programs

---

[12] National Science Foundation. WebCASPAR, Integrated Science and Engineering Data System. Available at: http://www.caspar.nsf.gov.
[13] G. Vogel. A day in the life of a topflight lab. *Science* 285(1999): 1531-1532.
[14] National Research Council. *Bridges to Independence: Fostering the Independence of New Investigators in Biomedical Research*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2005, p. 37.
[15] Report of the National Science Board on the National Science Foundation's Merit Review Process, Fiscal Year 2004 (Mar. 2005) Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.
[16] National Research Council. *Bridges to Independence: Fostering the Independence of New Investigators in Biomedical Research*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press 2005, p. 43.
[17] Ibid., p. 43.
[18] Ibid., p. 1.
[19] Ibid., p. 1.
[20] A Sigma Xi survey found that the median postdoctoral salary was $38,000—below that of all bachelor's degree recipients ($45,000). See G. Davis. 2005. Doctors without orders. 93(3, Supplement): May–June 2005.
[21] J. Tornow, National Science Foundation, personal communication. August 2005.

include the Office of Defense Programs' Early Career Scientist and Engineer Award and the Navy Young Investigator Program. The Presidential Early Career Award for Scientists and Engineers (PECASE) is the highest national honor for investigators in the early stages of their careers. In 2005, there were 58 PECASE awards that each provided funding of $100,000 annually for 5 years (Table 6-2). Still, that group is a tiny fraction of the postdoctoral research population.

In making its recommendation, the committee decided to use the PECASE awards as a model for the magnitude and duration of awards. In determining the number of awards, the committee considered the number of awards in other award programs and the overall reasonableness of the extent of the program.

**TABLE 6-2 Annual Number of PECASE Awards, by Agency, 2005**

| Agency | Awards |
|---|---|
| National Science Foundation | 20 |
| National Institutes of Health | 12 |
| Department of Energy | 9 |
| Department of Defense | 6 |
| Department of Commerce | 4 |
| Department of Agriculture | 3 |
| National Aeronautics and Space Administration | 2 |
| Department of Veterans Affairs | 2 |
| TOTAL | 58 |

**ACTION B-3: Advanced Research Instrumentation and Facilities**

The federal government should establish a National Coordination Office for Advanced Research Instrumentation and Facilities to manage a fund of $500 million per year over the next 5 years—ideally through reallocation of existing funds, but if necessary via new funds—for construction and maintenance of research facilities, including the instrumentation, supplies, and other physical resources researchers need. Universities and the government's national laboratories would compete annually for the funds.

Advanced research instrumentation and facilities (ARIF) are critical to successful research that benefits society. For example, eight Nobel prizes in physics were awarded in the last 20 years to the inventors of new instrument technology, including the electron and scanning tunneling microscopes, laser and neutron spectroscopy, particle detectors, and the integrated circuit.[22] Five Nobel prizes in chemistry were awarded for successive generations of mass-spectrometry instruments and applications.

*Advanced research instrumentation and facilities*[23] is defined as instrumentation and facilities housing closely related or interacting instruments and includes networks of sensors, databases, and cyberinfrastructure. ARIF are distinguished from other types of instrumentation by its expense and in that it is commonly acquired by large-scale centers or research programs.

[22] National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Infrastructure for the 21st Century: The Role of the National Science Foundation*.Arlington, VA National Science Foundation, 2003, p. 1.
[23] National Academies. *Advanced Research Instrumentation and Facilities*. Washington, DC: *National Academy Press*, 2005.

rather than individual investigators. The acquisition of ARIF by an academic institution often requires a substantial institutional commitment and depends on high-level decision-making at both the institution and federal agencies. ARIF at academic institutions are often managed by institution administration. Furthermore, the advanced nature of ARIF often requires expert technical staff for its operation and maintenance.

A recent National Academies committee[24] found that there is a critical gap in federal programs for ARIF. Although federal research agencies research do have instrumentation programs, few allow proposals for instrumentation when the capital cost is greater than $2 million. No federal research agency has an agency-wide ARIF program.

In addition, the ARIF committee found that instrumentation programs are inadequately supported. Few provide funds for continuing technical support and maintenance. The programs tend to support instrumentation for specific research fields and rarely consider broader scientific needs. The shortfalls in funding for instrumentation have built up cumulatively and are met by temporary programs that address short-term issues but rarely long-term problems. The instrumentation programs are poorly integrated across (or even within) agencies. The ad hoc ARIF programs are neither well organized nor visible to most investigators, and they do not adequately match the research community's increasing need for ARIF.

When budgets for basic research are stagnant, it is particularly difficult to maintain crucial investments in instrumentation, and facilities. The National Science Board (NSB) reports that over the last decade funding for the US academic research instrumentation and facilities has not kept pace with funding in the rest of the world.[25] Nations that are relative newcomers to science and technology research—South Korea, China, and some European nations, for example—are investing heavily in instrumentation and facilities that serve as a major attraction to scientists from throughout the world. NSB recommends increasing the share of the NSF budget devoted to such tools from the current 22% to 27%.

NSB also cites reports by other organizations that point to major deficiencies in federal research infrastructure including instrumentation and facilities.[26] These organizations include:

- The National Science and Technology Council, which in 1995 stated that $8.7 billion would be needed just to rectify then-current infrastructure deficits.[27]
- NSF, which estimated in 1998 that it would cost $11.4 billion to construct, repair, or renovate US academic research facilities.[28]
- NIH, which in 2001 estimated health research infrastructure needs at $5.6 billion.[29]
- NASA, which reported a $900 million construction backlog in 2001 and said that $2 billion more would be needed to revitalize and modernize the aerospace research infrastructure.[30]
- The DOE Office of Science, which reported that in 2001 more than 60% of its laboratory space was more than 30 years old and identified more than $2 billion in capital investments it needed for the next decade.[31]

---

[24] National Academies 2006.
[25] Ibid., p. 2.
[26] Ibid., pp. 18-19.
[27] National Science and Technology Council. *Final Report on Academic Research Infrastructure: A Federal Plan for Renewal.* Washington, DC: White House Office of Science and Technology Policy, Mar. 17, 1995.
[28] National Science Foundation, Division of Science Resources Statistics. Science and Engineering Research Facilities at Colleges and Universities, 1998. NSF-01-301. Arlington, VA: NSF, Oct. 2000.
[29] National Institutes of Health, Working Group on Construction of Research Facilities. A Report to the Advisory Committee of the Director, National Institutes of Health. Bethesda, MD: NIH, Jul. 6, 2001.
[30] Jefferson Morris. NASA considering closing, consolidating centers as part of restructuring effort. *Aerospace Daily* 200(1)(Oct. 17, 2001): 1

- NSF directorates, which, when surveyed in FY 2001, estimated additional infrastructure needs of $18 billion through 2010.[32]
- A blue ribbon panel convened by NSF, which estimated that $850 million more per year is needed for cyber infrastructure.[33]

One contributor to infrastructure deficits has been the imposition by the federal government in 1991 of a 26% cap on reimbursement to universities for "administrative costs", including funding for construction, maintenance, and operation of research facilities. Universities have in most cases been unable to increase their spending on infrastructure and have had to shift funds from other nongovernment sources to cover their investments in this area.[34]

NSB concludes that researchers are less productive than they could be and somewhat more likely to take positions abroad where resources are increasingly available. It is also important to note that the federal government alone has the ability to fund this type of research infrastructure. Industry has little incentive to do so, and state governments and universities do not have the resources. If the federal government fails to maintain the national research infrastructure, this infrastructure will continue to decay.

The committee used the 2001 estimates to determine the advanced research instrumentation and facilities needs of the nation. The recommendation would fund only a portion of that built-up demand, but the committee believes the proposed amount would be sufficient to at least keep the research enterprise moving forward.

The National Academies committee that developed the report on ARIF recommended that the White House Office of Science and Technology Policy (OSTP) enhance federal research agency coordination and cooperation with respect to ARIF. Federal agencies could work together to develop joint solicitations, invite researchers from diverse disciplines to present opportunities for ARIF that would be useful to many fields to multiple agencies, simultaneously, seek out and identify best practices, and discuss the appropriate balance of funding among people, tools, and ideas, which could become part of the regular White House Office of Management and Budget-OSTP budget memorandum.

Therefore, in terms of the management of this fund, this committee believes that the best model is that of a national coordination office such as the National Coordination Office for Networking and Information Technology Research and Development (NCO/NITRD).[35] The National Coordination Office director reports to the director of the White House Office of Science and Technology Policy (OSTP) through the assistant director for technology. Twelve agencies participate, with each agency retaining its own funds, but, through the National Coordination Office, agencies are able to work together on technical and budget planning.

The other example using the National Coordination Office is the National Nanotechnology Initiative (NNI),[36] which coordinates the multiagency efforts in nanoscale science, engineering, and technology and is managed similarly. Twenty-three federal agencies participate in the National Nanotechnology Initiative, 11 of which have an R&D budget for nanotechnology. Other federal organizations contribute with studies, applications of results, and

---

[32] U.S. Department of Energy. Infrastructure Frontier: A Quick Look Survey of the Office of Science Laboratory Infrastructure. Washington, DC: DOE, Apr. 2001.

[33] National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Infrastructure for the 21st Century: The Role of the National Science Foundation* Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2003, p. 19.

[34] Report of the National Science Foundation Advisory Panel on Cyberinfrastructure. *Revolutionizing Science and Engineering through Cyberinfrastructure*. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, Feb. 2003.

[35] Council on Governmental Relations. Report of the Working Group on the Cost of Doing Business. Washington, DC. June 2, 2003.

[36] http://www.nitrd.gov/.

[36] http://www.nano.gov/.

other collaborations. A third comparable program is the global climate change program. Again, the funding remains within each agency but supports a coordinated research effort.

Federal managers will probably be in the best position to determine the management of the proposed National Coordination Office for research infrastructure, but one model might be a design analogous to the management of the major research instrumentation (MRI) program of the NSF. In that program, all proposals for instrumentation are submitted to a central source—the Office of Integrative Activities (OIA). This office then distributes the proposals throughout NSF for review. Proposal evaluations are then collected and prioritized, and funding decisions are made. The funding remains in the different divisions of NSF, but funds are also pooled to support the instrument based on the relationship to that office's mission. A similar mechanism could be used at the interagency level with the National Coordination Office acting in a similar fashion to NSF's Office of Integrative Activities.

**ACTION B-4: High-Risk Research**

At least 8% of the budgets of federal research agencies should be set aside for discretionary funding managed by technical program managers in those agencies to catalyze high-risk, high-payoff research.

An important subset of basic research is the high-risk or transformative research that involves the new theories, methods, or tools that are often developed by new investigators—the group demonstrably most likely to generate radical discoveries or new technologies. These opportunities are generally first identified at the working level, not by research planning staffs. Today, there is anecdotal evidence that several barriers have reduced the national capacity for high-risk, high-payoff work:

- Flat or declining funding in many disciplines makes it harder to justify risky or unorthodox projects.
- The peer review system tends to favor established investigators who use well-known methods.
- Industry, university, and federal laboratories are under pressure to produce short-term results—especially DOD, which once was the nation's largest source of basic-research funding.
- Increased public scrutiny of government R&D spending makes it harder to justify non-peer-reviewed awards, and peer reviewers tend to place confidence in older, established researchers.
- High-risk, high-potential projects are prone to failure, and government oversight and media and public scrutiny make those projects increasingly untenable to those responsible for the work.

A National Research Council study indicates that the Department of Defense's budgets for basic research have declined and that "there has been a trend within DOD for reduced attention to unfettered exploration in its basic research program."[47] The Defense Advanced

[47] National Research Council. *Assessment of Department of Defense Basic Research.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2005, p. 2.

Research Projects Agency (DARPA) was created in part because of this consideration (see Box 6-2).[38]

Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency managers, unlike program managers at NSF or NIH, for example, were encouraged to fund promising work for long periods in highly flexible programs—in other words, to take risks.[39] The National Institutes of Health and National Science Foundation recently acknowledged that their peer review systems today tend to screen out risky projects, and both organizations are working to reverse this trend.

In 2004, the National Institutes of Health awarded its first Director's Pioneer Award to foster high-risk research by investigators in the early to middle stages of their careers. Similarly, in 1990 the National Science Foundation started a program called Small Grants for Exploratory Research (SGER), which allows program officers to make grants without formal external review. Small Grants Exploratory Research awards are for "preliminary work on untested and novel ideas; ventures into emerging research; and potentially transformative ideas".[40] At $29.5 million, however, the total SGER budget for 2004 was just 0.5% of NSF's operating budget for research and education. In 2004, the National Science Board convened a Task Force on Transformative Research to consider how to adapt NSF processes to encourage more funding of high-risk, potentially high-payoff research.

Several accounts indicate that although program managers might have the authority to fund at least some high-risk research, they often lack incentives do so. Partly for this reason, the percentage of effort represented by such pursuits is often quite small,—1% to 3% being common. The committee believes that additional discretionary funding will enhance the transformational nature of research without requiring additional funding. Some committee members thought 5% was sufficient, others 10%. Thus, 8%seemed a reasonable compromise and is reflected in the committee's recommended action. The degree to which such a program will be successful depends heavily on the quality and coverage of the program staff.

[38] It's time to sound the alarm over shift from basic, university projects. Editorial. *San Jose Mercury News*. Apr. 17, 2005.

[39] National Research Council. *Assessment of Department of Defense Basic Research*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2005, p. 2.

[40] Report of the National Science Board on the National Science Foundation's Merit Review Process, Fiscal Year 2004 (March 2005) p. 27. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.

**BOX 6-2 DARPA**

The Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) was established with a budget of $500 million in 1958 following the launch of Sputnik to turn innovative technology into military capabilities. The agency is highly regarded for its work on the Internet, high-speed microelectronics, stealth and satellite technologies, unmanned vehicles, and new materials.[a]

DARPA's FY 2005 budget is $3.1 billion. In terms of personnel, it is a small, relatively nonhierarchical organization that uses highly flexible contracting and hiring practices that are atypical of the federal government as a whole. Its workforce of 220 includes 120 technical staffers, and it can hire quickly from the academic world and industry at wages that are substantially higher than those elsewhere in the government. Researchers, as intended, typically stay with DARPA only for a few years. Lawrence Dubois says that DARPA puts the following questions to its principal investigators, individual project leaders, and program managers:[b]

- What are you trying to accomplish?
- How is it done today and what are the limitations? What is truly new in your approach that will remove current limitations and improve performance? By how much? A factor of 10? 100? More? If successful, what difference will it make and to whom?
- What are the midterm exams, final exams, or full-scale applications required to prove your hypothesis? When will they be done?
- What is DARPA's exit strategy? Who will take the technologies you develop and turn them into new capabilities or real products?
- How much will it cost?

Dubois quotes a former DARPA program manager who describes the agency this way:[c]

> Program management at DARPA is a very proactive activity. It can be likened to playing a game of multidimensional chess. As a chess player, one always knows what the goal is, but there are many ways to reach checkmate. Like a program manager, a chess player starts out with many different pieces (independent research groups) in different geographic locations (squares on the board) and with different useful capabilities (fundamental and applied research or experiment and theory, for example). One uses this team to mount a coordinated attack (in one case to solve key technical problems and for another to defeat one's opponent). One of the challenges in both cases is that the target is continually moving. The DARPA program manager has to deal with both emerging technologies and constantly changing customer demand, whereas the chess player has to contend with his or her opponent's king and surrounding players always moving. Thus, both face changing obstacles and opportunities. The proactive player typically wins the chess game, and it is the proactive program manager who is usually most successful at DARPA.

[a] L. H. Dubois. DARPA's Approach to Innovation and Its Reflection in Industry In: Reducing the Time from Basic Research to Innovation in the Chemical Sciences: A Workshop Report to the Chemical Sciences Roundtable, Chap. 4. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2003.
[b] Ibid.
[c] Ibid.

**ACTION B-5: Use DARPA As a Model for Energy Research**

The federal government should create a DARPA-like organization within the Department of Energy called the Advanced Research Projects Agency-Energy (ARPA-E) that reports to the under secretary for science and is charged with sponsoring specific R&D programs to meet the nation's long-term energy challenges.[41]

Perhaps no experiment in the conduct of research and engineering has been more successful in recent decades than the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency model. The new agency proposed herein is patterned after that model and would sponsor creative, out-of-the-box, transformational, generic energy research in those areas where industry by itself cannot or will not undertake such sponsorship, where risks and potential payoffs are high, and where success could provide dramatic benefits for the nation. ARPA-E would accelerate the process by which research is transformed to address economic, environmental, and security issues. It would be designed as a lean, effective, and agile—but largely independent—organization that can start and stop targeted programs based on performance and ultimate relevance. ARPA-E would focus on specific energy issues, but its work (like that of DARPA or NIH) would have significant spinoff benefits to national, state, and local government; to industry; and for the education of the next generation of researchers. The nature of energy research makes it particularly relevant to producing many spin off benefits to the broad fields of engineering, the physical sciences, and mathematics, fields identified in this review as warranting special attention. Existing programs with similar goals should be examined to ensure that the nation is optimizing its investments in this area. Funding for ARPA-E would begin at $300 million for the initial year and increase to $1 billion over 5 years, at which point the program's effectiveness would be reevaluated. The committee picked this level of funding the basis of on its review of the budget history of other new research activities and the importance of the task at hand.

The United States faces a variety of energy challenges that affect our economy, our security, and our environment (see Box 6–4). Fundamentally, those challenges involve science and technology. Today, scientists and engineers are already working on ideas that could make solar and wind power economical; develop more efficient fuel cells; exploit energy from tar sands, oil shale, and gas hydrates; minimize the environmental consequences of fossil-fuel use; find safe, affordable ways to dispose of nuclear waste; devise workable methods to generate power from fusion; improve our aging energy-distribution infrastructure; and devise safe methods for hydrogen storage.[42]

ARPA-E would provide an opportunity for creative "out-of-the box" transformational research that could lead to new ways of fueling the nation and its economy, as opposed to incremental research on ideas that have already been developed. One expert explains, "The supply [of fossil-fuel sources] is adequate now and this gives us time to develop alternatives, but the scale of research in physics, chemistry, biology and engineering will need to be stepped up, because it will take sustained effort to solve the problem of long-term global energy security."[43]

---

[41] One committee member, Lee Raymond, shares the alternative point of view on this recommendation as summarized in Box 6-3.
[42] M. S. Dresselhaus and I. L. Thomas. Alternative energy technologies. *Nature* 414(2001):332-337.
[43] Ibid.

**BOX 6-3**
**Another Point of View: ARPA-E**

Energy issues are potentially some of the most profound challenges to our future prosperity and security, and science and technology will be critical in addressing them. But not everyone believes that a federal program like the proposed ARPA-E would be an effective mechanism for developing bold new energy technologies. This box summarizes some of the views the committee heard about ARPA-E from those who disagree with its utility.

Some believe that such applied energy research is already well funded by the private sector—by large energy companies and, increasingly, by venture capital firms—and that the federal government should fund only basic research. They argue that there is no shortage of long-term research funding in energy, including that sponsored by the federal government. DOE is the largest individual government supporter of basic research in the physical sciences, providing more than 40% of associated federal funding. DOE provides funding and support to researchers in academe, other government agencies, nonprofit institutions, and industry. The government spends substantial sums annually on research, including $2.8 billion on basic research and on numerous technologies. Given the major investment DOE is already making in energy research, it is argued that if additional federal research is desired in a particular field of energy, it should be accomplished by reallocating and optimizing the use of funds currently being invested.

It is therefore argued that no additional federal involvement in energy research is necessary, and given the concerns about the apparent shortage in scientific and technical talent, any short-term increase in federally directed research might crowd out more productive private-sector research. Furthermore, some believe that industry and venture capital investors will already fund the things that have a reasonable probability of commercial utility (the invisible hand of the free markets at work), and what is not funded by existing sources is not worthy of funding.

Another concern is that an entity like ARPA-E would amount to the government's attempt to pick winning technologies instead of letting markets decide. Many find that the government has a poor record in that arena. Government, some believe, should focus on basic research rather than on developing commercial technology.

Others are more supportive of DOE research as it exists and are concerned that funding ARPA-E will take money away from traditional science programs funded by DOE's Office of Science in high-energy physics, fusion energy research, material sciences, and so forth that are of high quality and despite receiving limited funds produce Nobel-prize-quality fundamental research and commercial spin offs. Some believe that DOE's model is more productive than DARPA's in terms of research quality per federal dollar invested.

Although there are those who believe an organization like ARPA-E is not needed (Box 6-3), the committee concludes that it would play an important role in resolving the nation's energy challenges; in advancing research in engineering, the physical sciences, and mathematics; and in developing the next generation of researchers. A recent report of the Secretary of Energy Advisory Board's Task Force on the Future of Science Programs at the Department of Energy notes, "America can meet its energy needs only if we make a strong and sustained investment in research in physical science, engineering, and applicable areas of life science, and if we translate advancing scientific knowledge into practice. The current mix of energy sources is not sustainable in the long run."[44] Solutions will require coordinated efforts among industrial, academic, and government laboratories. Although industry owns most of the energy infrastructure and is actively developing new technologies in many fields, national economic and security concerns dictate that the government stimulate research to meet national needs. These needs include neutralizing the provision of energy as a major driver of national security concerns. ARPA-E would invest in a broad portfolio of foundational research that is needed to invent transforming technologies that in the past were often supplied by our great industrial laboratories (see Box 6-5). Funding of research underpinning the provision of new energy sources is made particularly complex by the high cost, high risk and long-term character of such work—all of which make it less suited to university or industry funding.

Among its many missions, DoE promotes the energy security of the United States, but some of the department's largest national laboratories were established in wartime and given clearly defense-oriented missions, primarily to develop nuclear weapons. Those weapons laboratories, and some of the government's other large science laboratories, represent significant national investments in personnel, shared facilities, and knowledge. At the end of the Cold War, the nation's defense needs shifted and urgent new agendas became clear—development of clean sources of energy, new forms of transportation, the provision of homeland security, technology to speed environmental remediation, and technology for commercial application. Numerous proposals over recent years have laid the foundation for more extensive redeployment of national laboratory talent toward basic and applied research in areas of national priority.[45]

Introducing a small, agile, DARPA-like organization could improve DoE's pursuit of R&D much as DARPA did for the Department of Defense. Initially, DARPA was viewed as "threatening" by much of the department's established research organization; however, over the years it has been widely accepted as successfully filling a very important role. ARPA-E would identify and support the science and technology critical to our nation's energy infrastructure. It also could offer several important national benefits:

- Promote research in the physical sciences, engineering, and mathematics.
- Create a stream of human capital to bring innovative approaches to areas of national strategic importance.
- Turn cutting-edge science and engineering into technology for energy and environmental applications.

---

[44] Secretary of Energy's Advisory Board, Task Force on the Future of Science Programs at the Department of Energy. Critical Choices: Science, Energy and Security. Final Report. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Energy, Oct. 13, 2003, p. 5.

[45] Galvin Panel report, *Task Force on Alternative Futures for the Department of Energy National Laboratories*, Secretary of Energy Advisory Board. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Energy, Feb. 1995; PCAST, *Federal Energy Research and Development for the Challenges of the Twenty-First Century*, Report of the Energy Research and Development Panel, the President's Committee of Advisors on Science and Technology, Washington, DC, Nov. 1997; Government Accounting Office. *Best Practices: Elements Critical to Successfully Reducing Unneeded RDT&E Infrastructure*. USGAO Report to Congressional Requesters. Washington, DC: GAO (?), Jan. 8 1998.

- Accelerate innovation in both traditional and alternative energy sources and in energy-efficiency mechanisms.
- Foster consortia of companies, colleges and universities, and laboratories to work on critical research problems, such as the development of fuel cells.

The agency's basic administrative structure and goals would mirror those of DARPA, but there would be some important differences. DARPA exists mainly to provide a long-term "break-through" perspective for the armed forces. DoE already has some mechanisms for long-term research, but it sometimes lacks the mechanisms for transforming the results into technology that meets the government's needs. DARPA also helps develop technology for purchase by the government for military use. By contrast, most energy technology is acquired and deployed in the private sector, although DoE does have specific procurement needs. Like DARPA, ARPA-E would have a very small staff, would perform no R&D itself, would turn over its staff every 3 to 4 years, and would have the same personnel and contracting freedoms now granted to DARPA. Box 6-6 illustrates some energy technologies identified by the National Commission on Energy Policy as areas of research where federal research investment is warranted that is in research areas in which industry is unlikely to invest.

**BOX 6-4 Energy and the Economy**

Capital, labor, and energy are three major factors that contribute to and influence economic growth in the United States. Capital is the equipment, machinery, manufacturing plants, and office buildings that are necessary to produce goods and services. Labor is the availability of the workforce to participate in the production of goods and services. Energy is the power necessary to produce goods and services and transport them to their destinations. These three components are used to compute a country's gross domestic product (GDP), the total of all output produced in the country. Without these three inputs, business and industry would not be able to transform raw materials into goods and services.

Energy is the power that drives the world's economy. In the industrialized nations, most of the equipment, machinery, manufacturing plants, and office buildings could not operate without an available supply of energy resources such as oil, natural gas, coal, or electricity. In fact, energy is such an important component of manufacturing and production that its availability can have a direct impact on GDP and the overall economic health of the United States.

Sometimes energy is not readily available because the supply of a particular resource is limited or because its price is too high. When this happens, companies often decrease their production of goods and services, at least temporarily. On the other hand, an increase in the availability of energy—or lower energy prices—can lead to increased economic output by business and industry.

Situations that cause energy prices to rise or fall rapidly and unexpectedly, as the world's oil prices have on several occasions in recent years, can have a significant impact on the economy. When these situations occur, the economy experiences what economists call a "price shock". Since 1970, the economy has experienced at least four such price shocks attributable to the supply of energy. Thus, the events of the last several decades demonstrate that the price and availability of a single important energy resource—such as oil—can significantly affect the world economy.

SOURCE: Adapted from Dallas Federal Reserve Bank at www.dallasfed.org/educate/everyday/ed2.html.

**Box 6-5: The Invention of the Transistor**

In the 1930s, the management of Bell Laboratories sought to develop a low-power, reliable, solid-state replacement for the vacuum tube used in telephone signal amplification and switching. Materials scientists had to invent methods to make highly pure germanium and silicon and to add controlled impurities with unprecedented precision. Theoretical and experimental physicists had to develop a fundamental understanding of the conduction properties of this new material and the physics of the interfaces and surfaces of different semiconductors. By investing in a large-scale assault on this problem, Bell announced the "invention" of the transistor in 1948, less than a decade after the discovery that a junction of positively and negatively doped silicon would allow electric current to flow in only one direction. Fundamental understanding was recognized to be essential, but the goal of producing an economically successful electronic-state switch was kept front-and-center. Despite this focused approach, fundamental science did not suffer: a Nobel prize was awarded for the invention of the transistor. During this and the following effort, the foundations of much of semiconductor-device physics of the 20th century were laid.

**BOX 6-6**
**Illustration of Energy Technologies**

The National Commission on Energy Policy in its December 2004 report *Ending the Energy Stalemate: A Bipartisan Strategy to Meet America's Energy Challenges* recommended doubling the nation's annual direct federal expenditures on "energy research, development, and demonstration" (ERD&D) to identify better technologies for energy supply and efficient end use. Improved technologies, the commission indicates, will make it easier to

- Limit oil demand and reduce the fraction of it met from imports without incurring excessive economic or environmental costs
- Improve urban air quality while meeting growing demand for automobiles
- Use abundant US and world coal resources without intolerable impacts on regional air quality and acid rain
- Expand the use of nuclear energy while reducing related risks of accidents, sabotage, and proliferation.
- Sustain and expand economic prosperity where it already exists—and achieve it elsewhere—without intolerable climatic disruption from greenhouse-gas emissions.

The commission identified what it believes to be the most promising technological options where private sector research activities alone are not likely to bring them to that potential at the pace that society's interests warrant. They fall into the following principal clusters:

- **Clean and efficient automobile and truck technologies**, including advanced diesels, conventional and plug-in hybrids, and fuel-cell vehicles
- **Integrated-gasification combined-cycle coal technologies** for polygeneration of electricity, steam, chemicals, and fluid fuels
- **Other technologies that achieve, facilitate, or complete carbon capture and sequestration**, including the technologies for carbon capture in hydrogen production from natural gas, for sequestering carbon in geologic formations, and for using the produced hydrogen efficiently
- **Technologies to efficiently** produce biofuels for the transport sector
- **Advanced nuclear technologies** to enable nuclear expansion by lowering cost and reducing risks from accidents, terrorist attacks, and proliferation
- **Technologies for increasing the efficiency of energy end use in buildings and industry**.

Source: Chapter VI, Developing Better Energy Technologies for the Future, in The National Commission on Energy Policy. 2004. *Ending the Energy Stalemate: A Bipartisan Strategy to Meet America's Energy Challenges.* www.energycommission.org.

**ACTION B-6: Prizes and Awards**

The White House Office of Science and Technology Policy (OSTP) should institute a Presidential Innovation Award to stimulate scientific and engineering advances in the national interest. While existing Presidential awards address lifetime achievements or promising young scholars, the proposed awards would identify and recognize individuals who develop unique scientific and engineering innovations in the national interest at the time they occur.

A number of organizations currently offer prizes and awards to stimulate research, but an expanded system of recognition could push new scientific and engineering advances that are in the national interest. The current presidential honors for scientists and engineers are the National Medal of Science,[46] the National Medal of Technology, and the Presidential Early Career Awards for Scientists and Engineers. The National Medal of Science and the National Medal of Technology recognize career-long achievement.

The Presidential Early Career Awards for Scientists and Engineers program, managed by the National Science and Technology Council, honors and supports the extraordinary achievements of young professionals for their independent research contributions.[47] The White House, following recommendations from participating agencies, confers the awards annually.

New awards could encourage risk taking; offer the potential for financial or non-remunerative payoffs, such as wider recognition for important work; and inspire and educate the public about current issues of national interest. The National Academy of Engineering has concluded that prizes encourage nontraditional participants, stimulate development of potentially useful but under funded technology, encourage new uses for existing technology, and foster the diffusion of technology.[48]

For those reasons, the committee proposes that the new Presidential Innovation Award be managed in a way similar to that of the Presidential Early Career Awards for Scientists and Engineers. OSTP already identifies the nation's science and technology priorities each year as part of the budget memorandum it develops jointly with the Office of Management and Budget. This year's topics are a good starting point for fields in which innovation awards (perhaps one award for each research topic) could be given:

- Homeland security R&D.
- High-end computing and networking R&D.
- National nanotechnology initiative.
- High-temperature and organic superconductors.
- Molecular electronics.
- Wide-band-gap and photonic materials.
- Thin magnetic films.
- Quantum condensates.
- Infrastructure (next-generation light sources and instruments with subnanometer resolution).

---

[46] http://www.nsf.gov/nsb/awards/nms/medal.htm.
[47] The participating agencies are the National Science Foundation, National Science and Technology Council, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Environmental Protection Agency, Department of Agriculture, Department of Commerce, Department of Defense, Department of Energy, Department of Health and Human Services: National Institutes of Health, Department of Transportation, and Department of Veterans Affairs.
[48] National Academy of Engineering. *Concerning Federally Sponsored Inducement Prizes in Engineering and Science.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 1999.

- Understanding complex biological systems (focused on collaborations with physical, computational, behavioral, social, and biological researchers and engineers).
- Energy and the environment (natural hazard assessment, disaster warnings, climate variability and change, oceans, global freshwater supplies, novel materials, and production mechanisms for hydrogen fuel).

The proposed awards would be presented, shortly after the innovations occur, to scientists and engineers in industry, academe, and government who develop unique ideas in the national interest. They would illustrate the linkage between science and engineering and national needs and provide an example to students of the contributions they could make to society by entering the science and engineering profession.

## CONCLUSION

Research sows the seeds of innovation. The influence of federally funded research in social advancement—in the creation of new industries and in the enhancement of old ones—is clearly established. But federal funding for research is out of balance: Strong support is concentrated in a few fields while other areas of equivalent potential languish. Instead, the United States needs to be among the world leaders in all important fields of science and engineering. But, new investigators find it increasingly difficult to secure funding to pursue innovative lines of research. An emphasis on short-term goals diverts attention from high-risk ideas with great potential that may take more time to realize. And the infrastructure essential for discovery and for the creation of new technologies is deteriorating because of failure to provide the funds needed to maintain and upgrade it.

7

# WHAT ACTIONS SHOULD AMERICA TAKE IN SCIENCE AND ENGINEERING HIGHER EDUCATION TO REMAIN PROSPEROUS IN THE 21st CENTURY?

## BEST AND BRIGHTEST

**Recommendation C:** *Make the United States the most attractive setting in which to study and perform research so that we can develop, recruit, and retain the best and brightest students, scientists, and engineers from within the United States and throughout the world.*

We live in a knowledge-intensive world. "The key strategic resource necessary for prosperity has become knowledge itself in the form of educated people and their ideas," as Jim Duderstadt and Farris Womack[1] put it. In this context, the focus of global competition is no longer only on manufacturing and trade but also on the production of knowledge and the development and recruitment of the "best and brightest" from around the world. Developed and developing nations alike are investing in higher education, often on the model of US colleges and universities. They are training undergraduate and graduate scientists and engineers[2] to provide the expertise they need to compete in creating jobs for their populations in the 21st-century economy. Numerous national public and private organizations [3] have recommended a national effort to increase the numbers of both domestic and international students pursuing science, technology, engineering, and mathematics degrees in the United States.[4]

There is concern that, in general, our undergraduates are not keeping up with those in other nations. The United States has increased the proportion of its college-age population earning first university degrees in the natural sciences and engineering over the last quarter-century, but it has still lost ground, now ranking 20th globally on this indicator.[5]

There are even more concerns about graduate education. In the 1990s, the enrollment of US citizens and permanent residents in graduate science and engineering programs declined substantially. Although enrollments began to rise again in 2001, by 2003 they had not yet returned to the peak numbers of the early 1990s.[6] Meanwhile, the United States faces new

---

[1] J. J. Duderstadt and F. W. Womack. *Beyond the Crossroads: The Future of the Public University in America.* Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, 2003.

[2] Natural sciences and engineering is defined by the National Science Foundation as natural (physical, biological, earth, atmospheric, and ocean sciences), agricultural, and computer sciences, mathematics, and engineering.

[3] Some examples are National Science Board. *The Science and Engineering Workforce: Realizing America's Potential.*[NSB 03-69] Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, Volume 1, 2003 and Council on Competitiveness. *Innovate America.* Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness,2004.

[4] Another point of view presented in Box 7-1.

[5] National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators, 2004.* (NSB 04-1) Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.

[6] National Science Foundation. Graduate Enrollment in Science and Engineering Programs Up in 2003, but Declines for First-Time Foreign Students: Info Brief NSF 05-317, Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2005.

challenges in the recruitment of international graduate students and postdoctoral scholars. Over the lastseveral decades, graduate students and postdoctoral scholars from throughout the world have come to the United States to take advantage of what has been the premier environment in which to learn and conduct research. As a result, international students now constitute more than a third of the students in US science and engineering graduate schools, up from less than one-fourth in 1982. More than half the international postdoctoral scholars are temporary residents, and half that group earned doctorates outside the United States.

Many of the international students educated in the United States choose to remain here after receiving their degrees, and they contribute much to our ability to create knowledge, produce technological innovations, and generate jobs throughout the economy. The proportion of international doctorate recipients remaining in the United States after receiving their degrees increased from 49% in the 1989 cohort to 71% in 2001[7]. But the consequences of the events of September 11, 2001, included drastic changes in visa processing, and the number of international students applying to and enrolling in US graduate programs declined substantially. More recently, there have been signs of recovery; however, we are still falling short of earlier trends in attracting and retaining such students. As other nations develop their own systems of graduate education to recruit and retain more highly skilled students and professionals, often modeled after the US system, we face even further uncertainty about our ability to attract those students to our institutions and to encourage them to become US citizens.

We must also encourage and enable US students from all sectors of our own society to participate in science, mathematics, and engineering programs, at least at the level of those who would be our competitors. But given increased global competition and reduced access to the US higher education system, our nation's education and research enterprise must adjust so that it can continue to attract many of the best students from abroad.

The Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century proposes four actions to improve the talent pool in postsecondary education in the sciences and engineering: stimulate the interest of US citizens in undergraduate study by providing a new program of 4-year undergraduate scholarships; facilitate graduate education by providing new, portable fellowships; provide tax credits to companies and other organizations that provide continuing education for their practicing scientists and engineers; and recruit and retain the best and brightest students, scientists, and engineers worldwide by making the United States the most attractive place to study, conduct research, and commercialize technological innovations.

[7] National Academies. *Policy Implications of International Graduate Students and Postdoctoral Scholars in the United States*. Washington, D.C. National Academies Press, 2005.

**BOX 7-1**
**Another Point of View: Science and Engineering Human Resources**

Some believe that calls for increased numbers of science and engineering students are based more on the fear of a looming crisis than on a reaction to reality. Indeed, skeptics argue that there is no current documented shortage in the labor markets for scientists and engineers. In fact, in some areas we have just the opposite.[8] For example, during the lastdecade, there have been surpluses of life scientists at the doctoral level, high unemployment of engineers, and layoffs in the information technology sector in the aftermath of the "dot-bomb".

Although there have been concerns about declining enrollments of US citizens in undergraduate engineering programs and in science and engineering graduate education, and these concerns have been compounded by recent declines in enrollments of international graduate students, enrollments in undergraduate engineering and of US citizens in graduate science and engineering have recently risen.

All of this suggests that the recommendations for additional support for thousands of undergraduates and graduates could be setting those students up for jobs that might not exist. Moreover, there are those who argue that international students crowd out domestic students and that a decline in international enrollments could encourage more US citizens, including individuals from underrepresented groups, to pursue graduate education.

Over the last decade, there has been similar debate over the number of H-1B visas that should be issued, with fervent calls both for increasing and for decreasing the cap. A recent report of the National Academies argued that there was no scientific way to find the "right" number of H-1Bs and that determining the appropriate level is and must be a political process.[9]

[8] Jeffrey Mervis. Down for the count. *Science* 300(5622)(May 16, 2003):1070-1074.
[9] National Research Council. *Building a Workforce for the Information Economy*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2001.

**ACTION C-1: Undergraduate Education**

Increase the number and proportion of US citizens who earn bachelor's degrees in the physical sciences, the life sciences, engineering, and mathematics by providing 25,000 new 4-year competitive undergraduate scholarships each year to US citizens attending US institutions.

The Undergraduate Scholar Awards in Science, Technology, Engineering, and Mathematics (USA-STEM) program would help to increase the percentage of 24-year-olds with first degrees in the natural sciences or engineering from the current 6% to the 10% benchmark already met or substatially surpassed by Finland, France, Taiwan, South Korea, and the United Kingdom (see Figure 3-17).[18] To achieve this result, the committee recommends the following:

- The National Science Foundation should administer the program.
- The program should provide 25,000 new 4-year scholarships each year to US citizens attending domestic institutions to pursue bachelor's degrees in science, mathematics, engineering, or another field designated as a national need. (Eventually, there would be 100,000 active students in the program each year.)
- Eligibility for these awards and their allocation would be based on the results of a competitive national examination.
- The scholarships would be distributed to states based on the size of their congressional delegations and would be awarded by states.
- Recipients could use the scholarships at any accredited US institution.
- The scholarships would provide up to $20,000 per student to pay tuition and fees.
- The program would also grant the recipients' institutions $1,000 annually.
- The $1.1-billion program would phase in over 4 years beginning at $275 million per year.
- The federal government would grant funds to states to defray reasonable administrative expenses.
- Steps would be taken to ensure that the receipt of USA-STEM scholarship brought considerable prestige to the recipients and to the secondary institutions from which they are graduating.

The undergraduate years have a profound influence on career direction, and they can provide a springboard for students who choose to major and then pursue graduate work in science, mathematics, and engineering. However, many more undergraduates express an interest in science, mathematics, and engineering than eventually complete bachelor's degrees in those fields. A focused and sizeable national effort to stimulate undergraduate interest and commitment to these majors will increase the proportion of 24-year-olds achieving first degrees in the relevant disciplines.

The scholarship program's motivation is twofold. First, in the long run, the United States might not have enough scientists and engineers to meet its national goals if the number of domestic students from all demographic groups, including women and students from

[18] In 2000, there were 3,711,400 24-year-olds in the United States, of whom 5.67% held bachelor's degrees in the natural sciences and engineering.

underrepresented groups, does not increase in proportion to our nation's need for them. It should be noted that there is always concern about the availability of jobs if the supply of scientists and engineers were to increase substantially. Although it is impossible to fine-tune the system such that supply and demand balance precisely in any given year, it is important to have sufficient numbers of graduates for the long-term outlook. Furthermore, it has been found that, for example, undergraduate training in engineering forms an excellent foundation for graduate work in such fields as business, law, and medicine. Finally, it is clear that an *inadequate* supply of scientists and engineers can be highly detrimental to the nation's well-being.

The second motivation for the program is to ensure that the fields of science, engineering, and mathematics recruit and develop a large share of the best and brightest US students. It should be considered a great achievement to participate in the USA-STEM program, and the honor of selection should be accompanied by significant recognition. To retain eligibility, recipients would be expected to maintain a specified standard of academic excellence in their college coursework.

Increasing participation of underrepresented minorities is critical to ensuring a high-quality supply of scientists and engineers in the United States over the long term. As minority groups increase as a percentage of the US population, increasing their participation rate in science and engineering is critical if we are just to maintain the overall participation rate in science among the US population.[11] Perhaps even more important, if some groups are underrepresented in science and engineering in our society, we are not attracting as many of the most talented people to an important segment of our knowledge economy.[12]

In postsecondary education, there are many principles that help minority-group students succeed, regardless of field. The Building Engineering and Science Talent[13] (BEST) committee outlined eight key principles to expand representation:

- Institutional leadership: Committing to inclusiveness across the campus community.
- Targeted recruitment: Investing in and supporting a K-12 feeder system.
- Engaged faculty: Rewarding faculty for the development of student talent.
- Personal attention: Addressing, through mentoring and tutoring, the learning needs of each student.
- Peer support: Giving students opportunities for interaction that builds support across cohorts and promotes allegiance to an institution, discipline, and profession.
- Enriched research experience: Offering beyond-the-classroom hands-on opportunities and summer internships that connect to the world of work.
- Bridge to the next level: Fostering institutional relationships to show students and faculty the pathways to career development.

---

[11] National Science and Technology Council. *Ensuring a Strong US Scientific, Technical, and Engineering Workforce in the 21st Century.* Washington, D.C.: Executive Office of the President of the United States, 2000; Congressional Commission on the Advancement of Women and Minorities in Science, Engineering, and Technology Development. *Land of Plenty: Diversity as America's Competitive Edge in Science, Engineering, and Technology.* Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2000.

[12] Fechter and Teitelbaum have argued that "underrepresentation is an indicator of talent that is not exploited to its fullest potential. Such underutilization, which can exist simultaneously with situations of abundance, represents a cost to society as well as to the individuals in these groups." A. Fechter and M. S. Teitelbaum. A fresh approach to immigration. *Issues in Science and Technology* 13(3)(1997):28-32.

[13] Building Engineering and Science Talent (BEST). 2004. *A Bridge for All: Higher Education Design Principles to Science, Technology, Engineering and Mathematics.* San Diego, CA: BEST. See http://www.beste workforce.com.

- Continuous evaluation: Monitoring results and making appropriate program adjustments.

BEST goes on to note that even with all the design principles in place, comprehensive financial assistance for low-income students is critical because socioeconomic status also is an important determinant of success in higher education.

**ACTION C-2: Graduate Education**

The federal government should fund Graduate Scholar Awards in Science, Technology, Engineering, and Mathematics (GSA-STEM), a new scholarship program that would provide 5,000 new portable 3-year competitively awarded graduate fellowships each year for outstanding US citizens in science, mathematics, and engineering programs pursuing degrees at US universities. Portable fellowships would provide funds directly to students, who would choose where they wish to pursue graduate studies instead of having to follow faculty research grants.

Typically, college seniors and recent graduates consider several factors in deciding whether to pursue graduate study. An abiding interest in a field and the encouragement of a mentor often contribute to the positive side of the balance sheet. The availability of financial support, the relative lack of income while in school, and job prospects upon completing an advanced degree also weigh on students' minds, no matter how much society supports their choices. The National Defense Education Act was a tremendous stimulus to graduate study in the 1960s, 1970s, and early 1980s, but has been incrementally restricted to serve a broader set of goals (see Box 7-2). A similar effort is now called for to meet the nation's long-term need for scientists and engineers in universities, government, nonprofit organizations, the national laboratory system, and industry.
The committee makes the following recommendations:

- The National Science Foundation (NSF) should administer the program.
- Recipients could use the grants at any US institution to which they have been admitted.
- The program should be advised by a board of representatives from federal agencies who identify areas of national need.
- Tuition and fee reimbursement would be up to $20,000 annually, and each recipient would receive an annual stipend of $30,000. Those amounts would be adjusted over time for inflation.
- The program would be phased in over 3 years.
- The federal government would provide appropriate funding to academic institutions to defray reasonable administrative expenses.

There has been much debate in recent years about whether the United States is facing a looming shortage of scientists and engineers, including those at the doctoral level. Although there is not a crisis at the moment and there are differences in labor markets by field that could lead to surpluses in some areas and shortages in others, the trends in enrollments and degrees are nonetheless cause for concern in a global environment wherein science and technology play an increasing role. The rationale for the fellowship is that the number of people with doctorates in the sciences, mathematics, and engineering awarded by US institutions each year has not kept pace with the increasing importance of science and technology to the nation's prosperity.

**BOX 7-2**
**National Defense Education Act**

Adopted by Congress in response to the launch of Sputnik and the emerging threat to the United States posed by the Soviet Union in 1958, the original National Defense Education Act (NDEA) boosted education and training and was accompanied by simultaneous actions that created the National Aeronautics and Space Administration and the Advanced Research Project Agency (now the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency) and substantially increased NSF funding. It was funded with federal funds of about $400-500 million (adjusted to US 2004 value). NDEA provided funding to enhance research facilities; fellowships to thousands of graduate students pursuing degrees in science, mathematics, engineering, and foreign languages; and low-interest loans for undergraduates in these fields.

By the 1970s the act had been largely superseded by other programs, but its legacy remains in the form of several federal student-loan programs.[14] The legislation ultimately benefited all higher education as the notion of defense was expanded to include most disciplines and fields of study.[15]

Today, however, there are concerns about the Department of Defense (DoD) workforce. This workforce has experienced a real attrition of more than 13,000 personnel over the last 10 years. At the same time, the DoD projects that its workforce demands will increase by more than 10% over the next 5 years (by 2010). Indeed, several major studies since 1999 argue that the number of US graduates in critical areas is not meeting national, homeland, and economic security needs.[16] Science, engineering, and language skills continue to have very high priority across governmental and industrial sectors.

Many positions in critical-skill areas require security clearances, meaning that only US citizens may apply. Over 95%of undergraduates are US citizens, but in many of the S&E fields fewer than 50% of those earning PhDs are US citizens. Retirements also loom on the horizon: over 60% of the federal S&E workforce is over 45years old, and many of these people are employed by DoD. Department of Defense and other federal agencies face increased competition from domestic and global commercial interests for top-of-their-class, security-clearance-eligible scientists and engineers.

In response to those concerns, DoD has proposed in its budget submission a new NDEA. The new NDEA includes a number of new initiatives that some believe should be accomplished by 2008—the 50th anniversary of the original NDEA.[17]

Currently, the federal government supports 7,000 full-time graduate fellows and trainees. Most of these grants are provided either to institutions or directly to students by the NSF's

---

[14] Association of American Universities, *A National Defense Education and Innovation Initiative: Meeting America's Economic and Security Challenges in the 21st Century*. Washington DC: AAU, 2006. Available at http://www.aau.edu.

[15] Michael Parsons, 2005, "Higher Education Is Just Another Special Interest," The Chronicle of Higher Education 51(22): B20. Available at http://chronicle.com/prm/weekly/v51/i22/22b02001.htm.

[16] National Security Workforce: Challenges and Solutions Webpage. Available at: http://www.defenselink.mil/ddre/doc/NDEA_BRIEFING.pdf

[17] See http://www.defenselink.mil/ddre/nde2.htm and H.R. 1815, National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2006, Sec. 1105. Science, Mathematics, and Research Transportation (SMART) Defense Education Program—National Defense Education Act (NDEA), Phase I.

Graduate Research Fellowship program and Integrative Graduate Education and Research Traineeship Program (IGERT) or by the National Institutes of Health Ruth L. Kirschstein National Research Service Award program. The US Department of Education, through its Graduate Assistance in Areas of National Need program, also provides traineeships and has a mechanism for identifying areas for grant-making to academic programs. Those are important sources of support, but they meet only a fraction of the need. The proposed 5,000 new fellowships each year eventually will increase to 22,000 the number of graduate students supported at any one time, thus helping to increase the number of US citizens and permanent residents earning doctorates in nationally important fields.

Portable graduate fellowships should attract high-quality students and offer them access to the best education possible. Students who have unencumbered financial support could select the US academic institutions that best meet their interests and that offer the best opportunities to broaden their experience before they begin focusing on specific research. The fellowships would offer substantial and steady financial support during the early years of graduate study, with the assumption that the recipients would find support from other means, such as research assistantships, once research subjects and mentors were identified.

An alternative point of view is that the support provided under this recommendation should be provided not—or not only—to *individuals* but also to *programs* that would use the funds both to develop a comprehensive approach to doctoral education and to support students through traineeships. Such institutional grants could be used by federal funders to directly require specific programmatic changes as well. They would also allow institutions to recruit promising students who might not apply for portable fellowships.

But, in the view of the committee, providing fellowships directly to students creates a greater stimulus to enroll and offers an additional positive effect: improvement of educational quality. The fellowships create competition among institutions that would lead to enhanced graduate programs (mentoring, course offerings, research opportunities, and facilities) and processes (time to degree, career guidance, placement assistance). To be sure, institutions can and should undertake many of those improvements in graduate programs even without this stimulus, and many have already implemented reforms to make graduate school more enticing. Institutional efforts to prepare graduate students for the jobs they will obtain in industry or academe and to improve the benefits and work conditions for postdoctoral scholars also could make career prospects more attractive.

The new program proposed here and led by NSF should draw advice from representatives of federal research agencies to determine its areas of focus. On the basis of that advice, NSF would make competitive awards either as part of its existing Graduate Research Fellowship program or through a separate program established specifically to administer the fellowships. The focus on areas of national need is important to ensure an adequate supply of suitably trained doctoral scientists, engineers, and mathematicians and appropriate employment opportunities for these students upon receipt of their degrees.

As discussed in Box 7-1, one question is whether these programs will simply produce science and engineering students who are unable to find jobs. There are also questions that the goal of increasing the number of domestic students is contrary to the committee's other concern about the potential for declining numbers of outstanding international students. As past National Academies reports have indicated, projecting supply and demand in science and engineering employment is prone to methodological difficulties. For example, the report *Forecasting*

*Demand and Supply of Doctoral Scientists and Engineers: Report of a Workshop on Methodology (2000)* observed:

> The NSF should not produce or sponsor "official" forecasts of supply and demand of scientists and engineers, but should support scholarship to improve the quality of underlying data and methodology.

Those who have tried to forecast demand in the past have often failed abysmally. The same would probably be true today.

Other factors also influence the decisions of US students. As the recent COSEPUP study *Policy Implications of International Graduate students and Postdoctoral Scholars in the United States* says:

> Recruiting domestic science and engineering (S&E) talent depends heavily on students' perception of the S&E careers that await them. Those perceptions can be solidified early in the educational process, before students graduate from high school. The desirability of a career in S&E is determined largely by the prospect of attractive employment opportunities in the field, and to a lesser extent by potential remuneration. Some aspects of the graduate education and training process can also influence students' decisions to enter S&E fields. The "pull factors" include time to degree, availability of fellowships, research assistantships, or teaching assistantships, and whether a long post doctoral appointment is required after completion of the PhD.

Taking those factors into account, the committee decided to focus its scholarships for domestic students on areas of national need as determined by federal agencies, with input from the corporate and business community.

In the end, the employment market will dictate the decisions students make. From a national perspective, global competition in higher education and research and in the recruitment of students and scholars means that the United States must invest in the development and recruitment of the best and brightest from here and abroad to ensure that we have the talent, expertise, and ideas that will continue to spur innovation and keep our nation at the leading edge of science and technology.

**ACTION C-3: Continuing Education**

To keep practicing scientists and engineers productive in an environment of rapidly changing science and technology, the federal government should provide tax credits to employers who help their eligible employees pursue continuing education.

The committee's recommendations are as follows:

- The federal government should authorize a tax credit of up to $500 million each year to encourage companies to sustain the knowledge and skills of their scientific and engineering workforce by offering opportunities for professional development.
- The courses to be pursued would allow employees to maintain and upgrade knowledge in the specific fields of science and engineering.
- The courses would be required to meet reasonable standards and could be offered internally or by colleges and universities.

Too often, business does not invest adequately in continuing education and training for employees, partly from the belief that investments could be lost if the training makes employees more marketable, and partly from the belief that maintaining skills is the personal responsibility of a professional. Tax credits would allow businesses to encourage continuing professional development—a benefit to employees, companies, and the economy.

Tax credits can also help industries adapt to technological change. The information-technology industry, for example, has continuing difficulty in matching worker skills and employer demand. The consequence is that employers cite worker shortages even when there is relatively high unemployment. That mismatch can be remedied by encouraging companies to invest in retraining capable employees whose skills have become obsolete as the technology landscape changes.

**ACTION C-4: Improve Visa Processing**

The federal government should continue to improve visa processing for international students and scholars to provide less complex procedures, and continue to make improvements on such issues as visa categories and duration, travel for scientific meetings, the technology alert list, reciprocity agreements, and changes in status.

Since 9/11, the nation has struggled to improve security by more closely screening international visitors, students, and workers. The federal government is now also considering tightening controls on the access that international students and researchers have to technical information and equipment. One consequence is that fewer of the best international scientists and engineers are able to come to the United States, and if they do enter the United States, their intellectual and geographic mobility is curtailed.

The post-9/11 approach fosters an image of the United States as a less than welcoming place for foreign scholars. At the same time, the home nations of many potential immigrants—such as China, India, Taiwan, and South Korea—are strengthening their own technology industries and universities and offering jobs and incentives to lure scientists and engineers to return to their nations of birth. Other countries have taken advantage of our tightened restrictions to open their doors more widely, and they recruit many who might otherwise have come to the United States to study or conduct research.

A growing challenge for policy-makers is to reconcile security needs with the flow of people and information from abroad. Restrictions on access to information and technology—much of it already freely available—could undermine the fundamental research that benefits so greatly from international participation. One must be particularly vigilant to ensure that thoughtful, high-level directives concerning homeland security are not unnecessarily amplified by administrators who focus on short-term safety while unintentionally weakening long-term overall national security. Any marginal benefits in the security arena have to be weighed against the ability of national research facilities to carry out unclassified, basic research and the ability of private companies with federal contracts to remain internationally competitive. An unbalanced increase in security will erode the nation's scientific and engineering productivity and economic strength and will destroy the welcoming atmosphere of our scientific and engineering institutions. Such restrictions would also add to the incentives for US companies to move operations overseas.

Many recent changes in visa processing and in the duration of Visas Mantis clearances have already made immigration easier. Visas Mantis is a program intended to provide additional security checks for visitors who may pose a security risk. The process, established in 1998 and applicable to all nonimmigrant visa categories, is triggered when a student or exchange-visitor applicant intends to study a subject on the technology alert list.

The committee endorses the recommendations made by the National Academies in *Policy Implications of International Graduate Students and Postdoctoral Scholars*[18], particularly Recommendation 4-2, which states the following:

> If the United States is to maintain leadership in S&E, visa and immigration policies should provide clear procedures that do not unnecessarily hinder the inflow of international graduate students and postdoctoral scholars. New regulations should be carefully considered in light of national-security considerations and potential unintended consequences.

a. Visa Duration: Implementation of the Student and Exchange Visitor Information System (SEVIS), by which consular officials can verify student and postdoctoral status, and of the United States Visitor and Immigrant Status Indicator Technology (US-VISIT), by which student and scholar status can be monitored at the point of entry to the United States, should make it possible for graduate students' and postdoctoral scholars' visas to be more commensurate with their programs, with a duration of 4-5 years.
b. Travel for Scientific Meetings: Means should be found to allow international graduate students and postdoctoral scholars who are attending or appointed at US institutions to attend scientific meetings that are outside the United States without being seriously delayed in re-entering the United States to complete their studies and training.
c. Technical Alert List: This list, which is used to manage the Visas Mantis program, should be reviewed regularly by scientists and engineers. Scientifically trained personnel should be involved in the security-review process.
d. Visa Categories: New nonimmigrant-visa categories should be created for doctoral-level graduate students and postdoctoral scholars. The categories should be exempted from the 214b (See Box 7-3) provision whereby applicants must show that they have a residence in a foreign country that they have no intention of abandoning. In addition to providing a better mechanism for embassy and consular officials to track student and scholar visa applicants, these categories would provide a means for collecting clear data on numbers and trends of graduate-student and postdoctoral-scholar visa applications.
e. Reciprocity Agreements: Multiple-entry and multiple-year student visas should have high priority in reciprocity negotiations.
f. Change of Status: If the United States wants to keep the best students once they graduate, procedures for change of status should be clarified and streamlined.

[18] National Academies. *Policy Implications of International Graduate Students and Postdoctoral Scholars in the United States*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2005.

**BOX 7-3**
**The 214b provision of the Immigration and Nationality Act: Establishing the intent to return home**

The Immigration and Nationality Act (INA) has served as the primary body of law governing immigration and visa operations since 1952. A potential barrier to visits by foreign graduate students is Section 214(b) of the INA, in accordance with which an applicant for student of exchange visa must provide convincing evidence that he or she plans to return to the home country, including proof of a permanent domicile in the home country. Legitimate applicants may find it hard to prove that they have no intention to immigrate, especially if they have relatives in the United States. In addition, both students and immigration officials are well aware that an F or J visa often provides entrée to permanent-resident status. It is not surprising that application and enforcement of the standard can depend on pending immigration legislation or economic conditions.[19]

[19] G. Chellaraj, K.E. Maskus, and A. Mattoo, "The Contributions of Skilled Immigration and International Graduate Students to U.S. Innovation". Working Paper N04-10, Center for Economic Analysis, University of Colorado at Boulder, September 2004, p.18 and Table 1.

**ACTION C-5: Extend Visas and Expedite Residence Status of S&E PhDs**

The federal government should provide a 1-year automatic visa extension to international students who receive doctorates or the equivalent in science, technology, engineering, mathematics, or other fields of national need at qualified US institutions to remain in the United States to seek employment. If these students are offered jobs by US-based employers and pass a security screening test, they should be provided automatic work permits and expedited residence status. If students are unable to obtain employment within 1 year, their visas would expire.

To create the most attractive setting for study, research and commercialization—and to attract international students, scholars, scientists, engineers, and mathematicians—the United States government needs to take steps to encourage international students and scholars to remain in the United States. These steps should be taken because of the contributions these people make to the United States and their home country.

As discussed in COSEPUP's international students report, a knowledge-driven economy is more productive if it has access to the best talent regardless of national origin. International graduate students and postdoctoral scholars are integral to the quality and effectiveness of the US science and engineering (S&E) enterprise. If the flow of these students and scholars were sharply reduced, research and academic work would suffer until an alternative source of talent were found. There would be a fairly immediate effect in university graduate departments and laboratories and a later cumulative effect on hiring in universities, industry, and government. There is no evidence that modest, gradual changes in the flow like those experienced in the recent past would have an adverse effect.

High-end innovation is a crucial factor for the success of the US economy. To maintain excellence in S&E research, which fuels high-end innovation, the United States must be able to recruit talented people. A substantial proportion of those talented people—students, postdoctoral scholars, and researchers—currently come from other countries.

The shift to staffing research and teaching positions at universities with nontenured staff, which depends in large part on a supply of international graduate students and postdoctoral scholars, should be the subject of a major study.

Multinational corporations (MNCs) hire international PhDs in similar proportion to the output of university graduate and postdoctoral programs. The proportion of international researchers in several large MNCs is around 30-50%. MNCs appreciate international diversity in their research staff. They pay foreign-born and domestic researchers the same salaries, which are based on degree, school, and benchmarks in the industry.

It is neither possible nor desirable to restrict US S&E positions to US citizens; this could reduce industries' and universities' access to much of the world's talent and remove a substantial element of diversity from our society.

One study of Silicon Valley illustrates the importance of international scientists and engineers to the US economy. It found that

> by the end of the 1990s, Chinese and Indian engineers were running 29 percent of Silicon Valley's technology businesses. By 2000, these companies collectively accounted for

more than $19.5 billion in sales and 72,839 jobs. And the pace of immigrant entrepreneurship has accelerated dramatically in the last decade. . .

Far beyond their role in Silicon Valley, the professional and social networks that link new immigrant entrepreneurs with each other have become global institutions that connect new immigrants with their counterparts at home. These new transnational communities provide the shared information, conacts, and trust that allow local producers to participate in an increasingly global economy.

Silicon Valley's Taiwanese engineers, for example, have built a vibrant two-way bridge connecting them with Taiwan's technology community. Their Indian counterparts have become key middlemen linking U.S. businesses to low-cost software expertise in India. These cross-Pacific networks give skilled immigrants a big edge over mainstream competitors who often lack the language skills, cultural know-how, and contacts to build business relationships in Asia. The long-distance networks are accelerating the globalization of labor markets and enhancing opportunities for entrepreneurship, investment, and trade both in the United States and in newly emerging regions in Asia.[20]

In response to those findings, the committee, in this proposed action, is endorsing a recommendation made by the Council on Competitiveness in its report *Innovate America*[21] to extend a 1-year automatic visa extension to international students who receive doctorates or the equivalent in science, technology, engineering, mathematics, or other fields of national need at qualified US institutions to remain in the United States to seek employment. If these students are offered jobs by US-based employers and pass a security screening test, they should be provided automatic work permits and expedited residence status. If students are unable to obtain employment within 1 year, their visas would expire.

**ACTION C-6: Skill-based Immigration**

The federal government should institute a new skills-based, preferential immigration option. Doctoral-level education and science and engineering skills would substantially raise an applicant's chances and priority in obtaining US citizenship. In the interim, the number of H-1B visas should be increased by 10,000, and the additional visas should be available for industry to hire science and engineering applicants with doctorates from US universities.[22]

As discussed in the previous section, highly skilled immigrants make a major contribution to US education, research, entrepreneurship and society. Therefore, it is important to encourage not only students and scholars to stay, but also other people with science, engineering, and mathematics PhDs regardless of where they receive their PhDs.

---

[20] Saxenian, AnnaLee. 2002. *Brain Circulation: How High-Skill Immigration Makes Everyone Better Off.* The Brookings Review 20(1)(Winter 2002) Washington DC, The Brookings Institute.

[21] Council on Competitiveness, *Innovate America*, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2005.

[22] Since the report was released, the committee has learned that Consolidated Appropriations Act of 2005, signed into law on December 8, 2004, exempts individuals that have received a master's or higher education degree from a US university from the statutory cap (up to 20,000). The bill also raised the H-1b fee and allocated funds to train American workers. The committee believes that this provision is sufficient to respond to its recommendation—even though the 10,000 additional visas recommended is specifically for science and engineering doctoral candidates from US universities, which is a narrower subgroup.

For the United States to remain competitive with Europe, Canada, and Australia in attracting these international highly skilled workers, the United States should implement a points-based immigration system. As discussed in a recent Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development report,[23] skill-based immigration points systems, although not widespread, are starting to develop. Canada, Australia, New Zealand, and the UK use such systems to recruit highly skilled workers. The Czech Republic set up a pilot project that started in 2004.

In 2004, the European Union Justice and International Affairs council adopted a recommendation to facilitate researchers from non-EU countries, which asks member states to waive requirements for residence permits or to issue them automatically or through a fast-track procedure and to set no quotas that would restrict their admission. Permits should be renewable and family reunification facilitated. The European Commission has adopted a directive for a special admissions procedure for third-world nationals coming to the EU to perform research. This procedure will be in force in 2006.

- ***Canada*** has put into place a points-based program aimed at fulfilling its policy objectives for migration, particularly in relation to the labor-market situation. The admission of skilled workers depends more on human capital (language skills and diplomas, professional skills, and adaptability) than on specific abilities.[24] Canada has also instituted a business-immigrant selection program to attract investors, entrepreneurs, and self-employed workers.
- ***Germany*** instituted a new immigration law on July 9, 2004. Among its provisions, in the realm of migration for employment, it encourages settlement by high skilled workers, who are eligible immediately for permanent residence permits. Family members who accompany them or subsequently join them have access to the labor market. Like Canada, Germany encourages the immigration of self-employed persons, who are granted temporary residence permits if they invest a minimum of 1 million euros and create at least 10 jobs. Issuance of work permits and residence permits has been consolidated. The Office for Foreigners will issue both permits concurrently, and the Labor Administration subsequently approves the work permit.
- ***UK***[25] The UK Highly Skilled Migrant Programme (HSMP) is an immigration category for entry to the UK for successful people with sought-after skills. It is in some ways similar to the skilled migration programs for entry to Australia and Canada. The UK has added an MBA provision to the HSMP. Eligibility for HSMP visas is assessed on a points system with more points awarded in the following situations:
    - Preference for applicants under 28 years old.

---

[23] Unless otherwise noted, policies listed are from an overview presented in OECD. 2005. Trends in International Migration: 2004 Annual Report. Paris: Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. OECD members countries include Australia, Austria, Belgium, Canada, the Czech Republic, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Japan, Korea, Luxembourg, Mexico, Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Poland, Portugal, the Slovak Republic, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, Turkey, the United Kingdom, and the United States.

[24] Applicants can check on line their chances to qualify for migration to Canada as skilled workers. A points score is automatically calculated to determine entry to Canada under the Skilled Worker category. See: Canadian Immigration Points Calculator Web site at http://www.workpermit.com/canada/points_calculator.htm.

[25] UK Highly Skilled Migrant Programme Web page. Also has a points calculator. http://www.workpermit.com/uk/highly_skilled_migrant_program.htm

- Skilled migrants with tertiary qualifications.
- High-level work experience.
- Past earnings.
- In a few rare cases, HSMP points are also awarded if one has an achievement in one's chosen field.
- One may also score bonus points if one is a skilled migrant seeking to bring a spouse or partner who also has high-level skills and work experience.

- ***Australia*** encourages immigration of skilled migrants, who are assessed on a points system with points awarded for work experience, qualifications, and language proficiency.[26] Applicants must demonstrate skills in specific job categories.

**ACTION C-7: Reform the current system of "deemed exports".**[27]

The current system of "deemed export" should be reformed. The new system should provide international students and researchers engaged in fundamental research in the United States with access to information and research equipment in US industrial, academic, and national laboratories comparable with the access provided to US citizens and permanent residents in a similar status. It would, of course, exclude information and facilities restricted under national-security regulations. In addition, the effect of deemed-exports regulations on the education and fundamental research work of international students and scholars should be limited by removing from the deemed-exports technology list all technology items (information and equipment) that are available for purchase on the overseas open market from foreign or US companies or that have manuals that are available in the public domain, in libraries, over the Internet, or from manufacturers.

The controls governed by the Export Administration Act and its implementing regulations extend to the transfer of "technology". *Technology* is considered "*specific information* necessary for the 'development,' 'production,' or 'use' of a product", and providing such information to a foreign national within the United States may be considered a "deemed export" whose transfer requires an export license[28] (italics added). The primary responsibility

[26] See points calculator at http://www.workpermit.com/australia/point_calculator.htm.

[27] The controls governed by the Export Administration Act and its implementing regulations extend to the transfer of technology. Technology includes "specific information necessary for the 'development,' 'production,' or 'use' of a product" [emphasis added]. Providing information that is subject to export controls—for example, about some kinds of computer hardware—to a foreign national within the United States may be "deemed" an export, and that transfer requires an export license. The primary responsibility for administering controls on deemed exports lies with the Department of Commerce, but other agencies have regulatory authority as well.

[28] "Generally, technologies subject to the Export Administration Regulations (EAR) are those which are in the United States or of US origin, in whole or in part. Most are proprietary. Technologies which tend to require licensing for transfer to foreign nationals are also dual-use (i.e., have both civil and military applications) and are subject to one or more control regimes, such as National Security, Nuclear Proliferation, Missile Technology, or Chemical and Biological Warfare." "Deemed Exports" Questions and Answers, Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce.

The International Traffic in Arms Regulations (ITAR), administered by the Department of State, control the export of technology, including technical information, related to items on the US Munitions List. Unlike the EAR, however, "publicly available scientific and technical information and academic exchanges and information presented at scientific meetings are not treated as controlled technical data."

for administering deemed exports lies with the Department of Commerce (DOC), but other agencies may have regulations to address the issue. Deemed exports are currently the subject of significant controversy.

In 2000, Congress mandated annual reports by agency offices of inspector general (IG) on the transfer of militarily sensitive technology to countries and entities of concern; the 2004 reports focused on deemed exports. The individual agency IG reports and a joint interagency report concluded that enforcement of deemed-export regulations had been ineffective; most of the agency reports recommended particular regulatory remedies.[29]

DoC sought comments from the public about the recommendations from its IG before proposing any changes. The department earned praise for this effort to reach out to potentially affected groups and is currently reviewing the 300 plus comments it received, including those from the leaders of the National Academies.[30]

On July 12, 2005, the Department of Defense (DoD) issued a notice in the *Federal Register* seeking comments on a proposal to amend the Defense Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (DFARS) to address requirements for preventing unauthorized disclosure of export-controlled information and technology under DoD contracts that follow the recommendations in its IG report. The proposed regulation includes a requirement for access-control plans covering unique badging requirements for foreign workers and segregated work areas for export-controlled information and technology, and it does not mention of the fundamental-research exemption.[31] Comments were due by September 12, 2005.

Many of the comments in response to DoC expressed concern that the proposed changes were not based on systematic data or analysis and could have a significant negative effect on the conduct of research in both universities and the private sector, especially in companies with a substantial number of employees who are not US citizens.

## CONCLUSION

The knowledge-driven global economy compels America to develop and recruit the finest experts available. Our students and our society prospered under a system of higher education and research that was the global leader in the second half of the 20th century. For a half-century at least, the United States has attracted graduate students and scholars from around the world. The system worked to our benefit, and it cannot now be taken for granted.

---

[29] Reports were produced by the DoC, DoD, The Department of Energy (DoE), and the Department of State, Department of Homeland Security, and the Central Intelligence Agencies. Only the interagency report and the reports from DoC, DoD, and DoE are publicly available.

[30] The letter from the presidents of the National Academies may be found at http://www7.nationalacademies.org/rscom/Academy_Presidents_Comments_to_DOC.PDF.

[31] *Federal Register* 70(132)(July 2005):, 39976—78), available at http://a257.g.akamaitech.net/7/257/2422/01jan20051800/edocket.access.gpo.gov/2005/05-13305.htm.

# 8

## WHAT ACTIONS SHOULD AMERICA TAKE IN ECONOMIC AND TECHNOLOGY POLICY TO REMAIN PROSPEROUS IN THE 21st CENTURY?

### INCENTIVES FOR INNOVATION

**Recommendation D:** ***Ensure that the United States is the premier place in the world to innovate; invest in downstream activities such as manufacturing and marketing; and create high-paying jobs based on innovation by such actions as modernizing the patent system, realigning tax policies to encourage innovation, and ensuring affordable broadband access.***

As William A. Wulf, President of the National Academy of Engineering, points out, "There is no simple formula for innovation. There is, instead, a multi-component 'environment' that collectively encourages, or discourages, innovation."[1] That environment encompasses such factors as research funding, an educated workforce, a culture that encourages risk taking, a financial system that provides patient capital for entrepreneurial activity, and intellectual property protection.[2] For more than a century, the United States has been a world leader in the development of new technology and the creation of new products. Its international competitive advantage rests in large part on a favorable environment for discovery and application of knowledge—its intellectual property.

Setting a policy framework that supports innovation is critical for at least two reasons. First, it enhances the competitiveness of US-based industries and supports domestic economic growth. Second, the nation stands to benefit from well-paying jobs if multinational corporations see the United States as the best place to perform research and development (R&D) and other activities related to innovation and ultimately to build factories and offices here.[3]

Our own history and contemporary international examples show that leadership in research is not a sufficient condition for gaining the lion's share of benefits from innovation. Recent developments in Japan illustrate what can happen to a science- and technology-based economy that does not adapt its innovation environment to changing conditions. Japan's growth trajectory in various science and engineering inputs and outputs (R&D investment, science and engineering workforce, patents) since the early 1990s has been similar to what it was before that time.[4] Yet its ability to profit from innovation in the form of higher productivity and income has recently fallen. Part of the explanation for the change is in the dual nature of the Japanese economy: World-class manufacturing that serves a global market exists side-by-side with inefficient industries, such as construction.[5] Economic mismanagement and a lack of flexibility in labor and capital markets also are to blame.

---

[1] W. A. Wulf. Review and renewal of the environment for innovation. Unpublished paper, 2005.
[2] An alternative point of view is presented in Box 8-1.
[3] National Research Council. *A Patent System for the 21st Century*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2004, p. 18.
[4] Benn Steil, David G. Victor and Richard R. Nelson. *Technological Innovation and Economic Performance*. 2002. Princeton, New Jersey: Princeton University Press.
[5] D. W. Jorgenson and M. Kuroda. Technology, productivity, and the competitiveness of U.S. and Japanese industries. In *Japan's Growing Technological Capability: Implications for the U.S. Economy*, eds. T. Arrison, C. F. Bergsten, E. M. Graham, and M. C. Harris, pp. 83-97. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1992.

**Box 8-1: Another Point of View: Innovation Incentives**

Some critics say the argument that the US economy is lagging in innovation compared with other nations, or even compared with its own historical performance, is not supported by the evidence. Indeed, comparing the current situation with that of 1989 is instructive and striking in this regard.

In 1989, the US economy had been suffering from extremely poor overall productivity growth for almost two decades.[6] By 2005, the United States had experienced almost a decade of accelerated productivity growth, briefly interrupted by the 2001 recession.[7]

In 1989, a panel of experts documented a long-term decline in US industrial performance in several critical sectors.[8] A decade later, a similar assessment showed US industry to be resurgent across a variety of sectors, including several that had been troubled in 1989.[9] In 2005, US-based companies—Google, Apple, Boeing, Genentech—remain at the global forefront in commercializing new technology and creating new markets based on innovation.

In contrast, the economies of most other developed nations have suffered from slower growth in GDP, productivity, and income—and from higher unemployment and inflation.[10]

What accounts for this "American economic miracle", and will it continue? Various studies have identified key factors, although there is some disagreement over sustainability. In the area of innovation, structural US advantages include our system of research universities with both government and private funding, the diverse portfolio of government-funded research awarded through peer review, strong intellectual property and securities regulation, and the financing of innovation "led by a uniquely dynamic venture capital industry".[11]

It is generally considered important for the United States to continue to reassess the environment for innovation and to address shortcomings wherever possible; some believe current incentives for companies to innovate and commercialize are strong and not in need of a significant overhaul.

In contrast, in the middle1990s the United States saw a jump in productivity growth from that which had prevailed since the first oil shock of the early 1970s.[12] In addition to continuous

---

[6] P. W. Bauer. Are We in a Productivity Boom? Evidence from Multifactor Productivity Growth. Federal Reserve Bank of Cleveland. Oct. 15, 1999. Available at www.clevelandfed.org/research/Conf/99/1015.pdf, table 1.

[7] D. W. Jorgenson, M. S. Ho, and K. J. Stiroh. Projecting Productivity Growth: Lessons from the U.S. Growth Resurgence. Discussion Paper 02-42 Washington, DC: Resources for the Future, Jul. 2002. Available at www.rff.org/Documents/RFF-DP-02-42.pdf#search='U.S.%20productivity%20growth'; and Bureau of Labor Statistics. Productivity and Costs, 2nd Quarter 2005, Revised. News release. Sept. 7, 2005. Available at www.bls.gov/news.release/prod2.nr0.htm.

[8] M. Dertouzos, R. Lester, and R. Solow. *Made in America: Regaining the Productive Edge*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1989.

[9] National Research Council. *U.S. Industry in 2000: Studies in Competitive Renewal*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999.

[10] R. J. Gordon. Why was Europe Left at the Station When America's Productivity Locomotive Departed? Working Paper 10661. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research, Aug. 2004. Available at http://www.nber.org/papers/w10661.

[11] R. J. Gordon. The United States. In *Technological Innovation and Economic Performance*, eds. B. Steil, D. G. Victor, and R. R. Nelson, pp. 49-73. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2002.

[12] W. Nordhaus The Sources of the Productivity Rebound and the Manufacturing Employment Puzzle. Working Paper 11354. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research, 2005.

gains in manufacturing productivity and productivity growth generated by the use of information technology, the creation of new business methods that took advantage of information technology were widespread here.

Science and technology and the innovation process are not zero-sum games in the international context.[13] The United States has proved adept in the past at taking advantage of breakthroughs and inventions from abroad.[14] But as other nations increase their innovation capacity, the United States must reassess its own environment for innovation and make adjustments to maintain leadership and to maximize the benefits of science and engineering for the public at large (see Box 8-3: Finland, and Box 8-4: South Korea).

The innovation environment encompasses a broad range of policy areas. The Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st century focused on intellectual property protection, the R&D tax credit, other tax incentives for innovation, and the availability of high-speed Internet access. Although some other important components of the innovation environment were not examined in detail, such as the corporate tax rate and tax-forgiveness policies in various nations, the committee believes the specific changes recommended here create significant opportunities. It should be noted that several focus group members and reviewers raised product liability and tort reform as areas for potential improvement. However, the committee determined that the Class Action Fairness Act of 2005, which represents a major policy change, is a step forward in the national approach to issues of product liability.[15]

---

[13] W. A. Wulf. Observations on science and technology trends: Their potential impact on our future. In *Technology Futures and Global Wealth, Power and Conflict*, ed. A. G. K. Solomon, pp. 9-16. Washington, DC: Center for Strategic and International Studies, 2005.

[14] National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, Institute of Medicine, *Capitalizing on Investments in Science and Technology*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999.

[15] Statement on S.5, the Class-Action Fairness Act of 2005. White House press statement. Feb. 18, 2005.

**Action D-1:**
**Enhance the Patent System**

Enhance intellectual-property protection for the 21st century global economy to ensure that systems for protecting patents and other forms of intellectual property underlie the emerging knowledge economy but allow research to enhance innovation. The patent system requires reform of four specific kinds:

- Provide the US Patent and Trademark Office with sufficient resources to make intellectual-property protection more timely, predictable, and effective.
- Reconfigure the US patent system by switching to a "first-inventor-to-file" system and by instituting administrative review *after* a patent is granted. Those reforms would bring the US system into alignment with patent systems in Europe and Japan.
- Shield research uses of patented inventions from infringement liability. One recent court decision could jeopardize the long-assumed ability of academic researchers to use patented inventions for research.
- Change intellectual-property laws that act as barriers to innovation in specific industries, such as those related to data exclusivity (in pharmaceuticals) and those which increase the volume and unpredictability of litigation (especially in information-technology industries).

The US patent system is the nation's oldest intellectual-property policy.[16, 17] A sound system for patents enhances social welfare by encouraging invention and the dissemination of useful technical information.[18] It also provides incentives for investment in commercialization that promotes economic growth, creates jobs, and advances other social goals.[19]

Balance is a critical element of a sound patent system. Without adequate intellectual-property protection, incentives to create are compromised. On the other hand, too much protection slows the application of valuable ideas. Thus, it is imperative that the US Patent and Trade Mark Office (USPTO) and the courts scrupulously protect patent rights and rigorously enforce patent law.[20]

Concerns over questions of patent policy have previously led the National Academies to conduct an extensive study of the field, emphasizing questions related to innovation and

---

[16] The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO), mandated by the U.S. Constitution, awarded its first patent on Jul. 31, 1790 to Samuel Hopkins for an improvement in "making Pot ash and Pearl ash by a new Apparatus and Process."

[17] Article I, section 8 of the Constitution reads, "Congress shall have power . . . to promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries." Available at http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/#ptac.

[18] The USPTO offers this simplified definition: "A patent is an exclusive right granted for an invention, which is a product or a process that provides, in general, a new way of doing something, or offers a new technical solution to a problem. . . ." In addition, a patent item must be sufficiently different from what has been used or described before that it may be said to be non-obvious to a person having ordinary skill in the area of technology related to the invention. For example, the substitution of one color for another or changes in size, are ordinarily not patentable. Available at http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/#ptac.

[19] M. Myers quoted in Changes Needed to Improve Operation of U.S. Patent System. National Research Council news release. Washington, DC: National Academies, Apr. 19, 2004.

[20] http://www.federalreserve.gov/boarddocs/speeches/2004/20040227/default.

technology.[21] That study explored stresses in the system and suggested remedies to promote vitality and improve the functioning of the patent system. This committee believes that several of those recommendations are particularly important, and they are reflected in the first three patent system action items contained herein.

The first priority with regard to patent reform is for Congress and the administration to increase the resources available to the USPTO. Patents are now acquired more frequently and asserted and enforced more vigorously than at any time in the past. That surge in activity is indicative that business, universities, and public entities attach great importance to patents and are willing to incur considerable expense to acquire, exercise, and defend them. There is evidence that the increased workload at the USPTO, with no significant concomitant increase in examiner staffing or other resources, has resulted in a decline in the quality of patent examinations and increased litigation costs after patents are granted.[22] Earlier reports by the National Academies and the Council on Competitiveness identify increasing USPTO capabilities having high priority.[23]

The National Academies report outlines how additional resources should be used. This includes having the USPTO hire and train additional examiners and implementing more capable electronic processing. It also notes that the USPTO should create a strong multidisciplinary analytical capability to assess management practices and proposed changes; provide an early warning of new technologies proposed for patenting; and conduct reliable, consistent reviews of reputable quality that address officewide performance and the performance of individual examiners.[24]

The second important action is to harmonize the US patent system with systems in other major economies by instituting postgrant review and moving from a first-to-invent to a first-inventor-to-file system. In addition to bringing the United States more in line with the patent policies of the rest of the world, these changes would increase the efficiency and predictability of the US system. Increased harmonization would aid US inventors who seek global protection for their inventions.

The only way to challenge a patent under the current system is by litigation. This has led to abuses, such as laying broad claims—sometimes without reason or merit—to patents in hopes of receiving a generous settlement from a competitor who wishes to avoid long and expulsive litigation. Often, competitors or other interested parties are the best available source of information about the state of the art. Inviting their input in a process of administrative review—the so-called opposition system—would allow for "peer review" of recently granted patents to serve as a second check or quality assurance of the initial examination by the patent office. Such opposition is much less expensive than litigation, open to anyone, and much faster—decisions can sometimes be made in 1 day. The 2004 National Academies report explains, in considerable detail, how such a system, which it calls "Open Review", would work.[25]

The United States still uses a first-to-invent rather than a first-to-file patent system. This requires a complex, expensive, and time-consuming (5-10 years) process to sort out who has the patent rights. It also absorbs the time of some of the most experienced patent examiners.

---

[21] National Research Council. *A Patent System for the 21st Century*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2004, p. 18.

[22] J. L. King. Patent examination procedures and patent quality. In *Patents in the Knowledge-Based Economy*, eds. W. M. Cohen and S. A. Merrill, pp. 54-73. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2003.

[23] See National Research Council. *A Patent System for the 21st Century*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2004, especially pp. 103-108; Council on Competitiveness. *Innovate America*. Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004, especially p. 69.

[24] See National Research Council. *A Patent System for the 21st Century*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2004, pp. 103-108.

[25] Ibid., pp. 95-103.

Ultimately, the amount of resources devoted to resolving the priority question (which is resolved in favor of the first filer over two-thirds of the time)[26] outweighs the benefits, and the time and personnel required could be put to better use improving the quality of basic examinations.

Some might argue that the proposed changes would put smaller inventors at a disadvantage. However, resolving disputes through an opposition process is far less expensive than is litigation, and that alone would constitute a significant benefit to small companies and individual inventors with worthy claims. Periodic surveys by the American Intellectual Property Law Association indicate that patent litigation costs—now millions of dollars for each party in a case where the stakes are substantial—are increasing at double-digit annual rates. The relatively low cost of filing provisional applications to establish priority under a first-to-file system would not constitute a significant burden on small inventors.

The third recommended action is to preserve some existing research exemptions from infringement liability.[27] Until recently, it was widely believed, especially in the academic research community, that uses of patented inventions purely for research were shielded from infringement liability by an experimental-use exception first articulated in 19th-century case law. But in *Madey v. Duke University*,[28] a suit brought by a former Duke University professor and laboratory director, the Federal Circuit Court upended that notion by holding that there is no protection for research conducted as part of the university's normal "business" of investigation and education, regardless of its commercial or noncommercial character.

By the time *Madey* arrived before the court, most universities had established intellectual-property offices and there were clear difficulties in distinguishing commercially motivated research from "pure" academic research. The court, without addressing that issue directly, decided that for a major research university, even noncommercial research projects "unmistakably further the institution's legitimate business objectives, including educating and enlightening students and faculty participating in these projects".[29] Activities that further "business objectives", including research projects that "increase the status of the institution and lure lucrative research grants, students and faculty", are ineligible for an experimental use defense.

Thus, the court regarded virtually all research as a means of advancing the "legitimate business objectives" of a university. The result, wrote one observer, "is a seemingly disingenuous opinion that neither conforms to the implications of precedent nor explains the reasons for steering the law in a different direction, but pretends that prior courts never meant to give research science special treatment".[30] Because the courts have not traced the experimental-use defense, case by case, as a tool for mediating between the private interests of patent owners and the public interest of open scientific progress, that issue awaits resolution.

The 2004 National Academies study offers two alternatives.[31] The preferred solution would be the passage of appropriately narrow legislation to shield some research uses of patented inventions from infringement liability. If progress on the legislative front is delayed, the Office of Management and Budget might consider extending to grantees the "authorization and consent"

---

[26] http://www.uhlen.com/media/index.php?id=181.

[27] The committee recognizes the interest of some reviewers in reexamining aspects of the technology transfer process governed by the Bayh-Dole Act and related legislation, but issues related to Bayh-Dole are controversial and have been under discussion for years. The committee believes that establishing a research exemption for infringement liability is a higher priority.

[28] *Madey v. Duke Univ.* 307 F.3d 1351. Available at 2002 U.S. App. LEXIS 20823, 64 U.S.P.Q.2d. (BNA) 1737 (Fed. Cir. 2002).

[29] Ibid.

[30] R. Eisenberg. Science and the law: Patent swords and shields. *Science* 299(5609)(2003):1018-1019.

[31] National Research Council. *A Patent System for the 21st Century*. National Academies Press, 2004, p. 82.

protection that is provided to contractors, provided that such protection is strictly limited to research and does not extend to resulting commercial products or services.

The final action proposed herein for modernizing the patent system—and the only one our committee did not derive from the 2004 National Academies report—is to change intellectual-property laws that constitute barriers to innovation in specific industries. The two main problem areas are in the pharmaceutical and information-technology industries. It is particularly expensive to create and market new drugs and medicines, and the costs are unlikely to be recovered unless there is predictable intellectual-property protection of appropriate duration. The interaction of the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval process and the patent system poses unique challenges to the pharmaceutical industry. The inherent risk to drug developers is illustrated by the reality that more than 90% of pharmaceutical candidates fail in clinical testing.[32] Furthermore, only 1 in 1,000 new formulations tested reach clinical trials,[33] and a relatively small minority of those, perhaps one-third, pay back the cost of even their own research.[34] It is critical that a balance be struck in finding an appropriate period of exclusivity such that innovation is stimulated and sustained but patients have access to generic-drug-pricing structures.

Current intellectual-property protection for new medicines is governed under the Hatch–Waxman law, enacted in 1984, to give 14 years of patent protection after FDA approval of a new medicine. However, the law does not provide the same period for sustained marketing exclusivity. It curtails the ability to extend patents and provides opportunities for early patent challenges. The protection of data under the law is roughly one-half as long as the period afforded in Europe, creating a relative disadvantage for the United States in attracting pharmaceutical businesses[35] (see Box 8-2).

In the near term, the United States should adopt the European period of 10-11 years. However, research should be undertaken to determine whether this period is adequate, given the complexity and length of drug development today.

Patent issues are also particularly important to the information-technology industry, especially in software and Internet-related activities. The volume and unpredictability of litigation have recently attracted considerable attention and are currently being reviewed by Congress. An additional complexity of sector-specific issues is that intellectual-property laws vary among nations, affecting innovation differently in different industries. The committee concludes that those issues are opportunities for Congress and other relevant federal entities to take productive actions, including those outlined above.

---

[32] C. Austin, L. Brady, T. Insel, and F. Collins. NIH molecular libraries initiative. *Science* 306(2004):1138-1139.
[33] Tufts Center for the Study of Drug Development. Backgrounder: How new drugs move through the development and approval process. Nov. 1, 2001. Available at http://csdd.tufts.edu/NewsEvents/RecentNews.asp?newsid=4.
[34] H. Grabowski, J. Vernon, and J. DiMasi. Returns on research and development for 1990s new drug introductions. *Pharmacoeconomics* 20(suppl. 3)(2002):11-29.
[35] International Association of Pharmaceutical Manufacturers & Associations. A review of existing data exclusivity legislation in selected countries. January 2004. Available at:
http://www.who.int/intellectualproperty/topics/ip/en/Data.exclusivity.review.doc.

**BOX 8-2**
**A Data-Exclusivity Case Study**

Incentives to innovate could be considerably improved by enhancing data-package exclusivity. In the case of incentives to develop new medicines, data-package exclusivity protects for a period of years an innovator's regulatory submission package to the Food and Drug Administration from being used as a source of information by a company that produces generic products. The period in Europe is 10 years plus an additional year if the innovator has gained approval for more than one indication. The United States grants data exclusivity for a new chemical entity for 5 years; a second indication is entitled to 3 years of exclusivity. Those periods are generally too short to stimulate investment. Thus, innovation incentives in the United States are almost entirely patent-driven.

The current system has been successful in stimulating the creation of new molecules, but the limitations of the patent system sometimes result in denying patients the best that the pharmaceutical industry could offer. The limitations are due largely to the time constraints under which the patent system operates. Patents generally must be filed as quickly as possible after an invention occurs, and the ticking clock creates a tension with other aspects of drug development.[a]

The demands for data on a molecule's safety and efficacy are increasing. The generation of the necessary data requires time and money. It is to patients' benefit for as much time as appropriate to be devoted to the development of the data, but spending the time lessens the return on the developer's investment because it encroaches on the patent term. Bringing a new medicine to patients requires a sequence of major breakthroughs, which in the current system must be accomplished well before the life of a patent runs out. Often, the clock does run out, and the innovator must start over with a new molecule simply to get time "back on the clock". As a result, there is an ever-growing "graveyard" currently comprising more than 10 million compounds. There is no incentive to exhume these compounds in the absence of substantial data-package exclusivity, because patents will be either unavailable or of such narrow coverage that they would be easy to avoid in developing a related drug.

In addition, there is little incentive to pursue new indications for old molecules without appropriate data-package protection. Indeed, when no compound patent covers the product, there is a *disincentive* to develop new indications. Generic medicines may be approved for a smaller number of indications than those associated with the innovator's drug. If there is no compound patent and one of the indications is unpatentable, the generic medicine may be approved only for the unpatented indication. The innovator's entire market could then be eroded because physicians have the latitude to prescribe the generic compound for any indications, including patented ones. Every reasonable effort should be made to encourage the development of new indications for known compounds because of the greater level of knowledge about safety for already-marketed compounds than for brand-new ones.

a The pressure to file for patents as quickly as possible after an invention occurs is inevitable in a global knowledge economy, whether or not the United States stays with the current first-to-invent system or moves to a first-inventor-to-file system. Most of the world follows the latter system. Innovators seeking patent protection in the three major patenting regions (the United States, Europe, and Japan) must therefore manage their patent filings consistent by with the first-inventor-to-file system

**Action D-2: Strengthen the R&D Tax Credit**

Enact a stronger research and development tax credit to encourage private investment in innovation. The current Research and Experimentation (R&E) Tax Credit goes to companies that *increase* their research and development spending above a base amount calculated from their spending in prior years. Congress and the Administration should make the credit permanent,[36] and it should be increased from 20% to 40% of the qualifying increase so that the US tax credit is competitive with that of other countries. The credit should be extended to companies that have consistently spent large amounts on research and development so that they will not be subject to the current de facto penalties for having previously invested in research and development.

Much of the benefit of industry R&D spending accrues to society in ways that cannot be captured by individual firms. The R&E Tax Credit and similar policies in other nations are designed to promote more R&D investment and to encourage the creation and retention of jobs in the country that provides the tax incentive.

Econometric studies have estimated that the tax credit encourages at least as much R&D spending as the credit costs in forgone tax revenue—and perhaps as much as twice that amount—particularly over the long term.[37] Political and community leaders traditionally have viewed R&D incentives primarily as a tax issue, but their effect on jobs could be even more significant. R&D incentives directly create or sustain high-wage, high-skill jobs in places where the research is conducted. When long-term gains in productivity, income, and tax revenue are added to the immediate gain in R&D spending encouraged by the tax credit, it seems clear that the credit is a cost-effective mechanism for encouraging innovation and creating quality jobs.

The first change the committee recommends, namely making the credit permanent, is perhaps the most straightforward. Since the introduction of the tax credit in 1980, it has been extended repeatedly, allowed to lapse, and periodically modified, all without being formalized as a permanent, reliable element of policy.[38] Over the years, numerous committees and groups have recommended that the credit be made permanent so that companies can plan longer term investments in US-based R&D with the knowledge that the credit will be available.[39] The Council on Competitiveness recently echoed the call to make the tax credit permanent.[40]

The second change, increasing the credit from 20% to 40%, would be more controversial and, in the near term, more costly. The cost of the current tax credit is estimated at $5.1 billion for FY 2005. The cost for FY 2006 is estimated at about $4.2 billion, assuming the current credit, due to expire December 31, 2005, is extended once again.[41] The committee therefore estimated that permanent extension of the credit would cost about $5 billion per year (roughly what the credit currently costs), and that the other recommended changes (doubling the rate and expanding eligibility) could potentially result in doubling the cost.

---

[36] The current R&D tax credit expired in Dec. 2005.

[37] B. H. Hall and J. van Reenen. How Effective Are Fiscal Incentives for R&D? A Review of the Evidence. Working Paper 7098. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research, 1999.

[38] As currently extended, the R&D tax credit will expire on Dec. 31, 2005.

[39] National Research Council. *Harnessing Science and Technology for America's Economic Future*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999, p. 46.

[40] Council on Competitiveness. *Innovate America*. Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004, p. 59.

[41] See Budget of the United States Government, Fiscal Year 2006, Analytical Perspectives, Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, 2005, p. 65. Available at http://a255.g.akamaitech.net/7/255/2422/07feb20051415/www.gpoaccess.gov/usbudget/fy06/pdf/spec.pdf.

There are several reasons to increase the rate, not the least of which is that the *effective* current credit is 13%, rather than 20%, for companies that deduct R&D expenses.[42] A higher percentage would raise the incentive effect of the credit.

It also is important to consider in international context the issue of whether the United States is keeping pace with other economies as an attractive location for R&D (see Table 8-1). Federal R&D tax credits rarely determine the type of research performed, but they can influence where the work is conducted.[43, 44] As of 2000, the most recent year for which data are available, foreign-based multi-national corporations (MNCs) performed $26 billion in R&D in the United States. US-based MNCs performed $19.8 billion in R&D overseas.[45] There is an obvious advantage in having MNCs locate operations in the United States as not only does it maintain the employment of the scientists and engineers at corporate research laboratories, but research activities are often located near production facilities that affects the employment of all workers where we already benefit from their contributions to US corporate R&D.[46]

---

[42] This is due to the Section 280C limitation in the Internal Revenue Code. See J.R. Oliver. Accounting and tax treatment of R&D: An update. *The CPA Journal*. 73(7)(July 2003): 46-49

[43] OECD. *Tax Incentive for Research and Development: Trends and Issues*. Available at: http://www.oecd.org/dataoecd/12/27/2498389.pdf

[44] J. M. Poterba. Introduction. In *Borderline Case: International Tax Policy, Corporate Research and Development, and Investment*, ed. J. M. Poterba. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1997, p. 3. This is not to say that there is evidence that companies locate R&D in the country that has the best R&D tax credit. In fact, the industry perspectives in the Poterba volume suggest otherwise. And the second OECD paper referenced above indicates that the differential between the overall corporate tax rate and the credit is the key factor. For example, Ireland has a low overall corporate tax rate, so its R&D tax credit was not as effective as it would have been had the overall corporate tax rate been higher.

[45]. National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. p. 4-64 – 4-65

[46] National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. Tables 4-50, 4-51 and 4-52.

**Table 8-1 Overview of R&D Tax Incentives in Other Countries**

| Country | R&D Tax Incentive | Comment |
|---|---|---|
| **Australia** | • Allows a 125% deduction for R&D expenses<br>• Plus a 175% deduction for R&D expenditures exceeding a base amount of prior-year spending. | "The 125% deduction is the equivalent of a flat 7.5% R&D tax credit. In discussing its R&D-friendly environment, the Australian government's website (investaustralia.com) concludes, "It's little surprise then, that many **companies from around the world are choosing to locate their R&D facilities in Australia.**" The government also points out that "60% of the most innovative companies in Australia are foreign-based." |
| **Canada** | • Offers a permanent 23% flat (i.e., first-dollar) R&D tax credit.<br>• Also, many provincial governments offer various incentives (e.g., refundable credits) for R&D activities conducted in their provinces. | In 2003, U.S. subsidiaries spent **$2.8 billion on R&D in Canada**, which has mounted an aggressive marketing campaign, including television and print advertisements, to lure more U.S. companies to locate R&D operations north of the border. Ontario print ad discusses "**R&D tax credits, among the most generous in the industrialized world**" and "a cost structure which KPMG confirms as lower than the U.S. and Europe"; the ad concludes, "you'll see why R&D in Ontario is clearly worth investigating." |
| **China** | • Offers foreign investment enterprises a 150% deduction for R&D expenditures, provided that R&D spending has increased by 10% from the prior year. | "The 10% incremental-increase threshold should not be difficult to meet for U.S.-owned companies growing start-up operations in China. China's Ningbo Economic & Technical Development Zone ("NBTD") invites **global companies to "enjoy a number of preferential taxation policies,"** as well as other benefits. |
| **France** | • Allows a 50% R&D credit, includes a 5% flat credit and a 45% credit for R&D expenditures in excess of average R&D spending over the two previous years. | As is the case with the China R&D deduction, the incremental threshold governing the French 50% credit should be easy to meet for "inbound" companies growing their operations in France. In 2003, U.S. subsidiaries spent **$1.8 billion on R&D in France.** "This is the first time in our industry that Americans are coming to Europe to join the R&D of Europeans," Pasquale Pistorio, President and CEO of STMicroelectronics, in *The New France: Where the Smart Money Goes.* |
| **India** | • Companies carrying on scientific research and development are entitled to a 100% deduction of profits for 10 years. | "More than 100 global companies ... have established R&D centers in India in the past 5 years, and more are coming ... As I see it from my perch in India's science and technology leadership, **if India plays its cards right, it can become by 2020 the world's number-one knowledge production center.**" |

Source: R&D Credit Coalition fact sheet titled "International R&D Incentives". September 15, 2005. http://www.investinamericasfuture.org/factsheets.html. Accessed October 11, 2005.

Table 8-1 Continued

| Country | R&D Tax Incentive | Comment |
|---|---|---|
| | • Automobile industry also is entitled to a 150% deduction for expenditures on in-house R&D facilities. | Raghunath Mashelkar, Director General, Council for Scientific & Industrial Research, India, in *Science Magazine* |
| **Ireland** | • Offers a 20% R&D tax credit, plus a full deduction, as well as a low (generally applicable) 12.5% corporate income tax rate.<br>• Capital expenditures may also qualify for a separate flat credit. | According to IDA Ireland, the government agency with responsibility for the promotion of direct investment by foreign companies into Ireland, "**Many leading global companies have found Ireland to be an excellent location for knowledge-based activities.** . . . Nearly half of all IDA supported companies now have sales expenditure on R&D and 1,200 people are engaged in this activity." |
| **Japan** | • Offers a flat 10% R&D tax credit (a 16% flat credit is provided for small companies), in addition to other incentives. | In 2003, U.S. subsidiaries spent **$1.7 billion on R&D in Japan.** Junichiro Minami, an official from Japan's Ministry of Economy, Trade, and Industry, said in an August 26 interview with the Bureau of National Affairs that **R&D and IT tax relief has created 400,000 jobs and boosted gross domestic product by 6.1 trillion yen ($55 billion) over three years.** |
| **Korea** | • Tax holidays, up to 7 years, are provided for high-technology businesses.<br>• In addition, a variety of tax credits are provided for R&D-type expenditures. | **Korea is moving aggressively to attract foreign R&D investment,** providing not only tax incentives but also other benefits for foreign companies locating R&D in the Incheon Free Economic Zone ("IFEZ"). |
| **Singapore** | • "R&D and Intellectual Property Management Hub Scheme" offers U.S. companies a 5-year tax holiday for foreign income earned with respect to Singapore-based R&D. | According to Singapore's Economic Development Board website, "**Singapore does not just welcome business ideas. It actively seeks and nurtures them.** We play host to any shape and size of enterprise and innovation – startups with little more than the germ of an idea, global corporations with large R&D teams and complex production operations." |
| **United Kingdom** | • Allows a 125% deduction for R&D expenses, plus a 175% deduction for R&D expenditures exceeding a base amount of prior year R&D spending. | The UK leads the world in attracting R&D investment by U.S. affiliates – U.S. subsidiaries spent more than **$4 billion on UK-based R&D** in 2003. The 125% deduction alone is the equivalent of a flat 7.5% R&D tax credit. |

The Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) has noted a trend in member countries toward more generous tax incentives for R&D investments.[47] By moving to a higher, permanent tax credit, the United States will be better positioned to compete against credits already offered elsewhere.

Likewise, national policy must be conformed to ensure appropriate revisions of regulations interpreting and implementing the federal R&E tax credit. Practical and uniform guidelines for the conduct of tax audits related to the federal R&E ax credit must also be adopted. Federal research tax-credit regulations should be updated to reflect the changing impact of technology on the character of R&D, such as expanded use of databases provided by external parties and the greater conduct of R&D through joint ventures. Any national policy on tax credits and related incentives should recognize the importance of having states and localities also conform their laws to embrace a focus on research and innovation.

Finally, the definition of applicable expenses used to calculate the tax credit should be expanded to allow companies that have consistently maintained high levels of R&D spending to claim the credit. As currently written, the credit rewards companies that have high R&D expenditures compared with a base period. Companies that consistently invest large amounts, but do not appreciably increase those amounts over time, can be entitled to little or no credit. The formula should be amended so as not to penalize consistent R&D investors but rather to allow companies with significant and consistent R&D investments to receive tax credits.

[47] OECD. Science, Technology, and Industry Outlook. Paris: OECD, 2004, p. 67.

Credit should be allowed for all relevant research expenditures (in contrast with the current incremental approach) by, for example, broadening the definition of qualifying expenditures. Qualifying expenditures could be broadened to include some legitimate costs of conducting research, such as employee benefit costs (defined benefits, retirement plans, health -are plans, and so on) related to qualifying wages, as well as 100% of contract research costs (as opposed to the current 65%). In a different method, qualifying expenditures could be redefined to include all Internal Revenue Code (IRC) Section 174 expenditures (a much broader definition of R&D expenditures). A portion of the IRC ( the Section 280C limitation) that reduces the federal R&D credit by 35% might also be repealed (the limitation has the result that the 20% tax credit available in the United States today is really only a 13% credit).

**Action D-3: Provide Incentives for US-Based Innovation**

Many policies and programs affect innovation and the nation's ability to profit from it. It was not possible for the committee to conduct an exhaustive examination, but alternatives to current economic policies should be examined and, if deemed beneficial to the United States, pursued. These alternatives could include changes in overall corporate tax rates and special tax provisions, providing incentives for the purchase of high-technology research and manufacturing equipment, treatment of capital gains, and incentives for long-term investments in innovation. The Council of Economic Advisers and the Congressional Budget Office should conduct a comprehensive analysis to examine how the United States compares with other nations as a location for innovation and related activities with a view to ensuring that the United States is one of the most attractive places in the world for long-term innovation-related investment and for the jobs resulting from that investment. From a tax standpoint, that is not now the case.

Countries around the world are working to bolster innovation, often by improving the tax environment for high-technology business activities (see Box 8-5: Ireland, Box 8-6: Singapore, and Box 8-7: Canada). There are strengthening signs that changes in US tax policy are needed to encourage investment in America. The flexibility of US capital markets, particularly for financing small, high-technology enterprises through venture capital and public stock offerings, had been one of our major strengths, encouraging companies to focus their innovation in the United States. The rapid rise of venture capital in the late 1990s, however, was followed by the precipitous collapse of the technology stock bubble in 2001. Venture-capital investments have been fairly flat since then, so the United States no longer has that advantage.[48] Perhaps equally important is the fact that investment capital tends to be highly mobile and to follow opportunity irrespective of national borders.

The committee believes that the United States can and should do more, particularly in tax policy, to encourage long-term investments in innovation, but it was not able to examine all options and their implications within the schedule mandated for our study. Several creative new approaches to capital-gains taxation were discussed, including the option of reducing rates for very-long-term investments or offering more liberal allowances for loss writeoffs. The overall corporate tax rate, which some industry groups see as high by international standards (although there is controversy about this), is important for determining where companies invest in R&D and downstream activities. Finally, incentives for the purchase of high-tech manufacturing and research equipment—through tax credits and accelerated depreciation—were considered.

[48] See the National Venture Capital Association website at http://www.nvca.org.

Those new approaches would have widespread consequences for the economy as a whole and for our national fiscal position. It would be necessary to structure any new incentives as a comprehensive, integrated package. It would also be useful to compare the effects of various options, especially with reference to what other nations are doing. Any such analysis should examine US and foreign tax systems with a view to developing a package of incentives to ensure that the United States remains a highly attractive place for long-term innovation-related investments and for location of the followon jobs they produce.

**Action D–4: Ensure Ubiquitous Broadband Internet Access**

Several nations are well ahead of the United States in providing broadband access for home, school, and business. That capability can be expected to do as much to drive innovation, the economy, and job creation in the 21st century as did access to the telephone, interstate highways, and air travel in the 20th century. Congress and the administration should take prompt action—mainly in the regulatory arena and in spectrum management—to ensure widespread affordable broadband access in the near future.

The production of information technology equipment and the use of information technology have been important engines for US productivity growth in a range of industries and for the resulting low-inflation economic expansion (briefly, but significantly, interrupted in 2001) that the nation has experienced since the mid-1990s.[49] The OECD estimates that the percentage of total capital investment accounted for by spending on that equipment is significantly higher in the United States than it is in other OECD economies.[50] Industries as diverse as financial services, retail, entertainment, and logistics and transportation are being transformed by information technology.

Although some believe that broadband access is not critical to US competitiveness, the committee disagrees. The information technology revolution will continue to fuel economic growth, the creation of high-paying jobs, and US leadership in science and engineering well into the future. Accelerating progress toward making broadband connectivity available and affordable for all US citizens and businesses is critical. Although penetration of broadband service in the United States is increasing rapidly, broadband leaders such as South Korea and Japan are still far ahead.[51]

President Bush has announced a national goal of ubiquitous broadband access in the United States.[52] The committee urges the Administration and Congress to take the necessary steps to meet that goal. Many of the barriers to more rapid broadband penetration lie in the area of telecommunications regulation and spectrum policy, where in some cases entrenched industry interests are clashing to preserve and extend the advantages offered under policies promulgated in the past.[53]

Telecommunication infrastructure will be crucial to the competitiveness of any country in the 21st century. It is the medium by which data are accessed, consultations take place, and

[49] R. J. Gordon Technology and Economic Performance in the American Economy. Working Paper 8771. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research, 2002.
[50] OECD. The Economic Impact of ICT. Paris: OEDC, 2004, p. 67.
[51] P. Gralla. U.S. lags in broadband adoption despite VoIP demand, says report. *EE Times Online*, Dec. 16, 2004. Available at: http://www.eet.com/showArticle.jhtml?articleID=55800449
[52] Bush pushes ubiquitous broadband by 2007. Reuters. March 26, 2004.
[53] R. Hundt. Why is government subsidizing the old networks when "Big Broadband" convergence is inevitable and optimal? *New America Foundation Issue Brief*. Dec. 2003.

decisions are transmitted. One has only to look at the vast amounts of information transmitted by the financial community, the use of information in the retail market (for example, WalMart, the largest retailer in the world, owes much of its competitiveness to its information-technology infrastructure for tracking sales, inventory, and consumer purchasing trends in real time), and the growth of on line sales in almost every business segment of the economy.

As the Internet becomes more dominant in communication, information access, commerce, education, and entertainment, the key infrastructural factor will be broadband access. The potential effects on society and individuals of distance learning, telemedicine, Internet entertainment, and delivery of government services demonstrates how great the impact of broadband on the competitiveness of any country could be. The United States was an early leader in Internet broadband penetration but recently has fallen out of the top 10 countries in per capita broadband access. In fact, vast rural regions of the United States are devoid of affordable bidirectional broadband capability. Just as the United States was a leader in providing ubiquitous telecommunication capability to its citizens in the 20th century and reaped the benefits of voice-connectivity technology, it should be a leader in facilitating broadband Internet connectivity to its citizens in the 21st century. That infrastructure not only will support existing commerce but will facilitate the growth of new industries.

Broadband access clearly is not a "big-company issue"; large companies can generally afford the technology, and many have already put it in place in order to compete. Broadband is an important issue for ordinary citizens (providing, for example, the ability to telecommute on a national and international scale) as well as small and medium businesses. As many of us have found when calling a company to help fix our computer, making an airline reservation, or getting guidance on how to help a sick child in the middle of the night, the person we call may be virtually anywhere, whether rural or urban, at home or in a call center, in the United States or overseas. If we expect all of our citizens and companies to be competitive, universal availability of affordable broadband should be a matter of national policy.

Some of the programs and policies already being pursued in the United States, such as federal R&D funding and accelerated tax depreciation on equipment purchases, do cost the federal government money in terms of outlays and forgone direct revenue. However, the committee believes that the most important needed changes are in the regulatory and spectrum management areas. Policy changes in both of these areas have a broad impact on the incentives of private companies to invest in infrastructure and to develop competitive services. Recent examples of regulatory changes include Federal Communications Commission decisions to free newly deployed broadband infrastructure from legacy regulation and to develop a framework for deployment of Broadband over Power Lines (BPL). These sorts of regulatory changes do not entail financial investments by the federal government. The future of spectrum management is another particularly critical area.[54] And, as is the case with regulatory policy, changes in spectrum policy would not necessarily entail costs to the federal government and might even result in additional revenue.

[54] See U.S. Department of Commerce. *Spectrum Policy for the 21st Century: The President's Spectrum Policy Initiative*. Report 1. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Commerce, June 2004. Available at http://www.ntia.doc.gov/reports/specpolini/presspecpolini_report1_06242004.htm.

## CONCLUSION

The United States, if it is to ensure the continued high standard of living and security of its citizens, must maintain its position as the world's premier place for innovation, for investment in downstream activities such as manufacturing and marketing, and for creation of high-paying jobs. We can do this if, while implementing the other recommendations made herein, we modernize the patent system, realign tax policies to encourage innovation, and ensure the nation meets the goal of affordable broadband Internet access for all. The committee could not examine every possibility, but appropriate policy changes should be pursued in each of these areas. A comprehensive comparative analysis of tax rules, conducted by the Council of Economic Advisers and the Congressional Budget Office, could elucidate how we stack up against other nations as a location for innovation and related followon activities. The object of that examination and the adoption of the recommendations in this chapter would be to ensure that the United States provides the innovation-friendly environment needed to remain a highly attractive place to invest in the future.

**Box 8-3: Finland**

The rapid growth of Finland's high-technology economy is often seen as testament to long-term strategic planning, systematic investment, and the ability to adopt innovative policies more quickly than other nations. In the 1970s, Finland's political leaders, research community, and labor unions engaged in planning to focus R&D funding in electronics, biotechnology, and materials technology. Sustained government support paid off, as electronics-based exports grew from 4% of Finland's economy in 1980 to 33% of all exports in 2003.[b] Today, Finland's private and public sectors invest 3.5% of GDP into R&D programs (ranked second in the world), and the proportion of its population working as research scientists is the highest in the world.[c]

[b] OECD. Innovation Policy and Performance: A Cross-Country Comparison. Paris: OECD, 2005.
[c] OECD. Main Science & Technology Indicators. Paris: OECD, 2005.

**Box 8-4: South Korea**

South Korea recently established an agency to coordinate innovation policies and R&D strategies within the Ministry of Science and Technology. Almost 40% of all postsecondary degrees awarded there are in science and engineering, compared with 15% in the United States.[d] The government is seeking to double its expenditures on R&D between 2002 and 2007.

[d] OECD. Education Database. Paris: OECD, 2005.

**Box 8-5: Ireland**

The success of the "Celtic Tiger" in the 1990s was remarkable, especially in comparison with other member nations of the European Union. In 1987, Irish GDP per capita was 69% of the European Union average, but by 2003 it had reached 136%.[e] Ireland's unemployment fell from 17% to 4% over the same period. How did Ireland go from being one of Europe's poorest nations to one of the richest? First, Ireland aggressively courted multinational corporations and maintained a business-friendly 12.5% corporate tax rate.[f] Most of the world's top pharmaceutical, medical device, and software concerns now have operations in Ireland.[g] Second, the government placed a strong emphasis on secondary and higher education, and tuition has been free since 1996. Participation in Irish higher education surpasses the OECD average. Today, Ireland is focused on increasing its public R&D spending and production of scientists and engineers to complement strong growth in R&D performance by foreign multinational corporations. The goal is to increase total R&D intensity in the economy from 1.4% of GDP in 2002 to 2.5% by 2010.[h]

[e] Tiger, tiger, burning bright. *The Economist* Vol. 373, No. 8397(October 14, 2004):4-6
[f] Heritage Foundation. Ireland. 2005 Index of Economic Freedom, 2005. Available at www.heritage.org.
[g] T. Friedman. The end of the rainbow. *New York Times*, June 29, 2005, p. A-23.
[h] OECD. OECD Science, Technology, and Industry Outlook. Paris: OECD, 2005, p. 56.

**Box 8-6: Singapore**

Singapore is continuing its long history of active government involvement to promote innovation. This includes a major investment in Biopolis, opened in October 2002, which Singapore intends to be a world-class biomedical sciences R&D hub for Asia.[h] It is backed with a portfolio of scholarships, fellowships, and grants to attract students and researchers from around the world. Another initiative is the Standards, Productivity, and Innovation Board,[i] which combines incentives and other help to increase the number of Singapore's small and medium-size high-technology and e-commerce businesses, improve national productivity and entrepreneurship, and expand the nation's position in retail markets.

[h] http://www.one-north.com/pages/lifeXchange/index.asp. Accessed September 15, 2005.
[i] http://www.spring.gov.sg/portal/main.html. Accessed September 15, 2005.

**Box 8-7: Canada**

Canada's two-part innovation strategy covers almost every aspect of that nation's economic and educational systems. The first part, called Achieving Excellence: Investing in People, Knowledge, and Opportunity, is a plan to expand the Canadian economy.[j] The second part is Knowledge Matters: Skills and Learning for Canadians, which outlines plans to improve Canadian education.[k] The overall goal of the programs is to strengthen Canada's economy by improving quality in, and access to, elementary, secondary, and higher education; by promoting R&D in the sciences and engineering; and by extending the new programs and reforms from the federal government to the smallest township.

[j] Government of Canada. Achieving Excellence: Investing in People, Knowledge and Opportunity. Executive Summary. Ottawa, ON: Government of Canada, 2002. Available at http://www.innovationstrategy.gc.ca/gol/innovation/site.nsf/en/in02425.html.
[k] Government of Canada. Knowledge Matters: Skills and Learning for Canadians. Executive Summary. Ottawa, ON: Government of Canada, 2002. Available at http://www11.sdc.gc.ca/sl-ca/doc/summary.shtml.

9

## WHAT MIGHT LIFE IN THE UNITED STATES BE LIKE IF IT IS NOT COMPETITIVE IN SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY?

Since World War II, the United States has led the world in science and technology, and our significant investment in research and education has translated into benefits from security to health care and from economic competitiveness to the creation of jobs. As we enter the 21st century, however, our leadership is being challenged. Several nations have faster growing economies, and they are investing an increasing percentage of their resources in science and technology. As they make innovation-based development a central economic strategy, we will face profoundly more formidable competitors as well as more opportunities for collaboration. Our nation's lead will continue to narrow, and in some areas other nations might overtake us. How we respond to the challenges will affect our prosperity and security in the coming decades.

To illustrate the stakes of this new game, it is useful to examine the changing nature of global competition and to sketch three scenarios for US competitiveness—a baseline scenario, a pessimistic case, and an optimistic case. The scenarios demonstrate the importance of maintaining the nation's lead in science and technology.

### "THE AMERICAN CENTURY"

In the second half of the 20th century, the United States led the world in many areas. It was the world's superpower, it had the highest per capita income of any major economy, it was first among developed countries in economic growth, and it generated the largest share of world exports—with less than 5% of the world's population, it consumes 24% of what the world produces.[1] US-based multinational corporations dominated most industrial sectors. In the 1990s, the United States experienced the longest economic boom in its history, driven in large part by investments in information technology and by accelerating productivity.

Central to prosperity over the last 50 years has been our massive investment in science and technology. Government spending on research and development (R&D) soared after World War II, and government spending on R&D as a percentage of the gross domestic product (GDP) reached a peak of 1.9% in 1964 (it has since fallen to 0.8%[2]). By 1970, the United States enrolled 30% of all postsecondary students in the world, and more than half the world's science and engineering doctorates were awarded here.[3]

---

[1] Center for Sustainable Energy Systems, University of Michigan, "US Energy System Factsheet," August 2005. css.snre.umich.edu/css_doc/CSS05-11.pdf

[2] AAAS. "U.S. R&D as Percent of Gross Domestic Product, 1953-2003." May 2004. Available at: www.aaas.org/spp/rd/. Based on National Science Foundation data in National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. Figure 4-5.

[3] R. B. Freeman. Does Globalization of the Scientific/ Engineering Workforce Threaten US Economic Leadership? Working Paper 11457. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research, Jun. 2005, p. 3.

Today, with just 5% of the world's population, the United States employs nearly one-third of the world's scientific and engineering researchers, accounts for 40% of all R&D spending, publishes 35% of science and engineering articles, and obtains 44% of science and engineering citations.[4] The United States comes out at or near the top of global rankings for competitiveness. The International Institute for Management Development ranks the United States first in global competitiveness; the World Economic Forum puts us second (after Finland) in overall competitiveness and first in technology and innovation.[5]

Leadership in science and technology has translated into rising standards of living. Technology improvements have accounted for up to one-half of GDP growth and at least two-thirds of productivity growth since 1946.[6] *Business Week* chief economist Michael Mandel argues that, without innovation, the long-term growth rate of the US economy would have been closer to 2.5% annually rather than the 3.6% that has been the average since the end of World War II. If our economy had grown at that lower rate over the last 50 years, he says, it would be 40% smaller today, with corresponding implications for jobs, wages, and the standard of living.[7]

## NEW GLOBAL INNOVATION ECONOMY

The dominant position of the United States depended substantially on our own strong commitment to science and technology and on the comparative weakness of much of the rest of the world. But the age of relatively unchallenged US leadership is ending. The importance of sustaining our investments is underscored by the challenges of the 21st century: the rise of emerging markets, innovation-based economic development, the global innovation enterprise, the new global labor market, and an aging population with expanding entitlements.

### Emerging Markets

Over the last 2 decades, the global economy has been transformed. With the fall of the Berlin Wall in 1989, the collapse of the Soviet Union in 1991, China's entry into the World Trade Organization in 2001, and India's recent engagement with international markets, almost 3 billion people have joined the global trading system in little more than a decade.

In the coming years, developing markets will drive most economic growth. Goldman Sachs projects that within 40 years the economies of Brazil, Russia, India, and China (the so-called BRICs) together could be larger than those of the G6 nations together—the United States, Japan, the United Kingdom, Germany, France, and Italy (Figure 9-1). The BRICs currently are less than 15% the size of the G6.[8] But India's economy could be larger than Japan's by 2032, and

---

[4] Ibid., p. 1.
[5] IMD. *World Competitiveness Yearbook* (2005); World Economic Forum. *The Global Competitiveness Report, 2004-2005* New York: Oxford University Press. 2004.
[6] G. Tassey. R&D Trends in the US Economy: Strategies and Policy Implications. NIST Planning Report 99-2, Gaithersburg, MD: National Institutes of Standards and Technology. April, 1999.
[7] M. J. Mandel. *Rational Exuberance: Silencing the Enemies of Growth and Why the Future Is Better Than You Think.* New York: Harper Business, 2004, p. 27.
[7] Goldman Sachs. *Dreaming with the BRICs: The Path to 2050*. Global Economics Paper No: 99.New York, NY: Goldman Sachs, Oct. 2003.

China could surpass every nation other than the United States by 2016 and reach parity with the United States by 2041.

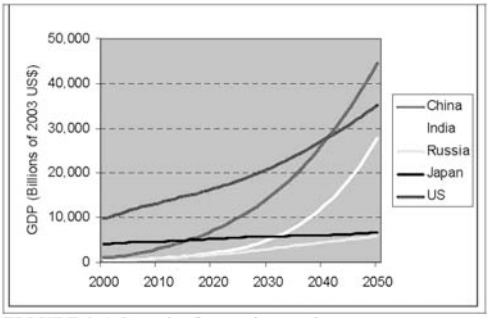



**FIGURE 9-1** Growth of emerging markets.
SOURCE: Goldman Sachs. *Dreaming with the BRICs: The Path to 2050. Global Economics.* Paper 99. New York, NY: Goldman Sachs, Oct. 2003.

The enormous populations of the BRICs (China's population is now 4.4 times and India's is 3.6 times the size of the US population[9]) mean that even though per capita income in those nations will remain well below that in the developed world, the BRICs will have a growing middle class of consumers. Within a decade, nearly 80% of the world's middle-income consumers could live in nations outside the currently industrialized world. China alone could have 595 million middle-income consumers and 82 million upper-middle-income consumers[10], a combined number that is double the total projected population of the United States in that period. China's domestic market is already the largest in the world for more than 100 products. With 300 million subscribers and rising, China already is by far the biggest mobile-telephone market in the world. Only a small fraction of its population has Internet access, but China still has 100 million computer users, second only to the United States. China has become the second largest market for personal computers, and it will soon pass the United States.[11] Many US companies—including Google, Yahoo, eBay, and Cisco—expect China to be their largest market in the next 20 years.[12]

For decades, the United States has been the world's largest and most sophisticated market for an enormous range of goods and services. US consumers have stimulated productivity around the world with our apparently insatiable demand. Foreign multinational companies have invested in the United States to gain access to our markets, giving this nation the largest stock of foreign

[9] US Census Bureau Data Base. Total Mid-Year Population, 2004-2050. Available at: http://www.census.gov/ipc/www/idbsprd.html
[10] P. A. Laudicina. *World Out of Balance: Navigating Global Risks to Seize Competitive Advantage.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2005, p. 76.
[11] C. Prestowitz. *Three Billion New Capitalists: The Great Shift of Wealth and Power to the East.* New York: Basic Books, 2005, p. 74.
[12] Dan Gillmor. *Now Is Time to Face Facts, Make Needed Investment.* San Jose Mercury News. March 14, 2004.

direct investment in the world and employing 5.4 million Americans.[13] New products and services are designed, marketed, and launched here. Technical standards are set here. But as other markets overtake us, we could lose these advantages.

**Innovation-Based Development**

Driving the rapid growth in developed economies and in emerging markets is a new emphasis on science and technology. A report of the President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology (PCAST) notes, "other countries are striving to replicate the US innovation ecosystem model to compete directly against our own."[14] Through investments in R&D, infrastructure, and education and aided by foreign direct investment, many nations are rapidly retooling their economies to compete in technologically advanced products and services.

One sign of this new priority is increased R&D spending by many governments. The European Union (EU) has stated its desire to increase total R&D spending (government and industry) from less than 2% of GDP to 3% (the United States currently spends about 2.7%).[15] From 1992 to 2002, China more than doubled its R&D intensity (the ratio of total R&D spending to GDP), although the United States still spends significantly more than China does both in gross terms and as a percentage of GDP. Other nations also have increased their numbers of students, particularly in science and engineering. India and China are large enough that even if only relatively small portions of their populations become scientists and engineers, the size of their science and engineering workforce could still significantly exceed that of the United States. India already has nearly as many young professional engineers (university graduates with up to 7 years of experience) as the United States does, and China has more than twice as many.[16]

Multinational corporations are central to innovation-based development strategies, and nations around the world have introduced tax benefits, subsidies, science-based industrial parks, and worker-training programs to lure the owners of high-technology manufacturing and R&D facilities. China uses those tools and its enormous potential market to encourage technology transfer to Chinese partner companies.[17] Most of the world's leading computer and telecommunications companies have R&D investments in China, and they are competing with local high-technology enterprises for market share. High-tech goods went from about 5% of China's exports in 1990 to 20% in 2000. Foreign enterprises accounted for 80% of China's exports in capital- and technology-intensive sectors in 1995, but they were only responsible for 50% by 2000. The United States now has a $30 billion advanced-technology trade deficit with China.

There was once a belief that developing nations would specialize in low-cost commodity products and developed economies would focus on high technology, allowing the latter to

---

[13] Organization for International Investment. *The Facts About Insourcing.* Available at: http://www.ofii.org/insourcing/

[14] PCAST. *Sustaining the Nation's Innovation Ecosystems, Information Technology Manufacturing and Competitiveness,* Washington, DC: White House Office of Science and Technology Policy, Dec. 2004, p. 15.

[15] OECD. *Science, Technology and Industry Outlook* December *2004.* Paris, France: OECD Publications, 2004, p. 25. Available at: http://www.oecd.org/document/63/0,2340,en_2649_33703_33995839_1_1_1_1,00.html

[16] McKinsey and Company. The Emerging Global Labor Market: Part II—The Supply of Offshore Talent in Services. New York, NY: McKinsey and Company, Jun. 2005.

[17] E. H. Preeg. *The Emerging Chinese Advanced Technology Superstate.* Arlington, VA: Manufacturers Alliance/ MAPI and Hudson Institute, 2005; K. Walsh. *Foreign High-Tech R&D in China: Risks, Rewards, and Implications for US-China Relations.* Washington, DC: Henry L. Stimson Center, 2003.

maintain a higher standard of living. Developing nations—South Korea, Taiwan, India, and China—have advanced so quickly that they can now produce many of the most advanced technologies at costs much lower than in wealthier nations. Most analysts believe that the United States, Europe, and Japan still maintain a lead in innovation—developing the new products and services that will appeal to consumers. But even here the lead is narrowing and temporary. And while the United States does currently maintain an advantage in terms of the availability of venture capital to underwrite innovation, venture capitalists are increasingly pursuing what may appear to be more promising opportunities around the world.

**The Global Innovation Enterprise**

Among the most powerful drivers of globalization has been the spread of multinational corporations. By the end of the 20th century, nearly 63,000 multinationals were operating worldwide.[18] Over the last few decades, corporations have used new information technologies and management practices to outsource production and business processes. Shifting from a vertically integrated structure to a network of partners allows companies to locate business activities in the most cost-efficient manner. The simultaneous opening of emerging markets and the rapid increase in workforce skill levels in those nations helped stimulate the offshore placement of key functions. First in manufacturing, then in technical support and back-office operations, next in software design, increasingly sophisticated work is being performed in developing economies. Innovation itself is being both outsourced and sent offshore.[19] This is all part of the process that Thomas Friedman calls "the flattening of the world".[20]

Locations that combine strong R&D centers with manufacturing capabilities have a clear competitive advantage. Hence, in addition to the availability of scientists and engineers whose salaries are a fraction of the salaries of their US counterparts, India and China offer synergies between manufacturing and R&D. Top-level R&D and design are still conducted mostly in the United States, but global companies are becoming increasingly comfortable with offshore R&D, and other nations are rapidly increasing their capabilities.[21]

In 1997, China had fewer than 50 research centers that were managed by multinational corporations; by mid-2004, there were more than 600.[22] Much of the R&D currently performed in developing markets is designed to tailor products to local needs, but as local markets grow, the most advanced R&D could begin to migrate there. That said, it should be noted that the United States also benefits from offshore R&D—the amount of foreign-funded R&D conducted here has quadrupled since the mid-1980s. In fact, more corporate R&D investment now comes into the United States than is sent out of the country.[23]

---

[18] UNCTAD. *World Investment* Report 2004: The Shift Towards Services. New York and Geneva: United Nations, 2004.
[19] Council on Competitiveness. *Going Global: The New Shape of American Innovation.* Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 1998.
[20] T. L. Friedman. *The World Is Flat: A Brief History of the 21st Century.* New York: Farrar, Straus, Giroux, 2005.
[21] PCAST. *Sustaining the Nation's Innovation Ecosystems, Information Technology Manufacturing and Competitiveness.* Washington, DC: White House Office of Science and Technology Policy, Dec. 2004, p. 11.
[22] R. B. Freeman. Does Globalization of the Scientific/ Engineering Workforce Threaten US Economic Leadership? Working Paper 11457. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research, Jun. 2005, p. 9.
[23] K. Walsh. *Foreign High-Tech R&D in China: Risks, Rewards, and Implications for US-China Relations.* Washington, DC: Henry L. Stimson Center, 2003.

**The Emerging Global Labor Market**

The three trends discussed already—the opening of emerging markets, innovation-based development, and the global innovation enterprise—have created a new global labor market, with far-reaching implications.

In the last few years, the phenomenon of sending service work overseas has garnered a great deal of attention in developed nations. The movement of US manufacturing jobs offshore through the 1980s and 1990s had major consequences for domestic employment in those sectors, although many argue that productivity increases were responsible for most of the reported job losses.[24] Until recently, it seemed that jobs in the service sector were safe because most services are delivered face-to-face and only a small fraction is traded globally. But new technologies and business processes are opening an increasing number of services to global competition, from technical support to the reading of x-ray to stock research to the preparation of income taxes and even to the ordering of hamburgers at drive-through windows. There is a US company that uses a receptionist in Pakistan to welcome visitors to its office in Washington via flat-screen television.[25] The transformation of collaboration brought about by information and communications technologies means that the global workforce is now more easily tapped by global businesses. It is important to note, however, that a recent McKinsey Company report estimates that only 13% of the potential talent supply in low-wage nations is suited for work in multinational companies because the workers lack the necessary education or language skills.[26] But that is 13% of a very large number.

Forrester Research estimates that 3.4 million US jobs could be lost to offshoring by 2015.[27] Ashok Bardhan and Cynthia Kroll calculate that more than 14 million US jobs are at risk of being sent offshore.[28] The Information Technology Association of America (ITAA), Global Insight,[29] and McKinsey & Company[30] all argue that those losses will be offset by net gains in US employment—presuming that the United States takes the steps needed to maintain a vibrant economy. Many experts point out that the number of jobs lost to offshoring is small compared with the regular monthly churning of jobs in the US economy. McKinsey, for example, estimates that about 225,000 jobs are likely to be sent overseas each year, a small fraction of the total annual job churn. In 2004, the private sector created more than 30 million jobs and lost about 29

---

[24] American Electronics Association. *Offshore Outsourcing in an Increasingly Competitive and Rapidly Changing World: A High-Tech Perspective.* Washington, DC.: March 2004.

[25] S. Mitra Kalita. *Virtual secretary puts new face on Pakistan.* Washington Post, May 10, 2005, p. A01.

[26] McKinsey and Company. *The Emerging Global Labor Market: Part II-The Supply of Offshore Talent in Services.* New York, NY: McKinsey and Company, Jun. 2005, p. 23.

[27] Forrester Research. Near-Term Growth of Offshoring Accelerating. Cambridge, MA: Froster Research, May 14, 2004.

[28] A. Bardhan and C. Kroll. *The New Wave of Outsourcing*. Fisher Center Research Reports #1103. Berkeley, Calif.: University of California, Berkeley, Fisher Center for Real Estate and Urban Economics, Nov. 2, 2003.

[29] ITAA. The Impact of Offshore IT Software and Services Outsourcing on the US Economy and the IT Industry. Lexington, Mass.: March 2004.

[30] McKinsey and Company. *Offshoring: Is It a Win-Win Game*? New York, NY: McKinsey and Company, Aug. 2003.

million; the net gain was 1.4 million jobs.[31] Once again, this suggests that the US economy will continue to create new jobs at a constant rate, an assumption that in turn depends on our continued development of new technologies and training of workers for the jobs of the 21st century. Economists and others actively debate whether outsourcing or more generally, free trade with low-wage countries with rapidly improving innovation capacities will help or hurt the US economy in the long term.[32] The optimists and the pessimists, however, agree on two fundamental points: in the short term, some US workers will lose their jobs and face difficult transitions to new, higher skilled careers; and in the long term, America's only hope for continuing to create new high-wage jobs is to maintain our lead in innovation.

**Aging and Entitlements**

The enormous and growing supply of labor in the developing world is but one side of a global demographic transformation. The other side is the aging populations of developed nations. The working-age population is already shrinking in Italy and Japan, and it will begin to decline in the United States, the United Kingdom, and Canada by the 2020s. More than 70 million US baby boomers will retire by 2020, but only 40 million new workers will enter the workforce.[33] Europe is expected to face the greatest period of depopulation since the Black Death, shrinking to 7% of world population by 2050 (from nearly 25% just after World War II).[34] East Asia (including China) is experiencing the most rapid aging in the world. At the same time, India's working-age population is projected to grow by 335 million people by 2030—almost equivalent to the entire workforce of Europe and the United States today.[35] Those extreme global imbalances suggest that immigration will continue to increase.

Population dynamics have major economic implications. The Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) projects that the scarcity of working-age citizens will hamper economic growth rates between 2025 and 2050 for Europe, Japan, and the United States.[36] The Center for Strategic and International Studies (CSIS) estimates that the average cost of public pensions in the developed world will grow by 7% of GDP between now and the middle of the century; public health spending on the elderly will grow by about 6% of GDP.[37] There are

---

[31] US Bureau of Labor Statistics. *NEWS: Business Employment Dynamics: First Quarter 2005."* November 18 2005. Available at: http://www.bls.gov/rofod/3640.pdf.

[32] While C. Mann.. *Globalization of IT Services and White Collar Jobs.* Washington, DC: Institute for International Economics. 2003 and J. Bhagwati, A. Panagariya, and T. N. Srinivasan. The muddles over outsourcing. *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 18(summer 2004): 93-114 offer examples of the optimist view. R. Gomory and W. Baumol. *Global Trade and Conflicting National Interests.* Cambridge, MA: MIT Press. 2001. and P. A. Samuelson. Where Ricardo and Mill rebut and confirm arguments of mainstream economists supporting globalization. *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 18(summer 2004):135-146 offer a more pessimistic perspective.

[33] P. A. Laudicina. *World Out of Balance: Navigating Global Risks to Seize Competitive Advantage.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2005, p. 49.

[34] United Nations, Department of Economic and Social Affairs, Population Division. The World at Six Billion. October 12, 1999. Available at: http://www.un.org/esa/population/publications/sixbillion/sixbillion.htm

[35] P. A. Laudicina. *World Out of Balance: Navigating Global Risks to Seize Competitive Advantage.* New York: McGraw Hill, 2005, p. 62.

[36] Central Intelligence Agency. *Long-Term Global Demographic Trends: Reshaping the Geopolitical Landscape.* Lansing, VA: CIA, Jul. 2001, p. 25.

[37] P. G. Peterson. The shape of things to come: Global aging in the 21st century. *Journal of International Affairs* 56(1)(Fall 2002). New York, NY: Columbia University Press

now 3 pension-eligible elders in the developed world for every 10 working-age adults. Thirty-five years from now, the ratio will be 7 to 10. Here in the United States, the ratio of adults aged 60 and over to working-age adults aged 15-59 is expected to increase from .26 to .47 over the same period.[38]

Those trends have profound implications for US leadership in science and technology:

- The US science and engineering workforce is aging while the supply of new scientists and engineers who are US citizens is decreasing. Immigration will continue to be critical to filling our science and engineering needs.
- The rapidly increasing costs of caring for the aging population will further strain federal and state budgets and add to the expense columns of industries with large pension and health care obligations. It will thus become more difficult to allocate resources to R&D or education.
- Aging populations and rising health care costs will drive demand for innovative and cost-effective medical treatments.

Taken together, those trends indicate a significant shift in the global competitive environment. The importance of leadership in science and technology will intensify. As companies come to see innovation as the key to revenue growth and profitability, as nations come to see innovation as the key to economic growth and a rising standard of living, and as the planet faces new challenges that can be solved only through science and technology, the ability to innovate will be perhaps the most important factor in the success or failure of any organization or nation.

A recent report from the Council on Competitiveness argues that "innovation will be the single most important factor in determining America's success through the 21st century."[39] The United States cannot control such global forces as demographics, the strategies of multinational corporations, and the policies of other nations, but we can determine how we want to engage with this new world, with all of its challenges and opportunities.

[38] Richard Jackson and Neil Howe, *The 2003 Aging Vulnerability Index.* Washington, DC.: CSIS and Watson Wyatt Worldwide, 2003, p. 43

[39] Council on Competitiveness. *Innovate America: Thriving in a World of Challenge and Change.* Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness December. 2004.

**SCENARIOS FOR AMERICA'S FUTURE IN SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY**

To highlight the choices we face, and their implications, it is useful to examine three scenarios that address the changing status of America's leadership in science and engineering.

**Scenario 1: Baseline**
**America's Narrowing Lead**

What is likely to happen if we do not change our current approach to science and technology? The US lead is so large that it is unlikely that any other nation would broadly overtake us in the next decade or so. The National Intelligence Council argues that the United States will remain the world's most powerful actor—economically, technologically, and militarily—at least through 2020.[40] But that does not mean the United States will not be challenged. Center for Strategic and International Studies concludes, "although US economic and technology leadership is reasonably assured out to 2020, disturbing trends now evident threaten the foundation of US technological strength."[41]

Over the last year or so, a virtual flood of books and articles has appeared expressing concern about the future of US competitiveness.[42] They identify trends and provide data to show that the relative position of the United States is declining in science and technology, in education, and in high-technology industry.[43] All of this leads to a few simple extrapolations for our global role over the next 30 years, assuming that we change nothing in our approach to science and education.

**The US share of global R&D spending will continue to decline.**

- US R&D spending will continue to lead the world in gross terms, but R&D intensity (spending as a percentage of GDP) will continue to fall behind that of other nations.
- US R&D will rely increasingly on corporate R&D spending.
  - Industry spending now accounts for two-thirds of all US R&D.
  - Total government spending on all physical science research is less than the $5 billion that a single company—IBM—spends annually on R&D, although an increasing amount of IBM's research, like that of most large corporations, is now performed abroad.
  - Most corporate R&D is focused on short-term product development rather than on long-term fundamental research.
- US multinational corporations will conduct an increasing amount of their R&D overseas, potentially reducing their R&D spending in the United States, because other nations offer

[40] National Intelligence Council. Mapping the Global Future: Report of the National Intelligence Council's 2020 Project. Pittsburgh: Government Printing Office, Dec. 2004.
[41] Center for Strategic and International Studies. *Technology Futures and Global Power, Wealth and Conflict.*: Washington, DC: Center for Strategic and International Studies, May 2005, p. viii.
[42] Some of the most prominent publications include A. Segal. Is America losing its edge? Innovation in a globalized world. *Foreign Affairs* (Nov./Dec. 2004):2-8; Geoffrey Colvin. America isn't ready. *Fortune.* July 25, 2005; K. H. Hughes. *Building the Next US Century: The Past and Future of US Economic Competitiveness.* Washington, DC: Woodrow Wilson Center Press, 2005; R. D. Atkinson. *The Past and Future of America's Economy: Long Waves of Innovation That Power Cycles of Growth.* Northampton, MA: E. Elgar, 2004; and R. Florida. *The Flight of the Creative Class: The New Global Competition for Talent.* New York: Harper Business, 2005.
[43] The Task Force on the Future of US Innovation. *The Knowledge Economy: Is the United States Losing Its Competitive Edge, Benchmarks for Our Innovation Future.* Washington, DC: The Task Force on the Future of US Innovation. February. 2005.

lower costs, more government incentives, less bureaucracy, high-quality educational systems, and in some cases superior infrastructure.

**The US share of world scientific output will continue to decline.**

- The share of US patents granted to US inventors is already declining, although the absolute number of patents to US inventors continues to increase.
- US researchers' scientific publishing will decline as authors from other nations increase their output.
  - The number of scientific papers published by US researchers reached a plateau in 1992.[44]
  - Europe surpassed the United States in the mid-1990s as the world's largest producer of scientific literature.
  - If current trends continue, publications from the Asia Pacific region could outstrip those from the United States within the next 6 or 7 years.[45]

**The US share of scientists and engineers will continue to decline.**

- Other nations will have larger numbers of students receiving undergraduate degrees in science and engineering. In 2000, more than 25 countries had a higher percentage of 24-year-olds with degrees in science and engineering than did the United States.[46]
- The number of graduate degrees awarded in science and engineering will decline.
  - The number of new doctorates in science and engineering peaked in the United States in 1998.
  - By 2010, China will produce more science and engineering doctorates than the United States does.[47]
  - The US share of world science and engineering doctorates granted will fall to about 15% by 2010, down from more than 50% in 1970[48] (Figure 9-2).
- International students and workers will make up an increasing share of those holding US science and engineering degrees and will fill more of our workforce.
  - In 2003, foreign students earned 38% of all US doctorates in science and engineering, and they earned 59% of US engineering doctorates.[49]
  - In 2000, foreign-born workers occupied 38% of all US doctoral-level science and engineering jobs, up from 24% just 10 years earlier.[50]

---

[44] National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. Table 5-30.
[45] A. von Bubnoff. Asia squeezes Europe's lead in science. *Nature* 436(7049)(Jul. 21, 2005):314-314.
[46] National Science Foundation. Science and Engineering Indicators 2004. NSB 04-1.Arlington, VA: NSF, 2004, Appendix Table 2-33.
[47] R. B. Freeman. Does Globalization of the Scientific/ Engineering Workforce Threaten US Economic Leadership? Working Paper 11457. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research, Jun. 2005, p.4
[48] Ibid., p. 5.
[49] National Science Foundation, Survey of Earned Doctorates, 2003. Arlington, VA: NSF, 2005.
[50] R. B. Freeman. Does Globalization of the Scientific/ Engineering Workforce Threaten US Economic Leadership? Working Paper 11457.Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research, Jun. 2005, p. 36.

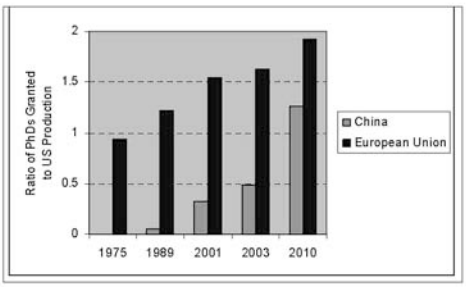



**FIGURE 9-2** International production of science and engineering doctorates compared with US production.

SOURCE: R. B. Freeman. Does Globalization of the Scientific/ Engineering Workforce Threaten US Economic Leadership? Working Paper 11457.Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research, Jun. 2005.

**Our ability to attract the best international researchers will continue to decline.**

- From 2002 to 2003, 1,300 international students enrolled in US science and engineering graduate programs. In each of the 3 years before that, the number had risen by more than 10,000.[51]
- After a decline of 6% from 2001 to 2002, first-time, full-time enrollment of students with temporary visas fell 8% in 2003.[52]
- Snapshot surveys indicate international graduate student enrollments decreased again in 2004 by 6%[53] but increased by 1% in 2005.
- In the early 1990s, there were more science and engineering students from China, South Korea, and Taiwan studying at US universities than there were graduates in those disciplines at home. By the mid-1990s, the number attending US universities began to decline and the number studying in Asia increased significantly.[54]

PCAST observes that, "while not in imminent jeopardy, a continuation of current trends could result in a breakdown in the web of 'innovation ecosystems' that drive the successful US innovation system."[55] Economist Richard Freeman says those trends foreshadow a US transition "from being a superpower in science and engineering to being one of many centers of

[51] National Science Foundation. Graduate Enrollment in Science and Engineering Programs Up in 2003, but Declines for First-Time Foreign Students. NSF-05-317. Arlington, VA: NSF, 2005.
[52] Ibid.
[53] H. Brown. Council of Graduate Schools Finds Declines in New International Graduate Student Enrollment for Third Consecutive Year. Washington, DC: Council of Graduate Schools, Nov. 4, 2004; Heath Brown. 2005. Findings from 2005 CGS International Graduate Admissions Survey III: Admissions and Enrollment. Washington DC: Council of Graduate Schools. Available at http://www.cgsnet.org/pdf/CGS2005IntlAdmitIII_Rep.pdf.
[54] The Task Force on the Future of US Innovation. The Knowledge Economy: Is the United States Losing Its Competitive Edge, Benchmarks for Our Innovation Future. Washington, DC: The Task Force on the Future of US Innovation, Feb, 2005.
[55] PCAST. *Sustaining the Nation's Innovation Ecosystems, Information Technology Manufacturing and Competitiveness,* Washington, DC: White House Office of Science and Technology Policy, Dec. 2004, p. 13.

excellence."[56] He adds that "the country faces a long transition to a less dominant position in science and engineering associated industries."[57]

The United States still leads the world in many areas of science and technology, and it continues to increase spending and output. But our share of world output is declining, largely because other nations are increasing production faster than we are, although they are starting from a much lower base. Moreover, the United States will continue to lead the world in other areas critical to innovation—capital markets, entrepreneurship, and workforce flexibility—although here as well our relative lead will shrink as other nations improve their own systems.

The biggest concern is that our competitive advantage, our success in global markets, our economic growth, and our standard of living all depend on maintaining a leading position in science, technology, and innovation. As that lead shrinks, we risk losing the advantages on which our economy depends. If these trends continue, there are several likely consequences:

- The United States will cease to be the largest market for many high-technology goods, and the US share of high-technology exports will continue to decline.
- Foreign direct investment will decrease.
- Multinational corporations (US-based and foreign) will increase their investment and hiring more rapidly overseas than they will here.
- The industries and jobs that depend on high-technology exports and foreign investment will suffer.
- The trade deficit will continue to increase, adding to the possibility of inflation and higher interest rates.
- Salaries for scientists, engineers, and technical workers will fall because of competition from lower-wage foreign workforces, and broader salary pressures could be exhibited across other occupations.
- Job creation will slow.
- GDP growth will slow.
- Growth in per capita income will slow despite our relatively high standard of living.
- Poverty rates and income inequality, already more pronounced here than in other industrialized nations, could increase.

Today's leadership position is built on decisions that led to investments made over the past 50 years. The slow erosion of those investments might not have immediate consequences for economic growth and job creation, but the long-term effect is predictable and would be severe. Once lost, the lead could take years to recover, if indeed it could be recovered. Like a supertanker, the US economy does not turn on a dime, and if it goes off course it could be very difficult to head back in the right direction.

Given that they already have a commanding lead in many key sectors, it is likely that US multinational corporations will continue to succeed in the global marketplace. To do so, they will shift jobs, R&D funds, and resources to other places. Increasingly, it is no longer true that what is good for GM (or GE or IBM or Microsoft) is good for the United States. What it means to be a US company is likely to change as all multinationals continue to globalize their operations and ownership. As China and other developing nations become larger markets for many products and

[56] R. B. Freeman. Does Globalization of the Scientific/ Engineering Workforce Threaten US Economic Leadership? Working Paper 11457. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research, Jun. 2005, p. 2.
[57] Ibid., p. 3.

services, and as they maintain their cost advantages, US companies will increasingly invest there, hire there, design there, and produce there.

This nation's science and technology policy must account for the new reality and embrace strategies for success in a world where talent and capital can easily choose to go elsewhere.

Scenario 1 is the most likely case if current trends in government policies continue both here and in other nations and if corporate strategies remain as they are today. Two other scenarios represent departures from recent history. As such, they are more speculative and less detailed.

**Scenario 2: Pessimistic Case**
**America Falls Decisively Behind**

In Scenario 1, the United States continues to invest enough to maintain current trends in science and technology education and performance, leading to a slow decline in competitiveness. Scenario 2 considers what might happen if the commitment to science and technology were to lessen. Although that would run counter to our national history, several factors might lead to such an outcome:

- Rising spending on social security, Medicare, and Medicaid (now 42% of federal outlays compared with 25% in 1975) limit federal and state resources available for science and technology.[58] In 2005, Social Security, Medicare, and Medicaid accounted for 8.4% of GDP. If growth continues at the current rate, the federal government's total spending for Medicare and Medicaid alone would reach 22% of GDP by 2050.
- The war on terrorism refocuses government resources on short-term survival rather than long-term R&D.
- Increasingly attractive opportunities overseas draw industrial R&D funding and talented US scientists and engineers away from the United States.
- Higher US effective corporate tax rates discourage companies from investing in new facilities and research in the United States.
- Excessive regulation of research institutions reduces the amount of money available for actual research.

Those possibilities would exacerbate and accelerate the trends noted in Scenario 1:

- The availability of scientists and engineers could drop precipitously if foreign students and workers stop coming in large numbers, either because immigration restrictions make it more difficult or because better opportunities elsewhere reduce the incentives to work in the United States.
- US venture capitalists begin to place their funds abroad, searching for higher returns.
- Short-term cuts in funding for specific fields could lead to a rapid decline in the number of students in those disciplines, which could take decades to reverse.

[58] W. B. Bonvillian. Meeting the new challenge to US economic competitiveness. *Issues in Science and Technology* 21(1)(Fall 2004): 75-82.

- If they were faced with a lack of qualified workers, multinational corporations might accelerate their overseas hiring, building the capabilities of other nations while the US innovation system atrophies.
- Multinationals from China, India, and other developing nations, building on success in their domestic markets and on supplies of talented, low-cost scientists and engineers, could begin to dominate global markets, while US-based multinationals that still have a large percentage of their employees in the United States begin to fail, affecting jobs and the broader economy.
- Financing the US trade deficit, now more than $600 billion or about 6% of GDP, requires more than $2 billion a day of foreign investment. Many economists argue that such an imbalance is unsustainable in the long term.[59] A loss of competitiveness in key export industries could lead to a loss of confidence in the US ability to cover the debt, bringing on a crisis.
- As innovation and investment move overseas, domestic job creation and wage growth could stall, lowering the overall standard of living in the United States.

The rapid pace of technological change and the increasing mobility of capital knowledge and talent mean that our current lead in science and technology could evaporate more quickly than is generally recognized if we fail to support it. The consequences would be enormous, and once lost, our lead would be difficult to regain.

**Scenario 3: Optimistic Case**
**America Leads in Key Areas**

The relative competitive lead enjoyed by the United States will almost certainly shrink as other nations rapidly improve their science and technology capacity. That means greater challenges for the United States, but it also presents an opportunity to raise living standards and improve quality of life around the world and to create a safer world. The United States might have a smaller share of the world's economy, but the economy itself will be larger. For that reason, the success of other nations need not imply the failure of the United States. But it does require that the United States maintain and extend its capacity to generate value as part of a global innovation system.

If we increase our commitment to leadership in science and technology, there are several likely results:

- Although the US share of total scientific output continues to decline, the United States maintains leadership across key areas.
- US researchers become leaders of global research networks.
- The US education system sets the standard for quality and innovation, giving graduates a competitive edge over the larger number of lower wage scientists and engineers trained in the developing world.
- Our universities and national laboratories act as centers for regional innovation, attracting and anchoring investment from around the world.

[59] C. Prestowitz. *Three Billion New Capitalists: The Great Shift of Wealth and Power to the East.* New York: Basic Books, 2005, p. xii.

- Our economy generates sufficient growth to reduce our trade imbalances, reduce the federal budget deficit, and support an aging population.
- Investors continue to find it attractive to place their funds in US firms seeking to innovate and generate jobs in America.
- US leadership in science and technology supports our military leadership and addresses the major challenges of homeland security.

The rapid worldwide development that has resulted from advances in science and technology has raised global standards of living, but it also spawned a range of challenges that, paradoxically, will have to be solved through appropriate investments in research:

- To maintain its current rate of growth, by 2020 China will need to boost energy consumption by 150%, and India will need to do so by 100%.[60] It will be essential to develop clean, affordable and reliable energy.
- The increased movement of people around the world will lead to more outbreaks of communicable diseases. Meanwhile, aging populations will require new treatments for chronic diseases.
- As the means to develop weapons of mass destruction become more widely available, security measures must advance.
- In an increasingly interconnected economy, even small disruptions to communications, trade, or financial flows can have major global consequences. Methods to manage complex systems and respond quickly to emergencies will be essential.

The strains of managing global growth will require global collaboration. Around the world, the growing scale and sophistication of science and technology mean that we are much more likely to be able to solve those and other problems that will confront us. Advances in information technology, biotechnology, and nanotechnology will improve life for billions of people. The leadership of the United States in science and technology will make a critical contribution to those efforts and will benefit the lives of Americans here at home. Each challenge offers an opportunity for the United States to position itself as the leader in the markets that will be created for solutions to global challenges in such fields as energy, health care, and security.

It is important to recognize that all nations in the global economy are now inextricably linked. Just as global health, environmental, and security issues affect everyone, so are we all dependent on the continued growth of other economies. It is clearly in America's interest for China, India, the EU, Japan, and other nations to succeed. Their failure would pose a far greater threat to US prosperity and security than would their success. In the global economy, no nation can prosper in isolation. However, it is the thesis of this report that it is important that such global prosperity be shared by the citizens of the United States.

[60] National Intelligence Council. Mapping the Global Future: Report of the National Intelligence Council's 2020 Project. Pittsburgh: Government Printing Office, Dec. 2004, p. 62.

## CONCLUSION

It is easy to be complacent about US competitiveness and pre-eminence in science and technology. We have led the world for decades, and we continue to do so in many fields. But the world is changing rapidly, and our advantages are no longer unique. Without a renewed effort to bolster the foundations of our competitiveness, it is possible that we could lose our privileged position over the coming decades. For the first time in generations, our children could face poorer prospects for jobs, health care, security, and overall standard of living than have their parents and grandparents. We owe our current prosperity, security, and good health to the investments of past generations. We are obliged to renew those commitments to ensure that the US people will continue to benefit from the remarkable opportunities being opened by the rapid development of the global economy.

# APPENDIXES

# Appendix A

## COMMITTEE AND PROFESSIONAL STAFF BIOGRAPHIC INFORMATION

**NORMAN AUGUSTINE** [NAE] (Chair) retired in 1997 as chair and chief executive officer of Lockheed Martin Corporation. Previously, he served as chair and chief executive officer of the Martin Marietta Corporation. On retiring, he joined the faculty of the Department of Mechanical and Aerospace Engineering at Princeton University. Earlier in his career, he had served as under secretary of the Army and as assistant director of defense research and engineering. Mr. Augustine has been chair of the National Academy of Engineering and served 9 years as chairman of the American Red Cross. He has also been president of the American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics and served as chairman of the Jackson Foundation for Military Medicine. He has been a trustee of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology and Princeton. He is a trustee emeritus of Johns Hopkins University and serves on the President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology and on the Department of Homeland Security's Advisory Council. He is a former chairman of the Defense Science Board. He is on the boards of Black and Decker, Lockheed Martin, Procter and Gamble, and Phillips Petroleum, and he has served as chairman of the Business Roundtable Taskforce on Education. He has received the National Medal of Technology and the Department of Defense's highest civilian award, the Distinguished Service Medal, five times. Mr. Augustine holds a BSE and an MSE in aeronautical engineering, both from Princeton University, and has received 19 honorary degrees. He is the author or coauthor of four books.

**CRAIG R. BARRETT** [NAE] is chief executive officer of Intel Corporation. He received a BSc in 1961, an MS in 1963, and a PhD in 1964, all in materials science from Stanford University. After graduation, he joined the faculty of Stanford University in the Department of Materials Science and Engineering and remained through 1974, rising to the rank of associate professor. Dr. Barrett was a Fulbright Fellow at Danish Technical University in Denmark in 1972 and a North Atlantic Trade Organization Postdoctoral Fellow at the National Physical Laboratory in England from 1964 to 1965. He was elected to the National Academy of Engineering in 1994 and became NAE chair in July 2004. Dr. Barrett joined Intel in 1974 as a technology-development manager. He was named a vice president in 1984, and was promoted to senior vice president in 1987 and executive vice president in 1990. Dr. Barrett was elected to Intel's Board of Directors in 1992 and was named the company's chief operating officer in 1993. He became Intel's fourth president in May 1997 and chief executive officer in 1998. Dr. Barrett is a member of the boards of directors of Qwest Communications International Inc., the National Forest Foundation, Achieve, Inc., the Silicon Valley Manufacturing Group, and the Semiconductor Industry Association. In addition to serving as cochairman of the National Alliance of Business Coalition for Excellence in Education, Dr. Barrett served on the National Commission on Mathematics and Science Teaching for the 21st Century

(also known as the Glenn Commission). Dr. Barrett is the author of over 40 technical papers dealing with the influence of microstructure on the properties of materials and of a textbook on materials science, *Principles of Engineering Materials*. He was the recipient of the American Institute Mining Metallurgical, and Petroleum Engineers Hardy Gold Medal in 1969.

**GAIL CASSELL** [IOM] is vice president of scientific affairs and Distinguished Lilly Research Scholar for Infectious Diseases of Eli Lilly and Company. She was previously the Charles H. McCauley Professor and chairman of the Department of Microbiology at the University of Alabama Schools of Medicine and Dentistry at Birmingham, a department that ranked first in research funding from the National Institutes of Health under her leadership. She is a current member of the Director's Advisory Committee of the National Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. She is a past president of the American Society for Microbiology (ASM), a former member of the National Institutes of Health (NIH) Director's Advisory Committee, and a former member of the Advisory Council of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases of NIH. Dr. Cassell served 8years on the Bacteriology-Mycology 2 Study Section and as chair for 3 years. She also was previously chair of the Board of Scientific Councilors of the Center for Infectious Diseases of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Dr. Cassell has been intimately involved in establishment of science policy and legislation related to biomedical research and public health. She is the chairman of the Public and Scientific Affairs Board of ASM, is a member of the Institute of Medicine, has served as an adviser on infectious diseases and indirect costs of research to the White House Office of Science and Technology Policy, and has been an invited participant in numerous congressional hearings and briefings related to infectious diseases, antimicrobial resistance, and biomedical research. She has served on several editorial boards of scientific journals and has written over 250 articles and book chapters. Dr. Cassell has received several national and international awards and an honorary degree for her research in infectious diseases.

**STEVEN CHU** [NAS] is the director of E.O. Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, and a professor of physics and cellular and molecular biology at the University of California, Berkeley. Previously, he held positions at Stanford University and AT&T Bell Laboratories. Dr. Chu's research in atomic physics, quantum electronics, polymer physics, and biophysics includes tests of fundamental theories in physics, the development of methods to laser-cool and trap atoms, atom interferometry, and the manipulation and study of polymers and biologic systems at the single-molecule level. While at Stanford, he helped to start Bio-X, a multidisciplinary initiative that brings together the physical and biologic sciences with engineering and medicine. Dr. Chu has received numerous awards and is a cowinner of the Nobel Prize in physics (1997). He is a member of the National Academy of Sciences, the American Philosophical Society, the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, and the Academica Sinica and is a foreign member of the Chinese Academy of Sciences and the Korean Academy of Science and Engineering. Dr. Chu also serves on the boards of the William and Flora Hewlett Foundation, the University of Rochester, NVIDIA, and the (planned) Okinawa Institute of Science and Technology. He has served on numerous advisory committees, including the Executive Committee of the National Academy of Sciences Board on Physics and

Astronomy, the National Institutes of Health Advisory Committee to the Director, and the National Nuclear Security Administration Advisory Committee to the Director. Dr. Chu received his AB and AB degrees in mathematics and physics from the University of Rochester, a PhD in physics from the University of California, Berkeley, and a number of honorary degrees.

**ROBERT M. GATES** has been the president of Texas A&M University, a land-grant, sea-grant, and space-grant university, since August 2002. Dr. Gates served as interim dean of the George Bush School of Government and Public Service at Texas A&M from 1999 to 2001. He served as director of central intelligence from November 1991 until January 1993. In that position, he headed all foreign-intelligence agencies of the United States and directed the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA). Dr. Gates is the only career officer in CIA's history to rise from entry-level employee to director. He served as deputy director of central intelligence from 1986 to 1989 and as assistant to the president and deputy national security adviser at the White House from January 1989 to November 1991..Dr. Gates joined the CIA in 1966 and spent nearly 27 years as an intelligence professional, serving six presidents. During that period, he spent nearly 9 years at the National Security Council, serving four presidents of both political parties. Dr. Gates has been awarded the National Security Medal and the Presidential Citizens Medal, has twice received the National Intelligence Distinguished Service Medal, and has three times received CIA's highest award, the Distinguished Intelligence Medal. He is the author of the memoir *From the Shadows: The Ultimate Insider's Story of Five Presidents and How They Won the Cold War*, published in 1996. He serves as a member of the Board of Trustees of the Fidelity Funds and on the Board of Directors of NACCO Industries, Inc., Brinker International, Inc., and Parker Drilling Company, Inc. Dr. Gates received his bachelor's degree from the College of William and Mary, his master's degree in history from Indiana University, and his doctorate in Russian and Soviet history from Georgetown University

**NANCY S. GRASMICK** is Maryland's first female state superintendent of schools. She has served in that post since 1991. Dr. Grasmick's career in education began as a teacher of deaf children at the William S. Baer School in Baltimore City. She later served as a classroom and resource teacher, principal, supervisor, assistant superintendent, and associate superintendent in the Baltimore County Public Schools. In 1989, she was appointed special secretary for children, youth, and families, and in 1991, the state Board of Education appointed her state superintendent of schools. Dr. Grasmick holds a PhD from the Johns Hopkins University, an MS from Gallaudet University, and a BS from Towson University. She has been a teacher, an administrator, and a child advocate. Her numerous board and commission appointments include the President's Commission on Excellence in Special Education, the US Army War College Board of Visitors, the Towson University Board of Visitors, the state Planning Committee for Higher Education, and the Maryland Business Roundtable for Education. Dr. Grasmick has received numerous awards for leadership, including the Harold W. McGraw, Jr. Prize in Education.

**CHARLES O. HOLLIDAY, JR**. [NAE] is the chairman of the Board and chief executive officer of DuPont. He became chief executive officer in 1998 and chairman in 1999. He started at DuPont in 1970 at DuPont's Old Hickory site after receiving a BS in industrial engineering from the University of Tennessee. He is a licensed professional engineer. In 2004, he was elected a member of the National Academy of Engineering and became chairman of the Business Roundtable's Task Force for Environment, Technology, and Economy the same year. Mr. Holliday is a past chairman of the World Business Council for Sustainable Development (WBCSD), the Business Council, and the Society of Chemical Industry–American Section. While chairman of WBCSD, Mr. Holliday was coauthor of *Walking the Talk,* which details the business case for sustainable development and corporate responsibility. Mr. Holliday also serves on the Board of Directors of HCA, Inc., and Catalyst and is a former director of Analog Devices.

**SHIRLEY ANN JACKSON** [NAE] is the 18th president of Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, the oldest technologic research university in the United States, and has held senior leadership positions in government, industry, research, and academe. Dr. Jackson is immediate past president of the American Association for the Advancement of Science (AAAS) and chairman of the AAAS Board of Directors, a member of the National Academy of Engineering, and a fellow of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences and the American Physical Society, and she has advisory roles and in other national organizations. She is a trustee of the Brookings Institution, a life member of the Massachusetts Institute Technology Corporation, a member of the Council on Foreign Relations, and a member of the Executive Committee of the Council on Competitiveness. She serves on the boards of Georgetown University and Rockefeller University, on the Board of Directors of the New York Stock Exchange, and on the Board of Regents of the Smithsonian Institution, and she is a director of several major corporations. Dr. Jackson was chairman of the US Nuclear Regulatory Commission in 1995-1999; at the Commission, she reorganized the agency and revamped its regulatory approach by articulating and moving strongly to risk-informed, performance-based regulation. Before then, she was a theoretical physicist at the former AT&T Bell Laboratories and a professor of theoretical physics at Rutgers University. Dr. Jackson holds an SB in physics, a PhD in theoretical elementary-particle physics from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, and 31 honorary doctoral degrees.

**ANITA K. JONES** [NAE] is Lawrence R. Quarles Professor of Engineering and Applied Science. She received her PhD in computer science from Carnegie-Mellon University (CMU) in 1973. She left CMU as an associate professor when she cofounded Tartan Laboratories. She was vice-president of Tartan from 1981 to 1987. In 1988, she joined the University of Virginia as a professor and the chair of the Computer Science Department. From 1993 to 1997 she served at the US Department of Defense, where as director of defense research and engineering, she oversaw the department's science and technology program, research laboratories, and the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency. She received the US Air Force Meritorious Civilian Service Award and a Distinguished Public Service Award. She served as vice chair of the National Science Board and cochair of the Virginia Research and Technology Advisory Commission. She is a member of the Defense Science Board, the Charles Stark Draper Laboratory

Corporation, National Research Council Advisory Council for Policy and Global Affairs, and the Massachusetts Institute of Technology Corporation. She is a fellow of the Association for Computing Machinery, the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, and American Association for the Advancement Science, and she is the author of 45 papers and two books.

**JOSHUA LEDERBERG** [NAS/IOM] is Sackler Foundation Scholar at Rockefeller University in New York. He is a cowinner of the Nobel Prize in 1958 for his research in genetic structure and function in microorganisms. As a graduate student at Yale University, Dr.Lederberg and his mentor showed that the bacterium *Escherichia coli* could share genetic information through recombinant events. He went on to show in 1952 that bacteriophages could transfer genetic information between bacteria in *Salmonella*. In addition to his contributions to biology, Dr. Lederberg did extensive research in artificial intelligence, including work in the National Aeronautics and Space Administration experimental programs seeking life on Mars and the chemistry expert system DENDRAL. Dr. Lederberg is professor emeritus of molecular genetics and informatics. He received his PhD from Yale University in 1948.

**RICHARD LEVIN** is the president of Yale University and Frederick William Beinecke Professor of Economics.. In his writings and public testimony, Dr. Levin has described the substantial benefits of government funding of basic scientific research conducted by universities. A specialist in the economics of technologic change, Dr. Levin has written extensively on such subjects as intellectual-property rights, the patent system, industrial research and development, and the effects of antitrust and public regulation on private industry. Before his appointment as president, he devoted himself for 2 decades to teaching, research, and administration. He chaired Yale's Economics Department and served as dean of the Graduate School of Arts and Sciences. Dr. Levin is a director of Lucent Technologies and a trustee of the William and Flora Hewlett Foundation, one of the largest philanthropic organizations in the United States. He served on a presidential commission reviewing the US Postal Service and as a member of the bipartisan commission reviewing US intelligence capabilities. As a member of the Board of Science, Technology, and Economic Policy at the National Academy of Sciences, Dr. Levin co-chaired a committee that examined the effects of intellectual-property rights policies on scientific research and made recommendations for a patent system meeting the needs of the 21st century. He received his bachelor's degree in history from Stanford University in 1968 and studied politics and philosophy at Oxford University, where he earned a bachelor of letters. In 1974, he received his PhD in economics from Yale and was named to the Yale faculty. He holds honorary degrees awarded by Peking, Harvard, Princeton, and Oxford Universities. He is a fellow of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences.

**C. D. (DAN) MOTE, JR.** [NAE] began his tenure as president of the University of Maryland and as Glenn L. Martin Institute Professor of Engineering in 1998. Before assuming the presidency at Maryland, Dr. Mote served on the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) faculty for 31 years. From 1991 to 1998, he was vice chancellor at UCB, held an endowed chair in mechanical systems, and was president of the UC Berkeley

Foundation. He earlier served as chair of UCB's Department of Mechanical Engineering. Dr. Mote's research is in dynamic systems and biomechanics. Internationally recognized for his research on the dynamics of gyroscopic systems and the biomechanics of snow skiing, he has produced more than 300 publications; holds patents in the United States, Norway, Finland and Sweden; and has mentored 56 PhD students. He received his BS, MS and PhD in mechanical engineering from UCB. Dr. Mote has received numerous awards and honors, including the Humboldt Prize awarded by the Federal Republic of Germany. He is a recipient of the Berkeley Citation, an award from the University of California similar to an honorary doctorate, and was named distinguished engineering alumnus. He has received three honorary degrees. He is a member of the National Academy of Engineering and serves on its Council. He was elected to honorary membership in the American Society of Mechanical Engineers International, its most distinguished recognition, and is a fellow of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, the International Academy of Wood Science, the Acoustical Society of America, and the American Association for the Advancement of Science. He serves as director of the Technology Council of Maryland and the Greater Washington Board of Trade. In its latest survey, *Washington Business Forward* magazine named him one of the 20 most influential people in the metropolitan Washington area.

**CHERRY MURRAY** [NAS, NAE] is the deputy director for science and technology at Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory (LLNL), in which she is the senior executive responsible for overseeing the quality of science and technology in the laboratory's scientific and technical programs and disciplines. Dr. Murray came to LLNL from Bell Labs, Lucent Technologies, where she served as senior vice president for physical sciences and wireless research. She joined Bell Labs in 1978 as a member of the technical staff. She was promoted to a number of positions over the years, including department head for low-temperature physics, department head for condensed-matter physics and semiconductor physics, and director of the physical research laboratory. In 2000, Dr. Murray became vice president for physical sciences, and in 2001, senior vice president. Dr. Murray received her BS and PhD in physics from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

**PETER O'DONNELL, JR** is president of the O'Donnell Foundation of Dallas, a private foundation that develops and funds model programs designed to strengthen engineering and science education and research. In higher education, the O'Donnell Foundation provided the challenge grant that led to the creation of 32 science and engineering chairs at the University of Texas (UT) at Austin. Also at UT Austin, it developed the plan that created the Institute for Computational Engineering and Science, and it constructed the Applied Computational Engineering and Science Building to foster interdisciplinary research at the gradate level. In medicine, Mr. O'Donnell endowed the Scholars in Medical Research Program, designed to launch the most promising new assistant professors on their biomedical careers and thereby help to develop future leaders of medical science. In public education, Mr. O Donnell has created the Advanced Placement Incentive Program, which has increased the number of students, especially Hispanic and black students, who pass college-level courses in mathematics, science, and English while still in high school. The incentive program is now in 43 school districts in Texas

and served as the model for both the state of Texas and the federal Advanced Placement incentive programs. Mr. O'Donnell is chairman of Advanced Placement Strategies, Inc., a nonprofit organization he founded to manage and implement the AP incentive program in Texas schools. He served as a member of President Reagan's Foreign Intelligence Advisory Board, as commissioner of the Texas National Research Laboratory Commission, and on the State of Texas Select Committee on Higher Education. He is a trustee of the Cooper Institute, a member of the Presidents' Circle of the National Academy of Sciences, and a founding member of the National Innovation Initiative Council on Competitiveness. Mr. O'Donnell has pursued a career in investments and philanthropy. He received his BS in mathematics from the University of the South and an MBA from the Wharton School of the University of Pennsylvania.

**LEE R. RAYMOND** [NAE] is the chairman of the Board and chief executive officer of Exxon Mobil Corporation. Dr. Raymond was chairman of the Board and chief executive officer of Exxon Corporation from 1993 until its merger with Mobil Oil Corporation in 1999. He served as a director of Exxon Corporation from 1984 until the merger. Since joining the organization in 1963, Dr. Raymond has held a variety of management positions in domestic and foreign operations, including Exxon Company, USA; Creole Petroleum Corporation; Exxon Company, International; Exxon Enterprises; and Esso Inter-America, Inc. He served as the president of Exxon Nuclear Company, Inc. in 1979 and moved to New York in 1981, when he was named executive vice president of Exxon Enterprises. In 1983, Dr. Raymond was named president and director of Esso Inter-America Inc. with responsibilities for Exxon's operations in the Caribbean and Central and South America. He served as the senior vice president of Exxon Corporation from 1984 to 1987 and as its president from 1987 to 1993 and in 1996. Dr. Raymond has been a director of J.P. Morgan Chase & Co. or a predecessor institution since 1987 and served as a member of the Committee on Director Nominations and Board Affairs and Chairman of the Committee on Management Development and Executive Compensation. He serves as a director of the United Negro College Fund, the chairman of the American Petroleum Institute, trustee and vice chairman of the American Enterprise Institute and, trustee of the Wisconsin Alumni Research Foundation. He is a member of the Business Council, the Business Roundtable, the Council on Foreign Relations, the National Academy of Engineering, the Emergency Committee for American Trade, and the National Petroleum Council. He is secretary of the Energy Advisory Board, the Singapore-US Business Council, the Trilateral Commission, and the University of Wisconsin Foundation. Dr. Raymond graduated in 1960 from the University of Wisconsin with a bachelor's degree in chemical engineering. In 1963, he received a PhD in chemical engineering from the University of Minnesota.

**ROBERT C. RICHARDSON** [NAS] is the F. R. Newman Professor of Physics and the vice provost for research at Cornell University. He received a BS and an MS in physics from Virginia Polytechnic Institute. After serving in the US Army, he obtained his PhD from Duke University in 1966. He is a member of the National Academy of Sciences. He is also member of the Governing Board at Duke University, the American Association for the Advancement of Science, and Brookhaven Science Associates. Dr. Richardson has served as chair of various committees of the American Physical Society (APS) and

recently completed a term on the Governing Board of the National Science Board. Dr. Richardson was awarded the Nobel Prize for the discovery that liquid helium-3 undergoes a pairing transition similar to that of superconductors. He has also received a Guggenheim fellowship, the Eighth Simon Memorial Prize (of the British Physical Society), the Buckley Prize of the APS and an honorary doctor of science degree from the Ohio State University. He has published more than 95 scientific articles in major research journals.

**P. ROY VAGELOS** [NAS/IOM] is retired chairman and chief executive officer of Merck & Co., Inc. He received an AB in 1950 from the University of Pennsylvania and an MD in 1954 from Columbia University. After a residency at the Massachusetts General Hospital in Boston, he joined the National Institutes of Health, where from 1956 to 1966 he served as senior surgeon and then section head of comparative biochemistry. In 1966, he became chairman of the Department of Biological Chemistry at Washington University School of Medicine in St Louis; in 1973, he founded university's Division of Biology and Biomedical Sciences. He joined Merck Research Laboratories in 1975, where he was president until 1985, when he became CEO and later chairman of the company. He retired in 1994. Dr. Vagelos is a member of the National Academy of Sciences, the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, American Philosophical Society. He has received many awards in science and business and 14 honorary doctorates. He has been chairman of the Board of the University of Pennsylvania, a member of the Business Council and the Business Roundtable, and a member of the boards of TRW, McDonnell Douglas, Estee Lauder, and Prudential Finance. He also served as cochairman of the New Jersey Performing Arts Center and president and CEO of the American School of Classical Studies in Athens. He is chairman of Regeneron Pharmaceuticals and Theravance, two biotechnology companies. He is also chairman of the Board of Visitors at Columbia University Medical Center, where he chairs the capital campaign. He serves on a number of public-policy and advisory boards, including the Donald Danforth Plant Science Center and Danforth Foundation.

**CHARLES M. VEST** [NAE] is president emeritus at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) and is a life member of the MIT Corporation, the institute's board of trustees. He was president of MIT from 1990 to 2004. During his presidency, he emphasized enhancing undergraduate education, exploring new organizational forms to meet emerging directions in research and education, building a stronger international dimension in education and research programs, developing stronger relations with industry, and enhancing racial and cultural diversity at MIT. He also devoted considerable energy to bringing issues concerning education and research to broader public attention and to strengthening national policy on science, engineering, and education. With respect to the latter , Dr. Vest chaired the President's Advisory Committee on the Redesign of the Space Station and served as a member of the President's Committee of Advisors on Science and Technology, the Massachusetts Governor's Council on Economic Growth and Technology, and the National Research Council Board on Engineering Education. He chairs the US Department of Energy Task Force on the Future of Science Programs and is vice chair of the Council on Competitiveness and immediate past chair of the Association of American Universities.

He sits on the Board of Directors of IBM and E.I. du Pont de Nemours and Co. In 2004, he was asked by President Bush to serve as a member of the Commission on the Intelligence Capabilities of the United States Regarding Weapons of Mass Destruction. He earned his BS in mechanical engineering from West Virginia University in 1963 and his MS and PhD degrees from the University of Michigan in 1964 and 1967, respectively. His research interests are the thermal sciences and the engineering applications of lasers and coherent optics.

**GEORGE M. WHITESIDES** [NAS, NAE] is the Woodford L. and Ann A. Flowers University Professor of Chemistry at Harvard University, where his research interests include materials science, biophysics, complexity, surface science, microfluidics, self-assembly, microtechnology and nanotechnology, and cell-surface biochemistry. He received an AB.from Harvard University in 1960 and a PhD from the California Institute of Technology in 1964. He was a member of the faculty of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology from 1963 to 1982. He joined the Department of Chemistry of Harvard University in 1982 and was department chairman in 1986-1989. He is a member of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, the National Academy of Sciences, and the American Philosophical Society. He is also a fellow of the American Association for the Advancement of Science and the New York Academy of Science, a foreign fellow of the Indian National Science Academy, and an honorary fellow of the Chemical Research Society of India. He has served as an adviser to the National Research Council, the National Science Foundation, and the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency at the Department of Defense

**RICHARD N. ZARE** [NAS] is the Marguerite Blake Wilbur Professor in Natural Science at Stanford University. He is a graduate of Harvard University, where he received his BA in chemistry and physics in 1961 and his PhD in chemical physics in 1964. In 1965, he became an assistant professor at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. He moved to the University of Colorado in 1966 and remained there until 1969 while holding joint appointments in the Departments of Chemistry and Physics and Astrophysics. In 1969, he was appointed to a full professorship in the Chemistry Department at Columbia University, becoming the Higgins Professor of Natural Science in 1975. In 1977, he moved to Stanford University. Dr. Zare is renowned for his research in laser chemistry, which resulted in a greater understanding of chemical reactions at the molecular level. He has received numerous honors and awards and is a member of the American Philosophical Society, the National Academy of Sciences, the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, and the American Chemical Society. He served as the chair of the President's Committee on the National Medal of Science in 1997-2000; chaired the National Research Council's Commission on Physical Sciences, Mathematics, and Applications in1992-1995; and was chair of the National Science Board for the last 2 years of his 1992-1998 service. He is the chairman of the Board of Directors of Annual Reviews, Inc., and he will chair the Department of Chemistry at Stanford University in 2005-2008.

## STAFF

**DEBORAH D. STINE** (Study Director) is associate director of the Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy; director of the National Academies Christine Mirzayan Science and Technology Policy Fellowship Program; and director of the Office of Special Projects. Dr. Stine has received both group and individual achievement awards for her work on various projects throughout the National Academies since 1989. She has directed studies and other activities on science and security in an age of terrorism, human reproductive cloning, presidential and federal advisory committee science and technology appointments, facilitating interdisciplinary research, setting priorities for the National Science Foundation's large research facilities, advanced research instrumentation and facilities, evaluating federal research programs, international benchmarking of US research, advanced research instrumentation, and many other issues. Before coming to the National Academies, she was a mathematician for the Air Force, an air-pollution engineer for the state of Texas, and an air-issues manager for the Chemical Manufacturers Association. She holds a BS in mechanical and environmental engineering from the University of California, Irvine, an MBA from what is now Texas A&M at Corpus Christi, and a PhD in public administration with a focus on science and technology policy analysis from American University. She received the Mitchell Prize Young Scholar Award for her research on international environmental decision-making.

**ALAN ANDERSON** has worked as a consultant writer for the National Academies since 1994, contributing to reports on science policy, education and training, government-industry partnerships, scientific evidence, and other topics primarily for the Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy and the Board on Science, Technology, and Economic Policy. He is also editorial director of the Millennium Science Initiative, an independent non-governmental organization whose mission is to strengthen science and technology in developing countries. He has worked in science and medical journalism for over 25 years, serving as reporter, writer, and foreign correspondent for *Time* magazine, the *New York Times Magazine*, *Saturday Review*, and other publications. He holds a BA in English from Yale University and an MS in journalism from Columbia University.

**THOMAS ARRISON** is director of the Forum on Information Technology and Research Universities at the National Academies. He holds MAs in public policy and Asian studies and a BA in political science from the University of Michigan. He studied in Japan for 2 years, completing business internships in the banking and semiconductor industries and intensive training in Japanese language. Before being named director of the new forum in 2002, he was associate director of the Government-University-Industry Research Roundtable. Mr. Arrison joined the National Academies in 1990 and has served as the study director for numerous activities and publications, including nine committee consensus reports.

**DAVID ATTIS** is director of policy studies at the Council on Competitiveness. He serves as the deputy director of the National Innovation Initiative, a multiyear effort to

increase the US's capacity for innovation across all sectors of the economy. Before joining the council, Dr. Attis was a consultant with A.T. Kearney, Inc. in its general consulting practice and its Global Business Policy Council. His work included business turnarounds, strategy consulting, information-systems implementation, global risk assessments, and policy analysis. He holds a PhD in the history of science from Princeton University, an MPhil in the history and philosophy of science from Cambridge University, and a BA in physics from the University of Chicago. His doctoral thesis explored the development of mathematics in Ireland from the surveyors of the 17th century through the Celtic Tiger economy of the 1990s.

**RACHEL COURTLAND** is a research associate for the National Academies Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy. She earned her BA in physics from the University of Pennsylvania in May 2003 and her MS in physics from Emory University in 2004. In graduate school, she studied the local perturbation of supercooled colloidal suspensions using two-dimensional confocal microscopy and conducted preparatory work for a National and Aeronautics Space Administration PCS payload project. As an undergraduate, she led Women Interested in the Study of Physics, an organization created to help to foster a more comfortable environment for women scientists at undergraduate and graduate levels and dedicated to raising awareness of issues facing women in academe.

**LAUREL L. HAAK** is a program officer for the National Academies Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy. She received a BS and an MS in biology from Stanford University. She was the recipient of a predoctoral National Institutes of Health (NIH) National Research Service Award and received a PhD in neuroscience in 1997 from Stanford University Medical School, where her research focused on calcium signaling and circadian rhythms. She was awarded a National Research Council research associateship to work at NIH on intracellular calcium dynamics in oligodendrocytes. From 2002 to 2003, she was editor of *Science's* Next Wave Postdoc Network at the American Association for the Advancement of Science. While a postdoctoral scholar, she was editor of the *Women in Neuroscience* newsletter and served as president of the organization from 2003 to 2004. She is an ex officio member of the Society for Neuroscience Committee on Women in Neuroscience, has served on the Biophysics Society Early Careers Committee, and was an adviser for the National Postdoctoral Association.

**PETER HENDERSON** is director of the National Academies Board on Higher Education and Workforce (BHEW). His specializations include postsecondary education, the labor market for scientists and engineers, and federal science and technology research funding. He oversees BHEW's Evaluation of the Lucille P. Markey Trust Programs in Biomedical Science and Assessment of NIH Minority Research Training Programs and supervises BHEW staff working on studies that examine the community-college pathway to engineering careers. He has contributed as a study director or staff member to *Building a Workforce for the Information Economy, Measuring the Science and Engineering Enterprise: Priorities for the Division of Science Resource Studies, Attracting Science and Mathematics Ph.D.s to Secondary School Education, Monitoring*

*International Labor Standards, Trends in Federal Support of Research and Graduate Education*, and *Observations on the President's Federal Science and Technology Budget*. Dr. Henderson holds a master's degree in public policy (1984) from Harvard University's John F. Kennedy School of Government and a PhD in American political history from the Johns Hopkins University (1994). He joined the National Academies staff in 1996 and is a recipient of the National Academies Distinguished Service Award (2003).

**JO L. HUSBANDS** is a senior project director with Development, Security, and Cooperation of the Policy and Global Affairs division. In that capacity, she is working on a project to engage the international scientific community in addressing the possibility that the results of biotechnology research will be misused to support terrorism or biologic weapons. She is also developing new projects related to defense economics and the proliferation of conventional weapons and technologies. From 1991 through 2004, she was director of the National Academies Committee on International Security and Arms Control and its Working Group on Biological Weapons Control. Dr. Husbands is an adjunct professor in the security studies program at Georgetown University, where she teaches a course on "The International Arms Trade". She holds a PhD. in political science from the University of Minnesota and a master's degree in international public policy (international economics) from the Johns Hopkins University School of Advanced International Studies. She is a member of the Advisory Board of Women in International Security and a fellow of the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry.

**BENJAMIN A. NOVAK** (Policy Fellow) is pursuing his MS in public policy and management at Carnegie Mellon University. He received his BA in political science and his BS in biomedical engineering from the University of Pittsburgh, where he was a member of the University Honors College. As an undergraduate student, .Mr. Novak had the unusual experience of completing internships in both technical and policy fields working in a variety of places, including the US Congress, the House of Representatives Committee on Science, the Vascular Research Center of David Vorp, and the Artificial Liver Laboratory of Jack Patzer.

**STEVE OLSON** is the author of *Mapping Human History: Genes, Race, and Our Common Origins* (Houghton Mifflin), which was one of five finalists for the 2002 nonfiction National Book Award and received the Science-in-Society Award from the National Association of Science Writers. His most recent book, *Count Down: Six Kids Vie for Glory at the World's Toughest Math Competition* (Houghton Mifflin), was named a best science book of 2004 by *Discover* magazine. He has written several other books, including *Evolution in Hawaii* and *On Being a Scientist*. He has been a consultant writer for the National Academy of Sciences and National Research Council, the Howard Hughes Medical Institute, the National Institutes of Health, the Institute for Genomic Research, and many other organizations. He is the author of articles in *The Atlantic Monthly, Science, The Washington Post, Scientific American, Washingtonian, Slate, Teacher, Astronomy, Science 82-86*, and other magazines. He also is coauthor of an article published in *Nature* in September 2004 that presented a fundamentally new perspective on human ancestry. From 1989 through 1992, he served as special assistant

for communications in the White House Office of Science and Technology Policy. He earned a bachelor's degree in physics from Yale University in 1978.

**JOHN B. SLANINA** (Policy Fellow) is a graduate student at the Georgia Institute of Technology (Georgia Tech) and a Christine Mirzayan Science and Technology Policy Fellow at the National Academies. He is pursuing an MS in public policy, and his research encompasses the incorporation of innovative practices in the manufacturing sector and regional economic development. He previously received an MS in mechanical engineering at Georgia Tech in 2002, where he performed research in sensor design for bioengineering applications. During the 2000-2001 school year, he studied engineering at the Ecole Nationale Superieure d'Arts et Metiers in Metz, France. He earned his undergraduate degrees in mechanical engineering and mathematics from Youngstown State University in 2000.

# Appendix B

## TASK STATEMENTS

# STATEMENT OF TASK

This congressionally-requested study will address the following questions:

**What are the top 10 actions, in priority order, that federal policy makers could take to enhance the science and technology enterprise so the United States can successfully compete, prosper, and be secure in the global community of the 21st Century?**

**What implementation strategy, with several concrete steps, could be used to implement each of those actions?**

# United States Senate

**WASHINGTON, DC 20510**

May 27, 2005

Dr. Bruce Alberts
President
National Academy of Sciences
2101 Constitution Avenue
Washington, DC 20418

Dear Dr. Alberts:

The Energy Subcommittee of the Senate Energy and Natural Resources Committee has been given the latitude by Chairman Pete Domenici to hold a series of hearings to identify specific steps our government should take to ensure the preeminence of America's scientific and technological enterprise.

The National Academies could provide critical assistance in this effort by assembling some of the best minds in the scientific and technical community to identify the most urgent challenges the United States faces in maintaining leadership in key areas of science and technology. Specifically, we would appreciate a report from the National Academies by September 2005 that addresses the following:

- Is it essential for the United States to be at the forefront of research in broad areas of science and engineering? How does this leadership translate into concrete benefits as evidenced by the competitiveness of American businesses and an ability to meet key goals such as strengthening national security and homeland security, improving health, protecting the environment, and reducing dependence on imported oil?

  What specific steps are needed to ensure that the United States maintains its leadership in science and engineering to enable us to successfully compete, prosper, and be secure in the global community of the 21st century? How can we determine whether total federal research investment is adequate, whether it is properly balanced among research disciplines (considering both traditional research areas and new multidisciplinary fields such as nanotechnology), and between basic and applied research?

- How do we ensure that the United States remains at the epicenter of the ongoing revolution in research and innovation that is driving 21st century economies? How can we assure investors that America is the preferred site for investments in new or expanded businesses that create the best jobs and provide the best services?

- How can we ensure that critical discoveries across all the scientific disciplines are predominantly American and exploited first by firms producing and hiring in America? How can we best encourage domestic firms to invest in invention and innovation to meet new global competition and how can public research investments best supplement these private sector investments?

- What specific steps are needed to develop a well-educated workforce able to successfully embrace the rapid pace of technological change?

Your answers to these questions will help Congress design effective programs to ensure that America remains at the forefront of scientific capability, thereby enhancing our ability to shape and improve our nation's future.

We look forward to reviewing the results of your efforts.

Sincerely,

Lamar Alexander

Lamar Alexander
Chairman
Energy Subcommittee

Jeff Bingaman
Ranking Member
Committee on Energy and
Natural Resources

U.S. HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES
COMMITTEE ON SCIENCE
SUITE 2320 RAYBURN HOUSE OFFICE BUILDING
WASHINGTON, DC 20515-6301
(202) 225-6371
TTY: (202) 226-4410
http://www.house.gov/science/welcome.htm

June 30, 2005

Dr. Bruce Alberts
President
National Academy of Sciences
2101 Constitution Avenue
Washington, DC 20418

Dear Dr. Alberts:

We understand that the National Academies, in response to a request from Senators Alexander and Bingaman, are in the early stages of developing a study related to the urgent challenges facing the United States in maintaining leadership in key areas of science and technology. Because the Science Committee considers ensuring the strength and vitality of the Nation's scientific and technology enterprise an important part of its broad oversight responsibility, we are writing to endorse the request for this study and to encourage the National Academies to carry it forward expeditiously.

In addition, we would like to suggest some specific questions we hope to see addressed by the study:

- What skills will be required by the future U.S. science and engineering workforce in order for it to command a salary premium over foreign scientists and engineers? Are alternative degree programs needed, such as professional science masters degrees, to meet the needs of industry and to lead to attractive career paths for students?

- Are changes needed in the current graduate education system, such as: a different mix in graduate support among fellowships, traineeships and research assistantships; and more research faculty positions and fewer postdocs and graduate students in traditional graduate programs?

- Should a greater proportion of federal research funding be allocated to high-risk, exploratory research and should funding priorities among broad fields of science and engineering be readjusted?

- What policies and programs will help ensure the rapid flow of research results into the marketplace and promote the commercialization of research in a way that leads to the creation of good jobs for Americans?

The Committee looks forward to reviewing the results of this effort, and hopes that a draft response would be available by September 30, 2005. We hope that the new and innovative ideas you produce as the result of this effort will be able to translate into policies that will enhance U.S. prosperity in the 21st century. If you have any questions, please contact Dan Byers of the Majority Staff or Jim Wilson of the Minority Staff.

Sincerely,

SHERWOOD BOEHLERT
Chairman

BART GORDON
Ranking Member

# Appendix C

## FOCUS GROUP SESSIONS
## AUGUST 6, 2005

The Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century convened focus groups on Saturday, August 6, 2005, from 9 am to 4 pm. The purpose of the focus groups was to gather experts in five broad subjects—K-12 education, higher education, science and engineering research, innovation and workforce, and national and homeland security—to provide input to the committee on how the United States can successfully compete, prosper, and be secure in the global community.

Each focus-group participant was provided background on the committee members and on other focus-group members, 13 issue papers (see Appendix D) that summarized past reports on the various topics that were discussed, and a list of recommendations gleaned from past reports and interviews with committee and focus-group members.

The charge to focus-group participants is listed in full on page C-3. Essentially, each group was asked to define and set priorities for the top three actions for its subject that federal policy-makers could take to ramp up the innovative capacity of the United States. Each focus group was chaired by a member of the committee, who presented the group's priorities to the full committee during an open discussion session. The content of those presentations is listed starting on page C-4. Focus group-biographies are listed starting on page C-9.

**Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century:**
**An Agenda for American Science and Technology**

**Agenda**

**Focus Group Meeting**

**August 6, 2005**

**Keck Center of the National Academies**
**500 5th Street, NW**
**Washington, DC**

**9:00 Continental Breakfast Available (Room 100)**

**9:30 Study Overview and Charge to Focus Groups**
***Norman Augustine*, Chair, Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century**

**10:00 Focus Groups Meet**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **K-12 Education** | **Room 110** | ***Roy Vagelos*, Chair** |
| **Higher Education** | **Room 101** | ***Chuck Vest*, Chair** |
| **Research** | **Room 201** | ***Dan Mote*, Chair** |
| **Innovation** | **Room 204** | ***Gail Cassell*, Chair** |
| **Security** | **Room 105** | ***Anita Jones*, Chair** |

**12:00 Lunch (Available in meeting rooms)**

**2:45 Break (Move to Room 100)**

**3:00 Focus Groups Report on Results of their Deliberations (Room 100)**

**4:00 Adjourn**

**Focus Group Charge**

The Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century would like to thank you for helping it in its important task to address the following questions:

**What are the top 10 actions, in priority order, that federal policy makers could take to enhance the science and technology enterprise so the United States can successfully compete, prosper, and be secure in the global community of the 21st Century? What implementation strategy, with several concrete steps, could be used to implement each of those actions?**

Your role, as a focus group participant, is to help the committee, in your area of expertise:

- Identify existing ideas the federal government (President, Congress, or federal agencies) could take. The ideas should not be to general—they need to be sufficiently actionable that they could be turned into congressional language.
- Brainstorm new ideas
- Evaluate all ideas
- Prioritize all ideas to propose to the committee the top 3 actions the federal government could take so that the United States can successfully compete, prosper, and be secure in the global community of the 21st century.

Since there are 5 focus groups, we expect a total of 15 prioritized recommendations to result from the focus group session which will be presented and discussed at a plenary session at the end of the day. These 15 recommendations that would then be used by the committee as input to its decision-making process as it comes up with a "top 10" list on Sunday.

Each focus group is chaired by a committee member and has a staff member with expertise in the issue and a S&T policy fellow (graduate student) to assist them. The staff is available to put together any action list that is produced (no summary of the discussion is planned).

In evaluating each proposal, here are some evaluation criteria to keep in mind:

**Minimum Selection Criteria**

- **Can the actions be taken by those who requested the study?** The President, Congress, or the federal agencies?

**Evaluation Criteria**

- **Cost**—What is a rough estimate of how much the action will cost? Is the cost reasonable relative to the financial resources likely to be available? Can resources for this action be diverted from an existing activity as opposed to "new money"?
- **Impact**—Which degree of impact is the action likely to have on the problem of concern?
- **Cost-effectiveness**—Which actions provide the most "bang for the buck"?
- **Timeframe**—What is the desired timeframe for the action to have an impact? Is the action likely to have impact in the short or long-term or both?
- **Distributional Effects**—Who are the winners and the losers? Is this the best action for the nation as a whole?
- **Ease of Implementation**—To what degree is the challenge easy, medium, or hard to implement?
- **History**—Has the action been suggested by another committee or policymaker before? If so, why has it not been implemented? Can the challenges be overcome this time?
- **Is the Moment Right for this Action?** Are they likely to be viable in the near-term political and policy context?

**K-12 Education Focus Group Top Recommendation Summary**
**Roy Vagelos, *Chair***

*National Objectives*

- Lay a foundation for a workforce that is capable in science, technology, engineering, and mathematics (STEM)—including those who can create, support, and sustain innovation.
- Develop a society that embraces STEM literacy.
- Develop and sustain K-12 teacher corps capable of and motivated to teach science and mathematics.
- Establish meaningful measures.

*Top Recommendations*

1. **The federal government should provide peer-reviewed long-term support for programs to develop and support a K-12 teacher core that is well-prepared to teach STEM subjects.**
    a. Programs for in-service teacher development that provide in-depth content and pedagogical knowledge; some examples include summer programs, Master's programs, and mentor teachers.
    b. Provide scholarship funds to in-service teachers to participate in summer institutes and content-intensive degree programs.
    c. Provide seed grants to universities and colleges to provide summer institute and content-intensive degree programs for in-service teachers.
2. **Establish a program to encourage undergraduate students to major in STEM and teach in K-12 for at least 5 years. The program should include support mechanisms and incentives to enable teacher retention.**
    a. Provide a scholarship for joint STEM bachelor's degree + teacher certification program. Mandate a service requirement and pay a federal signing bonus.
    b. Encourage collaboration between STEM departments and education departments to train STM K-12 teachers.
3. **Provide incentives to encourage students, especially minorities and women, to complete STM K-12 coursework, including**
    a. Monetary incentives to complete advanced coursework.
    b. Tutoring and after school programs.
    c. Summer engineering and science academies, internships, and research opportunities.
    d. Support school and curriculum organization models (state-wide specialty schools, magnet schools, dual-enrollment models, and the like).
4. **Support the design of state public school assessments that measure necessary workplace skills to meet innovation goals and ensure No Child Left Behind assessments include these goals.**
5. **Provide support to research, develop, and implement a new generation of instructional materials (including textbooks, modules, computer programs) based on research evidence on student learning outcomes, with vertical alignment and coherence across assessments and frameworks. Link teacher development and curricular development.**

**K-12 Focus Group Participants**

**Roy Vagelos,** retired *Chair*

**Carolyn Bacon**, Executive Director, O'Donnell Foundation
**Susan Berardi,** Consultant
**Rolf K. Blank,** Director of Education Indicators, Council of Chief State School Officers
**Rodger W. Bybee**, Executive Director, Biological Sciences Curriculum Study
**Hai-Lung Dai**, Hirschmann-Makineni Chair Professor of Chemistry, University of Pennsylvania
**Joan Ferrini-Mundy**, Associate Dean for Science and Mathematics Education and Outreach, College of Natural Science, Michigan State University
**Bruce Fuchs**, Director, Office of Science Education, National Institutes of Health
**Ronald Marx**, Professor of Educational Psychology and Dean of Education, University of Arizona
**David Monk**, Professor of Educational Administration and Dean of College of Education, Pennsylvania State University
**Carlo Parravano**, Executive Director, Merck Institute for Science Education
**Anne C. Petersen**, Senior Vice President for Programs, W.K. Kellogg Foundation
**Helen Quinn**, Physicist, Stanford Linear Accelerator Center, Stanford University
**Deborah Roudebush,** Physics Teacher, Fairfax County Public Schools
**Daniel K. Rubenstein,** Mathematics Teacher, New York City Collegiate School
**J. Stephen Simon,** Senior Vice President, Exxon Mobil Corporation

**Higher Education Focus Group Top Recommendation Summary**
**Charles Vest, *Chair***

***National Objective***
The US should lead in the discovery of new scientific and technological knowledge and its efficient translation into new products and services in order to sustain its preeminence in technology-based industry and job creation.

Our higher education system has a critical role in meeting this objective.

***Recommendation***
**We recommend that Congress enact the Innovation Development Education and Acceleration Act (The IDEA Act). Its purpose is to increase the number of U.S. students, consistent with our demography, who will become innovation leaders; professional scientists and engineers; and science, mathematics, and engineering educators at all levels.**

1. ***Undergraduate Education: Increase the number and proportion of citizens who hold STEM degrees to meet international benchmarks, i.e. migrate, over five years, from 5% to 10% of earned first (bachelor's-level) degrees.***
   a. Provide competitive multi-agency (non-thematic) scholarships for undergraduates in science, engineering, mathematics, technology, and other critical areas. The scholarships would carry with them supplemental support for pedagogical innovation for the departments, programs, or institutions in which the students study. This program should support students at 2-year and 4-year colleges and research universities.
2. ***Graduate Education: Increase the number of US graduate students in science, engineering, and mathematics programs in areas of strategic national needs.***
   a. Create a new multi-agency support program for graduate students in STEM areas related to strategic national needs. This support should include and appropriate mix of competitive portable fellowships and competitive training grants.
3. ***Faculty Preparation and Support: Support the propagation of effective and creative programs that develop scientific and technological leaders who understand the innovation process***
   a. Support workshops, preparation of educational materials, and experience-based programs.
4. ***Create global scientific and technological leaders.***
   a. Provide a globally-oriented education and opportunity for US students, and maintain the US as the most desirable place to pursue graduate education and/or scientific and technological careers.
   b. Define the policies that will maintain our long-term security and vitality through the openness of American education and research and the free flow of talent and ideas.

**Higher Education Focus Group**

**Chuck Vest,** *Chair*

**M.R.C. Greenwood,** Provost and Senior Vice President for Academic Affairs, University of California
**Daniel Hastings**, Professor of Aeronautics and Astronautics and Engineering Systems, Massachusetts Institute of Technology
**Randy H. Katz**, United Microelectronics Corporation Distinguished Professor in Electrical Engineering and Computer Science, University of California, Berkeley
**George M. Langford,** E. E. Just Professor of Natural Sciences and Professor of Biological Sciences, Dartmouth College
**Joan F. Lorden**, Provost and Vice Chancellor for Academic Affairs, University of North Carolina-Charlotte
**Claudia Mitchell-Kernan**, Vice Chancellor for Graduate Studies and Dean of Graduate Division, University of California, Los Angeles
**Stephanie Pfirman**, Chair, Department of Environmental Science, Barnard College
**Paul Romer**, STANCO 25 Professor of Economics, Graduate School of Business, Stanford University
**James M. Rosser**, President and Professor of Health Care Management, California State University, Los Angeles
**Tim Stearns**, Associate Professor of Biological Sciences and Genetics, Stanford University
**Debra Stewart**, President, Council of Graduate Schools
**Orlando L. Taylor**, Vice Provost for Research, Dean of Graduate School, and Professor of Communications, Howard University
**Isiah M. Warner**, Vice Chancellor for Strategic Initiatives, Louisiana State University
**Dean Zollman**, University Distinguished Professor, Distinguished University Teaching Scholar, and Head of Department of Physics, Kansas State University

**Research Focus Group Top Recommendation Summary**
**Dan Mote, *Chair***

***National Objective***
America's leadership in S&T has created our prosperity, security and health. That leadership is now threatened. Our leadership resulted from a long-term investment in basic research. In order to keep our leadership position we must revitalize our investments, particularly in the physical, mathematical sciences and engineering.

***Recommendations***

1. **Set the federal research budget to 1% of GDP within the next five years to sustain US leadership in innovation for prosperity, security and quality of life**
   a. Address 21st century global economy grand challenges in energy, security, health and environment through interagency initiatives
   b. Bring physical sciences, engineering, mathematics, and information science up to the levels of health sciences
   c. All agencies would expand their basic research programs
   d. Replace decaying infrastructure in universities, national labs and other research organizations
   e. Longer-term, stable funding
2. **To foster breakthroughs in science and technology, allocate at least 5% of federal agency research portfolios to high-risk basic research**
   a. Allow for discretionary distribution for basic research with program oversight
   b. Provide at least five years of adequate support for early-career researchers
   c. Provide technical program managers in federal agencies with discretionary funding
3. **Make S&T an attractive career to the best and the brightest**
   a. Create an undergraduate loan forgiveness program for students who complete a PhD in S&T and work as STEM researchers (e.g. $25,000 per year)
   b. Create training grants for graduate and post-graduate education across federal research budgets
   c. Provide five years of transition funding for early career research
   d. Cultivate K-12 students to careers in science and technology
   e. Actively recruit and support the world's best students and researchers and make it attractive for them to stay: address problems with visas, deemed exports and other barriers

**Research Focus Group**

**Dan Mote,** President, University of Maryland, *Chair*

**Paul Avery**, Professor of Physics, University of Florida
**Gary Bachula**, Vice President for External Relations, Internet2
**Angela Belcher**, John Chipman Associate Professor of Materials Science and Engineering and Biological Engineering, Massachusetts Institute of Technology
**Elsa M. Garmire**, Sydney E. Jenkins Professor of Engineering, Dartmouth College
**Heidi E. Hamm,** Earl W. Sutherland, Jr., Professor and Chair of Pharmacology, Vanderbilt University
**Mark S. Humayun**, Professor of Ophthalmology, Biomedical Engineering, and Cell and Neurobiology, University of Southern California
**Madeleine Jacobs**, Executive Director and Chief Executive Officer, American Chemical Society
**Cato T. Laurencin**, Lillian T. Pratt Distinguished Professor and Chair of Department of Orthopaedic Surgery, University of Virginia
**David LaVan**, Assistant Professor of Mechanical Engineering, Yale University
**Phillip LeDuc**, Assistant Professor of Mechanical Engineering, Carnegie Mellon University
**Deirdre R. Meldrum**, Professor and Director of Genomation Laboratory, Department of Electrical Engineering, University of Washington

**Innovation and Workforce Focus Group Top Recommendation Summary**
**Gail Cassells, *Chair***

***National Objective***

Accelerate the process of innovation to:

- Solve national problems
- Create and retain well-paying jobs
- Ensure prosperity

***Recommendations***

1. **Tax Policy: Make the R&D tax credit permanent, and extend coverage to research conducted in university-industry consortia**
2. **National Energy Initiative**
   a. Sharp increase in agency R&D related to energy prosperity
   b. National Energy Prosperity fellowships
   c. Cabinet-level National Council on Energy Prosperity
3. **National Agency for Innovation**
   a. New independent, project-based agency, reports to president
   b. University-industry projects on specific goals
   c. Broad, non-military, national interest
   d. $3-5 billion per year
   e. Outputs: functional prototypes and processes, training, monitoring of U.S. innovation and competitiveness
   f. Issues to resolve: metrics, intellectual property (IP), governance
4. **Stimulate interest of young people in S&T**
   a. National scholarships program for first-generation college students who major in S&E
   b. Scholarship recipients available for national S&E role models program to explain to elementary and secondary students what they do and how success in school prepared them

**Innovation and Workforce Focus Group**

**Gail Cassell,** Vice President of Scientific Affairs and Distinguished Lilly Research Scholar for Infectious Diseases, Eli Lilly and Company, *Chair*

**Miller Adams**, Vice President, Boeing Technology Ventures
**Robert J. Aiken**, Director of Engineering, International Academic Research and Technology Initiatives, Cisco Systems, Inc.
**Ron Blackwell**, Chief Economist, American Federation of Labor and Congress of Industrial Unions (AFL-CIO)
**Craig Blue**, Distinguished Research Engineer and Group Leader, Materials Processing Group, Metals and Ceramics Division, Oak Ridge National Laboratory
**Susan Butts**, Director, External Technology, Dow Chemical Company
**Paul Citron,** Vice President (retired), Technology Policy and Academic Relations, Medtronic, Inc.
**Chad Evans**, Vice President, National Innovation Initiative, Council on Competitiveness
**Kent H. Hughes**, Director, Program on Science, Technology, America and the Global Economy, Woodrow Wilson International Center for Scholars
**Marvin Kosters**, Resident Scholar, American Enterprise Institute
**Mark B. Myers**, Visiting Executive Professor of Management, Wharton School of the University of Pennsylvania
**Juliana C. Shei**, Global Technology Manager, General Electric
**Nancy Vorona**, Vice President, Research Investment, Virginia's Center for Innovative Technology
**Caroline S. Wagner**, Researcher, Center for International Science and Technology Policy, George Washington University

**National and Homeland Security Group Focus Group Top Recommendation Summary**
**Anita Jones, *Chair***

***Globalization is a fact of life***

- Science and technology (S&T) provides our qualitative national security advantage
- S&T enables our prosperity, which in turn finances strong security
- S&T increasingly originates abroad
- Isolation damages our security and our economy
- Need to engage with and ensure access to innovators and innovation abroad

***National Objectives***

- Stimulate innovation and its adoption to serve security
- Rebalance Security S&T Research Funding Invested in Basic Research
- Accelerate creation of knowledge in the US and acquisition of knowledge from abroad
- Attract and retain global best and brightest

Only the federal government can provide the framework/strategy for balancing contending national interests.

***Recommendations***

1. To stimulate innovation and its adoption to serve security, create new mechanisms to discover, develop, and exploit new ideas
   a. Legal reform – extend liability protection for homeland security providers
   b. Create new prototypes for university-industry-national lab partnerships
      i. Experiment with mix of funding mechanisms, e.g. SEMATECH, InQTel, for security
      ii. Streamlined, standardized IP provisions based on best practices for universities and national labs
2. To rebalance security S&T research funding invested in basic research, dedicate 3 percent of national defense/homeland security budget to S&T and 20% of S&T budget to long-term research.
   a. Cost: Δ of $ in research spending
   b. Caveats/concerns: Need institutional champion in each agency?
3. Create a single national strategy to attract and retain the global best and brightest to US S&T enterprise
   a. Increase support for the National Defense Education Act (NDEA-21)
      i. Double the number of US students going into S&E and related security fields
      ii. Provide a national service educational benefit incentive
   b. Redesign visa, deemed export, and immigration policies to attract and retain foreign talent

**National and Homeland Security Focus Group**

**Anita Jones,** Lawrence R. Quarles Professor of Engineering and Applied Science, University of Virginia, *Chair*

**Ronald M. Atlas**, Graduate Dean, Professor of Biology, and Codirector, Center for the Deterrence of Biowarfare and Bioterrorism, University of Louisville
**Pierre Chao,** Senior Fellow and Director of Defense Industrial Initiatives, Center for Strategic and International Studies
**Richard T. Cupitt**, Senior Consultant, MKT, and Scholar-In-Residence, School of International Service, American University
**Kenneth Flamm**, Dean Rusk Professor of International Affairs, Lyndon B. Johnson School, University of Texas–Austin
**Alice P. Gast**, Robert T. Haslam Professor, Department of Chemical Engineering, and Vice President for Research and Associate Provost, Massachusetts Institute of Technology
**William Happer**, Professor, Department of Physics, Princeton University
**Robert Hermann**, Senior Partner, Global Technology Partners, LLC *(via videoconference)*
**Richard Johnson**, Senior Partner, Arnold and Porter, LLP
**James A. Lewis,** Senior Fellow and Director of Technology Public Policy, Center for Strategic and International Studies
**Daniel B.Poneman**, Principal, The Scowcroft Group
**Sheila R. Ronis**, President, The University Group, Inc.
**General Larry Welch (retired),** Senior Associate, Institute for Defense Analyses *(via videoconference)*
**Rear Admiral Robert H. Wertheim (retired)**, Consultant

**Focus Group Participant Biographies**

**MILLER ADAMS** is vice president of Boeing Technology Ventures, a unit of Boeing Phantom Works, the research and development organization of the Boeing Company. He leads a team responsible for the overall Enterprise Technology Planning Process for Boeing. He also is responsible for some aspects of external-technology acquisition strategies for Boeing, including the Evaluation of External Technology Solutions, International Industrial Technology Programs, Strategic Technology Alliances, Global University Research Collaborations, and Boeing's overall Global R&D Strategy. Mr. Adams is responsible for Boeing's internal incubator program known as the Chairman's Innovation Initiative and for value-creating strategies around spin-in business opportunities built on Boeing technologies. He received a BA from Seattle University and a law degree from the University of Puget Sound (now Seattle University School of Law). At Boeing, he serves as the executive focal between Boeing and Tuskegee University. In 2003, Mr. Adams received the Chairman's Award at the annual Black Engineer of the Year Awards Conference. He is involved in a broad array of professional and community organizations.

**ROBERT J. AIKEN** is the director of engineering for Cisco's International Academic Research and Technology Initiatives (ARTI). He manages a team of Internet and network technology experts who help to identify, define, and develop Cisco's next-generation Internet strategy and technologies via Cisco's university research and advanced network research infrastructure programs. He helped to design and deploy the Department of Energy's (DOE) international multi-protocol Energy Sciences Network and was the National Science Foundation's (NSF) manager for and coauthor of the NSF's very high performance Backbone Network Service and Network Access Points architecture, which commercialized the Internet in the early 1990s. He was a major contributor at both DOE and NSF to the development and implementation of the federal government's High Performance Computing and Communications Council and Next Generation Internet programs, specifically with respect to network research and distributed systems. With Javad Boroumand, he is responsible for Cisco's leadership role in the National Lambda Rail. He has also been an assistant professor of computer science and a college information technology director, and he serves on the National Research Council's Transportation Research Board Subcommittee on Telecommuting and Internet 2's Industry Advisory Council.

**RONALD M. ATLAS** is the graduate dean, professor of biology, and codirector of the Center for the Deterrence of Biowarfare and Bioterrorism at the University of Louisville. He has his BS from the State University of New York at Stony Brook and his MS and PhD from Rutgers University. He was a postdoctoral fellow at the Jet Propulsion Laboratory, where he worked on Mars life detection. He is a member of the Department of Homeland Security Science and Technology Advisory Committee, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration's Planetary Protection Board, and the Federal Bureau of Investigation's Scientific Working Group on Microbial Genetics and Forensics. He previously served as president of the American Society for Microbiology (ASM), cochaired the ASM Task Force on Biological Weapons, and was a member of the National Institutes of Health Recombinant DNA Advisory committee. His early research focused on oil spills, and he discovered bioremediation as part of his doctoral studies. Later, he turned to the molecular detection of pathogens in the environment, which forms the basis for biosensors to detect biothreat agents. He is the author of nearly 300 manuscripts and 20 books. He is a fellow of the American Academy of Microbiology and has received the ASM Award for Applied and Environmental Microbiology, the ASM Founders Award, and the Edmund Youde Lectureship Award in Hong Kong. He regularly advises the US government on policy issues related to the deterrence of bioterrorism.

**PAUL AVERY** is professor of physics at the University of Florida. He received his PhD in high-energy physics from the University of Illinois in 1980. His research is in experimental high-energy physics and he participates in the CLEO experiment at Cornell University and the Compact Muon

Solenoid experiment at CERN, Geneva. Avery is the director of two National Science Foundation (NSF)-funded Grid projects, Grid Physics Networks, and the International Virtual Data Grid Laboratory. Both are collaborations of computer scientists, physicists, and astronomers conducting grid research applied to several frontier experiments in physics and astronomy with massive computational and data needs. He is co-principal investigator of the NSF-funded projects, Center for High Energy Physics Research and Education Outreach and UltraLight, and is one of the principals seeking to establish the Open Science Grid.

**GARY BACHULA** is the vice president for external relations for Internet2. He has substantial government and not-for-profit experience and an extensive history of leadership in technology development. Most recently, Dr. Bachula served as acting under secretary of commerce for technology at the US Department of Commerce, where he led the formation of government-industry partnerships around such programs as GPS and the Partnership for a New Generation of Vehicles. As vice president for the Consortium for International Earth Science Information Network (CIESIN) from 1991 to 1993, he managed strategic planning and program development for the organization designated to build a distributed information network as part of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration's (NASA) Mission to Planet Earth. From 1986 to 1990, he chaired the Michigan governor's Cabinet Council, and from 1974 to 1986, he served as chief of staff to US Representative Bob Traxler of Michigan and advised on appropriations for NASA, Environmental Protection Agency, the National Science Foundation, and other federal R&D agencies. Dr. Bachula holds undergraduate and law (JD) degrees from Harvard University. He served at the Pentagon in the US Army during the Vietnam war.

**CAROLYN R. BACON** is executive director of the O'Donnell Foundation in Dallas. The purpose of the foundation is to support quality education, especially in science and engineering. She previously served as administrative assistant to former Senator John Tower of Texas. In 1989, she was appointed to the White House Education Policy and Advisory Council. President George H.W. Bush also appointed her to the Board of the Corporation for Public Broadcasting, where she served as chairman of the Education Committee. Texas Governor Clements appointed her to a 6-year term on the Texas Higher Education Coordinating Board and former Governor George Bush named her the first chairman of the Telecommunications Infrastructure Fund Board of Texas. In 2003-2004 she served as the governor's public member on the Texas Joint Select Committee on Public School Finance. Her board memberships include the National Center for Educational Accountability, the College of Computing at the Georgia Institute of Technology, Advanced Placement Strategies, Inc. of Dallas, and the Foundation for the Education of Young Women. She is a member of the Junior League of Dallas and Charter 100 of Dallas. She holds a BA in political science from the College of William and Mary.

**ANGELA BELCHER** is the John Chipman Associate Professor of Materials Science and Engineering and Biological Engineering at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. She is a materials chemist with expertise in biomaterials, biomolecular materials, organic-inorganic interfaces, and solid-state chemistry. She received her BS in creative studies with an emphasis in biochemistry and molecular biology and a PhD in inorganic chemistry from the University of California, Santa Barbara (UCSB). After a year of postdoctoral research in electrical engineering at UCSB, Dr. Belcher joined the faculty at the University of Texas at Austin in the Department of Chemistry and Biochemistry in 1999. Her interest focuses on interfaces, including the interfaces of scientific disciplines and the interfaces of materials. Dr. Belcher and her students have pioneered a novel, noncovalent self-organizational approach that uses evolutionarily selected and engineered peptides to recognize and bind electronic and magnetic building blocks. She was recently awarded an annual MacArthur Foundation Fellowship. Her recent awards include the 2004 Four Star General Recognition Award (US Army), 2003 Top 10 Innovators Under 40 (*Fortune* magazine), the 2002 World Technology Award (*Materials* magazine), 2002 *Popular Science* Brilliant Ten, and 2002 *Technology Review* Top 100 Inventors. In 2002, she was named as one of 12 women expected to make

the biggest impact in chemistry in the next century by *Chemical and Engineering News* and was runner-up for Innovator of the Year and runner-up for Researcher of the Year by *Small Times Magazine*, and finalist for Scientist of the Year by *Wired* magazine. She is a 2001 Packard Fellow, 2001 Alfred P. Sloan Research Fellow, and has received the 2000 Presidential Early Career Award for Science and Engineering, 2000 Beckman Young Investigator Award, 1999 DuPont Young Investigator Award, and a 1999 Army Research Office Young Investigators Award.

**SUSAN BERARDI** worked in management and employee development for nearly 10 years before leaving corporate America to become a full-time mother of three young boys. At such companies as FMC Defense Systems, Motorola, and IDX Systems Corporation, she worked with managers and technical teams to improve the intangible assets that drove performance and bottom-line results. In addition to one-on-one executive coaching, she facilitated and trained numerous technical teams to resolve customer-service and team-performance issues that were hindering company profitability. She also designed selection and retention programs to attract and keep best-in-class technical and managerial talent. As an independent consultant, Ms. Berardi provided leadership training and facilitation for several start-up technology companies in Massachusetts and California. She has been a guest speaker for the Society of Concurrent Engineering and the International Council on Systems Engineering. Most recently, Ms. Berardi has been working pro bono for the Reading and North Andover School Districts in Massachusetts, facilitating administrative retreats and bringing teachers and parents together to improve student reading, mathematics, and arts capabilities. She worked with school administrators to create a tool to measure and improve the return on investment of a school district. She has also written several articles on behalf of these schools in an effort to educate taxpayers on budget and curriculum issues, special-education costs and legal requirements, and the importance of foreign languages and the arts in early education. Ms. Berardi has an MA degree in labor relations and a BA from the University of Illinois.

**RON BLACKWELL** is chief economist of the American Federation of Labor and Congress of Industrial Unions (AFL-CIO), where he coordinates the economic agenda of the federation and represents AFL-CIO on corporate and economic issues affecting American workers and union strategies. From 1996 to 2004, he was the director of the AFL-CIO Corporate Affairs Department. Before coming to the AFL-CIO, Mr. Blackwell was assistant to the president of the Amalgamated Clothing and Textile Workers Union and chief economist of UNITE. Before joining the labor movement, he was an academic dean in the Seminar College of the New School for Social Research in New York, where he taught economics, politics, and philosophy. Mr. Blackwell represents the American labor movement on the Economic Policy Working Group of the Trade Union Advisory Committee to the Organisation for Economic Co-Operation and Development (OECD) and participated in formulation of the *OECD Principles of Corporate Governance* and the recent review of the *OECD Guidelines for Multinational Enterprises*. He serves on the Board of Directors of the Industrial Relations Research Association; the Research Advisory Council of the Economic Policy Institute; the Board on Manufacturing and Engineering Design of the National Academies; the advisory boards of the Jackson Hole Center for Global Affairs and the International Center for Corporate Governance and Accountability at the George Washington University Law School; and the Editorial Boards of *Perspectives on Work* and the *New Labor Forum*. He recently received the Nat Weinberg Award from the Walter P. Reuther Library for service to the labor movement and social justice. He is author of "Corporate Accountability or Business as Usual", in *New Labor Forum* (summer 2003) and "Globalization and the American Labor Movement" in the book edited by Steve Fraser and Joshua Freeman, *Audacious Democracy: Labor, Intellectuals and the Social Reconstruction of America.* He is also coeditor of *Worldly Philosophy: Essays in Political and Historical Economics*, a festschrift for Robert Heilbroner.

**ROLF K. BLANK** is director of education indicators at the Council of Chief State School Officers where he has been a senior staff member for 17 years. He is responsible for developing, managing, and

reporting a system of state-by-state and national indicators of the condition and quality of education in public schools. Dr. Blank is directing the council's work with the US Department of Education on state education indicators and accountability systems, which provides annual trends for each state on student outcomes, school programs, and staff and school demographics. In addition, he is directing a 3-year experimental design study on improving effectiveness of instruction in mathematics and science with data on enacted surriculum, supported by the National Science Foundation. He coordinates two state collaborative projects—one on accountability systems and one on surveys of enacted curriculum—that provide technical assistance and professional development to state education leaders and staff. In his council leadership role, Blank collaborates with state education leaders, researchers, and professional organizations in directing program-evaluation studies and technical-assistance projects aimed at improving the quality of K-12 public education. He holds a PhD from Florida State University and an MA from the University of Wisconsin-Madison.

**CRAIG BLUE** [NAE] is a Distinguished Research Engineer and the group leader of the Materials Processing Group of the Metals and Ceramics Division at Oak Ridge National Laboratory (ORNL). He received his PhD in materials science from the University of Cincinnati and finished his studies while under a National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) Fellowship at NASA Lewis Research Center. He came to ORNL in March 1995, where he initiated and developed the Infrared Processing Center in the Materials Processing Group. The center has projects with the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency, the US Army, Department of Energy, NASA, and industry. The center has two of the most powerful plasma arc lamps in the world and has enabling technology of functionalization of nanomaterials with collaborations across the laboratory and across the United States. Dr. Blue has been instrumental in the revitalization and evolution of the Materials Processing Group, became group leader in January 2004, and is developing a new Advanced Materials Processing Laboratory and associated programs. He has over 60 open-literature publications, five patents, and 60 technical presentations. He has received numerous honors, including an R&D 100 Award on the development of advanced infrared heating, and UT/Battelle Distinguished Engineer of the Year. He was selected to attend the National Academy of Engineering's Ninth Annual Symposium on Frontiers of Engineering in 2003, and the International Symposium on Frontiers of Engineering in Japan in 2004. He serves on the steering committee for the National Space and Missile Materials Symposium and on a technical board for the Next Generation Manufacturing Initiative. He is working with colleagues in the evolution of an enabling pulse thermal processing technique for flexible electronics, titanium processing, and bulk amorphous materials.

**SUSAN BUTTS** is the director of external technology at the Dow Chemical Company. She is responsible for Dow's sponsored research programs at over 150 universities, institutes, and national laboratories worldwide and for Dow's contract research activities with US and European government agencies. She also holds the position of global staffing leader for R&D with responsibility for recruiting and hiring programs. Before joining the external-technology group, Dr. Butts held several other positions at Dow, including senior resource leader for atomic spectroscopy and inorganic analysis in the Analytical Sciences Laboratory, manager of PhD hiring and placement, safety and regulatory affairs manager for Central Research, and principal investigator on various catalysis research projects in Central Research.

**RODGER W. BYBEE** is executive director of the Biological Sciences Curriculum Study (BSCS), a nonprofit organization that develops curriculum materials, provides professional development, and conducts research and evaluation for the science-education community. Before joining BSCS, he was executive director of the National Research Council's Center for Science, Mathematics, and Engineering Education. Between 1986 and 1995, he was associate director of BSCS. Bybee participated in the development of the National Science Education Standards, and in 1993-1995 he chaired its content working group. At BSCS, he was principal investigator for four new National Science Foundation (NSF) programs: the elementary-school program, Science for Life and Living: Integrating Science, Technology,

and Health; the middle school program, Middle School Science and Technology; the high-school biology program Biological Science: A Human Approach, and the college program, Biological Perspectives. His work at BSCS also included serving as principal investigator for programs to develop curriculum frameworks for teaching about the history and nature of science and technology in high schools, community colleges, and 4-year colleges and curriculum reform based on national standards. From 1990 to 1992, Dr. Bybee chaired the curriculum and instruction study panel for the National Center for Improving Science Education (NCISE). From 1972 to 1985, he was professor of education at Carleton College in Northfield, Minnesota. He has taught science in the elementary school, junior and senior high school, and college. Dr. Bybee has written widely in education and psychology. He is coauthor of the leading textbook, *Teaching Secondary School Science: Strategies for Developing Scientific Literacy*. His most recent book is *Achieving Scientific Literacy: From Purposes to Practices*, published in 1997. He has received several awards, including Leader of American Education and Outstanding Educator in America, in 1979 he was Outstanding Science Educator of the Year, and in 1998 the National Science Teachers Association presented him its Distinguished Service to Science Education Award.

**PIERRE CHAO** is a senior fellow and director of defense industrial initiatives at the Center for Strategic and International Studies (CSIS). Before joining CSIS, Mr. Chao was a managing director and senior aerospace-defense analyst at Credit Suisse First Boston (CSFB) in 1999-2003, where he was responsible for following the US and global aerospace-defense industry. He remains a CSFB senior adviser. Before joining CFSB, he was the senior aerospace-defense analyst at Morgan Stanley Dean Witter in 1995-1999. He served as the senior industry analyst at Smith Barney during 1994 and as a director at JSA International, a Boston and Paris-based management-consulting firm that focused on the aerospace-defense industry (1986-1988 and1990-1993).Mr. Chao was also a cofounder of JSA Research, an equity research boutique specializing in the aerospace-defense industry. Before signing on with JSA, he worked in the New York and London offices of Prudential-Bache Capital Funding as a mergers and acquisitions banker focusing on aerospace and defense (1988-1990). Mr. Chao garnered numerous awards while working on Wall Street. *Institutional Investor* ranked his team the number 1 global aerospace-defense group in 2000-2002, and he was on the *Institutional Investor* All-America Research Team every year he was eligible in 1996-2002. He was ranked the number 1 aerospace-defense analyst by corporations in the 1998-2000 Reuters Polls, and the number 1 aerospace-defense analyst in the 1995-1999 Greenwich Associates polls and appeared on the *Wall Street Journal* All-Star list in four of seven eligible years. In 2000, Mr. Chao was appointed to the Presidential Commission on Offsets in International Trade. He is also a guest lecturer at the National Defense University and the Defense Acquisition University. He has been sought out as an expert analyst of the defense and aerospace industry by the Senate Committee on Armed Services, , the House Committee on Science, the Office of the Secretary of Defense, Department of Defense (DoD) Defense Science Board, the Army Science Board, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, the French General Delegation for Armament, North Atlantic Treaty Organization, and the Aerospace Industries Association Board of Governors. Mr. Chao earned dual BS degrees in political science and management science from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

**PAUL CITRON** [NAE] retired as vice president of Technology Policy and Academic Relations at Medtronic, Inc. in 2003 after 32 years with the company. His previous position was vice president of science and technology; he had responsibility for corporation-wide assessment and coordination of technology initiatives and for priority-setting in corporate research. Citron was awarded a BS in electrical engineering from Drexel University in 1969 and an MS in electrical engineering from the University of Minnesota in 1972. He was elected to the National Academy of Engineering in 2003 for "innovations in technologies for monitoring cardiac rhythm and for patient-initiated cardiac pacing, and for outstanding contributions to industry-academia interactions". Mr. Citron was elected founding fellow of the American Institute of Medical and Biological Engineering in January 1993, has twice won the American College of

Cardiology Governor's Award for Excellence, and in 1980 was inducted as a fellow of the Medtronic Bakken Society, the company's highest technical recognition. He has written numerous publications and holds eight US medical-device patents. In 1980, he was given Medtronic's Invention of Distinction award for his role as coinventor of the tined pacing lead. He has been a visiting professor at Georgia Institute of Technology and the University of California, San Diego where he taught corporate entrepreneurship.

**RICHARD T. CUPITT** is a senior consultant to MKT and a scholar-in-residence in the School of International Service of American University. He served as the special adviser to the under secretary of commerce for industry and security. Before joining the Department of Commerce in January 2002, Dr. Cupitt worked as the associate director and Washington liaison for the Center for International Trade and Security of the University of Georgia, and as a visiting scholar at the Center for Strategic and International Studies in Washington, DC. Dr. Cupitt received his PhD from the University of Georgia in 1985 and taught at Emory University and the University of North Texas before returning to the University of Georgia. In addition to his most recent book, *Reluctant Champions: U.S. Presidential Policy and Strategic Export Controls--Truman, Eisenhower, Bush and Clinton* (Routledge, 2000), Cupitt has coedited two books on export controls and is a coauthor of a forthcoming book. His articles on export-controls have appeared in many scholarly journals. He has contributed to the work of several national study commissions, served on US delegations to international export control conferences, and regularly testified before Congress on export controls. Dr. Cupitt has conducted fieldwork on export controls in more than a dozen countries and has served as a consultant to Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory, Argonne National Laboratory, and the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development. Dr. Cupitt is a former governor's fellow with the Georgia World Congress Institute and a National Merit Scholar.

**HAI-LUNG DAI** is the Hirschmann-Makineni Chair Professor of Chemistry at the University of Pennsylvania. He came to the University of California, Berkeley for graduate study in 1976 after graduating from the National Taiwan University and military service. Dai did postdoctoral research at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. He joined the University of Pennsylvania faculty as assistant professor in 1984, and was promoted to full professor in 1992. He served as chairman of the Chemistry Department from 1996-2002. In addition to his academic appointment, Dr. Dai currently holds a gubernatorial appointment in the Pennsylvania State Board on Drugs, Devices and Cosmetics. He is a fellow of the American Physical Society and is chair-elect of its Chemical Physics Division. Dr. Dai has published more than 140 papers in molecular and surface sciences. His major research accomplishments include the discovery of the dominating contribution of long-range interactions in collision energy transfer, the development of Fourier transform spectroscopy with fast time resolution and multiple-resonance spectroscopy for detecting unstable molecules and transient radicals, and the development of nonlinear optical techniques for probing molecule-surface interactions. He has received many honors, including the Coblentz Prize in Molecular Spectroscopy, the Morino Lectureship of Japan, the American Chemical Society Philadelphia Section Award, and a Guggenheim Fellowship. In 2000, Dr. Dai established a pioneering master's degree program at the University of Pennsylvania for inservice high-school chemistry teachers to receive content-intensive training. In 2004, the program became the Penn Science Teacher Institute with Dr. Dai as director, and the Institute enlarged to include middle-school teachers.

**CHAD EVANS** is vice president of the Council on Competitiveness National Innovation Initiative (NII), a private-sector effort aimed at developing and implementing a national innovation agenda for the United States. Cochaired by IBM Chairman and Chief Executive Officer Samuel J. Palmisano and Georgia Institute of Technology President G. Wayne Clough, the NII involves the active participation of nearly 400 innovation thought-leaders and stakeholders across the country.Mr. Evans also spearheads the council's benchmarking efforts, including its flagship publication, *The Competitiveness Index,* chaired by

Michael Porter, of the Harvard Business School. Mr. Evans' work at the council has focused on understanding the globalization of R&D investments, assessing the strengths and weaknesses of the US innovation platform, and benchmarking national innovative capacities in developed and emerging economies. He was a senior associate with the Council during the 1990s and returned to the Council and Washington, DC, after a stint in Deloitte & Touche's National Research and Analysis Office, where he provided the firm's senior leadership with daily competitive-intelligence briefings. He holds a MS in foreign service from the Georgetown University School of Foreign Service, with an honors concentration in international business diplomacy from Georgetown's Landegger Program, and a BA from Emory University.

**JOAN FERRINI-MUNDY** is associate dean for science and mathematics education and outreach in the College of Natural Science at Michigan State University (MSU). Her faculty appointments are in mathematics and teacher education. She holds a PhD in mathematics education from the University of New Hampshire and was a faculty member in mathematics there in 1983-1995. Dr. Ferrini-Mundy taught mathematics at Mount Holyoke College from 1982-1983, where she cofounded the Summer Math for Teachers program. She served as a visiting scientist at the National Science Foundation in 1989-1991. She has chaired the National Council of Teachers of Mathematics'(NCTM) Research Advisory Committee and the American Educational Research Association in Special Interest Group for Research in Mathematics Education, and she was a member of the NCTM Board of Directors. Dr. Ferrini-Mundy came to MSU in 1999 from the National Research Council's Center for Science, Mathematics, and Engineering Education, where she served as director of the Mathematical Sciences Education Board. Her research interests are in calculus learning and K-14 mathematics-education reform. She chairs the writing group for Standards 2000, the revision of the NCTM standards.

**KENNETH FLAMM** is the Dean Rusk Professor of International Affairs at the Lyndon B. Johnson School of Public Affairs at the University of Texas at Austin. Earlier, he worked at the Brookings Institution in Washington, DC, where he served for 11 years as a senior fellow in the Foreign Policy Studies Program. He is a 1973 honors graduate of Stanford University and received a PhD in economics from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology in 1979. From 1993 to 1995, Dr. Flamm served as principal deputy assistant secretary of defense for economic security and special assistant to the deputy secretary of defense for dual use technology policy. He was awarded the department's Distinguished Public Service Medal by Defense Secretary William J. Perry in 1995. Dr. Flamm has been a professor of economics at the Instituto Tecnológico de México in Mexico City, the University of Massachusetts, and George Washington University. He has also been an adviser to the director general of income policy in the Mexican Ministry of Finance and a consultant to the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, the World Bank, the National Academy of Sciences, the Latin American Economic System, the US Department of Defense, the US Department of Justice, the US Agency for International Development, and the Office of Technology Assessment of the US Congress. He has played an active role in the National Research Council's committee on Government-Industry Partnerships and played a key role in that committee's review of the Small Business Innovation Research Program at the Department of Defense. Dr. Flamm has made major contributions to our understanding of the growth of the electronics industry, with a particular focus on the development of the computer and the US semiconductor industry. He is working on an analytic study of the post-Cold War defense industrial base and has expert knowledge of international trade and high-technology industry issues.

**BRUCE FUCHS**, an immunologist who did research on the interaction between the brain and the immune system, is the director of the National Institutes of Health (NIH) Office of Science Education. Dr. Fuchs directs the creation of a series of K-12 science-education curriculum supplements that highlight the medical research findings of NIH. The supplements are designed to meet teacher educational goals as outlined in the *National Science Education Standards* and are available free to teachers across the nation.

The office is also creating innovative science and career-education Web resources that will be accessible to teachers and students with a variety of disabilities. Before coming to NIH, Dr. Fuchs was a researcher and teacher at the Medical College of Virginia with grant support from the National Institute of Mental Health and the National Institute on Drug Abuse. He has a BS in biology from the University of Illinois and a PhD in immunology from Indiana State University. Dr. Fuchs has organized and participated in numerous science-education outreach efforts directed at students, teachers, and the public. Dr. Fuchs has organized more than a dozen "Mini-Med School" and "Science in the Cinema" programs for the public and Congress since his arrival in at NIH.

**ELSA M. GARMIRE** [NAE] is Sydney E. Jenkins Professor of Engineering at Dartmouth College She received her AB at Harvard and her PhD at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, both in physics. After postdoctoral work at the California Institute of Technology, she spent 20 years at the University of Southern California, where she was eventually named William Hogue Professor of Electrical Engineering and director of the Center for Laser Studies. She came to Dartmouth in 1995 and served 2 years as dean of Thayer School. Author of over 250 journal papers and holder of nine patents, she has been on the Editorial Boards of five technical journals. Dr. Garmire is a member of the National Academy of Engineering and the American Academy of Arts and Sciences and a fellow of the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, the American Physical Society, and the Optical Society of America, of which she was president; she has served on the boards of three other professional societies. In 1994, she received the Society of Women Engineers Achievement Award. She has been a Fulbright senior lecturer and a visiting faculty member in Japan, Australia, Germany, and China. She has been chair of the National Science Foundation (NSF) Advisory Committee on Engineering Technology and served on the NSF Advisory Committee on Engineering and the Air Force Science Advisory Board.

**ALICE P. GAST** is the Robert T. Haslam Professor in the Department of Chemical Engineering and the vice president for research and associate provost of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. Until 2001, she was a professor of chemical engineering at Stanford University, and professor of the Stanford Synchrotron Radiation Laboratory and professor, by courtesy, of chemistry at Stanford. Dr. Gast earned her BS in chemical engineering at the University of Southern California in 1980 and her PhD in chemical engineering from Princeton University in 1984. She spent a postdoctoral year on a North Atlantic Treaty Organization fellowship at the Ecole Superieure de Physique et de Chimie Industrielles in Paris. She was on the faculty at Stanford from 1985 to 2001 and returned to Paris for a sabbatical as a John Simon Guggenheim Memorial Foundation Fellow in 1991 and to Munich, Germany, as a Humboldt Fellow in 1999. In Dr. Gast's research, the aim is to understand the behavior of complex fluids through a combination of colloid science, polymer physics, and statistical mechanics. In 1992, she received the National Academy of Sciences Award for Initiative in Research and the Colburn Award of the American Institute of Chemical Engineers. She was the 1995 Langmuir Lecturer for the American Chemical Society. Dr. Gast is a member of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences. She served as a member and then cochair of the National Research Council's Board on Chemical Sciences and Technology and now serves on the Division on Earth and Life Studies Committee. She also serves on the Homeland Security Science and Technology Advisory Committee.

**M.R.C. GREENWOOD** [IOM] is provost and senior vice president for academic affairs for the 10-campus University of California (UC) system. She previously served as chancellor of UC, Santa Cruz, a position she held from July 1996 to March 2004. In addition to her administrative responsibilities, Dr. Greenwood holds a UC, Santa Cruz appointment as professor of biology. Before her UC Santa Cruz appointments, Dr. Greenwood served as dean of graduate studies, vice provost for academic outreach, and professor of biology and internal medicine at UC, Davis. Previously, she taught at Vassar College, where she was the John Guy Vassar Professor of Natural Sciences and chair of the Biology Department. Dr. Greenwood is a member of the Institute of Medicine, a fellow of the California Academy of Sciences, and

a member of the Board of Directors of the California Healthcare Institute. She is a fellow and past president of the American Association for the Advancement of Science and a member of the Board of Directors of the National Association of State Universities and Land-Grant Colleges. Among her numerous distinctions, she was a member of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Science Advisory Board and of the Task Force on the Future of Science Programs at the US Department of Energy. She is a former member of the National Science Board and the Laboratory Operations Board of the US Department of Energy. She was chairman of the National Research Council's Office of Science and Engineering Policy Advisory Board and now serves as chair of its Policy and Global Affairs Division. She is a member of the National Commission on Writing in American's Schools and Colleges, appointed by the College Board. From November 1993 to May 1995, Dr. Greenwood was associate director for science at the Office of Science and Technology Policy. In that position, she supervised the Science Division, directing budget development for the multi-billion dollar fundamental-science national effort and development of science-policy documents, including *Science in the National Interest*. She was also responsible for interagency coordination, cochaired two National Science and Technology Council committees, and provided advice on a $17 billion budget for fundamental science. Dr. Greenwood graduated summa cum laude from Vassar College and received her PhD from the Rockefeller University. Her research interests are in developmental cell biology, genetics, physiology, nutrition, and science and higher-education policy.

**HEIDI E. HAMM** is the Earl W. Sutherland, Jr., Professor and chair of pharmacology at Vanderbilt University. Hamm obtained her PhD in zoology in 1980 from the University of Texas-Austin and performed her postdoctoral training at the University of Wisconsin-Madison from 1980 to 1983. Her initial research centered around circadian clocks and melatonin synthesis in the avian retina; her postdoctoral work investigated the role of transducin in visual transduction using blocking monoclonal antibodies. She held faculty appointments at the University of Illinois at Chicago School of Medicine and Northwestern University before moving to Vanderbilt in 2000 to chair the Department of Pharmacology. Hamm studies a specific mechanism of neuronal communication known as G-protein signaling. G-protein-mediated signaling is a critical part of biologic function in the brain and other body systems. Because many pharmaceuticals are targeted to G-protein signaling cascades, gaining a better understanding of their function is crucial to developing more efficient treatments and designing better drugs. Her research focuses on the structure and function of guanine triphosphate binding proteins and the molecular mechanisms of signal transduction. Dr. Hamm has received numerous awards, including the Glaxo Cardiovascular Discovery Award, two Distinguished Investigator Awards from the National Alliance for Research in Schizophrenia and Depression, the Faculty of the Year award from the University of Illinois College of Medicine, and the Stanley Cohen Award "For Research Bringing Diverse Disciplines, such as Chemistry or Physics, to Solving Biology's Most Important Fundamental Problems" from Vanderbilt University in 2003. She gave the Fritz Lipmann Lecture at the American Society for Biochemistry and Molecular Biology (ASBMB) in 2001. She is president-elect of the ASBMB; she previously served as the organization's secretary (1995-1998) and program chair (1998). She has served on the Editorial Boards of the *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, *Biochemistry*, and *Investigative Ophthalmology and Visual Science*. She is a member of the Editorial Boards of *Molecular Pharmacology* and the *American Journal of Physiology - Lung Cellular and Molecular Physiology*. She was a member of the Scientific Advisory Board of Medichem Life Sciences in 2000-2002. She is a founder and member of the Scientific Advisory Board of cue Biotech.

**WILLIAM HAPPER** [NAS] is a professor in the Department of Physics at Princeton University. He is a specialist in modern optics, optical and radiofrequency spectroscopy of atoms and molecules, and spin-polarized atoms and nuclei. He received a BS in physics from the University of North Carolina in 1960 and a PhD in physics from Princeton University in 1964. Dr. Happer began his academic career in 1964 at Columbia University as a member of the research and teaching staff of the Physics Department. While

serving as a professor of physics, he also served as codirector of the Columbia Radiation Laboratory from 1971 to 1976 and director from 1976 to 1979. In 1980, he joined the faculty at Princeton University. He was named the Class of 1909 Professor of Physics in 1988. In 1991,, he was appointed director of energy research in the department of energy (DOE) by President Bush. While serving in that capacity under Secretary of Energy James Watkins, he oversaw a basic research budget of some $3 billion, which included much of the federal funding for high-energy and nuclear physics, materials science, magnetic confinement fusion, environmental science, biology, the Human Genome Project, and other work. He remained at DOE until 1993 to help during the transition to the Clinton administration. He was reappointed professor of physics at Princeton University on in 1993 and named Eugene Higgens Professor of Physics and chair of the University Research Board in 1995. Dr. Happer has maintained an interest in applied, as well as basic, science and has served as a consultant to numerous firms, charitable foundations, and government agencies. From 1987 to 1990, he served as chairman of the Steering Committee of JASON, a group of scientists and engineers who advise agencies of the federal government on defense, intelligence, energy policy, and other technical matters. He is a trustee of the MITRE Corporation and the Richard Lounsbery Foundation and a cofounder in 1994 of Magnetic Imaging Technologies Incorporated (MITI), a small company specializing in the use of laser polarized noble gases for magnetic resonance imaging. MITI was purchased by Nycomed Amersham in 1999. Dr. Happer is a fellow of the American Physical Society and the American Association for the Advancement of Science, and a member of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, the National Academy of Sciences, and the American Philosophical Society. He was awarded an Alfred P. Sloan Fellowship in 1966, an Alexander von Humboldt Award in 1976, the 1997 Broida Prize and the 1999 Davisson-Germer Prize of the American Physical Society, and the Thomas Alva Edison Patent Award in 2000.

**DANIEL HASTINGS** is professor of aeronautics and astronautics and engineering systems at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). He joined the MIT faculty as an assistant professor in 1985, advancing to associate professor in 1988 and full professor in 1993. He earned a PhD and an SM from MIT in aeronautics and astronautics in 1980 and 1978, respectively, and received a BA in mathematics from Oxford University, England, in 1976. Dr. Hastings served as chief scientist to the US Air Force from 1997 to 1999. In that role, he served as chief scientific adviser to the chief of staff and the secretary and provided assessments on a wide array of scientific and technical issues affecting the Air Force mission. He led several influential studies on where the Air Force should invest in space, global energy projection, and options for a science and technology workforce for the 21st century. Dr. Hastings' recent research has concentrated on space systems and space policy and on issues related to spacecraft-environment interactions, space propulsion, space-systems engineering, and space policy; and he has published many papers and a book on those subjects. He has led several national studies on government investment in space technology. Dr. Hastings is a fellow of the American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics and a member of the International Academy of Astronautics. He is a member of the National Science Board and of the Applied Physics Laboratory Science and Technology Advisory Panel, and the chair of Air Force Scientific Advisory Board. He is a member of the MIT Lincoln Laboratory Advisory Committee and is on the Board of Trustees of the Aerospace Corporation. He has served on several national committees on issues in national security space.

**ROBERT HERMANN** is a senior partner of Global Technology Partners, LLC, which specializes in investments in technology, defense, aerospace, and related businesses worldwide. In 1998, Hermann retired from United Technologies Corporation (UTC), where he held the position of senior vice president, science for and technology. In that role, he was responsible for ensuring the development of the company's technical resources and the full exploitation of science and technology by the corporation. He was also responsible for the United Technologies Research Center. Hermann joined the company in 1982 as vice-president for systems technology in the electronics sector and later served in a series of assignments in the defense and space systems groups before being named vice-president for science and

technology. Before joining UTC, he served for 20 years with the National Security Agency with assignments in research and development, operations, and North Atlantic Treaty Organization. In 1977, he was appointed principal deputy assistant secretary of defense for communications, command, control, and intelligence. In 1979, he was named assistant secretary of the Air Force for research, development, and logistics and in parallel was director of the National Reconnaissance Office. He received his BS, MS, and PhD in electrical engineering from Iowa State University.

**KENT H. HUGHES** is the director of the Woodrow Wilson International Center for Scholar's Program on Science, Technology, America, and the Global Economy. He served as US associate deputy secretary of commerce from 1993 to 1999. He was also president of the Council on Competitiveness, senior economist of the Congressional Joint Economic Committee, and chief economist to Senate Majority Leader Robert C. Byrd. He is the author of *Building the Next American Century: The Past and Future of American Economic Competitiveness*. He holds a PhD in economics from Washington University in St. Louis, an LLB from Harvard Law School, and a BA from Yale University.

**MARK S. HUMAYUN** is professor of ophthalmology, biomedical engineering, and cell and neurobiology at the University of Southern California (USC). He received his BS from Georgetown University in 1984, his MD from Duke University in 1989, and his PhD from the University of North Carolina-Chapel Hill in 1994. He finished his training by completing an ophthalmology residency at Duke and a fellowship in vitreoretinal diseases at Johns Hopkins Hospital. He stayed on as a faculty member at Johns Hopkins and rose to the rank of associate professor before moving to USC in 2001. Humayun is the director of USC's National Science Foundation Biomimetic MicroElectronics Systems Engineering Research Center. He is also the codeveloper of a retinal implant that has received wide attention for its potential to restore sight and is the director of the US Department of Energy (DOE) Artificial Retina Project that is a consortium of five DOE laboratories, four universities, and industry. Dr. Humayun's research projects focus on the most challenging eye diseases: retinal degeneration, including macular degeneration and retinitis pigmentosa. He is a member of 11 academic organizations, including IEEE-Engineering in Medical and Biology and Society, the Biomedical Engineering Society, the Association for Research in Vision and Ophthalmology, the American Society of Retinal Specialists, the Retina Society, the American Ophthalmological Society, and the American Academy of Ophthalmology. In the last 5 years, as a principal investigator, he has held multiple research grants from the National Science Foundation, DOE, and Second Sight, and oversight on three grants totalling $20 million in funding. He also holds three patents in the retinal prosthesis artificial-vision field. Humayun has written more than 70 peer-reviewed papers and more than 19 chapters. He has been a guest speaker in 90 lectures around the world.

**MADELEINE JACOBS** has been executive director and chief executive officer of the American Chemical Society (ACS) since January 2004. Before then, she served for 8 ½ years as editor-in-chief of *Chemical & Engineering News* magazine, the weekly newsmagazine of the chemical world published by ACS, and 2 years as managing editor. She has held other senior management positions in a wide variety of scientific and educational organizations, including the National Institutes of Health, the National Institute of Standards and Technology, and the Smithsonian Institution, where she served as the director of public affairs. Her professional interests include trends in the chemical industry, the public image of chemistry, employment trends, minority-group representation, and equality of the sexes in science.

**RICHARD JOHNSON** is a senior partner in the Washington, DC office of Arnold & Porter, LLP. He specializes in legal, regulatory, and public-policy issues related to fundamental research, technology, innovation and innovative strategic relationships, especially with respect to biotechnology and life sciences, nanotechnology, and other emerging technologies; intellectual property, trade, and innovation matters; and research-university and independent-research institute legal and policy issues. He formerly

served as general counsel for international trade at the US Department of Commerce, where he was responsible for both trade-policy and international-technology issues. Dr. Johnson has served as a US delegate to numerous international trade, health-innovation, and international-technology meetings, and he has testified before the US Congress and international organizations. In addition to receiving his JD from the Yale Law School, where he was editor of the *Yale Law Journal*, he received his MS from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) where he was a National Science Foundation national fellow. He is a member of the MIT Corporation's Visiting Committee and several other university and think-tank advisory boards. Dr. Johnson serves as chairman of the Organisation for Economic Co-operation Development/Business and Industry Advisory Committee Biotechnology Committee, vice chairman of the OECD Technology and Innovation Committee, and cochair of its health innovation and nanotechnology task forces, and he participates on a wide range of advisory committees and task forces related to health innovation, intellectual-property and innovation policy, science and security, and the globalization of research.

**RANDY H. KATZ** [NAE] is the United Microelectronics Corporation Distinguished Professor in Electrical Engineering and Computer Science at the University of California, Berkeley. He received his undergraduate degree from Cornell University and his MS and PhD from the University of California, Berkeley. He joined the faculty at Berkeley in 1983. He is a fellow of the Association for Computing Machinery (ACM) and the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), and a member of the National Academy of Engineering and the American Academy of Arts and Sciences. He has published over 230 refereed technical papers, book chapters, and books. His hardware-design textbook, *Contemporary Logic Design*, has sold over 85,000 copies worldwide and has been in use at over 200 colleges and universities. A second edition, cowritten with Gaetano Borriello, will appear in 2005. He has supervised 41 MS theses and 27 PhD dissertations, and he leads a research team of over a dozen graduate students, technical staff, and industrial and academic visitors. He has won numerous awards, including 12 best paper awards, one "test of time" paper award, one paper selected for a 50-year retrospective on IEEE communications publications, three best-presentation awards, the Outstanding Alumni Award of the Berkeley Computer Science Division, the Computing Research Association Outstanding Service Award, the Berkeley Distinguished Teaching Award, the Air Force Exceptional Civilian Service Decoration, the IEEE Reynolds Johnson Information Storage Award, the American Society for Engineering Education Frederic E. Terman Award, and the ACM Karl V. Karlstrom Outstanding Educator Award. With colleagues at Berkeley, he developed Redundant Arrays of Inexpensive Disks (RAID), which is now a $25-billion-per-year industry sector. While on leave for government service in 1993-1994, he established whitehouse.gov and connected the White House to the Internet. His current research interests are in reliable, adaptive distributed systems supported by new services deployed on network appliances (also known as programmable network elements). Prior research interests have included database management, VLSI Computer Aided Design, high-performance multiprocessor and storage architectures, transport and mobility protocols spanning heterogeneous wireless networks, and Internet service architectures for converged data and telephony.

**MARVIN KOSTERS** is a resident scholar at the American Enterprise Institute (AEI) and editor of the AEI *Evaluative Studies* series. He served as a senior economist on the President's Council of Economic Advisers and at the White House Office of the Assistant to the President for Economic Affairs. Mr. Kosters held a senior policy position at the US Cost of Living Council and a research position at the RAND Corporation. He is the author of *Wage Levels and Inequality* (1998). He edited *The Effects of the Minimum Wage on Employment* (1996), *Personal Saving, Consumption, and Tax Policy* (1992), and *Workers and Their Wages* (1991). He was also the coeditor of *Trade and Wages: Leveling Wages Down?* (1994) and of *Reforming Regulation* (1980). Mr. Kosters has contributed to the *American Economic Review* and *Public Interest*. He is coauthor of *Closing the Education Achievement Gap: Is Title I Working?*, published by AEI Press (2003).

**GEORGE M. LANGFORD** is the E. E. Just Professor of Natural Sciences and professor of biological sciences at Dartmouth College. He is also an adjunct professor of physiology at the Dartmouth Medical School. Dr. Langford received his PhD from the Illinois Institute of Technology in Chicago and completed postdoctoral training at the University of Pennsylvania. He was professor of physiology in the School of Medicine of the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill before joining the faculty at Dartmouth College. Dr. Langford is a cell biologist and neuroscientist who studies cellular mechanisms of learning and memory. His research program will help to understand how the brain remembers and what makes it forget when neurodegenerative diseases, such as Alzheimer's, take hold. He served on the National Science Board (NSB), the governing board of the National Science Foundation, from 1998 to 2004 and was chair of the NSB Education and Human Resources Committee from 2002 to 2004 and was vice-chair of the NSB National Workforce Taskforce Subcommittee in 1999-2004. He serves on the National Nanotechnology Infrastructure Network, the Burroughs Wellcome Fund Career Awards in the Biomedical Sciences Advisory Committee, the National Institutes of Health Synapses, Cytoskeleton and Trafficking Study Section, the National Research Council Associateships Program Committee, and the Sherman Fairchild Foundation Scientific Advisory Board.

**CATO T. LAURENCIN** [IOM] is the Lillian T. Pratt Distinguished Professor and chair of the Department of orthopaedic surgery at the University of Virginia. He is also a University Professor at the University of Virginia, and holds professorships in biomedical engineering and chemical engineering. Dr. Laurencin earned his BSE in chemical engineering from Princeton University and his MD from Harvard Medical School, where he earned the Robinson Award for Excellence in Surgery. Simultaneously, he earned a PhD in biochemical engineering/biotechnology from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), where he was a Hugh Hampton Young Scholar. After completing his doctoral programs, Dr. Laurencin continued clinical training at the Harvard University Orthopaedic Surgery Program and ultimately became chief resident in orthopedic surgery at the Beth Israel Hospital, Harvard Medical School. Simultaneously, he was an instructor in the Harvard–MIT Division of Health Sciences and Technology, where he directed a biomaterials laboratory at MIT. Dr. Laurencin later completed a clinical fellowship in sports medicine and shoulder surgery at the Hospital for Special Surgery in New York, working with the team physicians for the New York Mets, and at St. John's University in New York. Board-certified in orthopedic surgery, Laurencin is a fellow of the American College of Surgeons, a fellow of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, fellow of the American Institute for Medical and Biological Engineering, and an International Fellow in Biomaterials Science and Engineering. Dr. Laurencin's research interests are in biomaterials, tissue engineering, drug delivery, and nanotechnology. He received the Presidential Faculty Fellowship Award from President Clinton in recognition of his research involving biodegradable polymers. He most recently received the William Grimes Award for Excellence in Chemical Engineering from the American Institute of Chemical Engineers and the Leadership in Technology Award from the New Millennium Foundation. He is a member of the Institute of Medicine.

**DAVID LaVAN** is assistant professor of mechanical engineering at Yale University, where he teaches machine design at the freshman and senior levels. His approach is derived from a background in materials science and mechanical engineering and experience as a consulting engineer. He incorporates failure analysis, product liability, codes and standards, and forensic engineering in his design classes. He also introduces students to the latest generation of analysis and simulation software. His research focuses on materials and devices at the nano, micro, and macro scales. Of particular interest is the development of biologic applications of microsystems. His laboratory is working on the development of in vivo sensors and novel materials and devices for microelectromechnical systems. Some projects are long-term implantable sensors for cancer detection and monitoring, injectable sensors, and the micromachining of

biopolymers for applications in tissue engineering and neuroscience. In addition to new devices, his laboratory is developing novel methods to characterize materials and devices at the microscale.

**PHILIP LEDUC** is a McGowan faculty member and an assistant professor in mechanical engineering at Carnegie Mellon University. Dr. LeDuc earned his BS from Vanderbilt University in 1993 and his MS from North Carolina State in 1995. He obtained his PhD at Johns Hopkins University and was a postdoctoral fellow at Children's Hospital/Harvard Medical School in 1999. Using computational biology through collaboration with colleagues at the University of Pittsburgh Medical Center, Dr. LeDuc anticipates "developing a computational framework to look at how cells and molecules interact, for the purpose of improving drugs for disease treatment." His research focuses on linking mechanics to biochemistry by exploring the science of molecular to cellular biomechanics through nanotechnology and microtechnology, control theory, and computational biology. The link between mechanics and biochemistry has been implicated in myriad scientific and medical problems, from orthopedics and cardiovascular medicine to cell motility and division to signal transduction and gene expression. Most of the studies have focused on organ-level issues, but cellular and molecular research has become essential over the last decade in this field because of the revolutionary developments in genetics, molecular biology, microelectronics, and biotechnology.

**JAMES A. LEWIS** is a senior fellow and director of the Center for Strategic and International Studies (CSIS) Technology and Public Policy Program. Before joining CSIS, he was a career diplomat who worked on a variety of national security issues during his federal service. Dr. Lewis's extensive diplomatic and regulatory experience includes negotiations on military basing in Southeast Asia, the Cambodia peace process, the five power talks on arms transfer restraint, the Wassenaar Arrangement, and several bilateral agreements on security and technology. Dr. Lewis was the head of the delegation of the Wassenaar Experts Group for advanced civil and military technologies and a political adviser to the US Southern Command (for Just Cause), to US Central Command (for Desert Shield), and to the US Central America Task Force. He was responsible for the 1993 redrafting of the International Traffic in Arms Regulations, the 1997 regulations implementing the Wassenaar Agreement, numerous regulations on high-performance computing and satellites, and the 1999 and 2000 regulations liberalizing US controls on encryption products. Since coming to CSIS, he written numerous publications, including *Globalization and National Security* (2004), *Spectrum Management for the 21st Century* (2003), *Perils and Prospects for Internet Self-Regulation* (2002), *Assessing the Risk of Cyber Terrorism, Cyber War, and Other Cyber Threats* (2002), *Strengthening Law Enforcement Capabilities for Counterterrorism* (2001), *Preserving America's Strength in Satellite Technology* (2001), and *China as a Military Space Competitor* (forthcoming). His current research involves digital identity, innovation, military space, and China's information-technology industry. In 2004, Dr. Lewis was elected the first chairman of the Electronic Authentication Partnership, an association of companies, nonprofits, and government organizations that develops rules for federated authentication. He received his PhD from the University of Chicago in 1984.

**JOAN F. LORDEN** joined the University of North Carolina (UNC) at Charlotte as provost and vice chancellor for academic affairs in August 2003. She received a BA and a PhD in psychology from Yale University. Before coming to UNC Charlotte, she served as associate provost for research and dean of the Graduate School at the University of Alabama at Birmingham (UAB), where she was professor of psychology. She has published extensively on brain-behavior relationships and specialized in the study of animal models of human neurologic disease. In 1991, she was awarded the Ireland Prize for Scholarly Distinction. She has served on peer-review panels and scientific advisory boards at National Institutes of Health, National Science Foundation, and private agencies. At UAB, she organized the doctoral program in behavioral neuroscience and directed the university wide interdisciplinary Graduate Training Program in Neuroscience. In addition to her work in research and graduate education at UAB, Dr. Lorden founded an Office of Postdoctoral Education, programs for professional development of graduate students, an

undergraduate honors program, and several programs designed to improve the recruitment of women and minority group members into doctoral programs in science and engineering. Dr. Lorden was elected chair of the Board of Directors of the Council of Graduate Schools (2003) and during 2002-2003 was the dean in residence in the Division of Graduate Education at NSF. She has chaired the Board of Directors of Oak Ridge Associated Universities, was a trustee of the Southeastern Universities Research Association, and chaired the executive committee of the National Association of State Universities and Land-Grant Colleges Council on Research Policy and Graduate Education. Dr. Lorden is a member of the National Research Council's Committee on the Methodology for the Study of the Research Doctorate. She is a member of the Society for Neuroscience, the American Psychological Association, and the American Psychological Society.

**RONALD MARX** is professor of educational psychology and dean of education at the University of Arizona. His previous appointments were at Simon Fraser University and the University of Michigan, where he served as the chair of the Educational Studies Program and later as the codirector of the Center for Highly Interactive Computing in Education and the Center for Learning Technologies in Urban Schools. His research focuses on how classrooms can be sites for learning that is highly motivated and cognitively engaging. Since 1994, Dr. Marx has been engaged in large-scale urban school reform in Detroit and Chicago. With his appointment as dean in 2003, he has been working to link the college's research, teaching, and outreach activities closely to K-12 schools and school districts. Dr. Marx received his PhD from Stanford University.

**DEIRDRE R. MELDRUM** is professor and director of the Genomation Laboratory in the Department of Electrical Engineering and adjunct professor of bioengineering and mechanical engineering at the University of Washington. She received a BS in civil engineering from the University of Washington in 1983, an MS in electrical engineering from Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute in 1985, and a PhD in electrical engineering from Stanford University in 1993. As an engineering cooperative student at the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Johnson Space Center in 1980 and 1981, she was an instructor for the astronauts on the shuttle-mission simulator. From 1985 to1987, she was a member of the technical staff at the Jet Propulsion Laboratory and performed theoretical and experimental work in identification and control of large flexible space structures and robotics. Her research interests include genome automation, microscale systems for biologic applications, robotics, and control systems. Dr. Meldrum is a member of the American Association for the Advancement of Science (AAAS), the American Chemical Society, the Association for Women in Science, the Human Genome Organization, Sigma Xi, and the Society of Women Engineers. She was awarded an National Institutes of Health (NIH) Special Emphasis Research Career Award in 1993 to train in biology and genetics, bring her engineering expertise to the genome project, and develop automated laboratory instrumentation. In December 1996, she was the recipient of a Presidential Early Career Award for Scientists and Engineers for recognition of innovative research using a broad set of interdisciplinary approaches to advance DNA-sequencing technology. Since August 2001, she has directed an NIH center of excellence in genomic sciences, the Microscale Life Sciences Center. The MLSC includes 10 investigators from the University of Washington and one from the Fred Hutchinson Cancer Research Center. In 2003, Meldrum became a fellow of the AAAS; and in 2004, a fellow of the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers.

**MARK B. MYERS** is visiting executive professor in the Management Department at the Wharton School of the University of Pennsylvania. His research interests include identifying emerging markets and technologies to enable growth in new and existing companies with emphases on technology identification and selection, product development and technology competences. Dr. Myers serves on the Science, Technology and Economic Policy Board of the National Research Council and cochairs, with Yale President Richard Levin, the National Research Council's study of Intellectual Property in the Knowledge Based Economy. Dr. Myers retired from the Xerox Corporation at the beginning of 2000, after a 36-year

career in its R&D organizations. He was the senior vice president in charge of corporate research, advanced development, systems architecture, and corporate engineering from 1992 to 2000. During this period he was a member of the senior management committee in charge of the strategic direction setting of the company. His responsibilities included the corporate research centers: PARC in Palo Alto, California; the Webster Center for Research and Technology near Rochester, New York; the Xerox Research Centre of Canada, Mississauga, Ontario; and the Xerox Research Centre of Europe in Cambridge, England, and Grenoble, France. Dr. Myers is chairman of the Board of Trustees of Earlham College and has held visiting faculty positions at the University of Rochester and at Stanford University. He holds a bachelor's degree from Earlham College and a doctorate from Pennsylvania State University.

**CLAUDIA MITCHELL-KERNAN** has been vice chancellor for graduate studies and dean of the Graduate Division at the University of California, Los Angeles (UCLA) since 1989. As chief academic and administrative officer of the Graduate Division, she has responsibility for graduate admissions, campus-wide student support and fellowship programs, and graduate academic affairs and works to ensure that standards of excellence, fairness, and equity are maintained across all graduate programs. She is concurrently a professor in the Departments of Anthropology and Psychiatry and Biobehavioral Sciences. She received her PhD from the University of California, Berkeley and her BA and MA from Indiana University and was a member of the faculty at Harvard University before coming to UCLA in 1973. Much of Dr. Mitchell-Kernan's early work was in linguistic anthropology, and her classic sociolinguistic studies of black communities continue to be widely cited. Her most recent book, *The Decline in Marriage among African Americans*, coedited with M. Belinda Tucker, was published in 1995 by Russell Sage. Other books on children's discourse, television and the socialization of ethnic-minority children, and linguistic patterns of black children reflect the breadth of her scholarly interests. She conducts research on marriage and family-formation patterns in the United States among Americans and West Indian immigrants. Throughout her career, she has maintained an active record of service to federal agencies that sponsor research. President Clinton appointed her to the National Science Board (NSB) for a 6-year term in 1994. At the national level, she is serving as the dean in residence for the Council of Graduate Schools (CGS), is on the Board of Higher Education and Workforce of the National Research Council, and is on the Board of Directors of the Consortium of Social Science Associations. She has recently served on the Board of Directors of the CGS and chaired its Advisory Committee on Minorities in Graduate Education, as chair of the Board of Directors of the Graduate Record Examination, on the Advisory Board of the National Security Education Program, and on the Board of Deans of the African American Institute. She has been a member of the Board of Directors of the Los Angeles-based Golden State Minority Foundation and the Board of Directors of the Venice Family Clinic.

**DAVID H. MONK** is professor of educational administration and dean of the College of Education at the Pennsylvania State University (PSU). He earned his AB in 1972 at Dartmouth College and his PhD in 1979 at the University of Chicago, and he was a member of the Cornell University faculty for 20 years before becoming dean at PSU in 1999. He has also been a third-grade teacher and has taught in a visiting capacity at the University of Rochester and the University of Burgundy in Dijon, France. Dr. Monk is the author of *Educational Finance: An Economic Approach* (1990), *Raising Money for Education: A Guide to the Property Tax* (1997) (with Brian O. Brent), and *Cost Adjustments in Education* (2001) (with William J. Fowler, Jr.), in addition to numerous articles in scholarly journals. He is a coeditor of *Education Finance and Policy,* The Journal of the American Education Finance Association and *Leadership and Policy in Schools*. He also serves on the editorial boards of *Economics of Education Review*, the *Journal of Education Finance*, *Educational Policy*, and the *Journal of Research in Rural Education*. He consults widely on matters related to educational productivity and the organizational structuring of schools and school districts and is a past president of the American Education Finance Association.

**CARLO PARRAVANO** has served as executive director of the Merck Institute for Science Education since 1992. He is responsible for the planning, development, and implementation of numerous initiatives to improve science education. Before assuming that position, Dr. Parravano was professor of chemistry and chair of the Division of Natural Sciences at the State University of New York (SUNY) at Purchase. While at SUNY/Purchase, he taught courses in general, physical, analytic, and environmental chemistry. In addition to his academic and administrative appointments, he served as director of the Center for Mathematics and Science Education of the SUNY/Purchase-Westchester School Partnership. Dr. Parravano is a recipient of the SUNY Chancellor's Award for Excellence in Teaching. In 1999, he was elected an American Association for the Advancement of Science (AAAS) fellow; and in 2003, he received the National Science Teachers Association's (NSTA) Distinguished Service to Science Education Award. In 2004, he was designated a national associate of the National Academy of Sciences and appointed to the Steering Committee for the 2009 National Assessment of Educational Progress in Science. Dr. Parravano earned a BA in chemistry at Oberlin College and a PhD in physical chemistry in 1974 at University of California at Santa Cruz. His research has been in molecular-beam studies of excited atoms and molecules and the application of physical-chemical techniques to the solution of biochemical and environmental problems. Dr. Parravano is a member of a number of professional organizations, including the AAAS (chair, Education Section, 2003), the American Chemical Society, and the NSTA. He served as founding vice chair of the New Jersey Professional Teaching Standards Board (1999-2003) and as cochair of the New Jersey Science Curriculum Standards Group. He is a member of the National Research Council's Board on Science Education (Executive Committee) and is on the advisory boards of the National Science Resources Center, Biological Sciences Curriculum Study (chair), and the New Jersey Business Coalition for Educational Excellence. In 2005, Dr. Parravano was appointed to the New Jersey Mathematics Task Force and to the Quality Teaching and Learning Task Force. He also serves as principal investigator for a National Science Foundation-funded mathematics-science partnership award.

**ANNE C. PETERSEN** is the senior vice president for programs at the W.K. Kellogg Foundation of Battle Creek, Michigan. As a senior member of the executive staff since 1996, she provides leadership for all programming, including the development of effective programming strategies, teamwork, policies, philosophies, and organization wide systems to accomplish the programmatic mission of the foundation. Previously, Dr. Petersen was deputy director and chief operating officer of the National Science Foundation (NSF), then a $3.6 billion federal research agency with 1,300 employees. Before joining NSF, she served as vice president for research and dean of the Graduate School at the University of Minnesota where she was professor of adolescent development and pediatrics. Before that, she was the first dean of the College of Health and Human Development at Pennsylvania State University. She has written more than a dozen books and 200 articles on adolescent and sex issues, including evaluation, health, adolescent development, and higher education. Her honors include election to the Institute of Medicine. She is a founding member of the Society for Research on Adolescence and was president and council member. She was president of developmental psychology in the American Psychological Association and is a fellow of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, the American Psychological Association, and the American Psychological Society. She is president-elect of the International Society for the Study of Behavioral Development. Dr. Petersen holds a BS in mathematics, a MS in statistics, and a PhD in measurement, evaluation, and statistical analysis from the University of Chicago.

**STEPHANIE PFIRMAN** chairs the Department of Environmental Science at Barnard College. Her current research interests include environmental aspects of sea ice in the Arctic, interdisciplinary research and education, and advancing women scientists. As the first chair of the National Science Foundation (NSF)'s Advisory Committee for Environmental Research and Education, Dr. Pfirman oversaw analysis of a 10-year outlook for environmental research and education at NSF. She is also one a co-principal

investigators of NSF's ADVANCE grant (to advance women scientists) to Columbia's Earth Institute. Before joining Barnard, Dr. Pfirman was a senior scientist at Environmental Defense and codeveloper of the award-winning traveling exhibition "Global Warming: Understanding the Forecast" developed jointly with the American Museum of Natural History. She was research scientist and coordinator of Arctic programs for the University of Kiel and GEOMAR, Research Center for Marine Geoscience in Germany; staff scientist for the US House of Representatives Committee on Science Subcommittee on Environment; and oceanographer with the US Geological Survey in Woods Hole, Massachusetts. Dr. Pfirman received her PhD from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology/Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution Joint Program in Oceanography and Oceanographic Engineering, Department of Marine Geology and Geophysics, and a BA from Colgate University's Geology Department.

**DANIEL B. PONEMAN** is a principal of The Scowcroft Group, which provides strategic advice to the group clients in the energy, aerospace, information-technology, and manufacturing industries, and others. For 9 years, he practiced law in Washington, DC, assisting clients in a wide variety of regulatory and policy matters, including export controls, trade policy, and sanctions issues. From 1993 through 1996, Dr. Poneman served as special assistant to the president and senior director for nonproliferation and export controls at the National Security Council (NSC), with responsibilities for the development and implementation of US policy in such fields as peaceful nuclear cooperation, missile-technology and space-launch activities, sanctions determinations, chemical and biologic arms-control efforts, and conventional-arms transfer policy. During that period, he participated in negotiations and consultations with governments in Africa, Asia, Europe, Latin America, and the former Soviet Union. Dr. Poneman joined the NSC staff in 1990 as director of defense policy and arms control after service in the Department of Energy. He has served as a member of the Commission to Assess the Organization of the Federal Government to Combat the Proliferation of Weapons of Mass Destruction and other federal advisory panels. He received AB and JD from Harvard University and MLitt in politics from Oxford University. Dr. Poneman is the author of books on nuclear-energy policy, Korea, and Argentina and is a member of the Council of Foreign Relations.

**HELEN R. QUINN** started her college career at the University of Melbourne, Australia. Two years into her degree, she moved to the United States and joined the physics department of Stanford University, where she completed both her BSc and a PhD in physics. After a postdoctoral fellowship at Deutsche Elektronen-Synchrotron in Hamburg, Germany, she briefly taught high-school physics and then joined the staff and then the faculty of Harvard University. A few years later, she returned to Stanford to join the Stanford Linear Accelerator Center and she has been there since 1977. Her research concentrates on theoretical particle physics with a focus on phenomenology of the weak interactions; she is involved in outreach activities to encourage interest in physics. Her work with Robert Peccei resulted in what is now known as the Peccei-Quinn symmetry. Dr. Quinn was president of the American Physical Society for 2003. She was named a fellow of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences in 1996 and was elected to the National Academy of Sciences in 2003. She was awarded the Dirac Medal of the International Centre for Theoretical Physics in 2000 for her work with Peccei and in the Georgi-Quinn-Weinberg computation of how different types of interactions may be unified. In addition to her research Dr. Quinn has maintained a steady involvement in precollege education, working chiefly with local efforts to improve science teaching. She was a coauthor of the Investigation and Experimentation strand of the California science standards.

**PAUL ROMER** is the STANCO 25 Professor of Economics in the Graduate School of Business at Stanford University and a senior fellow of the Hoover Institution. Dr. Romer was the lead developer of "new growth theory". This body of work, which grew out of his 1983 PhD dissertation, provides a better foundation for business and government thinking about the dynamics of wealth creation. It addresses one of the oldest questions in economics: What sustains economic growth in a physical world characterized

by diminishing returns and scarcity? It also sheds new light on current economic issues. Among these, Dr. Romer is studying how government policy affects innovation and how faster technologic change might influence asset prices. Dr. Romer was named one of America's 25 most influential people by magazine in 1997. He was elected a fellow of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences in 2000. He is also a fellow of the Econometric Society and a research associate with the National Bureau of Economic Research (NBER). He was a member of the National Research Council Panel on Criteria for Federal Support of Research and Development (1995), a member of the Executive Council of the American Economics Association, and a fellow of the Center for Advanced Study in the Behavioral Sciences. Before coming to Stanford, Dr. Romer was a professor of economics at the University of California, Berkeley and the University of Chicago. Dr. Romer holds a PhD in economics from the University of Chicago,

**SHEILA R. RONIS** is president of The University Group, Inc., a management consulting firm and think tank specializing in strategic management, visioning, national security, and public policy. She is also an adjunct professor at the University of Detroit Mercy and at Oakland University, where she teaches "Strategic Management and Business Policy", "Managing the Global Firm", and "Issues of Globalization" in the MBA programs. She often lectures at the Industrial College of the Armed Forces (ICAF) at the National Defense University in Washington, DC and participates in its annual National Security Strategy Exercise. In June 2005, she chaired at ICAF the Army's Eisenhower National Security Series event "The State of the U.S. Industrial Base: National Security Implications in a World of Globalization" Her BS is in physics and mathematics and her MA and PhD from Ohio State University are in organizational behavior and general social systems theory..

**JAMES M. ROSSER** has served as president and professor of health care management at California State University, Los Angeles since 1979 and as professor of microbiology since 2004. He has served in many civic and community organizations, including the Los Angeles Area Council of the Boy Scouts of America, the Los Angeles County Alliance for College Ready Public Schools, the California Chamber of Commerce, Americans for the Arts, Community Television of Southern California (KCET), Los Angeles After-School Education and Child Care Program--LA's BEST, the Music Center Performing Arts Council/Education Council, and the California Community Foundation. His professional affiliations have included the American Association of State Colleges and Universities, the American Council on Education, the Western Association of Schools and Colleges, the Woodrow Wilson National Fellowship Foundation, the California Council on Science and Technology, Edison International, the United California Bank, the FEDCO, Inc. Foundation, and numerous committees and commissions of the California State University system. He is a past chair of the Education and Human Resources Advisory Committee of the National Science Foundation. He was chair of the National Academy of Engineering Forum on Diversity in the Engineering Workforce in 2000-2002.

**DEBORAH M. ROUDEBUSH** has been a physics teacher for 21 years. She holds national board certification in adolescent and young adult science. She was a 2001 Presidential Awardee for Excellence in Science Teaching. She has been a physics-teacher resource agent through the American Association of Physics Teachers since 1992 and is the associate member for Virginia to the National Academy of Sciences Teacher Advisory Council. She has been a reader for advanced placement for computer science and physics since 1996. She has a keen interest in physics-education research and the implications for improving physics teaching at all levels, she is an advocate for the importance of physics and science education for all students to enable data-driven decision-making at all levels of government.

**DANIEL K. RUBENSTEIN** is currently the head of the Mathematics Department at Collegiate School in New York City. He has worked in secondary education for 13 years. His first faculty position

was teaching mathematic at Sidwell Friends School in Washington, DC. In addition, he spent a semester as assistant director and mathematics teacher at School Year Abroad Beijing. After 8 years of independent-school teaching, a Sidwell alumnus recruited Mr. Rubenstein to help build the mathematics program of the fledgling SEED Foundation Public Charter School in southeast Washington, DC, where he remained for 2 years. He is a nationally board-certified mathematics teacher and a associate member of the National Academy of Sciences Teacher Advisory Council. In 2002, he received the Presidential Award for Excellence in Mathematics Teaching. He holds bachelor's degree in mathematics from Hamilton College, and a master's degree from St. Johns College in Santa Fe, New Mexico, and he is enrolled in a doctoral program at Columbia Universityin Education Leadership.

**JULIANA C. SHEI** joined the General Electric Global Research Center in 1991. In 1995, she was appointed global technology manager and is responsible for the management of theR&D Center's Global Technology Acquisition Programs. In that role, she has established research collaborations with organizations around the world. Ms. Shei was the project manager to establish a GE Research Center in Shanghai, China, in June 2000 and now leads Japan Technology Initiative in Japan. Ms. Shei is a member of the American Chemical Society and cochair of the Industrial Research Institute External Technology Directors' Network. She is the board member for the United States Industry Coalition. She was a member of theGore-Chernomyrdin Science & Technology delegation in 1997 and served as industry representative for the President's Council of Advisers on Science and Technology in 2002. Shei is very active in community service. She was a founder and the president of the Network, a professional women's organization affiliated with the National Association for Female Executives, served as the board chair for the Chinese Community Center of the Capital District of New York, and is a board member of Japanese Cultural Association of the Capital District. A native of Tokyo, Japan, Ms.Shei obtained her undergraduate degree from National Cheng Kung University in Taiwan, her MS from the University of Massachusetts, and her MBA from Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute. Before joining General Electric, she worked at Ames Laboratory, the Research Center at the US Steel Corporation, and the Sterling Winthrop Research Institute (Eastman Kodak's Pharmaceutical Division).

**J. STEPHEN SIMON** is a senior vice president of Exxon Mobil Corporation. Mr. Simon holds a BS degree in civil engineering from Duke University and an MBA from Northwestern University. He joined Exxon Company, USA in July 1967 and shortly thereafter began a 2-year assignment in the US Army. He returned to Exxon USA in July 1969 as a business analyst in the Baton Rouge refinery. After holding a variety of supervisory and managerial positions throughout the Baton Rouge and Baytown refineries and in Exxon USA's refining and controller's departments, Mr. Simon became executive assistant to Exxon USA's executive vice president in Houston. In 1980, he returned to the Baton Rouge refinery as Operations Division manager and then became refinery manager. In 1983, Mr. Simon moved to New York, where he was executive assistant to the president of Exxon Corporation. In 1984, he moved to London, England, as supply manager in the Petroleum Products Department of Esso Europe Inc. and then supply and transportation manager. Mr. Simon returned to Houston in 1986 as general manager of Exxon USA's Supply Department. In 1988, he became chief executive and general manager, Esso Caribbean and Central America, in Coral Gables, Florida. Simon moved to Italy in 1992 to become executive vice president and then president of Esso Italiana. He returned to the United States in 1997 and was named an executive vice president of Exxon Company, International, headquartered in Florham Park, New Jersey. In December 1999, he was appointed president of Exxon Mobil Refining & Supply Company and vice president of Exxon Mobil Corporation. In December 2004, he assumed his current position as senior vice president of the Corporation. Mr. Simon has served on the local boards of many voluntary organizations--including United Way, Boy Scouts, and the Salvation Army-- and is a member of the Governance Committee of the National Action Council for Minorities in Engineering. He has also served on the boards of the American Petroleum Institute and the National Association of Manufacturers. He is a

member of the Board of Visitors for Duke University's School of Engineering and a member of the President's Council. In addition, he is on the Kellogg Advisory Board of Northwestern University.

**TIM STEARNS** is an associate professor in the Department of Biological Sciences and the Department of Genetics at Stanford University. He is also an member of the Committee on Cancer Biology, the steering group for the cancer-biology graduate training program, and he is chair of the Committee on Graduate Admissions and Policy, which oversees all graduate programs in the biosciences at Stanford. Dr. Stearns is the recipient of a Howard Hughes Medical Institute Professor Award, which he has used to develop a program for research-oriented undergraduates. The laboratory course for this program, Biosci 54/55, draws sophomore-level students from diverse intellectual backgrounds and has them use interdisciplinary approaches to solve problems in cell biology. Dr. Stearns recently cofounded the Advanced Imaging Lab in Biophysics course, and he has taught advanced summer laboratory courses at Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory at Woods Hole, and in Chile and South Africa. His research involves using a combination of imaging, genetics, biochemistry, and structural biology to understand the cytoskeleton. His laboratory was one of the first to use green fluorescent protein to visualize cytoskeletal dynamics and is a leader in understanding microtubule organization and its relationship to the cell cycle.

**DEBRA STEWART** became the fifth president of the Council of Graduate Schools (CGS) in July 2000. Before coming to the CGS, Dr. Stewart was vice chancellor and dean of the Graduate School at North Carolina State University. She also served as interim chancellor at the University of North Carolina-Greensboro (1997) and as graduate dean and then vice provost (1988-1998) at North Carolina State. 453 members award over 95% of all US doctorates and about 70% of all US. master's degrees. Among its 11 international members, CGS includes nine major Canadian universities. Dr. Stewart received her PhD in Political Science from the University of North Carolina-Chapel Hill, her master's degree in government from the University of Maryland, and her BA from Marquette University.. She is the author or coauthor of numerous scholarly articles on administrative theory and public policy. Her disciplinary research focuses on ethics and managerial decision making. With sustained support from the National Science Foundation, Dr. Stewart has conducted research on political attitudes and moral reasoning among public officials in Poland and Russia.

**ORLANDO TAYLOR** is vice provost for research, dean of the Graduate School, and professor of communications at Howard University. Before joining the Howard faculty in 1973, Dr. Taylor was a faculty member at Indiana University. He has also served as a visiting professor at Stanford University. Dr. Taylor has served on the Board of Directors of the Council of Graduate Schools and was Board chair in 2001. He is a past president of the Northeastern Association of Graduate Schools and the National Communication Association. He is the immediate past president of the Consortium of Social Science Associations and chairman of the Board of the Jacob Javits Fellowship Program in the Humanities for the US Department of Education. He also serves as a member of the Board of Trustees of the University Corporation for Atmospheric Research. Dr. Taylor has served in many capacities at Howard University: he has served as executive assistant to the president, interim vice president for academic affairs, dean of the School of Communications, and chair of the Department of Communication Arts and Sciences. Dr. Taylor's pioneering work in communication disorders, sociolinguistics, educational linguistics, and intercultural communication has led to the development of new theories and applications. In most of his scholarly work, he has focused on the rich cultural and linguistic diversity of the American people. He is the author of numerous articles, chapters, and books. The American Speech-Language-Hearing Association awarded him its highest award, Honors of the Association, and the Alumni Association of the University of Michigan awarded him its Distinguished Service Alumni Award. The University of Massachusetts, Amherst has awarded him the Chancellor's Medal, and Yale University its Bouchet Medal for leadership in Minority Graduate Education. Dr. Taylor received his bachelor's degree from Hampton

University, his master's degree from Indiana University, and his PhD degree from the University of Michigan.

**NANCY VORONA** is vice president of research investment at the Center for Innovative Technology (CIT). Her responsibilities include strategy and program development for CIT's initiatives in nanotechnology and life sciences. Before her current appointment, she was CIT's senior industry director for advanced materials and electronics. Ms. Vorona joined CIT in 1998. Ms. Vorona's professional experience in electronics includes several years in marketing and sales management with International Rectifier Corporation, a US manufacturer of power semiconductors based in California. She was also responsible for international marketing and sales for Integrated Display Technology Ltd., a Hong Kong manufacturer of consumer electronic products. In 1993, she joined the Virginia Economic Development Partnership to establish and increase the international business of Virginia's information technology and telecommunications companies. Ms. Vorona received a BA from the University of North Carolina-Chapel Hill and a master's degree in international management from Thunderbird, the American Graduate School of International Management in Glendale, Arizona.

**CAROLINE S. WAGNER** is a researcher at the Center for International Science and Technology Policy at George Washington University (GWU). She specializes in science and technology and their relationship to innovation, policy, and society. Among her current advisory commitments, she serves on the Advisory Board of Research on Knowledge Systems, a program of the International Development Research Centre of Canada, and on the United Nations Millennium Task Force on Science, Technology, and Innovation. She is a founding member of the Washington Science Policy Alliance. Dr. Wagner joined GWU after 12 years with the RAND Corporation in Washington, DC, and Leiden, the Netherlands. Before joining Rand, she was a professional staff member for the US Congress Committee on Science, Space, and Technology, and before that in the congressional Office of Technology Assessment. She has served as an analyst for the US government specializing in global development in science and technology; this included a 2-year assignment as an analyst at the US embassy in Korea. Dr. Wagner has consulted with the World Bank, the European Commission, the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, the US National Science Foundation, and a number of governments. She holds degrees in science and technology dynamics from the University of Amsterdam; in science, technology, and public policy from GWU; and in philosophy from Trinity University.

**ISIAH WARNER** is Boyd Professor and vice chancellor for strategic initiatives of the Louisiana State System (LSU). He graduated cum laude from Southern University with a BS in chemistry in 1968. After working for Battelle Northwest in Richland, Washington for 5 years, Dr. Warner attended graduate school in chemistry at the University of Washington, receiving his PhD in chemistry (analytical) in June 1977. He was assistant professor of chemistry at Texas A&M University from 1977 to 1982 and was awarded tenure and promotion to associate professor effective September 1982. However, he elected to join the faculty of Emory University as associate professor and was promoted to full professor in 1986. Dr. Warner was named to an endowed chair at Emory University in September 1987 and was the Samuel Candler Dobbs Professor of Chemistry until he left in August 1992. During the 1988-1989 academic year, he was on leave to the National Science Foundation as program officer for analytical and surface chemistry. In August 1992, Dr. Warner joined LSU as Philip W. West Professor of Analytical and Environmental Chemistry. He was Chair of the Chemistry Department from 1994 to 1997 and was appointed Boyd Professor of the LSU System in July 2000, and Vice Chancellor for Strategic Initiatives in 2001. The primary research emphasis of Warner's research group is the development and application of improved methodologies (chemical, mathematical, and instrumental) for the study of complex chemical systems. His research interests include fluorescence spectroscopy, guest-host interactions, studies in organized media, spectroscopic applications of multi-channel detectors, chromatography, environmental analyses, and mathematical analyses and interpretation of chemical data using chemometrics.

**GENERAL LARRY WELCH** (retired) was the 12th chief of staff of the US Air Force. As chief, he served as the senior uniformed Air Force officer responsible for the organization, training, and equipage of a combined active-duty, Guard, reserve, and civilian force serving at locations in the United States and overseas. Formerly president of the Institute for Defense Analyses, General Welch now serves as a senior associate. In addition, he provides expertise to a number of organizations, including the Council on Foreign Relations, the Defense Science Board, the Joint Committee on Nuclear Weapons Surety, the National Missile Defense Independent Review Team, the US Space Command Independent Strategic Advisory Group, and the US Strategic Command Strategic Advisory Group. General Welch received a BS in business administration from the University of Maryland and an MS in international relations from George Washington University.

**REAR ADMIRAL ROBERT H. WERTHEIM** (retired) [NAE] is a consultant on national-security and related issues. During his 38 years in the Navy, he was director of strategic systems programs, responsible for the research, development, production, and operational support of the Navy's submarine launched ballistic-missile program. After retirement from the Navy, he served for 7 years as Lockheed Corporation senior vice president for science and engineering; for the last 17 years, he has been a private consultant. He is a member of advisory groups serving the US Strategic Command, the Los Alamos and Livermore National Laboratories, and Draper Laboratory. Other current service includes membership on the joint Department of Defense and Department of Energy (DOE), Advisory Committee on Nuclear Weapons Surety and on the University of California President's Council on the National Laboratories. He is a former member of the National Academy of Sciences Committee on International Security and Arms Control, the DOE Laboratory Operations Board, and the Defense Science Board. Admiral Wertheim graduated with honors from New Mexico Military Institute in 1942. He graduated with distinction from the Naval Academy in 1945 and received an MS in physics from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology in 1954. He has been elected a member of the National Academy of Engineering and of the scientific and engineering societies, Sigma Xi and Tau Beta Pi, an honorary member of the American Society of Naval Engineers; and a fellow of the American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics and the California Council on Science and Technology. Admiral Wertheim has been honored with the Navy Distinguished Service Medal (twice), the Legion of Merit, the Gold Medal of the American Society of Naval Engineers, the Rear Admiral William S. Parsons Award of the Navy League, the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Distinguished Public Service Medal, and the Secretary of Defense Medal for Outstanding Public Service. He was inducted into the New Mexico Military Institute Hall of Fame in 1987 and has been honored by the US Naval Academy with its 2005 Distinguished Graduate Award for his lifetime of service to the Navy and the nation.

**DEAN ZOLLMAN** is University Distinguished Professor, Distinguished University Teaching Scholar, and head of the Department of Physics at Kansas State University (KSU). He has focused his scholarly activities on research and development in physics education since 1972. He has received the National Science Foundation (NSF) Director's Award for Distinguished Teacher Scholars (2004), the Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching Doctoral University Professor of the Year (1996), and American Association of Physics Teachers' Robert A. Millikan Medal (1995). His research concentrates on investigating the mental models and operations that students develop as they learn physics and how students transfer knowledge in the learning process. He also applies cutting-edge technology to the teaching of physics and to providing instructional and pedagogic materials to physics teachers, particularly teachers whose background does not include a substantial amount of physics. He has twice been a Fulbright Fellow in Germany. In 1989, he worked at Ludwig-Maximilians University in Munich on development of measurement techniques for digital video. In 1998, he visited the Institute for Science Education at the University in Kiel, where he investigated student understanding of quantum physics. Dr. Zollman is coauthor of six videodisks for physics teaching, the Physics InfoMall database, and a

textbook. He leads the Visual Quantum Mechanics project, which develops materials for teaching quantum physics to three groups of students: nonscience students, science and engineering students, and students interested in biology and medicine. His present instructional and research projects include Modern Miracle Medical Machines, Physics Pathway, and research on student learning.

# Appendix D

## ISSUE PAPERS

The *Issue Briefs* presented in this appendix summarize findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. The papers were provided as background information to the study committee and focus group participants.

The 13 papers, written by members of the committee's staff, are included here only as a historical record and a useful summary of relevant reports, scientific literature, and data analysis. Statements in this brief should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

Each issue brief provides an overview of the findings and recommendations of previously released studies from the National Academies and other groups. The issue briefs cover topics relevant to the committee's charge, including K-12 education, higher education, research policy, and national and homeland security policy.

Specifically, the topics addressed are:

- **K-12 Science, Mathematics, and Technology Education**
- **Attracting the Most Able U.S. Students to Science and Engineering**
- **Undergraduate, Graduate, and Postgraduate Education in Science, Engineering, and Mathematics**
- **Implications of Changes in the Financing of Public Higher Education**
- **International Students and Researchers in the United States**
- **Achieving Balance and Adequacy in Federal Science and Technology Funding**
- **The Productivity of Scientific and Technological Research**
- **Investing In High-Risk and Breakthrough Research**
- **Ensuring That the United States Is At the Forefront in Critical Fields Of Science and Technology**
- **Understanding Trends in Science and Technology Critical To U.S. Prosperity**
- **Ensuring That the United States Has the Best Environment For Innovation**
- **Scientific Communication and Security**
- **S&T Issues in National and Homeland Security**

This issue paper summarizes findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. Statements in this paper should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

## K-12 Science, Mathematics, and Technology Education

### Summary

US education in science, technology, engineering, and mathematics is undergoing great scrutiny. Just as the launch of Sputnik 1 in 1957 led the United States to undertake the most dramatic educational reforms of the 20th century, the rise of new international competitors in science and technology is forcing the United States to ask whether its educational system is suited to the demands of the 21st century.

These concerns are particularly acute in K-12 education. In comparison with their peers in other countries, US students on average do worse on measures of mathematics and science performance the longer they are in school. On comparisons of problem-solving skills, US students perform more poorly overall than do the students in most of the countries that have participated in international assessments. Some believe the United States has failed to achieve the objective established in the Goals 2000: Educate America Act—for US students to be first in the world in mathematics and science achievement in the year 2000.

National commissions, industrial groups, and leaders in the public and private sectors are in broad agreement with policy initiatives that the federal government could undertake to improve K-12 science, mathematics, and technology education. Some of these are listed below:

*Increasing the Number of Excellent Teachers*

- Allocate federal professional-development funds to summer institutes that address the most pressing professional-development needs of mathematics and science teachers.
- Keep summer-institute facilitators--teachers current with the most effective teaching methods in their disciplines and who have shown demonstrable results of higher student achievement in mathematics and science— abreast of new insights and research in science and mathematics teaching by providing funding for training them.
- Encourage higher-education institutions to establish mathematics and science teaching academies that include faculty from science, mathematics, and education departments through a competitive grant process.

- Support promising students to study science, mathematics, and engineering teaching—particularly those obtaining degrees in science, mathematics, or engineering who plan to teach at the K-12 level following graduation through scholarships and loan programs for students as well as institutional funding. Qualified college students and midcareer professionals need to be attracted into teaching and given the preparation they require to succeed. Experts in mathematics, science, and technology should be able to become teachers by completing programs to acquire and demonstrate fundamental teaching skills. Recruitment, preparation, and retention of minority-group teachers are particularly important as groups underrepresented in science, mathematics, and engineering become a larger percentage of the student population.
- Conduct an aggressive, national-outreach media campaign to attract young people to teaching careers in mathematics and science.
- Work for broad improvements in the professional status of science, mathematics, and technology teachers. Structured induction programs for new teachers, district-business partnerships, award programs, and other incentives can inspire teachers and encourage them to remain in the field. Most important, salaries for science, mathematics, and technology teachers need to reflect what they could receive in the private sector and be in accord with their contributions to society, and teachers need to be treated as professionals and as important members of the science and engineering communities.

*Enhancing the Quality and Cohesion of Educational Standards*

- Help colleges, businesses, and schools work together to link K-12 standards to college admissions criteria and workforce needs to create a seamless K-16 educational system.
- Provide incentives for states and coalitions of states to conduct benchmarking studies between their standards and the best standards available.
- Foster the development of high-quality curricula and assessments that are closely aligned with world-class standards.
- Establish ambitious but realistic goals for student performance–for example, that 30 % of high-school seniors should be proficient in science by 2010 as measured by the NAEP.

*Changing the Institutional Structure of Schools*

- Provide seed money or incentives for new kinds of schools and new forms of schooling. Promising ideas include small high schools, dual-enrollment programs in high schools and colleges, colocation of schools with institutions of higher education, and wider use of Advanced Placement and International Baccalaureate courses.
- Help districts institute reorganization of the school schedule to support teaching and learning. Possibilities include devoting more time to study of academic subjects, keeping schools open longer in the day and during parts of the summer, and providing teachers with additional time for development and collaboration.

- Provide scholarships for low-income students who demonstrate that they have taken a core curriculum in high school that prepares them to study science, mathematics, or engineering in college.

The challenge for policy-makers is to find ways of generating meaningful change in an educational system that is large, complex, and pluralistic. Sustained programs of research, coordination, and oversight can channel concerns over K-12 science, mathematics, and technology education in productive directions.

**The Challenge of K-12 Science, Mathematics, and Technology Education**

The state of US K-12 education in science, mathematics, and technology has become a focus of intense concern. With the economies and broader cultures of the United States and other countries becoming increasingly dependent on science and technology, US schools do not seem capable of producing enough students with the knowledge and skills needed to prosper.

On the 1996 National Assessment of Educational Progress (NAEP), fewer than one-third of students performed at or above the proficiency level in mathematics and science—with "proficiency" denoting competence in challenging subject matter.[1] Alarmingly, more than one-third of students scored below the basic level in these subjects, meaning they lack the fundamental knowledge and skills they will need to get good jobs and participate fully in our technologically sophisticated society (see Figure K12-1).

International comparisons document a gradual decline in performance and interest in mathematics and science as US students get older. Though fourth graders in the United States perform well in math and science compared with their peers in other countries, twelfth graders in 1999 were almost last in performance among the countries that participated in the Third International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMMS).[2] Among the 20 countries assessed in advanced mathematics and physics, none scored significantly lower than the United States in mathematics, and only one scored significantly lower in physics.

There has been some good news about student achievement.[3] US eighth graders did better on an international assessment of mathematics and science in 2003 than they did in 1995. The achievement gap separating black and Latino students from European-American students narrowed during that period (see Figure K12-2). However, a recent assessment by the Program for International Assessment found that US 15-year-olds are near the bottom of all countries in their ability to solve practical problems requiring mathematical understanding. Additionally, testing for the last 30 years has shown that

---

[1] US Department of Education, National Center for Education Statistics, *NAEP 1999 Trends in Academic Progress: Three Decades of Academic Performance*, NCES 2000-469, Washington, DC: US Department of Education, 2000.

[2] US Department of Education, National Center for Education Statistics, *Pursuing Excellence: A Study of Twelfth-Grade Mathematics and Science Achievement in International Context*, NCES 98-049, Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office, 1998.

[3] Rodger W. Bybee and Elizabeth Stage, "No country left behind," *Issues in Science and Technology*, Winter 2005, pp. 69-75.

although scores among 9- and 13-year-olds have increased, scores for 17-year-olds have remained stagnant (see Figure K12-3).

Perhaps the hardest trend to document is a sense of disillusionment with careers based on science and technology.[4] Fewer children respond positively when surveyed to statements such as "I like math" than has been the case in the past. The number of schools offering advanced courses, such as Advanced Placement and International Baccalaureate has increased dramatically, but the vast majority of students in high school will never take an advanced science or mathematics course (see Figure K12-4). And a lack of interest in science, mathematics, and technology is particularly pronounced among disadvantaged groups that have been underrepresented in those fields.

In general, many Americans do not know enough about science, technology, and mathematics to contribute to or benefit from the knowledge-based society that is taking shape around us. At the same time, other countries have learned from our example that preeminence in science and engineering pays immense economic and social dividends, and they are boosting their investments in these critical fields.

The traditions of autonomy and pluralism in American education limit the influence that the federal government can exert on state educational systems, school districts, and individual schools. Nevertheless, the federal government can enable change by leveraging its investments in K-12 education, by providing information and other resources to organizations, and by helping to coordinate the many groups and individuals with a stake in science, mathematics, and technology education. Three policy arenas seem particularly promising: teacher preparation, educational standards, and institutional change.

**Improving the Quality of Mathematics, Science, and Technology Teaching**

Students learn about science, mathematics, and technology first and foremost through interactions with teachers. Changing the nature of those interactions is the surest way to improve education in these subjects in the United States.

Many mathematics and science teachers in US schools do not have backgrounds needed to teach these subjects well (see Figure K12-5).[5] Many of these teachers at the high-school level--and even more at the middle-school level–do not have a college degree in the subject they are teaching (see Figure K12-6). Many lack certification to teach mathematics and science, and a subset of teachers start in the classroom without any formal training. The lack of adequate training and background is especially severe at schools serving large numbers of disadvantaged students, creating a vicious circle in which a substandard education and low achievement are intertwined (see Figure K12-7). The stresses on teachers are equally severe: Of new mathematics and science teachers, about a one-third leave teaching within the first 3 years.

---

[4] Committee for Economic Development, Research and Policy Committee, *Learning for the Future: Changing the Culture of Math and Science Education to Ensure a Competitive Workforce*, New York: Committee for Economic Development, 2003.

[5] US Department of Education, The National Commission on Mathematics and Science Teaching for the 21st Century, *Before It's Too Late*, Washington, DC: US Department of Education, 2000.

The best predictors of higher student achievement in mathematics and science are (1) full certification of the teacher and (2) a college major in the field being taught.[6] Teachers need a high-quality education and continued development as professionals throughout their careers. Federal policy initiatives that could help meet these objectives include the following:

- Allocate federal professional-development funds to summer institutes that address the most pressing professional-development needs of mathematics and science teachers.[7]
- Keep summer-institute facilitators,--teachers current with the most effective teaching methods in their disciplines and who have shown demonstrable results of higher student achievement in mathematics and science--abreast of new insights and research in science and mathematics teaching by providing funding for training them.[8]
- Encourage higher-education institutions to establish mathematics and science teaching academies that include faculty from science, mathematics, and education departments through a competitive grant process.[9]
- Support promising students to study science, mathematics, and engineering teaching—particularly those obtaining degrees in science, mathematics, or engineering who plan to teach at the K-12 level following graduation through scholarships and loan programs for students as well as institutional funding.[10] Qualified college students and midcareer professionals need to be attracted into teaching and given the preparation they require to succeed. Experts in mathematics, science, and technology should be able to become teachers by completing programs to acquire and demonstrate fundamental teaching skills. Recruitment, preparation, and retention of minority-group teachers are particularly important as groups underrepresented in science, mathematics, and engineering become a larger percentage of the student population.[11]
- Conduct an aggressive national-outreach media campaign to attract young people to teaching careers in mathematics and science.[12]
- Work for broad improvements in the professional status of science, mathematics, and technology teachers.[13] Structured induction programs for new teachers, district-business partnerships, award programs, and other incentives can inspire teachers and encourage them to remain in the field. Most important, salaries for science, mathematics, and technology teachers need to reflect what they could receive in the private sector and be in accord with their contributions to society,

---

[6] Ibid.
[7] Ibid.
[8] Ibid.
[9] Ibid.
[10] Ibid.
[11] National Research Council, Committee on Science and Mathematics Teacher Preparation, *Educating Teachers of Science, Mathematics, and Technology: New Practices for the New Millennium*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2000.
[12] Ibid.
[13] National Science Foundation, National Science Board, *The Science and Engineering Workforce: Realizing America's Potential,* Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2003.

and teachers need to be treated as professionals and as important members of the science and engineering communities.

**Enhancing the Quality and Cohesion of Educational Standards**

Since the early 1990s, states have been developing academic standards in mathematics, science, and technology education based in part on national standards developed by the National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, the National Research Council, the American Association for the Advancement of Science, and other organizations. The use of these standards in curriculum development, teaching, and assessment has had a positive effect on student performance and probably contributed to the recent increased performance of eighth-grade students in international comparisons.[14]

But standards still vary greatly from state to state and across districts and often are not well aligned with the tests used to measure student performance. In addition, many sets of standards remain focused on lower-level skills that may be easier to measure but are not necessarily linked to the knowledge and skills that students will need to do well in college and in the modern workforce. A common flaw in mathematics and science curricula and textbooks is the attempt to cover too much material, which leads to superficial treatments of subjects and to needless repetition when hastily taught material is not learned the first time. Standards need to identify the most important "big ideas" in mathematics, science, and technology, and teachers need to ensure that those subjects are mastered.

The No Child Left Behind legislation requires testing of students' knowledge of science beginning in 2006-2007, and the science portion of the NAEP is being redesigned. Development of such assessments raises profound methodologic issues, such as how to assess inquiry and problem-solving skills using traditional large-scale testing formats.

Several federal initiatives can serve the national interest in establishing and maintaining high educational standards while respecting local responsibility for teaching and learning:

- Help colleges, businesses, and schools work together to link K-12 standards to college admissions criteria and workforce needs to create a seamless K-16 educational system.[15]
- Provide incentives for states and coalitions of states to conduct benchmarking studies between their standards and the best standards available.
- Foster the development of high-quality curricula and assessments that are closely aligned with world-class standards.
- Establish ambitious but realistic goals for student performance–for example, that 30 % of high-school seniors should be proficient in science by 2010 as measured by the NAEP.

---

[14] Bybee and Stage, 2005.

[15] National Science Foundation, National Science Board, *Preparing Our Children: Math and Science Education in the National Interest,* Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 1999.

**Changing the Institutional Structure of Schools**

Students and teachers remain constrained by several of the key organizational features of schools.[16] The structure of the curriculum, of individual classes, of schools, and of the school day keeps many students from taking advantage of opportunities that could build their interest in science and technology.

Possible federal initiatives include these:

- Provide seed money or incentives for new kinds of schools and new forms of schooling. Promising ideas include small high schools, dual-enrollment programs in high schools and colleges, colocation of schools with institutions of higher education, and wider use of Advanced Placement and International Baccalaureate courses.
- Help districts institute reorganization of the school schedule to support teaching and learning.[17] Possibilities include devoting more time to study of academic subjects, keeping schools open longer in the day and during parts of the summer, and providing teachers with additional time for development and collaboration.
- Provide scholarships for low-income students who demonstrate that they have taken a core curriculum in high school that prepares them to study science, mathematics, or engineering in college.

**Catalyzing Change**

The federal government has an important role to play in catalyzing the efforts of states, school districts, and schools to improve science, mathematics, and technology education. Promising actions include the following:

- Launch a large-scale program of research, demonstration, and evaluation in K-12 science, mathematics, and technology education.[18] Such a program should include distinguished researchers working in partnership with practitioners and policy-makers and supported by a national coalition of public and private funding organizations and other stakeholders.
- Help create a nongovernment Coordinating Council for Mathematics and Science Teaching that would bring together groups with a stake in mathematics and science teaching and monitor progress on teacher recruitment, preparation, retention, and rewards.[19]

---

[16] US Department of Education, National Education Commission on Time and Learning, *Prisoners of Time*, Washington, D.C.: US Department of Education, 1994.
[17] Ibid.
[18] National Research Council, Committee on a Feasibility Study for A Strategic Education Research Program, *Improving Student Learning: A Strategic Plan for Education Research and Its Utilization*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999.
[19] The National Commission on Mathematics and Science Teaching for the 21st Century, 2000.

- Support the creation of state councils of business leaders, higher-education representatives, and K-12 educators to achieve comprehensive, coordinated, system-level improvement in science, mathematics, and technology education from prekindergarten through college.[20]

The United States brings unique strengths to the challenge of reforming K-12 science, mathematics, and technology education, including the flexibility of its workforce and its unparalleled legacy of achievement in science and technology. The challenge facing policy-makers is to find ways of generating meaningful change in an educational system that is large, complex, and pluralistic.

[20] Business-Higher Education Forum, *A Commitment to America's Future: Responding to the Crisis in Mathematics and Science Education*, Washington, DC: American Council on Education, 2005.

**K-12 Science, Mathematics, and Technology Education**
**Appendix K12 1**
**Figures and Tables**

**FIGURE K12-1A: Studies Suggest That a Large Portion of US Students Are Lacking in Science Skills. In 1996, at Least One-Third of Students in 4th, 8th, and 12th Grade Performed Below Basic in National Tests.**

**FIGURE K12-1B: The Results Are Similar for Mathematics: 30% of Students Scored Below Basic.**

**TABLE K12-2A: International Comparisons Also Show Problems for the US. 1995 and 2003 US 4th-Grade Mathematics TIMSS Scores Remained Constant, Most Nations Improved.**

**TABLE K12-2B: 8th-Graders Did Show Improvement from 1995 to 2003, but Scores Were Still Not Among the Best.**

**TABLE K12-2C: Although the US Is Still Near the Top in 4th-Grade Science Scores, in 2003 US Placed Fifth, Compared with Second in 1995.**

**TABLE K12-2D: There Has Been a Large Improvement in 8th-Grade Science Scores Since 1995.**

**FIGURE K12-2E: TIMSS Data for 4th and 8th Graders Show Performance Gap Between Blacks, Latinos, and European Americans Has Diminished.**

**TABLE K12-3A: Long-Term Trends Show Improvements at Ages 9 and 13, But No Significant Improvement for 17-Year-Olds.**

**TABLE K12-3B: Scores in 1996 and 2000 Show a Sex Gap in Mathemathics and Science; Overall Fewer Students Performing at the Basic Level or Better in 2000.**

**TABLE K12-4A: The Vast Majority of Students Will Never Take an Advanced Mathematics Course While in High School.**

**TABLE K12-4B: Nor an Advanced Science Course,**

**FIGURE K12-4C: Even Though the Number of Schools Offering Advanced Placement Courses Has Increased Rapidly.**

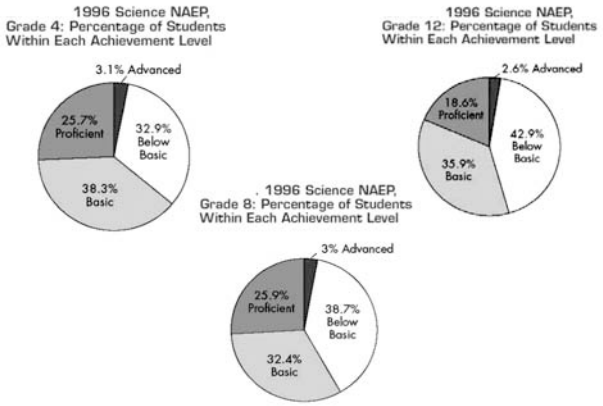
**FIGURE K12-5: In 1993-1994, Over 20% of Mathematics and Science Teaching Positions Were Filled by NonCertified Teachers.**

**TABLE K12-6: Students Who Take Science and Mathematics Courses Might Not Have Teachers Who Have Studied in the Fields They Are Teaching.**

**TABLE K12-7: Many New Science and Mathematics Teachers Report Feeling Ill Prepared to Handle the Challenges of Teaching.**

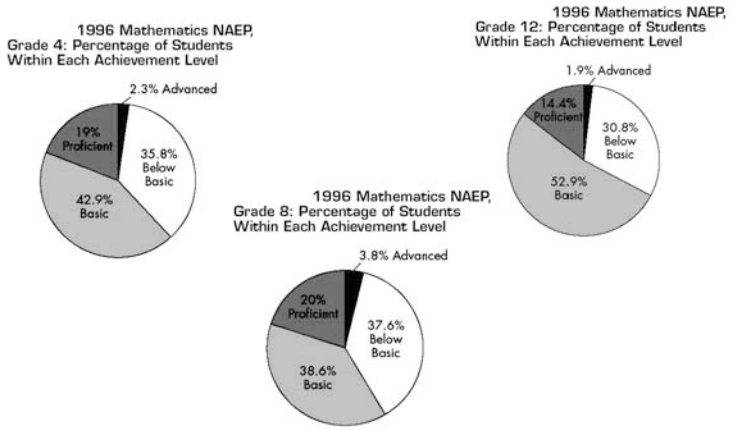
**FIGURE K12-8: Relevant Data on Students, Teachers, and Costs (Public Schools)**

**FIGURE K12-1A: Studies Suggest That a Large Portion of US Students Are Lacking in Science Skills. In 1996, at Least One-Third of Students in 4th, 8th, and 12th Grade Performed Below Basic in National Tests.**




Source: S.C. Loomis and M.L. Bourque (Eds.) *National Assessment of Educational Progress Achievement Levels, 1992–1998 for Science*. Washington, DC: National Assessment Governing Board. July 2001. Available at http://www.nagb.org/pubs/sciencebook.pdf

**FIGURE K12-1B: The Results Are Similar for Mathematics: 30% of Students Scored Below Basic.**




Source: S.C. Loomis and M.L. Bourque (Eds.) *National Assessment of Educational Progress Achievement Levels, 1992–1998 for Science*. Washington, DC: National Assessment Governing Board. July 2001. Available at http://www.nagb.org/pubs/sciencebook.pdf

**TABLE K12-2A: International Comparisons Also Show Problems for the US. 1995 and 2003 US 4th-Grade Mathematics TIMSS Scores Remained Constant, Most Nations Improved.**

**Average mathematics scale scores of fourth-grade students, by country: 1995 and 2003**

| Country | 1995 | Country | 2003 |
|---|---|---|---|
| Singapore | 590 | Singapore | 594 |
| Japan | 567 | Hong Kong SAR[1,2] | 575 |
| Hong Kong SAR[1,2] | 557 | Japan | 565 |
| (Netherlands) | 549 | Netherlands[1] | 540 |
| (Hungary) | 521 | Latvia-LSS[3] | 533 |
| **United States** | **518** | England[1] | 531 |
| (Latvia-LSS)[3] | 499 | Hungary | 529 |
| (Australia) | 495 | **United States[1]** | **518** |
| Scotland | 493 | Cyprus | 510 |
| England | 484 | Australia[1] | 499 |
| Norway | 476 | New Zealand[4] | 496 |
| Cyprus | 475 | Scotland[1] | 490 |
| New Zealand[4] | 469 | Slovenia | 479 |
| (Slovenia) | 462 | Norway | 451 |
| Iran, Islamic Republic of | 387 | Iran, Islamic Republic of | 389 |

■ Average is higher than the U.S. average
□ Average is not measurably different from the U.S. average
□ Average is lower than the U.S. average

1Met international guidelines for participation rates in 2003 only after replacement schools were included.
2Hong Kong is a Special Administrative Region (SAR) of the People's Republic of China.
3Designated LSS because only Latvian-speaking schools were included in 1995. For this analysis, only Latvian-speaking schools are included in the 2003 average.
4In 1995, Maori-speaking students did not participate. Estimates in this table are computed for students taught in English only, which represents between 98-99 percent of the student population in both years.
NOTE: Countries are ordered based on the average score. Parentheses indicate countries that did not meet international sampling or other guidelines in 1995. All countries met international sampling and other guidelines in 2003, except as noted. See NCES (1997) for details regarding 1995 data. The tests for significance take into account the standard error for the reported difference. Thus, a small difference between the United States and one country may be significant while a large difference between the United States and another country may not be significant. Countries were required to sample students in the upper of the two grades that contained the most number of 9-year-olds. In the United States and most countries, this corresponds to grade 4. See table A1 in appendix A for details.
SOURCE: International Association for the Evaluation of Educational achievement (IEA), Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMSS), 1995 and 2003.

Source: National Center for Education Statistics. *Highlights from the Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study: TIMSS 2003*. Washington, DC: United States Department of Education. December 2004. p.8. Available at: http://nces.ed.gov/pubs2005/2005005.pdf.

**TABLE K12-2B: 8th-Graders Did Show Improvement from 1995 to 2003, but Scores Were Still Not Among the Best.**

**Average mathematics scale scores of eighth-grade students, by country: 1995 and 2003**

| Country | 1995 | Country | 2003 |
|---|---|---|---|
| Singapore | 609 | Singapore | 605 |
| Japan | 581 | Korea, Republic of | 589 |
| Korea, Republic of | 581 | Hong Kong SAR[1,2] | 586 |
| Hong Kong SAR[1] | 569 | Japan | 570 |
| Belgium-Flemish | 550 | Belgium-Flemish | 537 |
| Sweden | 540 | Netherlands[2] | 536 |
| Slovak Republic | 534 | Hungary | 529 |
| (Netherlands) | 529 | Russian Federation | 508 |
| Hungary | 527 | Slovak Republic | 508 |
| (Bulgaria) | 527 | Latvia-LSS[3] | 505 |
| Russian Federation | 524 | Australia | 505 |
| (Australia) | 509 | **(United States)** | **504** |
| New Zealand | 501 | Lithuania[4] | 502 |
| Norway | 498 | Sweden | 499 |
| (Slovenia) | 494 | Scotland[2] | 498 |
| (Scotland) | 493 | New Zealand | 494 |
| **United States** | **492** | Slovenia | 493 |
| (Latvia-LSS)[3] | 488 | Bulgaria | 476 |
| (Romania) | 474 | Romania | 475 |
| Lithuania[4] | 472 | Norway | 461 |
| Cyprus | 468 | Cyprus | 459 |
| Iran, Islamic Republic of | 418 | Iran, Islamic Republic of | 411 |

■ Average is higher than the U.S. average
Average is not measurably different from the U.S. average
□ Average is lower than the U.S. average

1Hong Kong is a Special Administrative Region (SAR) of the People's Republic of China.
2Met international guidelines for participation rates in 2003 only after replacement schools were included.
3Designated LSS because only Latvian-speaking schools were included in 1995. For this analysis, only Latvian-speaking schools are included in the 2003 average.
4National desired population does not cover all of the international desired population.
NOTE: Countries are ordered by average score. Parentheses indicate countries that did not meet international sampling or other guidelines in 1995 or 2003. See appendix A for details regarding 2003 data. See NCES (1997) for details regarding 1995 data. The tests for significance take into account the standard error for the reported difference. Thus, a small difference between the United States and one country may be significant while a large difference between the United States and another country may not be significant. Countries were required to sample students in the upper of the two grades that contained the largest number of 13-year-olds. In the United States and most countries, this corresponds to grade 8. See table A1 in appendix A for details.
SOURCE: International Association for the Evaluation of Educational Achievement (IEA), Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMSS), 1995 and 2003.

Source: National Center for Education Statistics. *Highlights from the Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study: TIMSS 2003*. Washington, DC: United States Department of Education. December 2004. p.9. Available at: http://nces.ed.gov/pubs2005/2005005.pdf.

**TABLE K12-2C: Although the US Is Still Near the Top in 4th-Grade Science Scores, in 2003 US Placed Fifth, Compared with Second in 1995.**

**Differences in average science scale scores of fourth-grade students, by country: 1995 and 2003**

| Country | 1995 | 2003 | Difference[1] |
|---|---|---|---|
| Singapore | 523 | 565 | 42 ▲ |
| Japan | 553 | 543 | -10 ▼ |
| Hong Kong SAR[2,3] | 508 | 542 | 35 ▲ |
| England[3] | 528 | 540 | 13 ▲ |
| **United States[3]** | **542** | **536** | **-6** |
| (Hungary) | 508 | 530 | 22 ▲ |
| (Latvia-LSS)[4] | 486 | 530 | 43 ▲ |
| (Netherlands)[3] | 530 | 525 | -5 |
| New Zealand[5] | 505 | 523 | 18 ▲ |
| (Australia)[3] | 521 | 521 | -1 |
| Scotland[2] | 514 | 502 | -12 ▼ |
| (Slovenia) | 464 | 490 | 26 ▲ |
| Cyprus | 450 | 480 | 30 ▲ |
| Norway | 504 | 466 | -38 ▼ |
| Iran, Islamic Republic of | 380 | 414 | 34 ▲ |

▲p<.05, denotes a significant increase.
▼p<.05, denotes a significant decrease.

1Difference calculated by subtracting 1995 from 2003 estimate using unrounded numbers.
2Hong Kong is a Special Administrative Region (SAR) of the People's Republic of China.
3Met international guidelines for participation rates only after replacement schools were included.
4Designated LSS because only Latvian-speaking schools were included in 1995. For this analysis, only Latvian-speaking schools are included in the 2003 average.
5In 1995, Maori-speaking students did not participate. Estimates in this table are computed for students taught in English only, which represents between 98-99 percent of the student population in both years.
NOTE: Countries are ordered based on the 2003 average scores. Parentheses indicate countries that did not meet international sampling or other guidelines in 1995. All countries met international sampling and other guidelines in 2003, except as noted. See NCES (1997) for details regarding 1995 data. The tests for significance take into account the standard error for the reported difference. Thus, a small difference between averages for one country may be significant while a large difference for another country may not be significant. Countries were required to sample students in the upper of the two grades that contained the largest number of 9-year-olds. In the United States and most countries, this corresponds to grade 4. See table A1 in appendix A for details. Detail may not sum to totals because of rounding. SOURCE: International Association for the Evaluation of Educational Achievement (IEA), Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMSS), 1995 and 2003.

Source: National Center for Education Statistics. *Highlights from the Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study: TIMSS 2003*. Washington, DC: United States Department of Education. December 2004. p.16. Available at: http://nces.ed.gov/pubs2005/2005005.pdf.

## TABLE K12-2D: There Has Been a Large Improvement in 8th-Grade Science Scores Since 1995.

**Differences in average science scale scores of eighth-grade students, by country: 1995, 1999, and 2003**

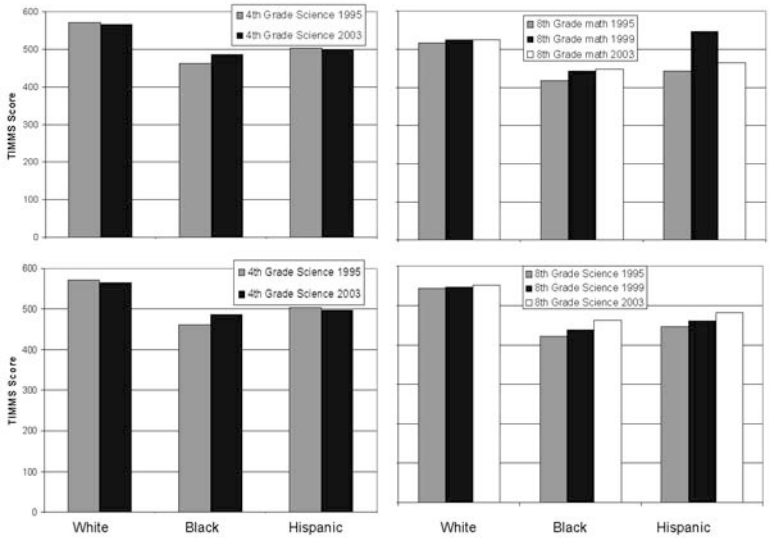
| Country | 1995 | 1999 | 2003 | Difference[1] (2003-1995) | Difference[1] (2003-1999) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Singapore | 580 | 568 | 578 | -3 | 10 |
| Chinese Taipei | – | 569 | 571 | † | 2 |
| Korea, Republic of | 546 | 549 | 558 | 13 ▲ | 10 ▲ |
| Hong Kong SAR[2,3] | 510 | 530 | 556 | 46 ▲ | 27 ▲ |
| Japan | 554 | 550 | 552 | -2 | 3 |
| Hungary | 537 | 552 | 543 | 6 | -10 ▼ |
| (Netherlands)[2] | 541 | 545 | 536 | -6 | -9 |
| **(United States)** | **513** | **515** | **527** | **15 ▲** | **12 ▲** |
| (Australia)[4] | 514 | – | 527 | 13 ▲ | † |
| Sweden | 553 | – | 524 | -28 ▼ | † |
| (Slovenia)[4] | 514 | – | 520 | 7 ▲ | † |
| New Zealand | 511 | 510 | 520 | 9 | 10 |
| (Lithuania)[5] | 464 | 488 | 519 | 56 ▲ | 31 ▲ |
| Slovak Republic | 532 | 535 | 517 | -15 ▼ | -18 ▼ |
| Belgium-Flemish | 533 | 535 | 516 | -17 ▼ | -19 ▼ |
| Russian Federation | 523 | 529 | 514 | -9 | -16 ▼ |
| (Latvia-LSS)[6] | 476 | 503 | 513 | 37 ▲ | 11 |
| (Scotland)[2] | 501 | – | 512 | 10 | † |
| Malaysia | – | 492 | 510 | † | 18 ▲ |
| Norway | 514 | – | 494 | -21 ▼ | † |
| Italy[7] | – | 493 | 491 | † | -2 |
| (Israel)[7] | – | 468 | 488 | † | 20 ▲ |
| (Bulgaria) | 545 | 518 | 479 | -66 ▼ | -39 ▼ |
| Jordan | – | 450 | 475 | † | 25 ▲ |
| Moldova, Republic of | – | 459 | 472 | † | 13 ▲ |
| (Romania) | 471 | 472 | 470 | -1 | -2 |
| Iran, Islamic Republic of | 463 | 448 | 453 | -9 ▼ | 5 |
| (Macedonia, Republic of) | – | 458 | 449 | † | -9 |
| Cyprus | 452 | 460 | 441 | -11 ▼ | -19 ▼ |
| Indonesia[4] | – | 435 | 420 | † | -15 ▼ |
| Chile | – | 420 | 413 | † | -8 |
| Tunisia | – | 430 | 404 | † | -26 ▼ |
| Philippines | – | 345 | 377 | † | 32 ▲ |
| South Africa[8] | – | 243 | 244 | † | 1 |

–Not available.
†Not applicable.
▲p<.05, denotes a significant increase.
▼p<.05, denotes a significant decrease.

1Difference calculated by subtracting 1995 or 1999 from 2003 estimate using unrounded numbers.
2Met international guidelines for participation rates in 2003 only after replacement schools were included.
3Hong Kong is a Special Administrative Region (SAR) of the People's Republic of China.
4Because of national-level changes in the starting age/date for school, 1999 data for Australia and Slovenia cannot be compared to 2003.
5National desired population does not cover all of the international desired population in all years for Lithuania, and in 2003 for Indonesia.
6Designated LSS because only Latvian-speaking schools were included in 1995 and 1999. For this analysis, only Latvian-speaking schools are included in the 2003 average.
7Because of changes in the population tested, 1995 data for Israel and Italy are not shown.
8Because within classroom sampling was not accounted for, 1995 data are not shown for South Africa.
NOTE: Countries are sorted by 2003 average scores. The tests for significance take into account the standard error for the reported difference. Thus, a small difference between averages for one country may be significant while a large difference for another country may not be significant. Parentheses indicate countries that did not meet international sampling and/or other guidelines in 1995, 1999, and/or 2003. See appendix A for details regarding 2003 data. See Gonzales et al. (2000) for details regarding 1995 and 1999 data. Countries were required to sample students in the upper of the two grades that contained the largest number of 13-year-olds. In the United States and most countries, this corresponds to grade 8. See table A1 in appendix A for details. Detail may not sum to totals because of rounding. SOURCE: International Association for the Evaluation of Educational Achievement (IEA), Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMSS), 1995, 1999, and 2003.

Source: National Center for Education Statistics. *Highlights from the Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study: TIMSS 2003*. Washington, DC: United States Department of Education. December 2004. p.17. Available at: http://nces.ed.gov/pubs2005/2005005.pdf.

**FIGURE K12-2E: TIMSS Data for 4th and 8th Graders Show Performance Gap Between Blacks, Latinos, and European Americans Has Diminished.**

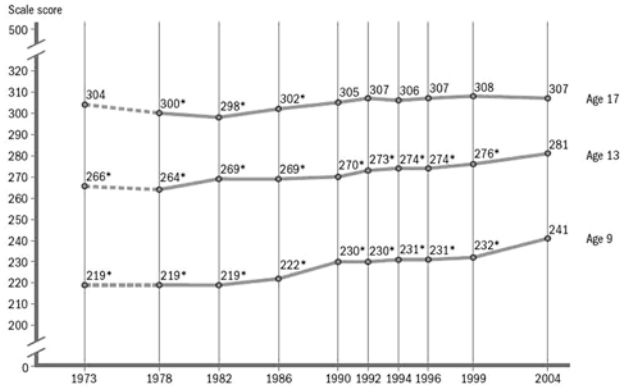



Source: National Center for Education Statistics. *Highlights from the Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study: TIMSS 2003*. Washington, DC: United States Department of Education. December 2004. Tables C8, C11, C28, C20. Available at: http://nces.ed.gov/pubs2005/2005005.pdf.

S

**TABLE K12-3A: Long-Term Trends Show Improvements at Ages 9 and 13, But No Significant Improvement for 17-Year-Olds.**

Trends in average mathematics scale scores for students ages 9, 13, and 17: 1973-2004




*Significantly different from 2004.
NOTE: Dashed lines represent extrapolated data.
SOURCE: U.S. Department of Education, Institute of Education Sciences, National Center for Education Statistics, National Assessment of Educational Progress (NAEP), selected years, 1973-2004 Long-Term Trend Mathematics Assessments.

Source: National Assessment Governing Board. *National Assessment of Educational Progress 2004: Trends in Academic Progress Three Decades of Student Performance in Reading and Mathematics*. Washington, DC: United States Department of Education. July 14, 2005.

**TABLE K12-3B: Scores in 1996 and 2000 Show a Sex Gap in Mathemathics and Science; Overall Fewer Students Performing at the Basic Level or Better in 2000.**

Appendix table 1-4

**Students at or above basic and p... ...ematics and science, grades 4, 8, and 12, by sex: 1996 and 2000**

(Percent)

| | 1996 | | | 2000 | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Variable | Grade 4 | Grade 8 | Grade 12 | Grade 4 | Grade 8 | Grade 12 |
| Mathematics | | | | | | |
| At or above basic | | | | | | |
| Male | 65* | 62* | 70* | 70 | 67 | 66 |
| Female | 63* | 63 | 69* | 68 | 65 | 64 |
| At or above proficient | | | | | | |
| Male | 24* | 25* | 18 | 28 | 29 | 20 |
| Female | 19* | 23 | 14 | 24 | 25 | 14 |
| Science | | | | | | |
| At or above basic | | | | | | |
| Male | 68 | 62 | 60* | 69 | 64 | 54 |
| Female | 67 | 61 | 55 | 64 | 57 | 51 |
| At or above proficient | | | | | | |
| Male | 31 | 31* | 25 | 33 | 36 | 21 |
| Female | 27 | 27 | 17 | 26 | 27 | 16 |

*Significantly different from 2000.

SOURCES: U.S. Department of Education, National Center for Education Statistics (NCES), *The Nation's Report Card: Mathematics 2000*, NCES 2001-517 (Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Education, 2001); and NCES, *The Nation's Report Card: Science 2000*, NCES 2003-453 (Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Education, 2003).

*Science & Engineering Indicators – 2004*

Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Appendix Table 1-4.

**TABLE K12-4A: The Vast Majority of Students Will Never Take an Advanced Mathematics Course While in High School.**

**High school graduates completing advanced mathematics courses (1990, 1994, and 1998), by student and school characteristics in 1998**
(Percent)

| Year and characteristic | Any trigonometry/ algebra III | Any precalculus/ analysis | Any statistics/ probability | Calculus | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Any | AP/IB |
| 1990 | 20.7 | 13.6 | 1.0 | 7.2 | NA |
| 1994 | 24.0 | 17.4 | 2.1 | 10.2 | NA |
| 1998 | 20.8 | 23.1 | 3.7 | 11.9 | 6.3 |
| Male | 19.4 | 23.1 | 3.4 | 12.0 | 6.8 |
| Female | 22.5 | 22.9 | 4.0 | 11.6 | 6.0 |
| White | 23.6 | 25.1 | 4.3 | 13.1 | 7.0 |
| Asian/Pacific Islander | 18.0 | 41.4 | 3.8 | 20.1 | 13.1 |
| Black | 15.5 | 14.0 | 2.1 | 7.2 | 3.3 |
| Hispanic | 10.9 | 15.4 | 1.7 | 7.1 | 3.7 |
| School urbanicity | | | | | |
| Urban | 19.0 | 28.5 | 3.6 | 13.2 | 7.7 |
| Suburban | 20.9 | 26.7 | 4.0 | 12.1 | 7.5 |
| Rural | 22.6 | 13.4 | 3.4 | 10.4 | 3.5 |
| School size* | | | | | |
| Small | 22.2 | 21.9 | 3.6 | 10.8 | 3.4 |
| Medium | 21.9 | 22.8 | 3.8 | 12.9 | 6.9 |
| Large | 16.7 | 25.1 | 3.4 | 10.3 | 7.7 |
| School poverty[a] | | | | | |
| Very low | 26.3 | 35.4 | 6.5 | 15.6 | 8.8 |
| Low | 18.1 | 23.6 | 4.3 | 12.0 | 6.7 |
| Medium | 22.4 | 14.9 | 1.7 | 9.2 | 3.9 |
| High | 23.6 | 9.8 | 0.8 | 6.9 | 4.9 |

AP Advanced Placement
IB International Baccalaureate
NA not available

*Small = fewer than 600 students enrolled, medium = 600–1,800, and large = more than 1,800.
[a]Measured by percentage of students eligible for free or reduced-priced lunches: very low = 5 percent or less, low = 6–25 percent, medium = 26–50 percent, and high = 51–100 percent.

NOTES: AP and IB courses were coded separately in 1998 and 2000 but not in prior years. AP/IB calculus courses are counted both in their specific column and in the "any calculus" column. Before 1998, AP and IB courses were coded with the general set of courses.

SOURCE: U.S. Department of Education, National Center for Education Statistics, High School Transcript Studies, various years.

*Science & Engineering Indicators – 2004*

Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Appendix Table 1-10.

**TABLE K12-4B: Nor an Advanced Science Course,**

**High school graduates completing advanced science courses (1990, 1994, and 1998), by student and school characteristics in 1998**
(Percent)

| Year and characteristic | Advanced biology | | Chemistry | | Physics | | Advanced biology, chemistry, and physics |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Any | AP/IB | Any | AP/IB | Any | AP/IB | |
| 1990 | 27.5 | NA | 45.0 | NA | 21.5 | NA | 7.4 |
| 1994 | 34.8 | NA | 50.4 | NA | 24.5 | NA | 9.9 |
| 1998 | 37.4 | 4.9 | 56.4 | 2.9 | 28.6 | 1.7 | 12.1 |
| Male | 33.8 | 4.0 | 53.3 | 3.3 | 31.0 | 2.3 | 11.8 |
| Female | 40.8 | 5.8 | 59.2 | 2.6 | 26.6 | 1.2 | 12.3 |
| White | 38.5 | 5.0 | 58.8 | 2.9 | 31.1 | 1.8 | 13.4 |
| Asian/Pacific Islander | 43.0 | 14.0 | 63.7 | 9.5 | 37.4 | 4.8 | 15.7 |
| Black | 35.8 | 3.4 | 51.1 | 1.2 | 20.3 | 0.8 | 7.6 |
| Hispanic | 31.2 | 3.1 | 45.5 | 2.9 | 19.4 | 1.3 | 8.2 |
| School urbanicity | | | | | | | |
| Urban | 43.0 | 5.9 | 62.4 | 3.9 | 30.8 | 2.7 | 14.0 |
| Suburban | 39.4 | 5.9 | 56.1 | 3.2 | 31.2 | 2.0 | 14.6 |
| Rural | 29.3 | 2.6 | 50.9 | 1.6 | 23.1 | 0.4 | 7.3 |
| School size[a] | | | | | | | |
| Small | 36.4 | 2.9 | 57.7 | 0.9 | 25.7 | 0.3 | 11.7 |
| Medium | 36.8 | 4.9 | 56.6 | 2.9 | 31.0 | 1.9 | 13.4 |
| Large | 40.1 | 6.6 | 55.0 | 4.8 | 24.8 | 2.6 | 9.2 |
| School poverty[b] | | | | | | | |
| Very low | 37.9 | 6.4 | 71.2 | 4.8 | 43.0 | 3.6 | 17.8 |
| Low | 39.4 | 4.6 | 54.2 | 1.9 | 26.9 | 0.9 | 11.7 |
| Medium | 34.1 | 3.4 | 52.4 | 2.2 | 23.6 | 1.3 | 10.2 |
| High | 37.7 | 5.3 | 50.7 | 2.1 | 17.4 | 1.0 | 7.5 |

AP Advanced Placement
IB International Baccalaureate
NA not available

[a]Small = fewer than 600 students enrolled, medium = 600–1,800, and large = more than 1,800.

[b]Measured by percentage of students eligible for free or reduced-priced lunches: very low = 5 percent or less, low = 6–25 percent, medium = 26–50 percent, and high = 51–100 percent.

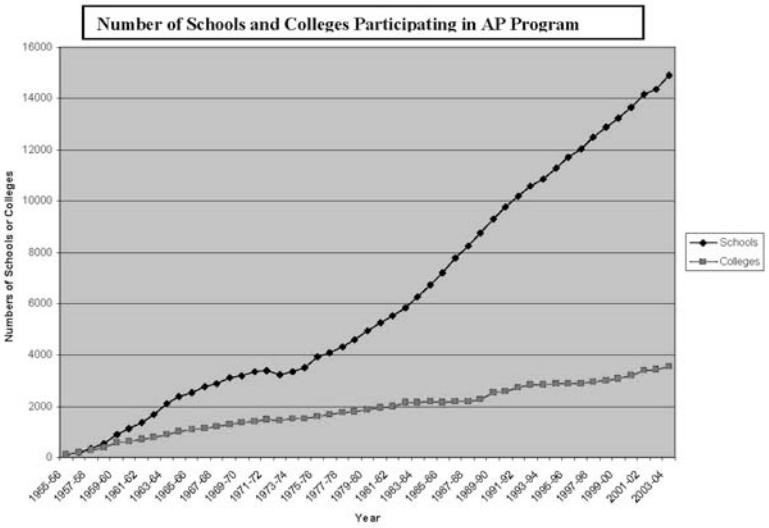
NOTES: AP and IB courses were coded separately in 1998 and 2000 but not in prior years. AP/IB courses are counted both in their specific columns and in columns that correspond to the general course category. For example, AP chemistry is included in the "any chemistry" column in addition to being listed in its own column. Before 1998, AP and IB courses were coded with the general set of courses.

SOURCE: U.S. Department of Education, National Center for Education Statistics, High School Transcript Studies, various years.

*Science & Engineering Indicators – 2004*

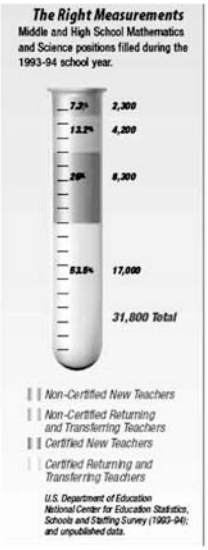
Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Appendix Table 1-11.

**FIGURE K12-4C: Even Though the Number of Schools Offering Advanced Placement Courses Has Increased Rapidly.**




Source: National Research Council. 2002. *Learning and Understanding: Improving Advanced Study of Mathematics and Science in US High Schools.* Washington DC: National Academies Press. Data courtesy of Jay Labov, Center for Education, National Academies.

**FIGURE K12-5: In 1993-1994, Over 20% of Mathematics and Science Teaching Positions Were Filled by NonCertified Teachers.**




National Center for Education Statistics. *Schools and Staffing Survey (1993-1994).* Washington, DC: United States Department of Education.

## TABLE K12-6: Students Who Take Science and Mathematics Courses Might Not Have Teachers Who Have Studied in the Fields They Are Teaching.

Appendix table 1-13
**Public high school students whose mathematics and science teachers majored or minored in various subject fields, by poverty level and minority enrollment in school: 1999–2000**
(Percent distribution)

| Subject and school characteristics | Mathematics/ statistics major | Mathematics/ statistics minor | Mathematics education major | Science, computer science, or engineering major | Other major |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Mathematics | | | | | |
| Students in poverty (percent) | | | | | |
| 0–10 | 45.1 | 3.7 | 31.3 | 4.0 | 15.9 |
| More than 10 to 50 | 37.6 | 5.2 | 34.4 | 4.0 | 18.8 |
| More than 50 | 43.4 | 5.8 | 23.6 | 10.3 | 17.0 |
| Minority enrollment (percent) | | | | | |
| 0–5 | 42.5 | 3.7 | 35.3 | 2.4 | 16.2 |
| More than 5 to 45 | 39.4 | 4.4 | 35.7 | 4.1 | 16.3 |
| More than 45 | 41.6 | 6.6 | 24.5 | 7.3 | 19.9 |
| | Biology/life science major | Biology/life science minor | Other science major or minor | Science education major | Other major |
| Biology/life sciences | | | | | |
| Students in poverty (percent) | | | | | |
| 0–10 | 62.6 | 5.7 | 7.0 | 7.8 | 16.9 |
| More than 10 to 50 | 61.2 | 7.1 | 8.0 | 11.6 | 12.0 |
| More than 50 | 62.5 | 6.4 | 2.7 | 7.0 | 21.4 |
| Minority enrollment (percent) | | | | | |
| 0–5 | 59.8 | 7.9 | 5.4 | 13.5 | 13.4 |
| More than 5 to 45 | 64.2 | 4.6 | 6.0 | 8.4 | 16.7 |
| More than 45 | 64.4 | 7.8 | 7.0 | 6.5 | 14.3 |
| | Physical science major | Physical science minor | Biology/life science major or minor | Science education major | Other major |
| Physical sciences | | | | | |
| Students in poverty (percent) | | | | | |
| 0–10 | 41.8 | 10.7 | 14.4 | 15.5 | 17.6 |
| More than 10 to 50 | 40.9 | 14.2 | 13.1 | 15.2 | 16.6 |
| More than 50 | 30.8 | 15.7 | 26.1 | 6.0 | 21.5 |
| Minority enrollment (percent) | | | | | |
| 0–5 | 41.4 | 11.2 | 14.4 | 19.3 | 13.6 |
| More than 5 to 45 | 41.7 | 14.3 | 15.0 | 13.4 | 15.7 |
| More than 45 | 40.7 | 14.3 | 18.2 | 7.4 | 19.4 |

NOTES: Students in poverty are those who are approved to receive free or reduced-priced lunches. Percents may not sum to 100 because of rounding. Physical sciences include chemistry, geology/earth sciences, physics, other natural sciences (except biology/life sciences), and engineering.

SOURCE: U.S. Department of Education, National Center for Education Statistics, Schools and Staffing Survey, 1999–2000.

*Science & Engineering Indicators – 2004*

## TABLE K12-7: Many New Science and Mathematics Teachers Report Feeling Ill Prepared to Handle the Challenges of Teaching.

Appendix table 1-15
**Public middle and high school school mathematics and science teachers who entered profession between 1995–96 and 1999–2000 and reported feeling well prepared in various aspects of teaching in first year, by participation in induction and mentoring activities: 1999–2000**
(Percent)

| Subject and activity | Handle classroom management and discipline | Use variety of instructional methods | Teach subject matter | Use computers in classroom instruction | Plan lessons effectively | Assess students | Select/adapt curriculum and instructional materials |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| All mathematics teachers | 50.5 | 65.1 | 90.1 | 41.5 | 77.5 | 69.7 | 53.9 |
| Induction program | | | | | | | |
| Yes | 50.8 | 67.2 | 89.4 | 45.1 | 78.2 | 70.9 | 55.8 |
| No | 50.0 | 61.8 | 91.1 | 35.7 | 76.4 | 67.9 | 51.0 |
| Mentor | | | | | | | |
| Yes | 53.5 | 68.7 | 89.6 | 41.8 | 79.3 | 72.6 | 57.1 |
| No | 44.6 | 58.2 | 91.0 | 40.8 | 74.0 | 64.1 | 47.8 |
| All science teachers | 50.8 | 66.0 | 82.9 | 48.0 | 69.4 | 68.8 | 58.6 |
| Induction program | | | | | | | |
| Yes | 51.7 | 70.1 | 83.8 | 51.3 | 74.7 | 72.5 | 63.6 |
| No | 49.1 | 58.0 | 81.0 | 41.5 | 59.0 | 61.6 | 48.6 |
| Mentor | | | | | | | |
| Yes | 56.6 | 73.6 | 84.9 | 51.5 | 75.3 | 74.3 | 64.6 |
| No | 42.0 | 54.4 | 79.7 | 42.6 | 60.3 | 60.4 | 49.2 |

SOURCE: U.S. Department of Education, National Center for Education Statistics, Schools and Staffing Survey, 1999–2000.

*Science & Engineering Indicators – 2004*

Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Appendix Tables 1-13. and 1-15

**FIGURE K12-8: Relevant Data on Students, Teachers, and Costs (Public Schools)**

| | |
|---|---|
| Fall 2003 Enrollment K-12[1] | 48,132,518 |
| High School Graduates – 2003-04[1] | 2,771,781 |
| Male graduates going to college – 2001[2] | 60% |
| Female graduates going to college – 2001[2] | 64% |
| Total number of school teachers - 2003–04[1] | 3,044,012 |
| Total number of math and science teachers (k-12)[3] | 1,700,000 |
| Total number of math teachers (6-12) 1999-00[4] | 191,214 |
| Total number of science teachers (6-12) 1999-00[4] | 159,488 |
| Average public school teacher salary - 2003–04[1] | $46,752 |
| Average Spent Per Student[1] | $8,248. |
| Operating School Districts in the United States[1] | 15,397 |

Sources:

1)National Education Association. *Rankings & Estimates: Rankings of the States 2004 and Estimates of School Statistics 2005*. Atlanta, GA: NEA Research. June 2005. Available at: http://www.nea.org/edstats/images/05rankings.pdf

2) National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Appendix Table 1-19

3) National Commission on Mathematics and Science Teaching for the 21st Century. *Before It's Too Late: A Report to the Nation.* September 27, 2000. Available at: http://www.ed.gov/inits/Math/glenn/toc.html

4) National Center for Education Statistics. *Digest of Education Statistics 2003.*. Washington, DC: United States Department of Education. 2004. Table 67.

This paper summarizes findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. Statements in this paper should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

# Attracting the Most Able US Students to Science and Engineering

## Summary

The world economy is growing rapidly in fields that require science, engineering, and technologic skills. The United States can remain a leader in science and engineering (S&E) only with a well-educated and effectively trained population. The most innovative S&E work is done by a relatively small number of especially talented, knowledgeable, and accomplished individuals. Because of the importance of S&E to our nation, attracting and retaining individuals capable of such achievements ought to be a goal of federal policy.

It follows that a key component of national and economic security policy must be US S&E students. The United States has relied on drawing the best and brightest from an international talent pool. However, recent events have led some to be concerned that the United States cannot rely on a steady flow of international students. Furthermore, as other developed countries encourage international students to come to their countries and developing countries enhance their postsecondary educational capacity, there is increased competition for the best students, which could further reduce the flow of international students to the United States. Therefore, any policies aimed at encouraging student interest in S&E must have a significant component that focuses on domestic talent.

Fundamentally, policy levers designed to influence the number of US S&E workers fall into two categories: supply-side and demand-side. Among supply-side issues are K-12 science, mathematics and technology teaching, undergraduate S&E educational experience, graduate training experience, opportunity costs compared with those of other fields and professions, and length of postdoctoral training period. On the demand side are funding for research and availability of research jobs, both of which are powerfully influenced by public policies and by public and private expenditures on research and development.

Past reports have identified a number of options the federal government could take to influence the education and career decisions of top US students, including the following:

- Double the number of magnet high schools specializing in science, technology, engineering, and mathematics from approximately 100 to 200 over the next 10 years.
- Support competitive undergraduate scholarships for students interested in science, mathematics, and engineering.
- Provide scholarships to all qualified students majoring in science or mathematics at a 4-year college who have an economic need and who maintain high levels of academic achievement.
- Provide at least 5,000 portable graduate fellowships, each with a duration of up to 5 years, for training in emerging fields, to encourage US students to pursue S&E graduate studies.
- Provide graduate student stipends competitive with opportunities in other venues.
- Support a significant number of selective research assistant professorships in the natural sciences and engineering open to postdoctoral scholars who are US citizens or permanent residents.
- Partner with industry to sponsor a series of public-service announcements exalting science and technology careers.

**Getting an Early Start: K-12 S&E Programs**

One proven way of fostering students' interest in science and technology is through magnet high schools that emphasize those subjects. There are approximately 100 such schools in the United States, and studies have shown that graduates from these schools are more likely to study science, mathematics, or engineering in college and enter those fields during their careers.[1] It is not known, however, whether these students would have had similar career trajectories even if they had not attended magnet schools.

During the undergraduate years, involvement in research projects and the guidance of experienced mentors are powerful means of retaining students in S&E.[2] Mentors can provide advice, encouragement, and information about people and issues in a particular field. An early exposure to research can demonstrate to students the kinds of opportunities they will encounter if they pursue research careers.

**Trends in Undergraduate and Graduate Student Interest in S&E**

When one examines the issue, it becomes clear that there is a great deal of domestic student interest in undergraduate S&E programs. About 30% of students entering college in the United States (of whom over 95% are US citizens or permanent residents) intend to major in S&E fields. This proportion has remained fairly constant over the last 20 years. However, a considerable gap exists between freshman intentions and successful degree completion. Undergraduate S&E programs report the lowest retention rate among all academic disciplines. A National Center for Educational

[1] Kendall Powell, "HothoUSe High," *Nature* 435 (2005): 874-875.
[2] Rena F. Subotnik, Karen Maurer Stone, and Cynthia Steiner, "Lost Generation of Elite Talent in Science," *Journal of Secondary Gifted Education* 13(2001):33-43.

Statistics (NCES) longitudinal study of first-year S&E students in 1990 found that fewer than 50% of undergraduate students entering college declaring a S&E major had completed S&E degrees within 5 years.[3] Indeed, approximately 50% of such undergraduate students changed their major field within the first 2 years.[4] Undergraduates who opt out of S&E programs are among the most highly qualified college entrants.[5] They are also disproportionately women and nonwhite students, indicating that many potential entrants are discouraged before they can join the S&E workforce.[6]

Graduate enrollment in S&E programs has been a relatively level 22-26% of total enrollments since 1993 (see Figures TS-1 and TS-2). Growth in the number of S&E doctorates awarded is due primarily to the increased numbers of international students but also to the increasing participation of women and underrepresented minority groups.[7] If the primary objective of the US S&E enterprise is to maintain excellence, a major challenge is to determine how to continue to attract the best international students and at the same time encourage the best domestic students to enter S&E undergraduate and graduate programs.

**Decision Points and Disincentives**

There are inherent disincentives that push students away from S&E programs and careers. These disincentives fall into three broad categories: curriculum, economics, and environment. Undergraduate attrition may be due partly to a disconnect between the culture and curricula in high schools compared with those at colleges and universities.[8]

---

[3] Berkner LK, Cuccaro-Alamin S, and McCormick AC. 1996. Descriptive Summary of 1989-90 Beginning Postsecondary Students: 5 Years Later With an Essay on Postsecondary Persistence and Attainment. (NCES 96155).Washington DC: National Center for Education Statistics.

[4] Smith T. 2001. The Retention and Graduation Rates of 1993-1999 Entering Science, Mathematics, Engineering, and Technology Majors in 175 Colleges and Universities. Norman, OK: Center for Institutional Data Exchange and Analysis (C-IDEA), the University of Oklahoma.

[5] Tobias S. 1990. *They're Not Dumb, They're Different. Stalking the Second Tier.* Tucson, AZ: Research Corporation; Seymour E. and Hewitt N. 1997. *Talking About Leaving: Why Undergraduates Leave the Sciences.* Boulder, CO: Westview Press; Ohland MW, Zhang, G, Thorndyke B, and Anderson TJ. 2004. "Grade-Point Average, Changes of Major, and Majors Selected by Students Leaving Engineering." *34th ASEE/IEEE Frontiers in Education Conference.* Session T1G:12-17.

[6] Fox MF and Stephan P. 2001. "Careers of Young Scientists: Preferences, Prospects, and Reality by Gender and Field." *Social Studies of Science* 31:109-122; Tan DL. 2002. *Majors in Science, Technology, Engineering, and Mathematics: Gender and Ethnic Differences in Persistence and Graduation.* Norman, OK: University of Oklahoma. Available at: http://www.ou.edu/education/csar/literature/tan_paper3.pdf; Building Engineering and Science Talent (BEST). 2004. *The Talent Imperative: Diversifying America's S&E Workforce.* San Diego: BEST; Heyman GD, Martyna B, and Bhatia S. 2002. "Gender and Achievement-Related Beliefs among Engineering Students." *Journal of Women and Minorities in S&E* 8: 33-45.

[7] National Science Foundation. 2003. *Graduate Enrollment Increases in S&E Fields, Especially in Engineering and Computer Sciences* (NSF 03-315). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.

[8] Venezia A, Kirst MW, and Antonio AL. 2003. *Betraying the College Dream: How Disconnected K-12 and Postsecondary Education Systems Undermine Student Aspirations.* Stanford, CA: The Bridge Project, Stanford University. Available at: http://www.stanford.edu/group/bridgeproject/betrayingthecollegedream.pdf.

For example, poor mathematics preparation in high school may underlie attrition in undergraduate physics programs. Underrepresented groups such as blacks and American Indians, who are educated disproportionately in underserved communities, are on the whole less well prepared for college.[9] These types of problems suggest transitional programs to bridge the gap between high school and college, but the value of such strategies has not been compared with those at other levels in the educational system.

Higher education is costly, and employment opportunities fluctuate. Whether a student perceives that a degree will lead to a viable career is a major factor determining choice of field.[10] This is illustrated particularly well in engineering: undergraduate student decisions to major in particular fields vary depending on business cycles.

Research indicates that large schools, which often foster a competitive "weeding out" environment, have a much higher attrition rate than smaller schools. This environment can be compounded by the culture of specific fields. Some researchers argue that a key factor in stemming attrition is feeling connected to the intellectual and social life of the college.[11] Another researcher writes of three types of university cultures—the *elite* (scientific excellence), the *pluralist* (research, teaching, and service), and the *communitarian* (citizenship)—each carrying its own set of values and signals, some of which are competing.[12] Departments, colleges and universities, and professional societies each have a role in providing a high-quality, engaging learning environment.

After a student's determination of an undergraduate major or concentration, another key transition point is a decision to enter and complete graduate training.[13] Major factors to consider include time to degree and economics.[14] Unclear job prospects and lost earning potential are major disincentives for many considering an advanced S&E degree.[15] An issue raised in several studies on doctoral education is that prospective students are underinformed. A large, cross-disciplinary, multi-institutional survey on the experiences of doctoral students indicated that students entering doctoral programs entered their programs "without having a good idea of the time, money, clarity of

---

[9] Babco E. 2002. *Trends in African American and Native American Participation in STEM Higher Education.* Washington DC: Commission on Professionals in Science and Technology.

[10] Clotfeltner CT, Ehrenberg RG, Getz M, and Siegfried JJ. 1991. *Economic Challenges in Higher Education.* Chicago, IL: The University of Chicago Press;
Teitelbaum MS. 2003. "Do We Need More Scientists?" *The Public Interest* 153:40-53.

[11] Tinto V. 1993. *Leaving College: Rethinking the CaUSes and Curses of Student Attrition.* Chicago, IL: The University of Chicago Press; Braxton JM. 2002. *Reworking the Student Departure Puzzle.* Nashville, TN: Vanderbilt University Press.

[12] Fox MF and Stephan P. 2001. "Careers of Young Scientists: Preferences, Prospects, and Reality by Gender and Field." *Social Studies of Science* 31:109-122.

[13] Lu A. 2002. *The Decision Cycle for People Going to Graduate School.* Stamford, CT: Peterson's Thomson Learning.

[14] COSEPUP. 1995. *Reshaping the Graduate Education of Scientists and Engineers.* Washington DC: National Academy Press.

[15] Freeman R, Weinstein E, Marincola E, Rosenbaum J, and Solomon F. 2001. "CAREERS: Competition and Careers in Biosciences." *Science* 294(5550): 2293-2294; Butz W, Bloom GA, Gross ME, Kelly TK, Kofner A, and Rippen HE. 2003. *Is there a Shortage of Scientists and Engineers? How Would We Know?* Santa Monica, CA: RAND Corporation, IP-241-OSTP. Availabel at:
http://www.rand.org/publications/IP/IP241/IP241.pdf; Teitelbaum MS. 2003. "Do We Need More Scientists?" *The Public Interest* 153:40-53.

purpose, and perseverance that doctoral education entails",[16] The burden of being informed does not rest solely on the prospective student. While professional schools make a point to inform prospective students of the salary and employment levels of graduates, it appears that S&E graduate programs rarely make such information available.[17]

**Career Prospects in S&E**

Students considering research careers can face daunting prospects. Graduate and postdoctoral training may take over a decade, usually with low pay and few benefits. Most researchers do not become full-fledged members of the profession until their mid-30s or later—an especially onerous burden for those who are trying to balance the demands of work and family.

Even at the end of this long training period, many do not find the jobs for which they have been trained. The stagnation of funding for the physical sciences, mathematics, engineering, and the social sciences over the last decade has led to fewer academic faculty positions in these fields. Even in expanding fields, such as the biosciences, the number of permanent academic research and teaching positions has not kept up with the growing number of students who are entering these fields. As a result, more and more researchers languish in temporary positions.[18] The fastest-growing employment category since the early 1980s has been "other academic appointments", which is currently increasing at about 4.9% annually.[19] These jobs are essentially holding positions filled by young researchers coming from postdoctoral positions who would like to join an academic faculty on a tenure track and are willing to wait. It is an increasingly long wait as institutions are decreasing the number of faculty appointments to decrease the long-term commitments that they entail. From 1993 to 2001, the number of biomedical tenure-track appointments increased by 13.8%, while those for non-tenure-track faculty increased by 45.1% and other appointments by 38.9% (see Figure TS-3).

In fields outside the life sciences, most doctorates go on to careers in industry or government (see Figure TS-4). Increasingly, these sectors are providing research opportunities for the best students. At the same time that biotechnology firms are gearing up their R&D operations, top industrial research laboratories, such as Bell Labs andXerox Parc are closing down, leaving physical-science graduates with few options. Increasingly, mathematics and computer-science graduates are turning to finance and Wall Street. Given these shifts in workforce opportunities, top US students may consider options other than S&E very attractive. Careers in such professions as law, medicine,

---

[16] Golde CM and Dore TM. 2001. *At Cross Purposes: What the Experiences of Doctoral Students Reveal about Doctoral Education.* Philadelphia PA: A Report Prepared for The Pew Charitable TrUSts.

[17] Romer P. 2000. *Should the Government Subsidize Supply or Demand in the Market for Scientists and Engineers?* (Working Paper 7723). Cambridge, MA: National Bureau for Economic Research. Availabe at: http://www.nber.org/papers/w7723; National Research Council. 1998. *Trends in the Early Careers of Life Scientists.* Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.

[18] National Research Council, *Trends in the Early Careers of Life Scientists*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1998.

[19] National Research Council. 2005. *Advancing the Nation's Health Needs.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

business, and health services require less training, offer more secure job prospects, and have much higher lifetime earning potential (see Table TS-1).

**Interest in Research Careers by Top Students Tracks Job Market**

The current contrast between these options and research is influencing career decisions. According to available sources of data, accomplished US students are increasingly turning away from S&E, especially during their undergraduate years. [20] In the 1990s, surveys of science majors from top universities showed a striking decline of interest in S&E careers. Between 1984 and 1998, the percentage of college seniors planning to go to graduate school in the next fall in S&E fields dropped from 17% to 12%. Among those students with A or A- grade-point averages, the declines were comparably steep—from 25 % to 18 %.[21]

Between 1992 and 2000, the number of college seniors who scored highly on the Graduate Record Examination (GRE) and indicated that they intended to study S&E in graduate school fell by 8%. The number of these top students planning to go to graduate school in fields other than S&E grew by 7% (Figure TS-5). The greatest declines were in engineering (25%) and mathematics (19%). Among top GRE scorers, however, enrollment in biological sciences programs showed a 59 % gain. When it came to careers outside S&E, the researchers found that the fields attracting the largest growth in top GRE scorers were short training programs in health professions, such as physical therapy, speech and language pathology, and public health—drawing 88 % more top scorers in 2000 than in 1992.

Where are top students going if not into S&E? The top US students do not appear to be headed in large numbers into law school or medical school, where enrollments have been flat or declining. But more do seem to be attracted to graduate business schools, where the number of MBAs awarded annually grew by nearly one-third during the 1990s. During this period, many S&E undergraduate students also may have entered directly into the workforce after graduating, attracted in part by the booming economy. As the economy slowed in the early part of this decade, some of these students may have returned to graduate school, and more undergraduates may have opted to continue their studies.[22]

Indeed, 1999 appears to have been the nadir for student interest in S&E graduate study. The economy's recent slump has prompted growing numbers of top US college graduates to attend graduate school, new data show, sharply reversing course from the late 1990s, when more of the brightest young Americans headed for quicker-payoff

---

[20] William Zumeta and Joyce S. Raveling, "Attracting the Best and the Brightest," *Issues in Science and Technology*, Winter 2002, pp. 36-40.

[21] Engin I. Holmstrom, Catherine D. Gaddy, Virginia V. Van Horne, and Carolyn M. Zimmerman, "Best and Brightest: Education and Career Paths of Top S&E Students," Washington, DC: Commission on Professionals in Science and Technology, 1997.

[22] William Zumeta and Joyce S. Raveling, "The Best and the Brightest for Science: Is There a Problem Here?" Pp. 121-161 in M.P. Feldman and A.N. Link (eds.), *Innovation Policy in the Knowledge-Based Economy*, Boston: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2001.

careers in business and health. By 2001, with fewer high-technology jobs beckoning, the share of top US citizen scorers (above 750) on the GRE quantitative scale heading to graduate school in the natural sciences and engineering increased by about 31 % compared with 1998, after having declined by 21 % in the previous 6 years.[23] This recent increase is comparable with the 29 % gain in the number of all score levels of examinees who intended to enroll in graduate school in S&E. And the total number of GRE examinees increased by 9 % between 1998 and 2001, suggesting that more students in a variety of fields were preparing for graduate school.

**Enrollments of International Students[24]**

As the number of US students studying S&E in graduate schools has dropped, these schools and employers of scientists and engineers have compensated by enrolling and employing more students and trained personnel from other countries. In 2003, foreign students earned 38 % of doctorates in the S&E, including 59 % of engineering doctorates.[25] In 2000, foreign-born professionals occupied 22 % of all US S&E jobs, up from 14 % just 10 years before.

But relying on foreign sources of students and research professionals is risky. As systems of higher education and research continue to develop in other countries, it is likely that fewer scientists and engineers will want to come to the United States to study or work. Security concerns also have led to a drop in applications to US graduate programs from international students. Over time, multinational firms may decide simply to locate their R&D facilities overseas, closer to their sources of scientists and engineers. Finally, an overreliance on foreign-born scientists and engineers may have the subtle effect of discouraging US students from entering these fields, both because of cultural differences they might encounter during their education (about 20 % of the faculty members in S&E were not born in the United States[26]) and because of a downward pressure on wages caused by an abundance of international scientists and engineers eager to work in this country.

---

[23] William Zumeta and Joyce S. Raveling, "The Market for Ph.D. Scientists: Discouraging the Best and Brightest? Discouraging All?" AAAS Symposium, February 16, 2004. Press release available at http://www.eurekalert.org/pub_releases/2004-02/uow-rsl021304.php

[24] See also the International Students Issue Brief elsewhere in this report.

[25] National Academies, *Policy Implications of International Graduate Students and Postdoctoral Scholars in the United States*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, in press.

[26] National Science Board, *S&E Indicators, 2004*, Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004.

Possible federal actions include the following:

- Double the number of magnet high schools specializing in science, technology, engineering, and mathematics from approximately 100 to 200 over the next 10 years. Federal support for these schools would send a powerful message to the entire K-12 system about the importance of science and technology.

- Sponsor regional, national, and international meetings and competitions for high-school students and undergraduates interested in science, mathematics, and engineering. Extracurricular activities and interactions with established scientists, mathematicians, and engineers can be powerful motivating forces for students interested in these subjects.

- Partner with industry to sponsor a series of public-service announcements exalting S&E careers.[27]

- Provide scholarships to all qualified students majoring in science or mathematics at 4-year colleges who have an economic need and who maintain high levels of academic achievement.[28] Financial assistance also should be provided to 2-year colleges and to students at those institutions to prepare for careers in S&E and to transfer to 4-year programs. Tax credits could be provided to companies or individuals who contribute to scholarship funds for S&E students.

- Provide at least 5,000 portable graduate fellowships, each with a duration of up to 5 years, for training in emerging fields.[29]

- Support prestigious fellowships for graduate study in S&E at US universities that would inspire the best US students in these fields. Though these grants should be linked to the student and therefore portable, an institutional component of each grant would spur competition for these students among institutions.

- Provide graduate-student stipends competitive with opportunities in other venues.[30]

- Substantially increase the number of undergraduate and graduate S&E students drawn from the "underrepresented majority".[31] Today, women, blacks, Hispanics, American Indians, and persons with disabilities make up two-thirds of the US workforce but only 25 % of the technical workforce.

---

[27] American Electronics Association, *Losing the Competitive Challenge?* Washington, DC: American Electronics Association, 2005.
[28] Council on Competitiveness, *Innovate America: National Innovation Initiative and Report*, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004..
[29] Ibid.
[30] National Science Board, 2003.
[31] Building Engineering & Science Talent, *The Talent Imperative*, San Diego: BEST, 2004.

- Support a significant number of selective research assistant professorships in the natural sciences and engineering at universities.[32] These would be highly competitive positions open to postdoctoral scholars who are US citizens or permanent residents. They would provide young and creative scholars with opportunities to pursue research of their own choosing even if they cannot secure positions at research institutions. This would expand the pool of good jobs in S&E in a way that would be expected to affect young people who are trying to decide whether to go to graduate school.

- Develop prizes for research goals of particular national interest, such as curing AIDS or going into space cheaply. Such prizes can provide flexibility for the researchers striving to achieve them and inspire and educate the public in current research interests.[33]

[32] William Zumeta and Joyce S. Raveling, "Attracting the Best and the Brightest," *Issues in Science and Technology*, Winter 2002, pp. 36-40.
[33] National Academy of Engineering, "Concerning Federally Sponsored Inducement Prizes in Engineering and Science," 1999.

**Attracting the Most Able US Students**
**to Science and Engineering**
**Appendix TS 1**
**Figures and Tables**

**Figure TS-1: There Has been a Gradual Increase in the Number of S&E Bachelor's and Master's Degrees Awarded, While Graduate Enrollment and PhD Production Are Just Starting to Increase after Several Years of Declines.**

**Figure TS-1a: Number of S&E Master's Degrees Awarded Flat or Increasing.**

**Figure TS-1b: First-Year Graduate Enrollments Increasing in All S&E Fields**

**Figure TS-1c: US Citizens and Permanent Residents Earn on Average about 60-70% of S&E Doctoral Degrees; About 80% in Life Sciences and Social Sciences, 60% in Physical Sciences, and 50% in Engineering and Mathematics and Computer Sciences.**

**Figure TS-2: Most US Doctorate Degrees Are Awarded in S&E Fields.**

**Figure TS-5: Top Students Are Increasingly Choosing S&E Graduate Study**

**Figure TS-3: Most Biomedical Job Growth in Industrial Sector; Biomedical Academic Jobs Are Increasingly Non-Tenure–Track.**

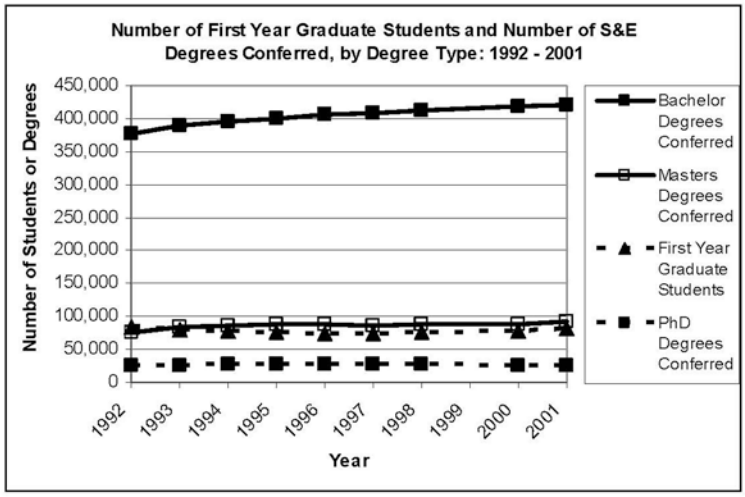
**Figure TS-4a: Equal Numbers of S&E Doctorates Employed in Academe and Industry; 15% Consistently Employed in Government or Other Sectors.**

**Figure TS-4b: S&E PhD Employment Sector is Dependent Upon Field; Most Social Scientists Employed in Academe, Most Engineering Employed in Industry.**

**Table TS-1: Opportunity Costs are High for Pursuing S&E Graduate Education and Training.**

**Figure TS-5: Top Students Are Increasingly Choosing S&E Graduate Study.**

**Figure TS-1: There Has been a Gradual Increase in the Number of S&E Bachelor's and Master's Degrees Awarded, While Graduate Enrollment and PhD Production Are Just Starting to Increase after Several Years of Declines.**




Note: 95% of US Bachelor's Degrees are awarded to US citizens or permanent residents.

**Figure TS-1a: Number of S&E Master's Degrees Awarded Flat or Increasing.**

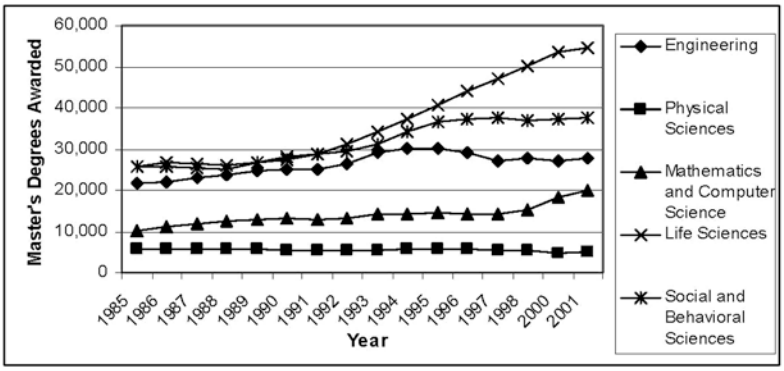



**Figure TS-1b: First-Year Graduate Enrollments Increasing in All S&E Fields.**

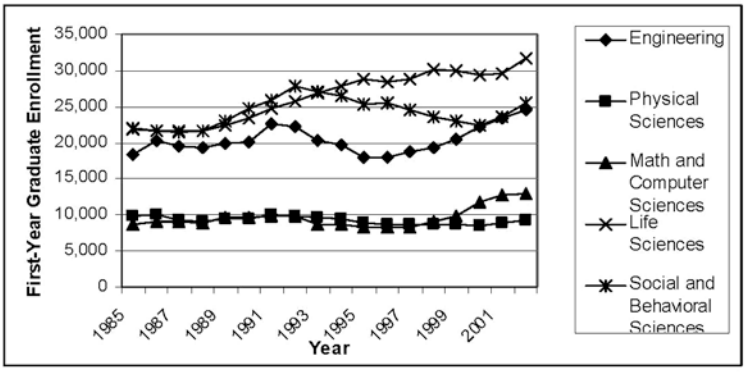
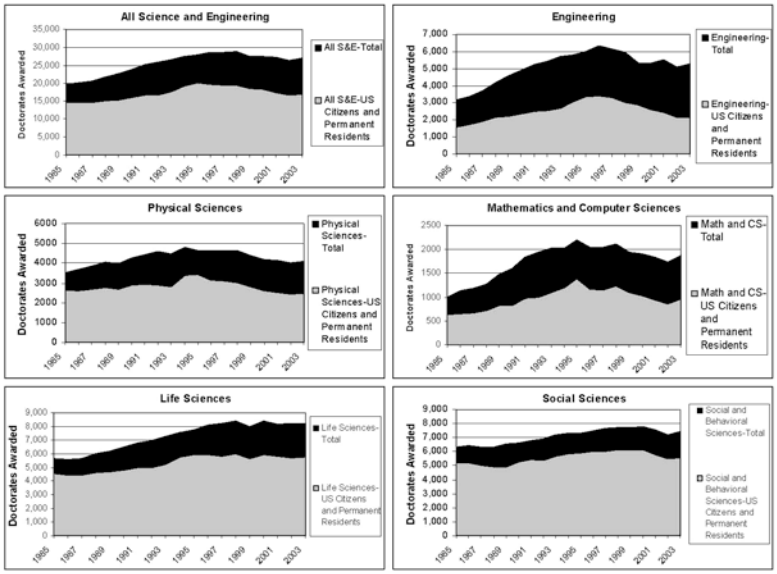
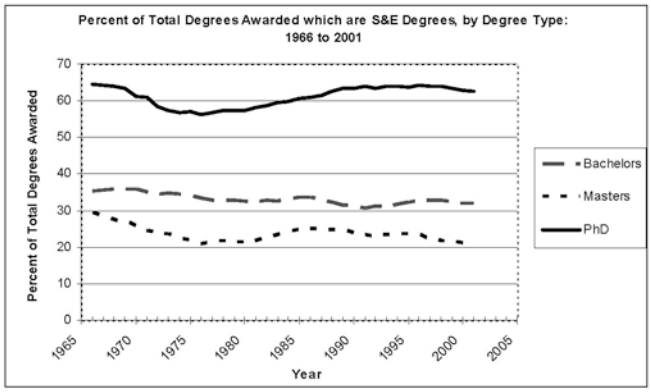


**Figure TS-1c: US Citizens and Permanent Residents Earn on Average about 60-70% of S&E Doctoral Degrees; About 80% in Life Sciences and Social Sciences, 60% in Physical Sciences, and 50% in Engineering and Mathematics and Computer Sciences.**



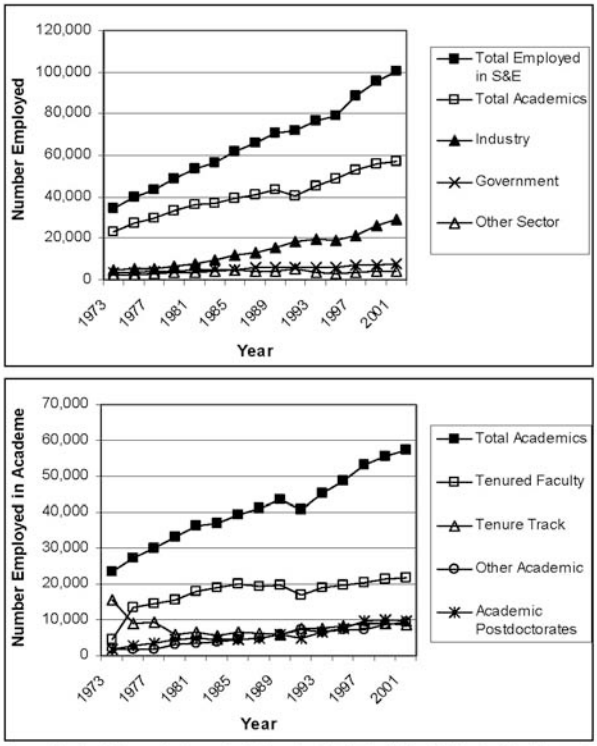

Source: National Science Foundation. *Survey of Earned Graduates*. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. 2005

**Figure TS-2: Most US Doctorate Degrees Are Awarded in S&E Fields.**



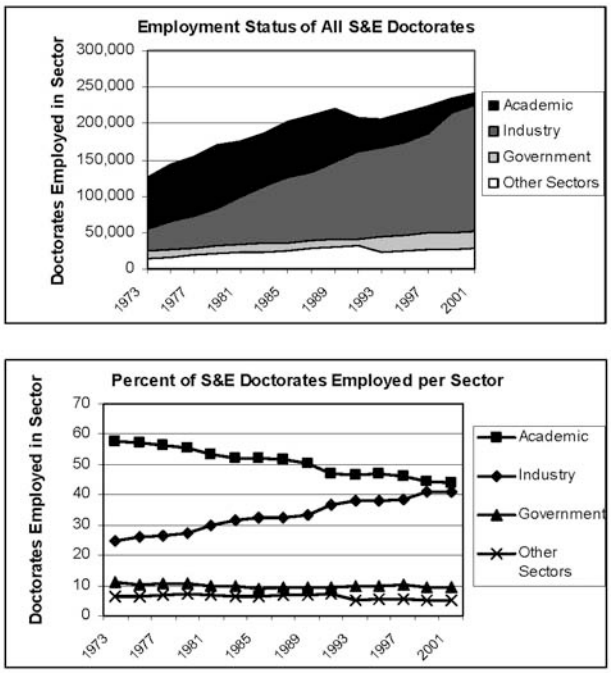

Source: Source: National Science Foundation. *Survey of Earned Graduates*. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. 2005 and National Center for Education Statistics. Integrated Postsecondary Education Data System. *Completion Survey,*. Washington, DC: United States Department of Education.

**Figure TS-3: Most Biomedical Job Growth in Industrial Sector; Biomedical Academic Jobs Are Increasingly Non-Tenure-Track.**



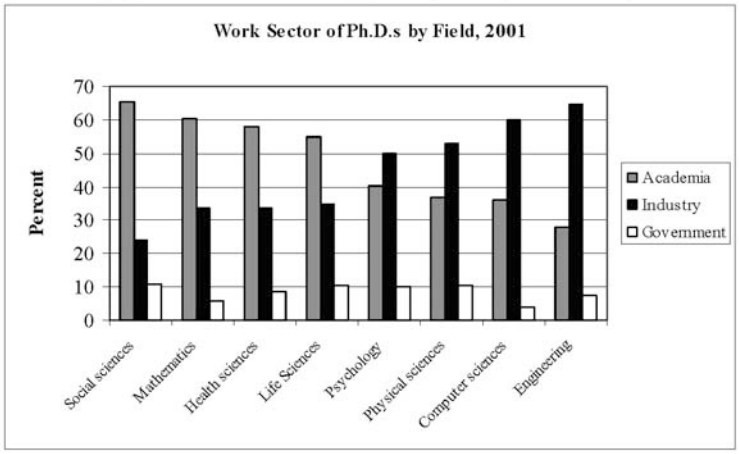

Source: National Research Council. *Advancing the Nation's Health Needs.* Washington, DC: National Academies Press. 2005. Appendix E.

**Figure TS-4a: Equal Numbers of S&E Doctorates Employed in Academe and Industry; 15% Consistently Employed in Government or Other Sectors.**




Source: National Science Foundation. *Survey of Doctoral Recipients 2003*. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. 2005.

**Figure TS-4b: S&E PhD Employment Sector is Dependent Upon Field; Most Social Scientists Employed in Academe, Most Engineering Employed in Industry.**




Source: Source: National Science Foundation. *Survey of Doctoral Recipients 2003*. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. 2005.

**Table TS-1: Opportunity Costs are High for Pursuing S&E Graduate Education and Training.**

**A. Median PhD Salaries of Engineering and Science Graduates, by Occupation and Field of Doctorate in 1997**

| | Occupation | |
|---|---|---|
| | **All Sectors** | **University** |
| **Economics** | $75,000 | 55,000 |
| **Computer Science** | 75,000 | 56,000 |
| **Engineering** | 73,000 | 65,000 |
| **Physical Science** | 65,000 | 52,000 |
| **Biological Sciences** | 56,000 | 40,000 |
| **S&E PhDs in Management, Median Net Income. MDs** | 92,000 | 85,000 |
| | **Field** | |
| | **All Sectors** | **University** |
| **Economics** | $69,000 | 62,000 |
| **Computer Science** | 72,000 | 57,000 |
| **Engineering** | 75,000 | 68,000 |
| **Physical Science** | 70,000 | 54,300 |
| **Biological Sciences** | 60,000 | 53,000 |

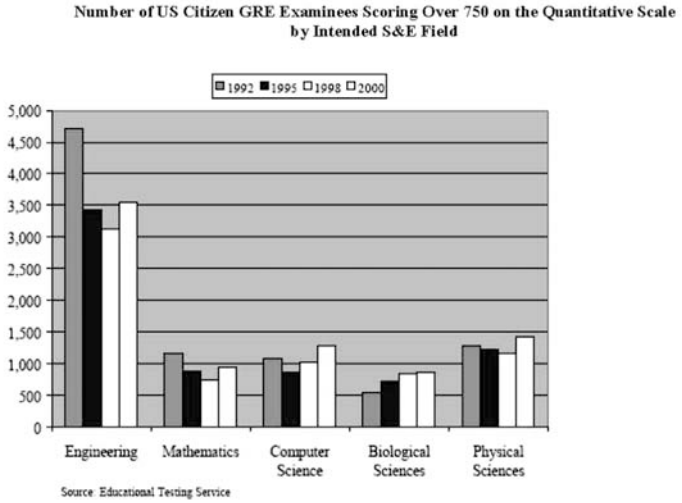
Source: Richard B Freeman, Eric Weinstein, Elizabeth Marincola, Janet Rosenbaum, and Frank Solomon. *Careers and Rewards in Bio Sciences: The disconnect between scientific progress and career progression.* 2001. Available at: http://www.ascb.org/publications/competition.html.

Notes: Compared with other professionals, such as business-school graduates or lawyers, who are generally paid more than PhDs, the salary disadvantage of getting a PhD is marked. In the 1990s, median lawyer salaries were on the order of $85,000 and median MBA salaries on the order of $102,000.

**B. Lifetime income disadvantage differs by field and is particularly large in fields requiring postdoctoral training as a prerequisite for obtaining a permanent position. Case study: Biosciences.** (from Freeman et al, 2001)

Life-time earnings for most doctorates are lower than in other high-level careers, particularly for bioscientists, who are paid less than other highly educated workers at any given level of job experience and who take longer to obtain full-time jobs. The two factors cumulate to a huge lifetime economic disadvantage–on the order of $400,000 in earnings compared with high-paying PhD fields, such as engineering, which also require many years of preparation but in which graduates do not in general delay entry into the job market to take postdoctoral postions. This is equivalent to a salary disadvantage of ~$25,000 per year for every year of working life. Medicine, which has a similar career as the biosciences because of residency in hospitals after completion of training, has about twice the lifetime income. The economic disadvantage is greater when we compare bioscience with professions that require less preparatory training. Consider, for example, a person who has just graduated from a 2-year MBA program, in 2000 earning $77,000 in base salary and $12,560 in signing bonus (without stock options). A bioscience PhD who completed postdoctoratal training might earn $50,000 as a starting assistant professor. But the MBA graduate would have spent 2 years in school compared with the 10-12 years that students spend as graduate student and postdoctoratal fellows. The salary differential cumulates to a lifetime difference in earnings, exclusive of stock options, conservatively estimated at $1.0 million discounted at 3%--comparable with $62,000 per year of working life. Add in the options and bonuses that managers get, and this differential could easily double.

**Figure TS-5: Top Students Are Increasingly Choosing S&E Graduate Study,**




Source: W. Zumeta and J. Raveling. *The Best and Brightest: Is there a problem here?* 2002. Available at: http://www.cpst.org/BBIssues.pdf

Notes: The number of US citizen GRE examinees indicating intent to pursue graduate study in S&E fell from 42,170 in 1992 to 35,373 in 1998.before recovering slightly to just over 36,000 in 2000. This represents a 14.5% decline from 1992 to 2000. However, new data indicate the trend is in the positive direction: more of the best students are choosing S&E fields for graduate study.

This paper summarizes findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. Statements in this paper should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

# Undergraduate, Graduate, and Postgraduate Education in Science, Engineering, and Mathematics

## Summary

As educators of the nation's future scientists, engineers, mathematicians, and K-12 teachers, US 2-year and 4-year colleges and universities are the central institutions in building the human resources needed for scientific and technological leadership.

However, these institutions face a number of challenges in producing knowledgeable graduates and trained professionals. Today, the United States ranks 17th globally in the proportion of its college-age population that earns science and engineering (S&E) degrees, down from third several decades ago.[1] Many other nations now have a higher fraction of 24-year-olds with S&E degrees (see Figure HE-1). And even though the proportion of its population who attends graduate school is small, because of its large population China graduates three times as many engineers from its colleges as does the United States.

In the past, the United States has relied on international students and scientific and engineering professionals to maintain its base of human resources in these fields. But global competition for S&E talent is intensifying, and enrolling higher percentages of US students in these programs would have many benefits.

To meet this goal, many believe that the United States will need to attract S&E students from all demographic groups. Today, blacks, Hispanics, and other underrepresented minority groups are about a quarter of the US population but make up only 17.9% of the undergraduate population, 2.5% of the these majors, and 6 % of the S&E workforce (see Table HE-1 and Figure HE-2). Only a quarter of this workforce consists of women, though women are almost half the total US workforce. By 2020, more than 40% of the US college-age population will be members of currently underrepresented minorities.

The federal government has a key role in establishing workforce policies that address national needs and opportunities. Given how many years of education and training are required for someone to become a scientist, engineer, or mathematician, policies may need to focus on long-term opportunities that may help to smooth short-term

[1] Council on Competitiveness, *Innovate America*, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004.

labor-market dynamics. Among the federal actions that organizations have recommended are the following:

*Undergraduate Education*

- Provide incentives for all institutions of higher education to provide diverse internship opportunities for all undergraduates to study science, mathematics, engineering, and technology as early in their academic careers as possible.
- Expand funding for programs at 2-year and 4-year colleges that succeed in attracting and retaining women and members of minority groups underrepresented in science, mathematics, and engineering.

*Graduate Education*

- Establish education and traineeship grants to institutions focused on frontier research areas and multidisciplinary or innovation-oriented studies.
- Require institutions applying for federal grants to report on the size, scope, and performance (student completion rates and career outcomes) of their graduate programs to determine whether these programs are meeting the interests of students in preparing them for diverse careers in academe, industry, government, and the nonprofit sector.

*Postdoctoral Training*

- Develop federal policies and standards for postdoctoral fellows supported on federal research grants, including letters of appointment, performance evaluations, benefits and leave, and stipend support.
- Help develop creative solutions to the problems faced by dual-career couples so that more US students opt to pursue research careers.
- Create standards for and require the submission of demographic information on postdoctoral scholars supported on federal research grants by investigators awarded such grants. Collect data on postdoctoral working conditions, prospects, and careers.

The following discusses these issues in greater depth.

**Undergraduate Education**

The undergraduate years have a profound influence both on future professionals in science and mathematics and on broader public support of those fields. Undergraduate education acts as a springboard for students who choose to major in and then pursue graduate work in science and mathematics. Undergraduate institutions and community colleges train the technical support personnel who will keep our technological society functioning smoothly in the years ahead. And colleges and universities prepare the elementary and secondary teachers who impart lifelong knowledge and attitudes about science and mathematics to their students. For many, the undergraduate years are the last opportunity for rigorous academic study of these subjects.

Precollege education needs to include quality instruction in standards-based classrooms and a clear awareness that achievement in science and mathematics will be

expected for admission to college. In addition, faculty in these disciplines should assume greater responsibility for the pre-service and in-service education of K-12 teachers.

Many introductory undergraduate courses in science and mathematics fields have been taught to select out the best, most committed students and discard the rest. This strategy is being questioned: Are introductory courses the appropriate place and time for such filtering? Are the students being turned away any less good than those who stay? Evidence indicates that undergraduates who opt out of S&E programs are among the most highly qualified college entrants.[2] Can the United States afford to turn away talented students interested in these fields?

Some argue more broadly that all college students should gain an awareness, understanding, and appreciation of the natural and human-constructed worlds and have at least one laboratory experience. Therefore, introductory science and mathematics courses must find ways to provide students both with a broad education in these fields and with the specific skills they need to continue studying these subjects, as is the case with most other introductory courses in colleges. Students who decide to pursue non-S&E majors would then have the background and education to make informed decisions about S&E in their personal lives and professional careers.

To serve these multiple objectives, many introductory and lower-level courses and programs would need to be designed to encourage students to continue, rather than end, their study of S&E subjects. Institutions should continually and systematically evaluate the efficacy of courses in these subjects for promoting student learning.

Many of these issues are also highly relevant to students who enter 2-year colleges after graduating from high school. For example, about a quarter of the students who earn bachelor's degrees in engineering have taken a substantial number of their lower-level courses at a community college, and nearly half have taken at least one community college course. As more students make community colleges their point of entry to postsecondary education, the quality of the S&E education they receive in 2-year institutions becomes increasingly important. Community college students need access to the kinds of lower-division courses that can prepare them for upper-division coursework in science, mathematics, and engineering, either at their own institutions or through partnerships between institutions, distance learning, or other means. Two-year colleges need to provide students with access to the kinds of equipment, laboratories, and other infrastructure they need to succeed.

The federal government can help promote these institutional changes through the following actions:

- Provide incentives for all institutions of higher education to provide diverse internship opportunities for all undergraduates to study science, mathematics, engineering, and technology as early in their academic careers as possible.[3]

---

[2] Tobias S. 1990. *They're Not Dumb, They're Different. Stalking the Second Tier.* Tucson, AZ: Research Corporation; Seymour E. and Hewitt N. 1997. *Talking About Leaving: Why Undergraduates Leave the Sciences.* Boulder, CO: Westview Press; Ohland MW, Zhang, G, Thorndyke B, and Anderson TJ. 2004. "Grade-Point Average, Changes of Major, and Majors Selected by Students Leaving Engineering." *34th ASEE/IEEE Frontiers in Education Conference.* Session T1G:12-17.

[3] National Research Council, *Transforming Undergraduate Education in Science, Mathematics, Engineering, and Technology*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999.

Introductory courses should be integral parts of the standard curriculum, and all colleges should routinely evaluate the success of these courses.

- Encourage science, mathematics, and engineering departments to work with education departments and surrounding school districts to improve the preparation of K-12 students.
- Expand funding for science, mathematics, and engineering programs at 2-year and 4-year colleges that succeed in attracting and retaining women and members of minority groups underrepresented in these programs.[4]

**Master's and Professional Education**

The baccalaureate has been the entry-level degree for many professional positions over the last century, but many employers in our increasingly complex economy now recognize the value of employees who have advanced training (see Figure HE-3). Master's degree programs provide students with S&E knowledge that is more in-depth than that provided in baccalaureate programs and supplements this knowledge with skills that have application in business, government, and nonprofit settings. Master's degree programs also can provide the interdisciplinary training necessary for real-world jobs and can be structured to provide job-relevant skills in teamwork, project management, business administration, communication, statistics, and informatics. Moreover, master's programs have the potential to attract greater numbers of women and minority-group member than do doctoral programs.

A number of reports since the mid-1990s have argued that master's degree programs for students in the S&E with appropriate career aspirations can develop a cadre of professionals who meet employer needs. These reports have called for changes in master's education to make these programs more appropriate, cost effective, and attractive to students. In engineering, for example, the emphasis on increased skill in communications, business, the social sciences, cross-cultural studies, and important technologies has meant that the first professional degree should not be at the baccalaureate but at the master's level, as is the case in business, law, and medicine.

Options for the federal government include the following:

- Direct the National Science Foundation to fund professional science master's programs at institutions that demonstrate innovative approaches to orienting master's-level degree programs toward scientific or technical skills needed in the US workforce.

**Graduate Education**

Graduate education in the United States is widely seen as the best in the world. America's universities produce most of the scientists, engineers, and mathematicians who will maintain our preeminence in science and technology (see Figure HE-4). They

[4] National Science Foundation, National Science Board, *The Science and Engineering Workforce: Realizing America's Potential*, Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2003.

educate the college faculty and K-12 teachers who will critically influence public support for scientific and technological endeavors And the intensive research experiences that are at the heart of graduate education at the doctoral level produce much of the new knowledge that drives scientific and technological progress.

Students from many nations travel to the United States to enroll in science, engineering, and mathematics graduate programs and to serve as postdoctoral fellows. For example, international students account for nearly half of all graduate enrollments in engineering and computer science. The presence of large numbers of international students in US graduate schools has both positive and negative consequences.[5] These students enhance the intellectual and cultural environments of the programs in which they are enrolled. Many remain in the United States after their training is finished and contribute substantially to our scientific and technological enterprise. However, the large numbers of foreign students in US graduate schools may have the effect of discouraging US students from pursuing this educational pathway because the rapidly increasing number of students has diminished the relative rewards of becoming a scientist or engineer.[6] US colleges and universities have an important role to play in encouraging more US students to pursue graduate education in science, engineering, and mathematics.

The federal government helps support graduate education through research assistantships funded through federal research project grants, fellowship and traineeship programs, and student loans (see Figure HE-5). The availability, level, and timing of this funding have implications for determining who can pursue a graduate education and how long it will take to complete that education. Also, the type of support—whether a research assistantship, teaching assistantship, traineeship, or fellowship—affects the content of graduate education and the kinds of skills one learns during graduate school.

In the 1990s, several events led to a national discussion of the content and process of doctoral education that continues today. In the late 1980s, labor-market forces pointed toward an impending shortage of PhDs in the arts and sciences in the early to mid-1990s. When the end of the Cold War, a national recession, state budget cuts, and the end of mandatory retirement for college faculty led instead to disappointing job prospects for new PhD's in the early 1990s, a national debate on the doctorate and the job prospects of PhD recipients ensued.

Also, in the 1990s, for the first time, more than half of PhDs in science and engineering reported that they held positions outside academe (see Figure HE-6). This trend has generated interest in providing graduate students with more information about their career options, including whether they should pursue a master's or doctoral degree and whether they should seek opportunities in government, industry, or nonprofit organizations as well as academe. In turn, this trend has focused attention on the need for training that provides the practical career skills needed in the workplace: pedagogic skills, technological proficiency, the ability to communicate well in writing or oral presentations, experience working in teams, and facility in grant writing and project management.

---

[5] Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, *Reshaping the Graduate Education of Scientists and Engineers*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1995.

[6] Ralph E. Gomory and Harold T. Shapiro, "Globalization: Causes and Effects," *Issues in Science and Technology*, Summer 2003, pp. 18-20.

One great problem in discussions of workforce issues is the paucity of reliable, representative, and timely data. Often policymakers are making decisions about the future based on data that are 2-3 years old.

Options for the federal government include these:

- Establish education and traineeship grants to institutions focused on frontier research areas and multidisciplinary or innovation-oriented studies.[7]
- Eliminate the employer-employee stipulation in Office of Management Budget Circular A-21 to encourage the dual benefits to research and education of having graduate students serve as research assistants.[8]
- Require institutions applying for federal grants to report on the size, scope, and performance (student completion rates and career outcomes) of their graduate programs to determine whether these programs are meeting the interests of students in preparing them for diverse careers in academe, industry, government, and the nonprofit sector.[9]
- Provide graduate student stipends competitive with opportunities in other venues.[10]
- Direct the National Science Foundation to expand its data collection on S&E careers and its research into national and international workforce dynamics.[11]

**Postdoctoral Training**

For more than 2 decades, an increasing percentage of new PhD recipients have been pursuing postdoctoral study instead of employment after graduation. These experiences broaden and deepen the research and other skills that scientists and other highly trained professionals need to make major contributions to society (see Figure HE-7). Most postdoctoral scholars are funded by federal research grants (see Figure HE-8) and on average have stipends of under $35,000 per year.

However, mentors, institutions, and funding organization have sometimes been slow to give postdoctoral fellows the status, recognition, and compensation that are commensurate with their skills and contributions to research (see Figure HE-9). Many postdoctoral scholars make substantial economic and familial sacrifices to pursue advanced training, yet they often do not have clearly defined rights, responsibilities, pay scales, access to benefits, or procedures for consideration of grievances.

To ensure a healthy research enterprise, the postdoctoral experience needs to be improved. The federal government should:

- Develop federal policies and standards for postdoctoral fellows supported on federal research grants, including letters of appointment, performance evaluations,

[7] Ibid.
[8] Association of American Universities, Committee on Graduate Education, *Graduate Education*, Washington, DC: Association of American Universities, 1998.
[9] Ibid.
[10] National Science Board, 2003.
[11] Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, 1995.

benefits and leave, and stipend support. All postdoctoral scholars should have access to health insurance and to institutional services.[12]

- Help develop creative solutions to the problems faced by dual-career couples so that more US students opt to pursue research careers.
- Improve the quality and quantity of the data on postdoctoral working conditions, prospects, and careers.[13] Create standards for and require the submission of demographic information on postdoctoral scholars supported on federal research grants by investigators awarded such grants.

[12] Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, *Enhancing the Postdoctoral Experience for Scientists and Engineers*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2000.
[13] Ibid.

**Undergraduate, Graduate, and Postgraduate Education in Science, Engineering, and Mathematics**
**Appendix HE 1**
**Figures and Tables**

**Figure HE-1: The Number of Bachelor's Degrees Awarded in S&E Fields Shows Marked Fluctuations That Are Affected by Market Conditions and Research Funding.**

**Table HE-1: Increasing Numbers of Students are Majoring in S&E Fields; Substantial Gains among Women and Minority Groups.**

**Figure HE-2: Minority-Group Representation among S&E Majors Is Increasing.**

**Figure HE-3: Master's Degree Attainment Increasing for Women and Minority-Group Members.**

**Figure HE-4: Overall S&E Doctoral-Degree Production Increased in the Early 1990s, Flattened, and in 2001 Started to Increase again; Minority-Group Participation Increased Through the 1980s and 1990s and Experienced a Downturn Starting in 1999.**

**Figure HE-5: Financing of Doctoral Education Comes from Several Sources, but Predominantly from Federal Research Grants; Sources of Funding Vary by Citizenship Status.**

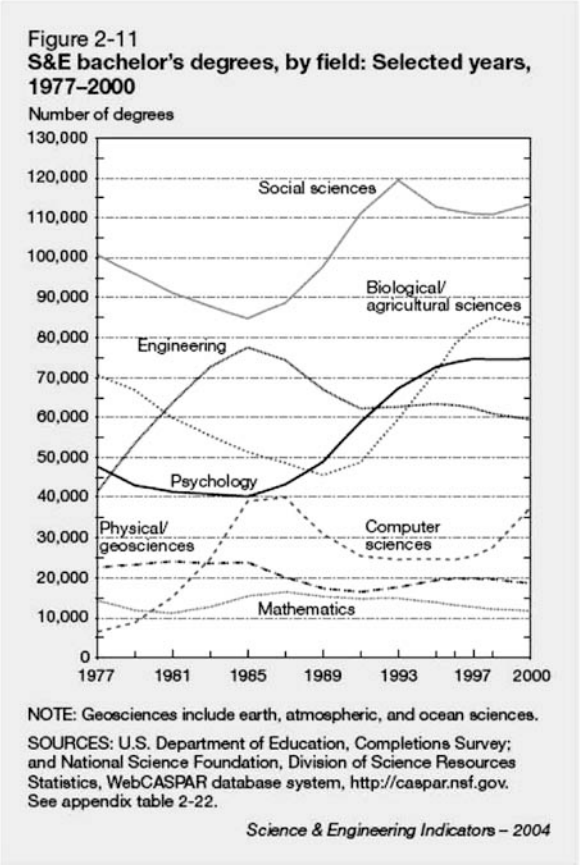
**Figure HE-6: Most S&E Graduate Students Obtain Jobs Outside Academe: Approximately Equal Numbers of S&E Doctorates Employed in Academe and Industry; 15% Consistently Employed in Government or Other Sectors.**

**Figure HE-7: Most Postdoctoral Scholars Feel Positions Are Preparing Them for Independent Positions.**

**Figure HE-8: Most Funding for Postdoctoral Scholars Comes from Federal Research Grants.**

**Figure HE-9: 2001 Postdoctoral Stipends for S&E Trainees Averaged Under $32,000 Per Year.**

**Figure HE-1: The Number of Bachelor's Degrees Awarded in S&E Fields Shows Marked Fluctuations That Are Affected by Market Conditions and Research Funding.**




Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Appendix table 2-23.
Notes: Degree production for many STEM fields increased and computer science decreased in 2001. See graphs in the *Attracting the Most Able US Students to Science and Engineering* paper.

**Table HE-1: Increasing Numbers of Students are Majoring in S&E Fields; Substantial Gains among Women and Minority Groups.**

Table 2-8
**Ratio of bachelor's degrees to the 24-year-old population, by selected fields, sex, and race/ethnicity: 1990 and 2000**

| Sex and race/ethnicity | Degree | | | | | Degree | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | All bachelor's degrees | All S&E | NS&E | Social/ behavioral sciences | 24-year-old population | Bachelor's | NS&E[a] | Social/ behavioral science |
| | Number | | | | | Ratio to 24-year-old population[b] | | |
| 1990 total | 1,062,160 | 345,794 | 169,938 | 175,856 | 3,722,737 | 28.5 | 4.6 | 4.7 |
| Male | 495,876 | 199,917 | 117,249 | 82,668 | 1,855,513 | 26.7 | 6.3 | 4.5 |
| Female | 566,284 | 145,877 | 52,689 | 93,188 | 1,867,224 | 30.3 | 2.8 | 5.0 |
| White | 856,686 | 270,225 | 127,704 | 142,521 | 2,628,439 | 32.6 | 4.9 | 5.4 |
| Asian/Pacific Islander | 38,027 | 19,437 | 13,338 | 6,099 | 120,797 | 31.5 | 11.0 | 5.0 |
| Underrepresented minority | 107,377 | 33,419 | 15,259 | 18,160 | 973,500 | 11.0 | 1.6 | 1.9 |
| Black | 59,301 | 18,230 | 7,854 | 10,376 | 484,754 | 12.2 | 1.6 | 2.1 |
| Hispanic | 43,864 | 13,918 | 6,868 | 7,050 | 459,073 | 9.6 | 1.5 | 1.5 |
| American Indian/Alaskan Native | 4,212 | 1,271 | 537 | 734 | 29,674 | 14.2 | 1.8 | 2.5 |
| 2000 total | 1,253,121 | 398,622 | 210,434 | 188,188 | 3,703,200 | 33.8 | 5.7 | 5.1 |
| Male | 536,158 | 197,669 | 128,111 | 69,558 | 1,886,400 | 28.4 | 6.8 | 3.7 |
| Female | 716,963 | 200,953 | 82,323 | 118,630 | 1,816,800 | 39.5 | 4.5 | 6.5 |
| White | 895,129 | 270,416 | 142,400 | 128,016 | 2,433,400 | 36.8 | 5.9 | 5.3 |
| Asian/Pacific Islander | 75,265 | 12,368 | 23,185 | 12,368 | 148,800 | 50.6 | 15.6 | 8.3 |
| Underrepresented minority | 200,967 | 63,519 | 27,939 | 35,559 | 1,121,000 | 17.9 | 2.5 | 3.2 |
| Black | 104,212 | 32,924 | 13,795 | 19,129 | 527,600 | 19.8 | 2.6 | 3.6 |
| Hispanic | 88,324 | 27,984 | 12,919 | 15,065 | 560,200 | 15.8 | 2.3 | 2.7 |
| American Indian/Alaskan Native | 8,431 | 2,611 | 1,246 | 1,365 | 33,200 | 25.4 | 3.8 | 4.1 |

NS&E natural sciences and engineering

[a]NS&E degrees include natural (physical, biological, earth, atmospheric, and ocean sciences), agricultural, and computer sciences; mathematics; and engineering.
[b]Number of degrees per 100 24-year-olds.

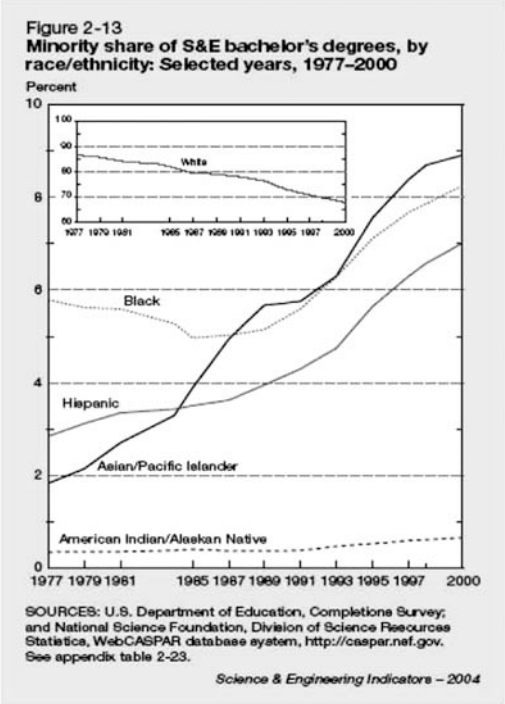
NOTE: Degrees by race/ethnicity do not sum to total because data not shown for unknown race/ethnicity or foreign citizens.

SOURCES: U.S. Department of Education, Completions Survey; National Science Foundation, Division of Science Resources Statistics, WebCASPAR database system, http://caspar.nsf.gov; and U.S. Bureau of the Census, Population Division. See appendix tables 2-4, 2-22, and 2-23.

*Science & Engineering Indicators – 2004*

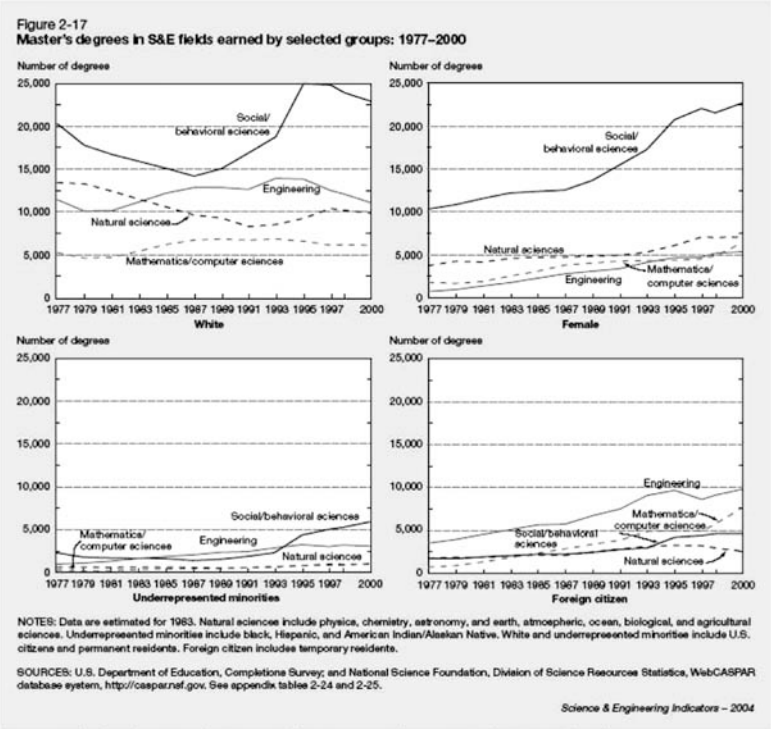
Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Table 2-8.

**Figure HE-2: Minority-Group Representation among S&E Majors Is Increasing.**



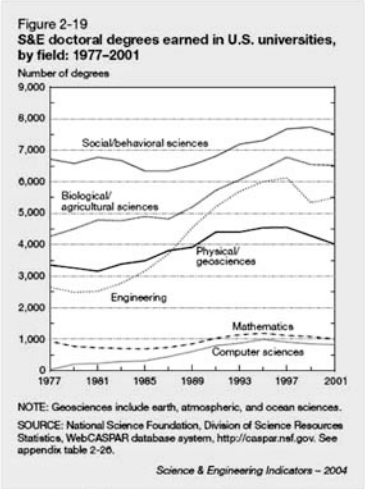

Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Figure 2-13.

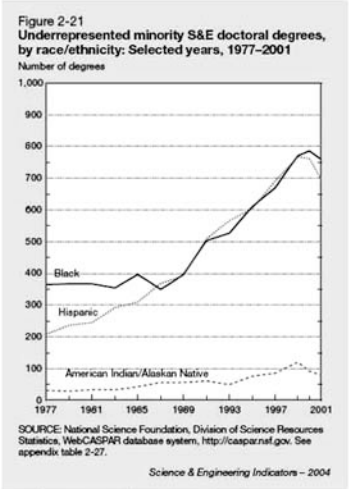
**Figure HE-3: Master's Degree Attainment Increasing for Women and Minority-Group Members.**




Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Figure 2-17.

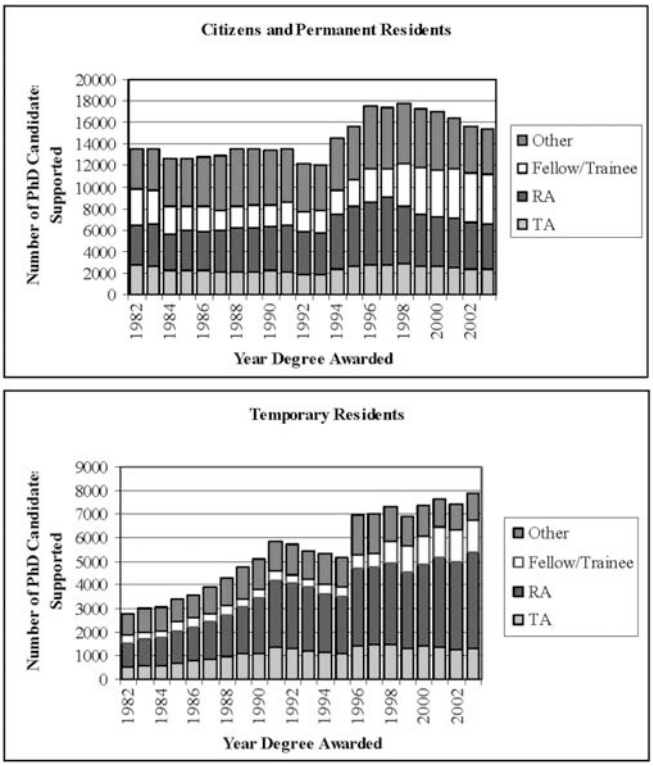
**Figure HE-4: Overall S&E Doctoral-Degree Production Increased in the Early 1990s, Flattened, and in 2001 Started to Increase again; Minority-Group Participation Increased Through the 1980s and 1990s and Experienced a Downturn Starting in 1999.**



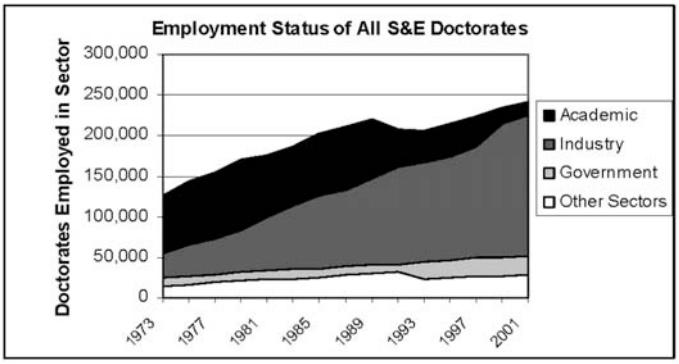

Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Figures 2-19 and 2-21.

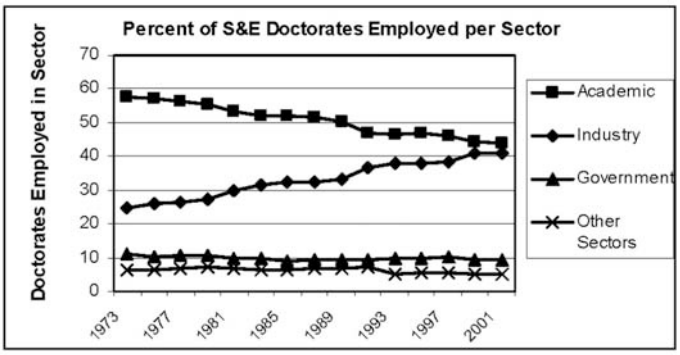
**Figure HE-5: Financing of Doctoral Education Comes from Several Sources, but Predominantly from Federal Research Grants; Sources of Funding Vary by Citizenship Status.**




Source: National Science Foundation. 2004. *Survey of Earned Doctorates 2003.* Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.
*Other:* support from the student or scholar's institution of higher education, state and local government, foreign sources, nonprofit institutions, or private industry; *traineeships:* educational awards given to students selected by the institution or by a federal agency; *research assistantships*: support for students whose assigned duties are primarily in research; *teaching assistantships:* support for students whose assigned duties are primarily in teaching.

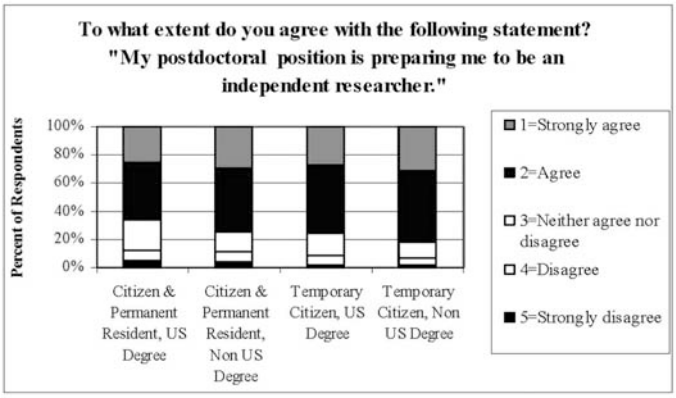
**Figure HE-6: Most S&E Graduate Students Obtain Jobs Outside Academe: Approximately Equal Numbers of S&E Doctorates Employed in Academe and Industry; 15% Consistently Employed in Government or Other Sectors.**



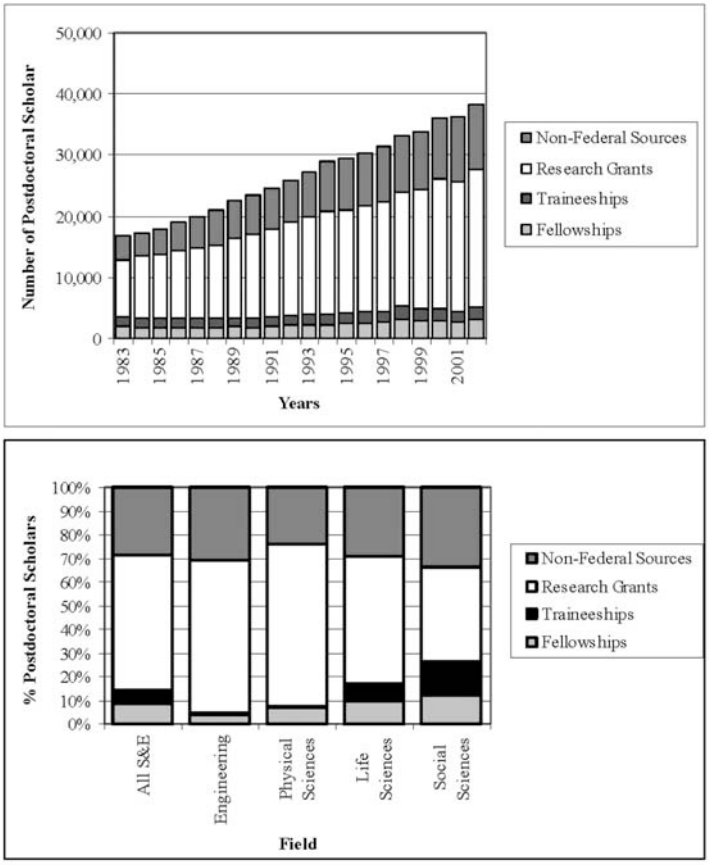

Data from: National Science Foundation. 2005. Survey of Doctoral Recipients 2003. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.

**Figure HE-7: Most Postdoctoral Scholars Feel Positions Are Preparing Them for Independent Positions.**




Source: Davis, G. *Doctors without orders: Highlights of the sigma xi postdoc survey*. American Scientist 93(3, supplement)(May-June 2005). Available at: http://postdoc.sigmaxi.org/results/.
22,178 postdoctoral scholars at 46 institutions were contacted, including 18 of the 20 largest academic employers of postdoctoral scholars and NIH. Postdoctoral status was confirmed by the institution. 8,392 (38%) responded; 6,775 (31%) of the respondents completed the entire survey, which included over 100 questions.

**Figure HE-8: Most Funding for Postdoctoral Scholars Comes from Federal Research Grants.**

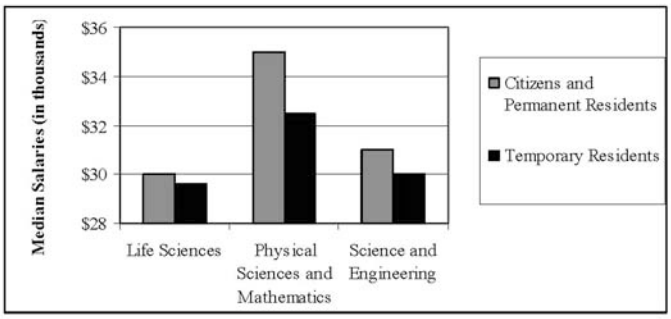



Source: National Science Foundation. 2004. *Survey of Earned Doctorates 2002.* Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.

*Non-Federal Sources*: support from the institution of higher education, state and local government, foreign sources, nonprofit institutions, or private industry; *research grants:* support from federal agencies to a principal investigator, under whom postdoctoral scholars work; *traineeships:* educational awards given to scholars selected by the institution or by a federal agency; *fellowships:* competitive awards given directly to scholars for financial support of their graduate or postdoctoral studies.

**Figure HE-9: 2001 Postdoctoral Stipends for S&E Trainees Averaged Under $32,000 Per Year.**

**Median 2001 Postdoctoral-Scholar Stipends**




Source: National Science Foundation. 2004. *Survey of Earned Doctorates 2002.* Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.

This paper summarizes findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. Statements in this paper should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

# Implications of Changes in the Financing of Public Higher Education


**Summary**

Public colleges and universities play a critical role in our nation's integrated system of education, research, and innovation. They educate the majority of undergraduates and constitute many of the nation's top research universities. They are training grounds for the people and ideas that drive innovation and improve our lives.

Yet even as public colleges and universities are becoming more important than ever in our knowledge-intensive society, many have come under intense financial pressure. Demographic changes in enrollments are driving up student enrollment in some places and reducing them in others, forcing institutions to adapt to new circumstances. The increasing costs of higher education have led to difficult tradeoffs affecting the quality of the education and services students receive. Extremely tight budgets in some states have reduced the relative appropriations to education in those states even as more students are looking to college as a means of personal advancement.

Though federal funding for student aid is up, more of this funding is going toward loans and tax benefits as opposed to student grants. Also, increases in funding have not been sufficient to match the needs of students. The result has been a narrowing of educational choices for some students and concerns over deteriorating quality of public institutions.

Some organizations have proposed that the federal government take several important steps to improve the funding of public higher education and to increase student access to these institutions:

- Expand federal matching programs that encourage increased state appropriations for higher education.
- Reform the Medicaid program to slow the growth of state commitments that crowd out spending on higher education.
- Focus national resources on improving the purchasing power of Pell awards.
- Offer matching funds to states based on their funding of means-tested grant aid.

**The Role of Higher Education in the Knowledge Economy**

Higher education has been central to the strength of the US economy over the last half-century. Broadened access for students has created social and economic opportunities for millions of Americans. The integration of education and research has become a key pillar of our research and innovation system. And the new knowledge generated has provided a strong engine for innovation and economic growth.

Public institutions are a particularly important component of America's higher-education system. They enroll and educate one quarter of all 4-year undergraduates (see Figure PHE-1). When community colleges are included, public schools account for more than 70 % of all undergraduate enrollment (see Figure PHE-2). Many of the nation's top research institutions, particularly in the Midwest and West, are public universities.

A strong system of higher education is more critical now than ever. Global competition in the knowledge economy is growing. Developed and developing countries are working to create high-quality educational institutions, often using American colleges and universities as a model. They are developing their own pool of knowledge workers and knowledge-sector firms.

For the United States to compete in this environment, American higher education needs to remain preeminent. It must continue to play a central role in the production of knowledge and innovation. It needs to create dynamic environments that will entice knowledge-based companies to locate in this country. The United States should facilitate world leadership of its higher-education system by continuing to invest where it counts most.

**Stresses in the Financial Structure of Public Higher Education**

Public higher education is under severe financial pressures. The first source of pressure is increasing enrollments. The children of the baby boom are now reaching college age and will increase enrollments at some institutions over the coming decade (see Figure PHE-3). At the same time, the value of higher education as a means for students and society to achieve economic, social, and political goals also is boosting enrollments. Because public institutions typically do not charge students for the full cost of their education, the financial demands on these institutions are expected to grow significantly.[1]

A second stress on the system is the growing cost of higher education. Costs per student in higher education have grown consistently since the 1960s and steeply since the 1970s.[2] Both internal and external factors appear to be driving up costs. Universities need to compete for high-quality faculty, staff, and students. Computing services, information resources, and other services for students and faculty have added financial burdens (see Figure PHE-4). To cut costs in other areas, institutions have increased

---

[1] Robert C. Dickeson, *Collision Course: Rising College Costs Threaten America's Future and Require Shared Solutions,* Indianapolis, IN. Lumina Foundation for Education, Inc., 2004.

[2] Joseph L. Dionne and Thomas Kean, *Breaking the Social Contract: The Fiscal Crisis in Higher Education* (report of the Commission on National Investment in Higher Education), New York: Council for Aid to Education, 1997.

student:faculty ratios, shifted toward lower-cost part-time and non-tenure-track faculty, encouraged early retirement, capped or postponed faculty salary increases, and outsourced noncritical missions[3] (see Figure PHE-5).

A third and perhaps the most important stress on public higher education has been a changing paradigm for public support at both the state and federal levels (see Figure PHE-6). Public colleges and universities—and even private ones that receive state support—have experienced strong competition for state resources over the last decade. Other state financial commitments—such as Medicaid payments—have continued to increase both in real dollars and as a percentage of state budget outlays, which has crowded out other spending priorities[4] (see Figure PHE-7).

As a consequence of this financial pressure, education funding as a share of state spending, the percentage of education dollars directed to higher education, and the percentage of higher-education dollars going to institutions (as opposed to students) all have declined[5] (see Figure PHE-8). In brief, state support as a percentage of total revenue for public colleges and universities is down, and these institutions are adapting by restructuring costs and looking elsewhere (for example, to tuition) for financial support (see Figure PHE-9).

At the federal level, spending for higher education appears on the surface to be strong. Spending on the Pell grant program, for example, increased 60 % in real terms from 1999-2000 to 2003-2004[6] (see Figure PHE-10). However, hiding beneath the overall increases in federal support are important shifts in its distribution. The mix of federal support in 2003-2004 was 34 % grants, 55 % loans, and 5 % tax benefits, the latter two of which have been growing as a percentage of federal support (see Figure PHE-11). Thus, there have been a shift away from grants to other modes of support (for example, subsidized loans, tax credits, and tax-sheltered education accounts) and a shift from need-based to merit-based aid (see Figure PHE-12). Together, these changes have tended to shift subsidies away from students from lower-income families and toward the middle and upper-middle classes.

In addition, while there have been real increases in per student funding under the Pell grant program, they have not been adequate to offset larger increases in college prices. The size of the average grant has increased in real terms in recent years, but average tuition, fees, and room and board at public 4-year colleges and universities increased faster. As a result, the average Pell grant in 2003-2004 covered 23 % of the charges at a public 4-year institution compared with 35 % in 1980-1981[7] (see Figure PHE-13). Meanwhile, the Leveraging Education Assistance Partnerships (LEAP) program, which provides matching funds to states for providing need-based grant aid, has declined 31 % in real terms over the last decade.[8]

---

[3] Ronald G. Ehrenberg and Liang Zhang, "The Changing Nature of Faculty Employment" (Working Paper 44), Ithaca, NY: Cornell Higher Education Research Institute, 2004.

[4] Thomas J. Kane and Peter R. Orszag, "Higher Education Spending: The Role of Medicaid and the Business Cycle" (Policy Brief #124), Washington, DC: The Brookings Institution, 2003.

[5] Michael Rizzo, "State Preferences for Higher Education Spending: A Panel Data Analysis, 1977-2001," paper presented at Cornell Higher Education Research Institute's Annual Conference "Assessing Public Higher Education at the Start of the 21st Century,." Ithaca, NY, May 22-23, 2005.

[6] College Board, *Trends in Student Aid 2004,* Washington, D.C. College Board, 2004.

[7] Ibid.

[8] Ibid.

**Implications for Affordability and Quality**

These developments have important implications both for access to higher education and for educational quality. As tuition increases, the array of educational choices for students may be constrained unless the availability of financial aid can compensate. Especially for low-income students, the real and perceived cost increases for college education can limit access and lifetime opportunity (see Figure PHE-14).

The second implication is for the quality of teaching and research. Reductions in funding for public education combined with constraints on tuition increases appear to be causing deterioration in the quality of public colleges and universities compared with private institutions.[9] Private universities benefit from larger endowments, have constrained enrollment growth to control costs, and have steadily increased tuition to offset inflation and provide new resources for qualitative improvement. Public institutions are less able to use these measures for fiscal control and as a result are falling behind private colleges and universities, in endowments, faculty salaries, student:faculty ratios, student services, and facilities (see Figure PHE-15). Also, to the extent that changes in faculty composition—such as increases in part-time and non-tenure-track staff—affect the quality of teaching and mentoring and the availability of tenure-track faculty as role models, they may affect undergraduate persistence, graduation rates, and the propensity to continue to graduate school. The consequences include a more stratified, less dynamic society and a more limited workforce available for generating knowledge and innovation in the economy.

Issues of attainment also have come to the fore. With a growing number of postsecondary students starting out at community colleges and intending to transfer, 2- and 4-year institutions need to work to improve transfer and articulation agreements and processes to facilitate smooth transfers.[10] Colleges and universities must make a commitment to the students they admit by supporting retention efforts so that students do not drop out of college with high debts and no degree.

**Ensuring Adequate Funding for Public Higher Education**

The federal government has a number of options that could help public institutions receive revenues that reflect the true costs of higher education:

- Design or expand federal matching programs that encourage increased state appropriations for higher education. For example, to encourage states to expand means-tested grant aid, the federal government could offer matching funds to states based on their funding of such programs.
- Reform the Medicaid program to slow the growth of state commitments that crowd out spending on higher education.[11]

---

[9] Jerry Kissler, "Why It Is in the Interest to Address the Growing Gap Between Public and Private Universities," Oakland, CA: University of California, 2005.
[10] National Research Council, *Enhancing the Community College Pathway to Engineering Careers*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, forthcoming.
[11] Kane and Orszag, 2003.

- Create "Learn Grant Universities" through a federal "Learn Grant Act" as significant as the Morrill Act of 1862 and the GI Bill of 1944.
- Enact a "Higher Education Millennium Partnership Act" that would integrate technology into the curriculum, create more flexible educational opportunities for part-time and nonresidential students, and develop new partnerships with schools, businesses, and local communities.[12]
- Create a "Millennium Education Trust Fund" using the sale of unused communications spectrum over the next few years (with proceeds possibly greater than $18 billion) to provide students with the skills necessary for an age of innovation.

**Improving Access to Higher Education**

In addition, the federal government can help the states improve access to higher education for all Americans through several actions:

- Focus national resources on improving the purchasing power of Pell awards.[13]
- Increase flexibility for states to buy more subsidized loan eligibility from the federal government.[14]
- Expand and restructure the LEAP program to allow private-sector matches from such organizations as Scholarship America and community foundations.[15]
- Institute a voucher program that would give more money to students from low-income homes.[16]
- Mandate that both public and private institutions use the average "net price" of attendance instead of the stated "sticker price" in all federal grant and loan programs to determine who qualifies for student-aid awards and how much they should be awarded. Using sticker prices as the official institutional "cost of attendance" misrepresents the actual average cost of attendance in most federal and state student-aid programs.[17]
- Consider eliminating the Free Application for Federal Student Aid. Changing laws to permit the use of Internal Revenue Service data to assess qualification for financial aid can simplify processes, save hundreds of millions of dollars, and remove bureaucratic barriers to postsecondary access.[18]

---

[12] James J. Duderstadt and Farris W. Womack, *Beyond the Crossroads: The Future of the Public University in America*, Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins University Press, 2003.
[13] Dickeson, 2004.
[14] Ibid.
[15] Ibid.
[16] Richard Vedder, *Growing Broke By Degree: Why College Costs Too Much*, Washington, DC: AEI Press, 2004.
[17] Alexander, F. King, "Policy Implications of Changes in Higher Education Finance," presentation to the National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, Washington, DC, April 21-22, 2005.
[18] Dickeson, 2004.

**Implications of Changes in the Financing of Public Higher Education**

**Figures and Tables**

**Figure PHE-1: Public Institutions Account for Nearly a Quarter of All Enrolled 4-Year Undergraduate Students.**

**Figure PHE-2A: Public 4-Year and 2-Year Colleges Enroll 70% of All Undergraduates.**

**Figure PHE-2B: In 2002, Over 15 Million Undergraduates Were Enrolled in US Institutions.**

**Figure PHE-3: National Trends. Percent of 18 to 24 Year Olds Enrolled in College Shows a General Upward Trend. A Steep Slope in Total Enrollment Started in 1955 and Then in 1970 Resolved into a Shallower Upward Slope.**

**Figure PHE-3B: Projected Increases in College-Age Population Over the Next 25 Years May Translate into Additional Expenses as Institutions Work to Create Additional Capacity.**

**Figure PHE-4: Instructional Expenses Are But 37% of Public-Institution Expenditures.**

**Figure PHE-5: Student:Faculty Ratio Has Remained Fairly Stable at Public Institutions and Decreased at Private Institutions.**

**Figure PHE-6A: Since the 1980s, Direct Government Support of Public Higher Education Has Steadily DecreasedWhile Grant and Contract Sources Have Increased.**

**Figure PHE-6B: Public and Private Institutions Have Access to Different Revenue Sources.**

**Figure PHE-7: Medicaid Expenses Have Begun to Compete with State Higher-Education Appropriations.**

**Figure PHE-8A: Higher-Education Expenses Have Fallen as a Share of State Expenses In Parallel with Increases in Medicaid Spending.**

**Figure PHE-8B: State Appropriations for Higher Education Have Fallen as a Share of Personal Income, Also In Parallel with Increases in Medicaid Spending.**

**Figure PHE-9A: Tuition and Fee Charges Have Increased at Public and Private Institutions.**

**Figure PHE-9B: Decreases in Instructional Appropriations Precede Increases in Tuition and Fees at Public 4-Year Institutions.**

**Figure PHE-10: Pell Grant Expenditures Are Increasing, But Average Grant Size Has Not Changed Substantially Since 1981.**

**Figure PHE-11: The Federal Government is Responsible for a Significant Amount of School Funding Through Student Financial Aid.**

**Figure PHE-12A: Federal Aid Awarded to Students Has Doubled Since 1993.**

**Figure PHE-12B: Merit-Based State Grant Aid per Student Has Increased 4-Fold Since 1981.**

**Figure PHE-12C: The Volume of Unsubsidized Student Loans Has Increased Substantially.**

**Figure PHE-13: Purchasing Power of Pell Grant Has Decreased.**

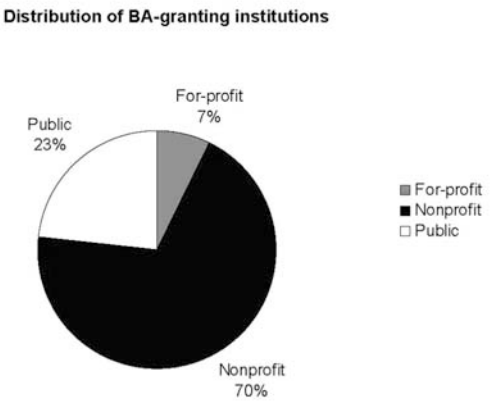
**Figure PHE-14A: Enrollment by Income: Transitions from High School to College Show Marked Difference for Low- and High-Income Families.**

**Figure PHE-14B:Annual Loan Limits Reduce Borrowing Options for Students.**

**Figure PHE-14C: Reduced Loan Purchasing Power and Availability Create a Differential Net Cost of Attendance as a Percentage of Family Income.**

**Figure PHE-15: Implications for Quality: Public Institutions Have Not Been Keeping Pace with Private Universities in Faculty Salaries.**

**Figure PHE-1: Public Institutions Account for Nearly a Quarter of All Enrolled 4-Year Undergraduate Students.**



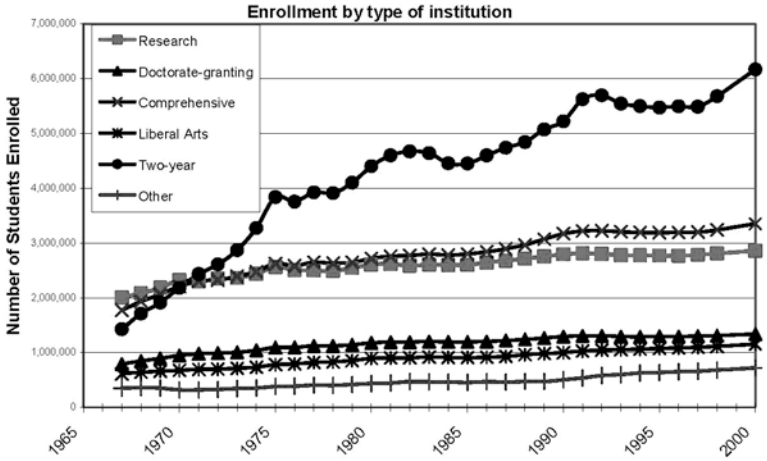

Source: Sarah Turner. *Policy Implications of Changing Funding for Public Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April 2005

**Figure PHE-2A: Public 4-Year and 2-Year Colleges Enroll 70% of All Undergraduates.**

| | Distribution of Undergraduate Enrollment | | Share of 1st time FT students in-state |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 1967 | 1996 | 1996 |
| Community Colleges | 21% | 37% | 92.7% |
| Other Public | 38% | 33% | 81.5% |
| Flagship Public | 13% | 9% | 72.0% |
| All Private | 28% | 21% | 54.2% |
| Research I Private | 3% | 2% | 23.6% |
| Liberal Arts College | 4% | 2% | 43.2% |

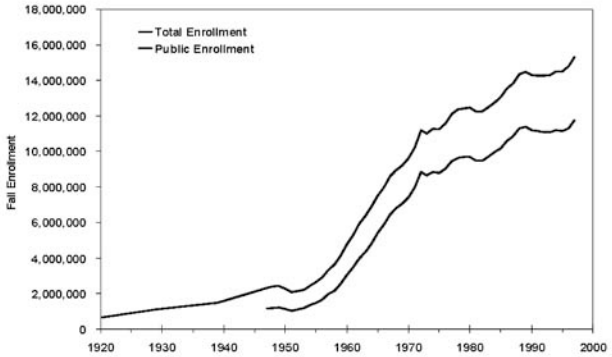
Source: Sarah Turner. *Policy Implications of Changing Funding for Public Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April 2005

**Figure PHE-2B: In 2000, 15.5 Million Undergraduates Were Enrolled in US Institutions.**




Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004.

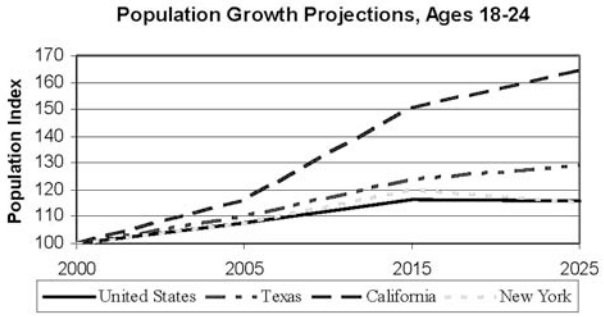
**Figure PHE-3: National Trends. Percent of 18 to 24 Year Olds Enrolled in College Shows a General Upward Trend. A Steep Slope in Total Enrollment Started in 1955 and Then in 1970 Resolved into a Shallower Upward Slope.**




Source: Sarah Turner. *Policy Implications of Changing Funding for Public Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April 2005.

Source: Thomas J. Kane. *The Role of Federal Government in Financing Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce. March 21, 2005.

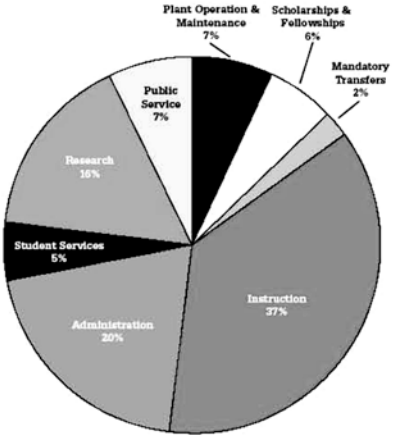
**Figure PHE-3B: Projected Increases in College-Age Population Over the Next 25 Years May Translate into Additional Expenses as Institutions Work to Create Additional Capacity.**




Source: Thomas J. Kane. *The Role of Federal Government in Financing Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce. March 21, 2005. Calculations based on Bureau of Census, Population Projections.

**Figure PHE-4: Instructional Expenses Are But 37% of Public-Institution Expenditures.**

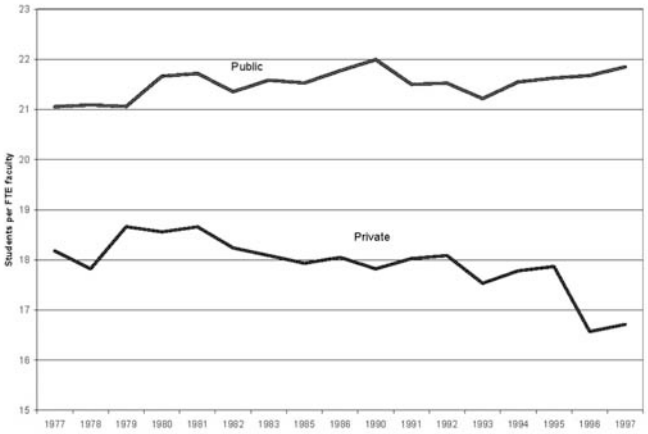
Figure 13. Expenditures of All Public Institutions, 2001




**Source:** *Enrollment in Postsecondary Institutions, Fall 2001 and Financial Statistics, FY 2001*, Table 29, NCES 2004-155.

Source: National Center for Education Statistics. *Enrollment in Postsecondary Institutions, Fall 2001 and Financial Statistics, Fiscal Year 2001* (NCES 2004-155). Washington, DC: United States Department of Education. December 23, 2003. Table 29. Available at: http://nces.ed.gov/pubsearch/pubsinfo.asp?pubid=2004155

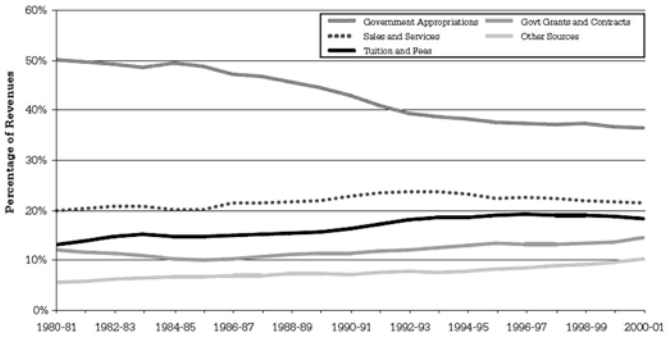
Figure PHE-5: Student:Faculty Ratio Has Remained Fairly Stable at Public Institutions and Decreased at Private Institutions.



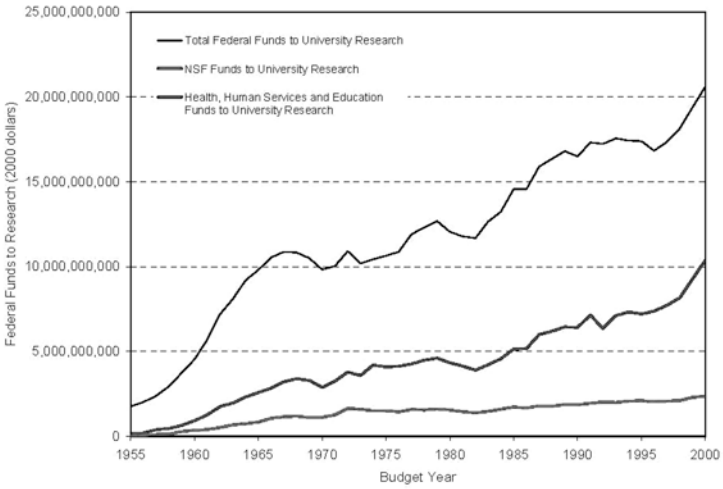

Source: Thomas J. Kane. *The Role of Federal Government in Financing Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, March 21, 2005.

**Figure PHE-6A: Direct Government Support of Public Higher Education Has Steadily Decreased While Grant and Contract Sources Have Increased.**

Figure 12. Revenue Sources for All Public Degree-Granting Institutions, 1980-81 to 2000-01




Source: The College Board. *Trends in College Pricing, 2004*. Washington, DC. 2004. p. 20 Available at: http://www.collegeboard.com/prod_downloads/press/cost04/041264TrendsPricing2004_FINAL.pdf




Source: Sarah Turner. *Policy Implications of Changing Funding for Public Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April 2005.

**Figure PHE-6B: Public and Private Institutions Have Access to Different Revenue Sources.**

| | Current Fund Revenues | | | | | | Tuition | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | State & Local | Federal | Private | Endow. | Tuition | Aux. & Other | In-state | Out-of-State |
| Community Colleges | 57.5% | 11.7% | 1.0% | 0.1% | 20.2% | 9.5% | $1,814 | $4,362 |
| Other Public | 36.3% | 10.7% | 4.0% | 0.4% | 18.3% | 30.2% | $2,725 | $6,981 |
| Flagship Public | 29.0% | 14.8% | 6.4% | 1.3% | 17.2% | 31.4% | $3,493 | $9,998 |
| All Private | 2.8% | 10.3% | 9.1% | 5.1% | 41.9% | 30.8% | | $12,881 |
| Research I Private | 2.3% | 16.1% | 9.5% | 5.7% | 22.9% | 43.5% | | $19,814 |
| Liberal Arts Colleges | 1.4% | 3.0% | 9.1% | 10.5% | 55.5% | 20.5% | | $17,648 |

Source: Sarah Turner. *Policy Implications of Changing Funding for Public Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April 2005.

**Figure PHE-7: Medicaid Expenses Have Begun to Compete with State Higher-Education Appropriations.**

Source: Thomas J. Kane. *The Role of Federal Government in Financing Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, March 21, 2005.

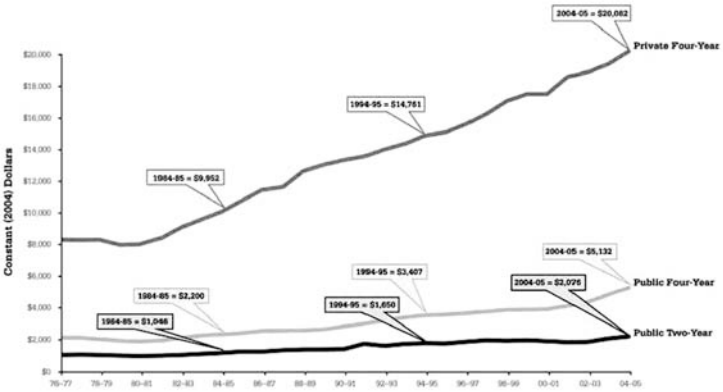
**Figure PHE-8A: Higher-Education Expenses Have Fallen as a Share of State Expenses in Parallel with Increases in Medicaid Spending.**

Source: Thomas J. Kane. *The Role of Federal Government in Financing Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, March 21, 2005.

**Figure PHE-8B: State Appropriations for Higher Education Have Fallen as a Share of Personal Income, Also in Parallel with Increases in Medicaid Spending.**

Source: Thomas J. Kane. *The Role of Federal Government in Financing Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, March 21, 2005.

**Figure PHE-9A: Average Published Tuition and Fee Charges Have Increased at Public and Private Institutions.**

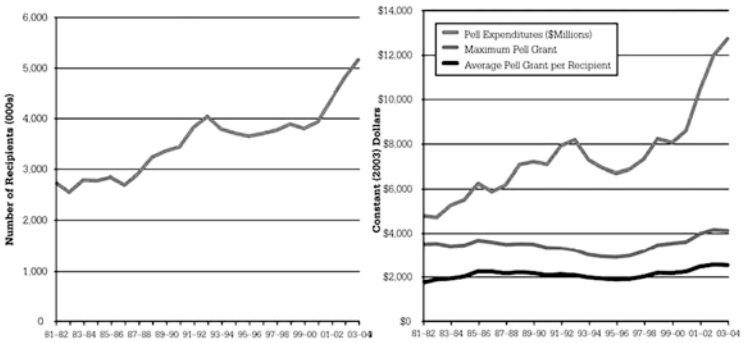



Source: Sandy Baum. *Changes in Funding for Public Higher Education: College Prices and Student Aid.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April, 2005. Data are from College Board *Trends in Higher Education Series, 2004.*

**Figure PHE-9B: Decreases in Instructional Appropriations Precede Increases in Tuition and Fees at Public 4-Year Institutions.**

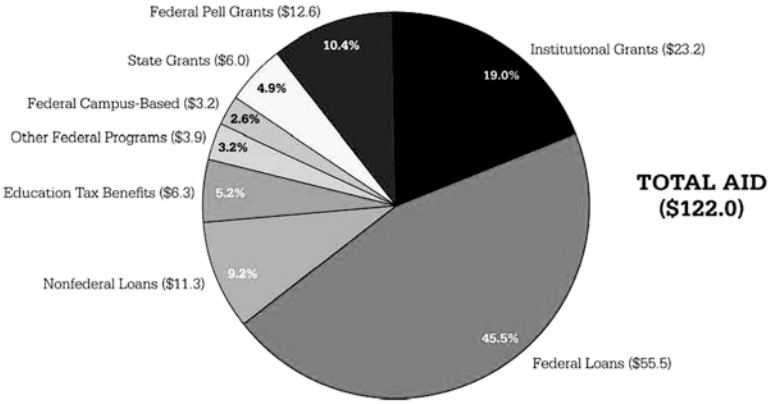
Source: Sandy Baum. *Changes in Funding for Public Higher Education: College Prices and Student Aid. Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education* and Workforce, April, 2005. Data are from College Board *Trends in Higher Education Series, 2004.*

**Figure PHE-10: Pell Grant Expenditures Are Increasing, But Average Grant Size Has Not Changed Substantially Since 1981.**




Source: Sandy Baum.. *Changes in Funding for Public Higher Education: College Prices and Student Aid.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April, 2005. Data are from College Board *Trends in Higher Education Series, 2004.*

**Figure PHE-11: The Federal Government is Responsible for a Significant Amount of School Funding Through Student Financial Aid.**



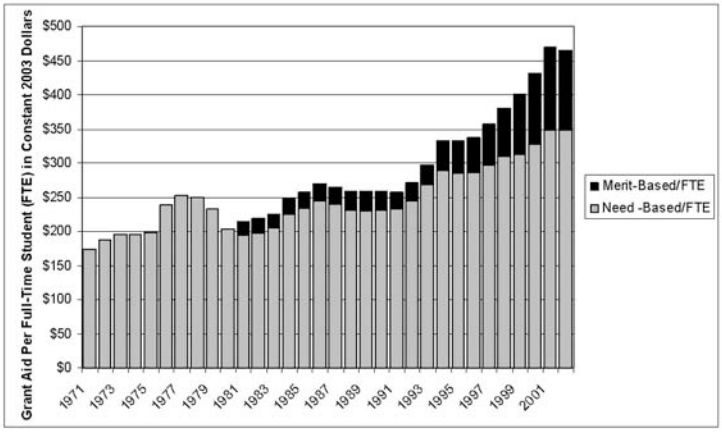

Source: Sandy Baum.. Changes in Funding for Public Higher Education: College Prices and Student Aid. Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April, 2005. Data are from College Board *Trends in Higher Education Series, 2004.*

**Figure PHE-12A: Federal Aid Awarded to Students Has Doubled Since 1993.**

| Federally-Supported Programs (Millions) | | |
|---|---|---|
| | 93–94 | 03–04 |
| ***Grants*** | | |
| Pell Grants | $7,196 | $12,661 |
| SEOG | $742 | $760 |
| LEAP | $91 | $64 |
| Veterans | $1,518 | $2,365 |
| Military | $515 | $981 |
| Other Grants | $245 | $353 |
| Subtotal | $10,308 | $17,184 |
| Federal Work Study | $982 | $1,218 |
| | | |
| ***Loans*** | | |
| Perkins Loans | $1,169 | $1,201 |
| Subsidized Stafford | $18,018 | $25,291 |
| Unsubsidized Stafford | $2,029 | $23,105 |
| PLUS | $1,943 | $7,072 |
| SLS | $4,415 | - |
| Other Loans | $580 | $125 |
| Subtotal | $28,708 | $56,794 |
| Education Tax Benefits | - | $6,298 |
| | | |
| ***Total Federal Aid*** | $39,998 | $81,494 |
| State Grant Aid | $3,022 | $6,017 |
| Institutional Grants | $11,852 | $23,253 |
| Total Federal, State Institutional | $54,872 | $110,764 |
| Nonfederal Loans | - | $11,271 |
| | | |
| | | |

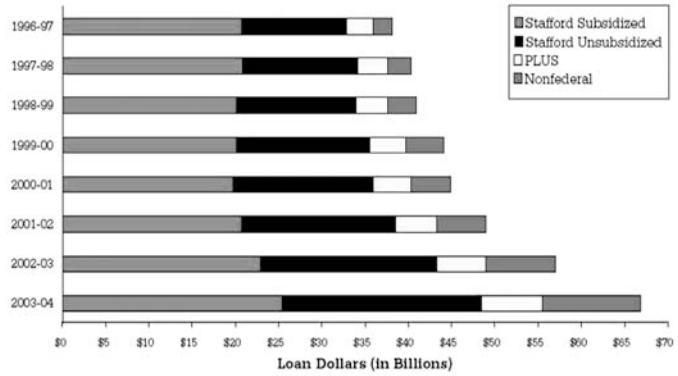
Source: Sarah Turner. *Policy Implications of Changing Funding for Public Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April 2005.

**Figure PHE-12B: Merit-Based State Grant Aid per Student Has Increased 4-Fold Since 1981.**




Source: Sandy Baum. Changes in Funding for Public Higher Education:
College Prices and Student Aid. Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April, 2005. Data are from College Board *Trends in Higher Education Series, 2004.*

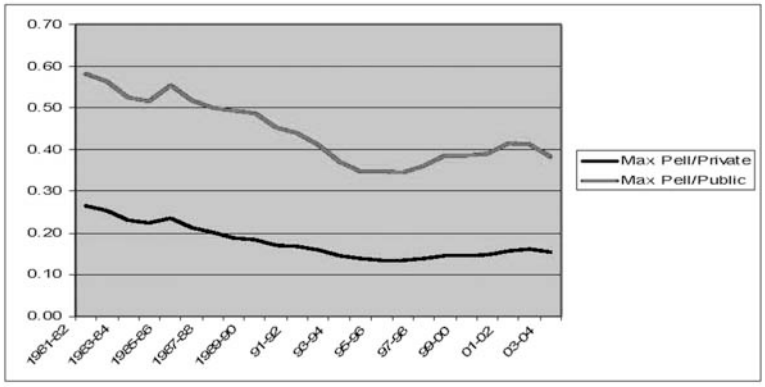
**Figure PHE-12C: The Volume of Unsubsidized Student Loans Has Increased Substantially.**




Source: Sarah Turner. *Policy Implications of Changing Funding for Public Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April 2005.

**Figure PHE-13: Purchasing Power of Pell Grant Has Decreased.**

**Maximum Pell Grant as Percentage of Cost of Attendance at Public and Private Four-Year Colleges, 1981-82 to 2002-03.**




Source: Sandy Baum. Changes in Funding for Public Higher Education:
College Prices and Student Aid. Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April, 2005. Data are from College Board *Trends in Higher Education Series, 2004.*

**Figure PHE-14A: Enrollment by Income: Transitions from High School to College Show Marked Difference for Low- and High-Income Families.**

| | Total | Low Income (bottom 20%) | High Income (top 20%) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1972 | 49.2% | 26.1% | 63.8% |
| 1980 | 53.9% | 33.6% | 67.6% |
| 1996 | 65.0% | 48.6% | 78.0% |

Source: Sarah Turner. *Policy Implications of Changing Funding for Public Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April 2005.

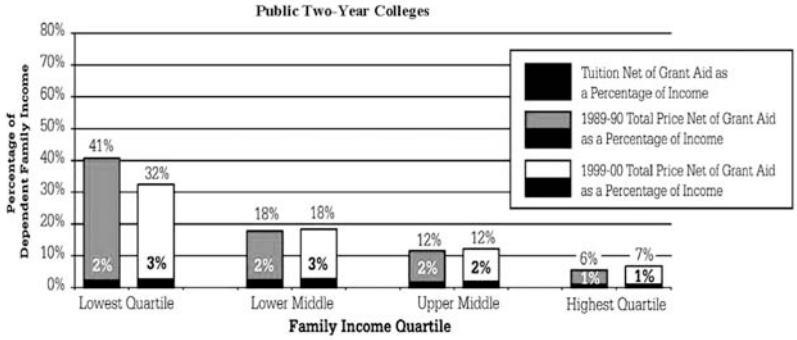
**Figure PHE-14B: Annual Loan Limits Reduce Borrowing Options for Students.**

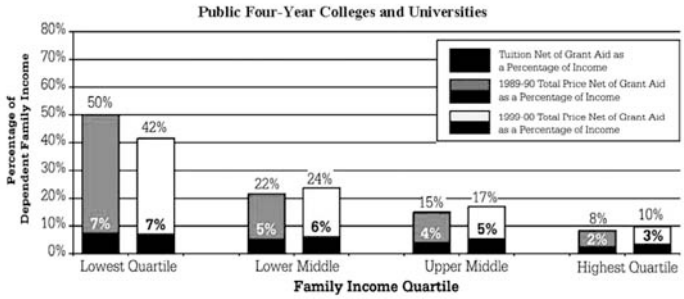
**Annual Loan Limits for Subsidized and Unsubsidized Stafford Loans**

| Dependent Undergraduate Student | | Independent Undergraduate Student | | Graduate Student |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1st Year | $2,625 | 1st Year<br>Only $2,625 of this amount may be in subsidized loans. | $6,625 | Up to $18,500 each academic year (only $8,500 of this amount may be in subsidized loans). |
| 2nd Year | $3,500 | 2nd Year<br>Only $3,500 of this amount may be in subsidized loans. | $7,500 | |
| 3rd and 4th Years | $5,500 | 3rd and 4th Years<br>Only $5,500 of this amount may be in subsidized loans. | $10,500 | |
| **Maximum total debt from Stafford Loans when you graduate** | | | | |
| $23,000 as a dependent undergraduate student | | $46,000 as an independent undergraduate student (only $23,000 of this amount may be in subsidized loans). | | $138,500 as graduate or professional student (only $65,500 of this amount may be in subsidized loans).<br>The graduate debt limit includes Stafford Loans received for undergraduate study. |

Source: Sarah Turner. *Policy Implications of Changing Funding for Public Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April 2005.

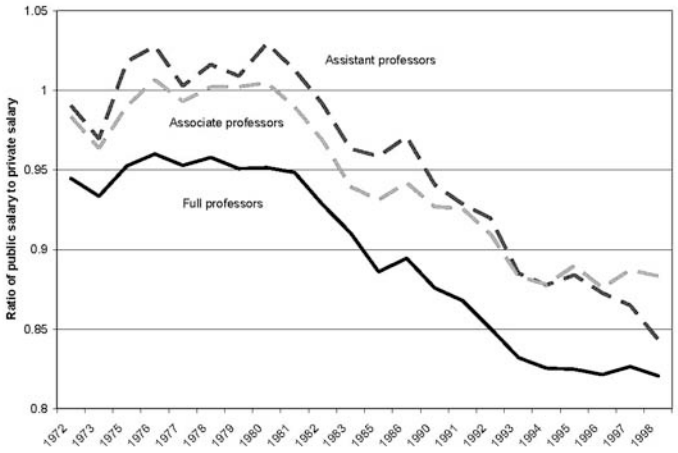
**Figure PHE-14C: Reduced Loan Purchasing Power and Availability Create a Differential Net Cost of Attendance as a Percentage of Family Income.**




Source: Sandy Baum. *Changes in Funding for Public Higher Education: College Prices and Student Aid.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, April, 2005. Data are from College Board *Trends in Higher Education Series, 2004.*

**Figure PHE-15: Implications for Quality: Public Institutions Have Not Been Keeping Pace with Private Universities in Faculty Salaries.**




Source: Thomas J. Kane. *The Role of Federal Government in Financing Higher Education.* Presentation to National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce, March 21, 2005.

This paper summarizes findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. Statements in this paper should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

## International Students and Researchers in the United States

**Summary**

The United States has experienced a steadily growing influx of graduate students and postdoctoral scholars from throughout the world. International students now constitute more than a third of US science and engineering (S&E) graduate-school enrollments, up from less than a quarter in 1982. More than half the S&E postdoctoral fellows are temporary residents, half of whom earned a doctorate degree outside the United States. Including undergraduates, more than a half-million foreign citizens are studying at colleges and universities in the United States.

Many of the international students educated in this country choose to remain here after receiving their degrees. More than 70% of the foreign-born S&E doctorates who received their degrees in 2001 remained in the United States for more than 2 years, up from about half the 1989 doctorate recipients. These skilled migrants are an important source of innovation for the US economy.

The terrorist attacks of September 11, 2001, caused drops in the numbers of international students applying to and enrolling in US graduate programs. In addition, other countries are developing their own systems of graduate education to recruit and retain more highly skilled students and professionals. In this environment of increased competition and reduced international mobility, the US education and research enterprise will have to readjust to be able to keep attracting the best students from home and abroad.

International exchanges of students and skilled professionals can benefit both the sending and receiving countries. Certainly, the United States S&E research enterprise depends critically on international students and scholars. Recommendations that various groups have made to maintain and enhance the ability of the United States to attract these highly skilled people include the following:

- Create new nonimmigrant visa categories exempted from the 214b provision for doctoral-level graduate students and postdoctoral scholars.
- Extend the validity of Visas Mantis security clearances for international students and scholars from the current 2-year limit to the duration of their academic appointments.
- Allow international students, scholars, scientists, and engineers to renew their visas in the United States.
- Implement a points-based immigration policy, similar to that of Canada or the United Kingdom, in which graduate education and S&E skills count toward obtaining citizenship.

**Science and Engineering Graduate Enrollments and Degrees**

The exchange of people and ideas across borders, accelerated in the last 2 decades by *perestroika* and the emergence of East Asia as a world economic power, has transformed institutions and individuals. Most countries today send bright young people to study abroad.[1] Many of them stay and contribute in lasting ways to their adopted countries. And whether they stay, return home, or move on to a third country, they become part of a global network of researchers, practitioners, and educators that provides cultural and intellectual support for students and scholars whatever their origins.

Since World War II, the United States has been the most popular destination for S&E graduate students and postdoctoral scholars choosing to study abroad. With about 6% of the world's population, the United States has been producing over 20% of the S&E PhD degrees.[2] International graduate students and postdoctoral researchers, many of whom stay in the United States after completing their studies, make substantial contributions to our society by creating and applying new knowledge.

The total number of S&E graduate students in US institutions has grown consistently over the last several decades, with an acceleration during the 1990s.[3] These increases have taken place despite evidence that US graduate schools give preference to domestic applicants.[4] Since the 1970s, the strongest inflow of graduate students has been from Asian countries. From 1985 to 2001, students from China, Taiwan, India, and South Korea earned more than half the 148,000 US science and engineering doctoral degrees awarded to foreign students, four times the number awarded to students from Europe.

The percentage of international students in US graduate schools has risen from 23.4% in 1982 to 34.5% in 2002 (see Figure IS-1). In 2002, international students received 19.5% of all doctorates awarded in the social and behavioral sciences, 18.0% in the life sciences, 35.4% in the physical sciences, and 58.7% in engineering.[5] For doctorate-granting institutions, total enrollment of international S&E graduate students increased dramatically between 2000 and 2002. In 2002, 55.5% of international S&E graduate students were enrolled at Research I (R1) universities; R1s also enroll the highest proportion (26.0%) of international students (see Figure IS-2). Today, the total number of foreign citizens studying in US universities (including undergraduates) has passed the half-million mark.

A recent study further delineates the changing demographics of graduate students in US institutions.[6] In 1966, US-born males accounted for 71% of S&E PhD graduates, and 6% were awarded to US-born females; 23% of doctorate recipients were foreign-born. In 2000, 36% of doctorate recipients were US-born males, 25% US-born females, and 39% foreign-born. Among postdoctoral scholars, the participation rate of temporary residents has increased from 37.4% in

---

[1] Todd M. Davis. 2003. *Atlas of Student Mobility*, New York: Institute of International Education.
[2] National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-1), Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.
[3] Ibid.
[4] Gregory Attiyeh and Richard Attiyeh. 1997. "Testing for Bias in Graduate School Admissions," *Journal of Human Resources* 32:524-548.
[5] National Science Foundation, *Survey of Graduate Students and Postdoctorates in Science and Engineering 2002*, Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004. Life sciences include biological sciences, agricultural sciences, and health fields; social sciences include psychology; and physical sciences include physics, chemistry, mathematics, computer science, and earth sciences.
[6] R.B. Freeman, E. Jin, and C.-Y. Shen. 2004. *Where Do New US-Trained Science-Engineering PhDs Come From?* (Working Paper Number 10544), Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economics Research.

1982 to 58.8% in 2002 (see Figure IS-3). Similarly, the share of foreign-born faculty who earned their doctoral degrees at US universities has increased from 11.7% in 1973 to 20.4% in 1999. In engineering fields, the share increased from 18.6% to 34.7% in the same period.[7]

**Stay Rates of International Graduate Students and Scholars**

Representation of foreign-born scientists and engineers in US S&E occupations varies by field, country of origin, economic conditions in the sending country, and when the PhD was awarded. In total, foreign-born scientists and engineers were 22.7% of the US S&E labor force in 2000, an increase from 12.7% in 1980. Foreign-born doctorates were 37.3% of the US S&E labor force, an increase from 23.9% in 1990.

One study found that 45% of international students from developing countries planned to enter the US labor market for a time, and 15% planned to stay permanently; another 15% planned to go to a third country.[8] Another study showed that the stay rate of international doctorate scientists and engineers has increased steadily and substantially in the last decade.[9] The proportion of foreign-born doctorates remaining in the United States for at least 2-years after receiving their degrees increased from 49% for the 1989 cohort to 71% for the larger 2001 cohort.[10]

Stay rates were highest among engineering, computer-science, and physical-science graduates. Stay rates also varied dramatically among graduate students from the top source countries—China (96%), India (86%), Taiwan (40%), and Korea (21%). Decisions to stay in the United States appear to be strongly affected by conditions in the students' home countries, primarily the unemployment rate, the percentage of the labor force that works in agriculture, and per capita GDP.[11]

**Costs and Benefits of International Mobility**

Skilled migrants contribute to the US economy as technicians, teachers, and researchers and in other occupations in which technical training is desirable (see Table IS-1). Some research suggests that they generate economic gains by contributing to industrial and business innovation, resulting in a net increase in real wages for both citizen and immigrant workers. One study, for example, found that the immigration of skilled workers added to local skills rather than

---

[7] National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-1), Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. Appendix table 5-24. Available at: http://www.nsf.gov/sbe/srs/seind02/append/c5/at05-24.xls.

[8] N. Aslanbeigui and V. Montecinos. 1998. "Foreign Students in US Doctoral Programs," *Journal of Economic Perspectives* 12:171-182.

[9] Although *international student* is usually taken to mean a student on a temporary visa, the figures sometimes include students on both temporary and permanent visas to compensate for the large number of Chinese students in the 1990s who became permanent residents by special legal provisions. This issue is discussed in greater detail by Finn (see next footnote), who finds the stay rate for those on temporary and permanent visas almost the same.

[10] Michael G. Finn. 2003. *Stay Rates of Foreign Doctorate Recipients from US Universities, 2001*, Oak Ridge, TN: Oak Ridge Institute for Science and Education. The stay rate was defined as remaining in the United States for at least 2 years after receipt of the doctorate, but Finn estimates that these rates do not fall appreciably during the first 5 years after graduation.

[11] D. L. Johnson. 2001. *Relationship Between Stay Rates of PhD Recipients on Temporary Visas and Relative Economic Conditions in Country of Origin* (Working Paper), Oak Ridge, TN: Oak Ridge Institute for Science and Education.

substituting for them.[12] The authors' econometric analyses suggest that a 10% increase in the number of international graduate students would raise university patent grants by 6% and nonuniversity patent grants by 4%. The authors concluded that bureaucratic hurdles in obtaining student visas may impede innovation if they decrease the inflow of international graduate students.

Foreign-born and foreign-educated scientists and engineers have made a disproportionate number of "exceptional" contributions to the S&E enterprise of the United States.[13] Since 1990, almost half the US Nobel laureates in science fields were foreign-born; 37% received their graduate education abroad. The large number of foreign-born scientists and engineers working in the United States who were educated abroad suggests that the United States has benefited from investments in education made by other countries.

Many people believe that emigration of technically skilled individuals—often called a "brain drain"– is detrimental to the country of origin. However, the concept of brain drain may be too simplistic inasmuch as it ignores the many benefits of emigration, including remittances, international collaborations, the return of skilled scientists and engineers, diaspora-facilitated international business, and a general investment in skills caused by the prospect of emigration.[14] As the R&D enterprise becomes more global, some observers propose that "brain drain" be recast as "brain circulation"[15] and include the broader topics of the international circulation of thinkers, knowledge workers, and rights to knowledge.[16] Such a discussion would include issues of local resources; many countries lack the educational and technical infrastructure to support advanced education, so aspiring scientists and engineers have little choice but to seek at least part of their training abroad, and in many instances such travel is encouraged by governments. Supporting the concept of brain circulation is the finding that ethnic networks developed in the United States by international students and scholars help to support knowledge transfer and economic development in both the United States and the sending country.[17]

In other countries, migration for employment, particularly for highly skilled workers, remains a core concern.[18] European Union (EU) countries, especially those with developed S&E capacity, have implemented strategies to facilitate retention and immigration of the technically

---

[12] G. Chelleraj, K.E. Maskus, and A. Mattoo. 2004. *The Contribution of Skilled Immigration and International Graduate Students to US Innovation* (Working Paper N. 04-10), Boulder, CO: University of Colorado.

[13] P.E. Stephan and S.G. Levin. 2005. "Foreign Scholars in US Science: Contributions and Costs." In: *Science and the University*, eds. Ronald Ehrenberg and Paula Stephan, Madison, WI: University of Wisconsin Press (forthcoming). The authors use six criteria to indicate "exceptional" contributions (not all contributions) in S&E: individuals elected to the National Academy of Sciences (NAS) and/or National Academy of Engineering (NAE), authors of citation classics, authors of hot papers, the 250 most-cited authors, authors of highly cited patents, and scientists who have played a key role in launching biotechnology firms.

[14] D. Kapur and J. McHale. 2005. "Sojourns and Software: Internationally Mobile Human Capital and High-Tech Industry Development in India, Ireland, and Israel." In: *From Underdogs to Tigers: The Rise and Growth of the Software Industry in Israel, Ireland and India*, eds. A. Arora and A. Gambardella, Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.

[15] OECD. 2002. *International Mobility of the Highly Skilled* (Policy Brief 92 2002 01 1P4), Washington, DC: OECD. Available at: http://www.oecd.org/dataoecd/9/20/1950028.pdf.

[16] Bogumil Jewsiewicki. 2003. *The Brain Drain in an Era of Liberalism*, Ottawa, ON: Canadian Bureau for International Education.

[17] William Kerr. 2004. *Ethnic Scientific Communities and International Technology Diffusion* (Working paper). Available at: http://econ-www.mit.edu/faculty/download_pdf.php?id=994.

[18] OECD members countries include Australia, Austria, Belgium, Canada, the Czech Republic, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Japan, Korea, Luxembourg, Mexico, Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Poland, Portugal, the Slovak Republic, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, Turkey, the United Kingdom, and the United States.

skilled. Several Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) countries have relaxed their immigration laws to attract high-skilled students and workers.[19] Some are increasing growth in their international student populations and are encouraging these students to apply for resident status.

Point-based immigration systems for high-skilled workers, while not widespread, are starting to develop.[20] Canada, Australia, and New Zealand use such systems to recruit highly skilled workers. The United Kingdom has been doing so since 2001, and the Czech Republic set up a pilot project that started in 2004. In 2004, the European Union Justice and International Affairs council adopted a recommendation to facilitate the immigration of researchers from non-EU countries, asking member states to waive requirements for residence permits or to issue them automatically or through a fast-track procedure and to set no quotas that would restrict their admission. Also, the European Commission has adopted a directive for a special admissions procedure for third-world nationals coming to the EU to perform research.

**Recent Trends in Graduate School Enrollment**

Declines in international student applications for entry to US graduate school have stimulated considerable discussion and more than a few warnings that our national S&E capacity may have begun to weaken. In 2002, National Science Foundation noted a decrease in first-time full-time S&E graduate enrollments among temporary residents, by about 8% for men and 1% for women.[21] At the same time, first-time full-time S&E graduate-student enrollment increased by almost 14% for US citizens and permanent residents—15% for men and more than 12% for women (see Figure IS-1).

More recent surveys by the Council on Graduate Schools showed dramatic decreases in applications among international students for the 2003 academic year but much smaller decreases in admissions. Applications and admissions for domestic students did not change appreciably during this period, whereas enrollments decreased by 5%. There appear to be much smaller effects on applications for the 2004 academic year (see Table IS-2)

These declines were partly in response to the terrorist attacks of September 11, 2001, after which it became clear to everyone that the issuance and monitoring of visas are as important to graduate education as the training experience. Even moreso, however, the declines reflect increasing global competition for graduate students amid the globalization of S&E education and research.

**Rising Global Capacity for Higher Education**

Given the fast-rising global tide of S&E infrastructure and training, it would be surprising if the S&E education and research enterprise currently dominated by the United States did not begin to change into a more global network of scientific and economic strength. Indeed, there is considerable evidence that that process has begun. Students have been leaving their home

---

[19] Karine Tremblay, "Links Between Academic Mobility and Immigration," Symposium on International Labour and Academic Mobility: Emerging Trends and Implications for Public Policy, Toronto, October 22, 2004.

[20] OECD. 2005. *Trends in International Migration: 2004 Annual Report.* Paris: Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. See http://www.workpermit.com/ for more information on immigration policies in English-speaking countries and the European Union.

[21] National Science Foundation, *Graduate Enrollment in Science and Engineering Fields Reaches New Peak; First-Time Enrollment of Foreign Students Declines* (NSF 04-326). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004.

countries in search of academic opportunities abroad for thousands of years.[22] For scientists and engineers, the trend gained importance with the rise of universities and the need for formal training unavailable at home. As early as the late 19th century, many Americans were drawn abroad to German universities to gain expertise in fast-growing new technical fields.[23] In the following decades, that trend gradually reversed as US universities gained technical strength and attracted both faculty and students. US universities also benefited from an influx of educated refugees fleeing war-torn Europe during and after World War II.

Now, even while the United States can boast of 17 of the world's top 20 universities,[24] the US share of the world's S&E graduates is declining rapidly. European and Asian universities have increased degree production while the number of students obtaining US graduate degrees has stagnated (see Figure IS-4). As countries develop knowledge-based economies, they seek to reap more of the benefits of international educational activities, including strong positive effects on GDP growth.[25] Emerging economies have coupled education-abroad programs with strategic investments in S&E infrastructure—in essence pushing students away to gain skills and creating jobs to draw them back. Other countries, particularly in Europe, are trying to retain their best students and also to increase quality and open international access to their own higher educational institutions.

**Visa and Immigration Policy**

A growing challenge for policymakers is to reconcile the flow of people and information with security needs. Policies and regulations, particularly those governing visas and immigration, can disrupt the global movement of individuals and therefore the productivity of scientists and engineers. In turn, this can affect a nation's economic capabilities.

The repercussions of the terror attacks of September 11, 2001, have included security-related changes in federal visa and immigration policy. Other immigration-related policies relevant to international student flows are international reciprocity agreements and deemed export policies. Policy changes intended to restrict the illegal movements of an extremely small population have had a substantial effect on international graduate students and postdoctoral scholars already in the United States or contemplating a period of study here.

---

[22] W. I. Cohen. 2001. *East Asia at the Center: Four Thousand Years of Engagement with the World*, New York: Columbia University Press.

[23] D. E. Stokes. 1997. *Pasteur's Quadrant: Basic Science and Technological Innovation*, Washington DC: Brookings Institution, pp. 38-41. Stokes explains the effect of this export and re-importation of S&E talent on US universities: "This tide, which was at a flood in the 1880's, reflected the lack of an American system of advanced studies adequate to the needs of a rising industrial nation, and was a standing challenge to create one. The efforts to fill this gap in American higher education were generously supported by America's economic expansion, particularly by the private individuals who had acquired great wealth in the decades after the Civil War, many of whom had gained a vision of what might be done from their studies in the German universities."

[24] Shanghai's Jiao Tong University Institute of Higher Education, *Academic Ranking of World Universities*, 2004. Available at: http://ed.sjtu.edu.cn/rank/2004/2004Main.htm. The ranking emphasizes prizes, publications, and citations attributed to faculty and staff, as well as the size of institutions. The *Times Higher Education* supplement also provides international comparisons of universities.

[25] The Conference Board of Canada. 1999. *The Economic Implications of International Education for Canada and Nine Comparator Countries: A Comparison of International Education Activities and Economic Performance.* Ottawa, ON: Department of Foreign Affairs and International Trade. Also see AnnaLee Saxenian. 1999. *Silicon Valley's New Immigrant Entrepreneurs.* San Francisco: Public Policy Institute. Available at: http://www.ccis-ucsd.org/PUBLICATIONS/wrkg15.PDF.

Changes in visa and immigration policies and structures had a rapid and adverse effect on student mobility. Nonimmigrant-visa issuance rates decreased, particularly for students (see Figure IS-5). Implementation of the student-tracking system, the Student and Exchange Visitor Information System (SEVIS), and enhanced Visas Mantis security screening led to closer scrutiny and longer times for visa processing, in some cases causing students to miss classes or to turn to other countries for their graduate training.[26] After intense discussions between the university community and government agencies,[27] some of these policies have been adjusted to reduce effects on student mobility (see Figure IS-6). However, unfavorable perceptions remain, and international sentiment regarding the United States and its visa and immigration processes is a lingering problem for the recruitment of international students and scholars.

**Recommendations**

To maintain its leadership in S&E research, the United States must be able to recruit the most talented people worldwide for positions in academe, industry, and government.[28] The United States therefore must work to attract the best international talent while seeking to improve the mentoring, education, and training of its own S&E students, including women and members of underrepresented minority groups. This dual goal is especially important in light of increasing global competition for the best S&E students and scholars.

Federal actions that have been recommended include the following:

- Create new nonimmigrant-visa categories for doctoral-level graduate students and postdoctoral scholars, whether they are coming to the United States for formal educational or training programs or for short-term research collaborations or scientific meetings.[29] The categories should be exempted from the 214b provision whereby applicants must show that they have a residence in a foreign country that they have no intention of abandoning.
- Allow international students, scholars, scientists, and engineers to renew their visas in the United States.[30]
- Negotiate visa reciprocity agreements between the United States and key sending countries, such as China, to extend visa duration and to permit multiple entries.[26,27]
- In the case of deemed export controls, clear students and scholars to conduct research and use equipment required for such research through the visa process.[31]

---

[26] See, among many examples: "A Visa System Tangled in Red Tape and Misconceived Security Rules is Hurting America", *The Economist*, May 6, 2004; Caroline Alphonso, "Facing Security Hurdles, Top Students Flock to Canada", *The Globe and Mail*, February 22, 2005.

[27] "Statement and Recommendations on Visa Problems Harming America's Scientific, Economic, and Security Interests," February 11, 2004, signed by 22 scientific, engineering, and academic leaders.

[28] Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy. 2005. *Policy Implications of International Graduate Students and Postdoctoral Scholars in the United States*, Washington DC: National Academies Press.

[29] Ibid.

[30] "Recommendations for Enhancing the US Visa System to Advance America's Scientific and Economic Competitiveness and National Security Interests", May 18, 2005, signed by the National Academies presidents and 38 higher education and business organizations.

[31] Association of American Universities, "Revision and Clarification of Deemed Export Regulatory Requirements," submitted to the Bureau of Industry and Security, US Department of Commerce, June 27, 2005.

- Implement a points-based immigration policy, similar to that of Canada or the United Kingdom, in which US graduate education and S&E skills count toward obtaining US citizenship.[32]

**International Students and International Scholars in the United States**

**Appendix 1: Figures and Tables**

**Figure IS-1: Full-Time Science and Engineering Graduate Enrollments Increasing Among Domestic Students; First-Time Enrollments Stable or Decreasing for International Students.**

**Figure IS-2: International Graduate Students Enrolled Predominantly at Research 1 Universities.**

**Figure IS-3: Over Half of Academic Postdoctoral Scholars Are Temporary Residents.**

**Table IS-1: Foreign-Born Play a Large Role in US S&E Enterprise as Measured by Those Who Hold S&E Positions; Most Foreign-Born in Mathematics or Computer-Science Jobs Requiring a Bachelor's or Master's Degree.**

**Table IS-2: Large Decrease in Applications and Admissions but More Limited Decrease in Enrollments for International Graduate Students between 2002 and 2003 Academic Year.**

**Figure IS-4. US Doctorate Production is Stagnating While Production in Other Countries, Particularly China, Is Increasing.**

**Figure IS-5: Visa Issuance Rates for Students and Exchange Visitors are Back to Pre-9-11 Levels.**

**Figure IS-6: The Visas Mantis System Overload Has Been Overcome, and Over 80% of Clearance Decisions Are Now Made in Under 30 Days.**

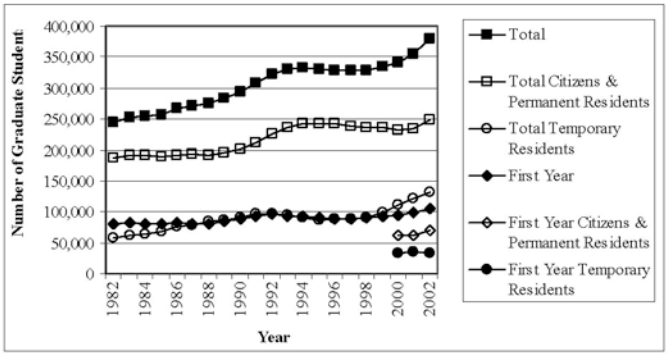
**Appendix 2: Existing High-Skilled Immigration Policies in OECD Countries**

**(1) Points-Based Immigration for High-Skilled Workers**
**(2) Business Travel**
**(3) Student Visas**
**(4) Work Permits for International Students and Spouses**
**(5) Permit to Stay After Graduation to Find a Job**

[32] OECD, *Trends in International Migration: 2004 Annual Report*, Paris: Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, 2005. See appendix for information on existing immigration policies.

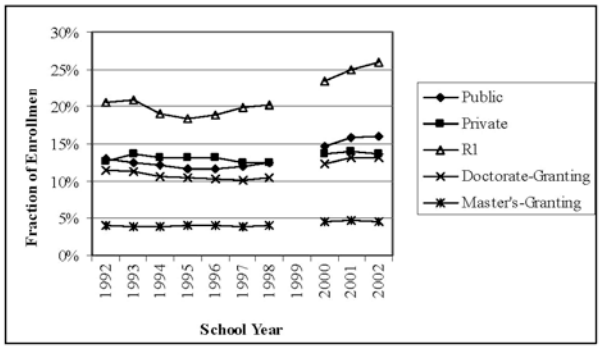
**Appendix 1**
**Figures and Tables**

**Figure IS-1: Full-Time Science and Engineering Graduate Enrollments Increasing Among Domestic Students; First-Time Enrollments Stable or Decreasing for International Students.**



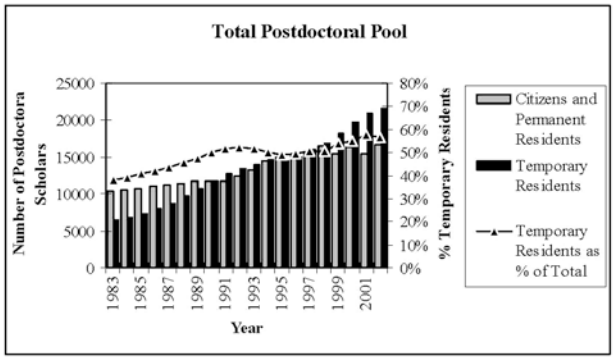

National Science Foundation. *Survey of Graduate Students and Postdoctorates in Science and Engineering 2002.* Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. 2004. Enrollment numbers include medical fields.

**Figure IS-2: International Graduate Students Enrolled Predominantly at Research 1 Universities.**




Source: The Council of Graduate Schools. *CGS/GRE Graduate Enrollment and Degrees: Annual surveys from 1992-2002.* Washington, DC. Available at: http://www.cgsnet.org/VirtualCenterResearch/graduateenrollment.htm. The CGS enrollment numbers include all major S&E fields, as business, education, humanities and arts, and public administration and services. The non-S&E fields have 3 and 17% enrollment of international students. CGS states, "Institution type was a major differentiating variable in the enrollment of non-US students, reflecting the concentration of international students in doctoral programs in science and engineering."

**Figure IS-3: Over Half of Academic Postdoctoral Scholars Are Temporary Residents.**




National Science Foundation. *Survey of Graduate Students and Postdoctorates in Science and Engineering 2002.* Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. 2004. Medical fields are included, but postdoctoral scholars with medical degrees (presumably acting as physicians) are excluded from the analysis.

**Table IS-1: Foreign-Born Play a Large Role in US S&E Enterprise as Measured by Those Who Hold S&E Positions; Most Foreign-Born in Mathematics or Computer-Science Jobs Requiring a Bachelor's or Master's Degree.**

**Number of Foreign-Born in US S&E Occupations, 2000**

| | All S&E | Engineering | Life Sciences | Mathematics and Computer Sciences | Physical Sciences | Social Sciences |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **All college-educated** | 816,000 | 265,000 | 52,000 | 370,000 | 92,000 | 37,000 |
| **Bachelor's degree** | 365,000 | 132,000 | 6,000 | 197,000 | 21,000 | 9,000 |
| **Master's degree** | 291,000 | 100,000 | 10,000 | 146,000 | 21,000 | 14,000 |
| **Professional degree** | 25,000 | 5,000 | 8,000 | 6,000 | 4,000 | 2,000 |
| **Doctoral degree§** | 135,000 | 28,000 | 28,000 | 21,000 | 46,000 | 12,000 |

Source: National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators, 2004* (NSB 04-1). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. Chapter 3.
Note: Data are from US Census 2000 5% Public Use Microdata Samples (PUMS) and include all S&E occupations other than postsecondary teachers, because field of instruction was not included in occupation coding for the 2000 census.

§ In 2001, 57% of those who were foreign-born S&E doctorate holders were US citizens. National Science Board. 2004. *Science and Engineering Indicators, 2004* (NSB 04-1). Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.

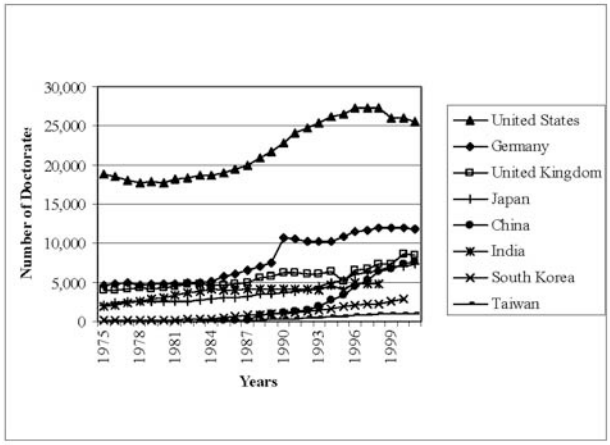
**Table IS-2: Large Decrease in Applications and Admissions but More Limited Decrease in Enrollments for International Graduate Students between 2002 and 2003 Academic Year.**

| | Total | Engineering | Life Sciences | Physical Sciences |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Applications** | -28% (-5%)* | -36% (-7%) | -24% (-1%) | -26% (-3%) |
| **Admissions** | -18% | -24% | -19% | -17% |
| **Enrollments** | -6% | -8% | -10% | +6% |

Heath Brown. *Council of Graduate Schools Finds Decline in New International Graduate Student Enrollment for the Third Consecutive Year.* Washington, DC: Council of Graduate Schools. November 4, 2004.

*Available data for the 2005 academic year are shown in parentheses. Heath Brown and Maria Doulis. 2005. *Findings from the 2005 CGS International Graduate Survey I.* Washington DC: Council of Graduate Schools.

**Figure IS-4. US Doctorate Production is Stagnating While Production in Other Countries, Particularly China, Is Increasing.**



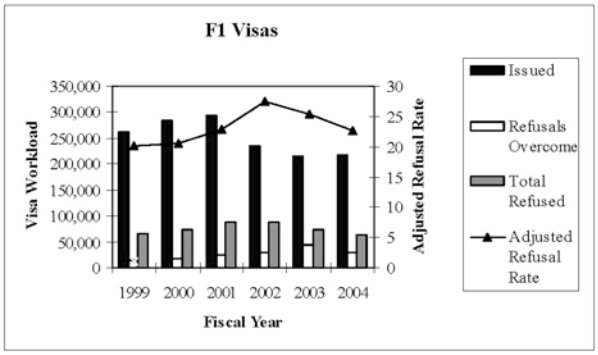

Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Table 5-30.

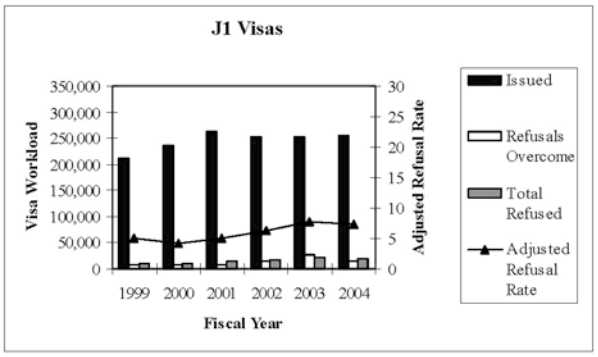
Not only are other countries increasing their S&E doctorate production, they are also attracting more international students. However, the United States may still be ahead in retaining students and attracting high-skilled workers.

- The %age of foreign students on OECD campuses rose by 34.9% on average between 1998 and 2002 and by 50% or more in the Czech Republic, Iceland, Korea, New Zealand, Norway, Spain, and Sweden. In absolute terms, more than 450,000 new individuals crossed borders to study in an OECD country during this short period, raising the number of foreign students enrolled on OECD campuses to 1,781,000. Karine Tremblay. 2004. "Links between academic mobility and immigration". *Symposium on International Labour and Academic Mobility: Emerging Trends and Implications for Public Policy, Toronto, October 22.*
- In 2000, the EU was ahead of the United States and Japan in the production of S&E graduates. As a proportion of PhDs per 1,000 population aged 25-34 years, the EU-15 had an average of 0.56, the United States had 0.48 and Japan had 0.24. However, the emigration of EU-15 S&E graduates is creating a restriction for European R&D. In the late 1990s, the European S&E workforce accounted for 5.4 per thousand workers vs 8.1 per thousand in the United States and 9.3 in Japan. European Commission. 2002. *Towards a European Research Area. Science, Technology, and Innovation, Key Figures 2002.* Brussels: European Commission, pp. 36-38. Available at ftp://ftp.cordis.lu/pub/indicators/docs/ind_kf2002.pdf.
- Two independent estimates indicate that of the 60% of academic postdoctoral scholars who hold temporary visas, about four-fifths have non-US doctorates, which means that half of all US academic postdoctoral scholars have non-US doctorates.[33] Of postdoctoral scholars on temporary visas, almost 80% had earned their PhDs outside the United States. Of those with non-US PhDs, the highest number came from China (25%), followed by India (11%), Germany (7%), South Korea (5%), Canada (5%), Japan (5%), the UK (4%), France (4%), Spain (2%), and Italy (2%). The United States is benefiting from an inflow of postdoctoral scholars who have received graduate support and training elsewhere.

[33] Estimates based on the NSF Survey of Doctorate Recipients 2001, the NSF Survey of Graduate Students and Postdocs 2001, and the 2004 Sigma Xi National Postdoctoral Survey. Available at: http://postdoc.sigmaxi.org.

**Figure IS-5: Visa Issuance Rates for Students and Exchange Visitors are Back to Pre-9-11 Levels.**

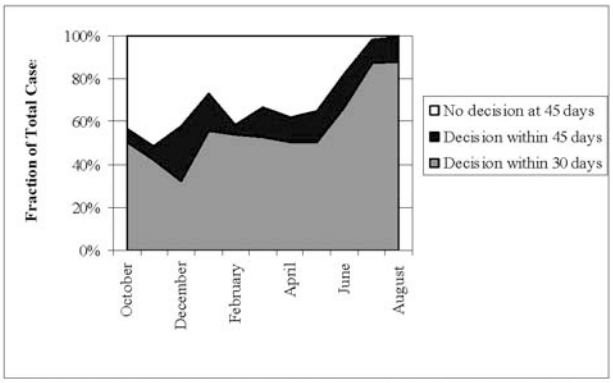



Source: United States Department of State. Bureau of Consular Affairs. *Report of the Visa Office: Multi Year Reports (1992-2004).* Washington, DC: US Department of State. Available at http://travel.state.gov/visa/report.html. Note: *Report of the Visa Office* is an annual publication of the US Department of State, published by the Bureau of Consular Affairs. Recent editions are available at http://travel.state.gov/visa/report.html. The adjusted refusal rate is calculated with the following formula: (Refusals − Refusals Overcome/Waived)/(Issuances + Refusals − Refusals Overcome/Waived).

A steep decline in visa issuances began in 2001 and continued through 2003. J-visa issuances, mostly to Europeans, followed roughly the same pattern, with a larger rise in the 1990s and a smaller downturn after 2001. To date, the downturn has reflected an increased denial rate more than a decreased application rate. As seen in the figure, the refusal rate for J-visa applicants rose steadily from 2000 through 2003. The adjusted refusal rate for F-visa applicants peaked in 2002. In 2004, denial rates had decreased considerably and were approaching 1999 levels.

**Figure IS-6: The Visas Mantis System Overload Has Been Overcome, and Over 80% of Clearance Decisions Are Now Made in Under 30 Days.**




Source: United States Department of State. Bureau of Consular Affairs. *Report of the Visa Office..* Washington, DC: US Department of State. Available at http://travel.state.gov/visa/report.html.

In 2002, a new antiterrorist screening process called Visas Condor was added for nationals of US-designated state sponsors of terrorism[34] that initially overloaded the Security Advisory Opinion (SAO) interagency process and slowed Mantis clearances.[35] The problem of extended waiting times for clearance of nonimmigrant visas flagged by Mantis has for the most part been addressed successfully. [36] By August 2004, the proportion of Visas Mantis visitors cleared within 30 days hasd risen substantially, and fewer than 15% took more than 30 days. The Visas Mantis process[37] is triggered when a student or exchange-visitor applicant intends to study a subject covered by the Technology Alert List (TAL). The express purpose of the TAL, originally drawn up as a tool for preventing proliferation of weapons technology, is to prevent the export of "goods, technology, or sensitive information" through such activities as "graduate-level studies, teaching, conducting research, participating in exchange programs, receiving training or employment."[38] Initially, Mantis procedures were applied on entry and each re-entry to the United States for persons studying or working in sensitive fields. In 2004, SAO clearance was extended to 1 year for those who were returning to a US government-sponsored program or activity and performing the same duties or functions at the same facility or organization that was the basis for the original Mantis authorization.[39] In 2005, the US Department of State extended the validity of Mantis clearances for F, J, H, L, and B visa categories.

---

[34]Countries designated section 306 in 2005: Iran, Syria, Libya, Cuba, North Korea, and Sudan. See http://travel.state.gov/visa/temp/info/info_1300.html.

[35] Government Accountability Office. 2004. *Border Security: Improvements Needed to Reduce Time Taken to Adjudicate Visas for Science Students and Scholars* (GAO-04-371). Washington, DC: GAO. In April-June 2003, applicants waited an average of 67 days for completion of security checks associated with visa applications.

[36] Government Accountability Office. 2005. *Border Security: Streamlined Visas Mantis Program has lowered burden on science students and scholars, but further refinements needed* (GAO-05-198). Washington DC: GAO.

[37] The Visa Mantis program was established in 1998 and applies to all nonimmigrant visas, including student (F), exchange-visitor (J), temporary-worker (H), intracompany-transferee (L), business (B-1), and tourist (B-2).

[38] See http://travel.state.gov/visa/testimony1.html for an overview of the Visas Mantis and Condor programs.

[39] See Department of State cable, 04 State 153587, No. 22: Revision to Visas Mantis Clearance Procedure. Available at: http://travel.state.gov/visa/state153587.html.

Clearances for F visas are valid for up to 4 years unless the student changes academic positions. H, J, and L clearances are valid for up to 2 years unless the visa holder's activity in the United States changes.[40]

[40] "Extension of validity for science-related interagency visa clearances." Media Note 2005/182. US Department of State, February 11, 2005,. Available at: http://www.state.gov/r/pa/prs/ps/2005/42212.htm.

## Appendix 2
## Existing High-Skilled Immigration Policies in OECD Countries[41]

Migration for employment, particularly for high skilled workers, remains a core concern for OECD member countries.[42] EU countries, especially those with developed S&E capacity, have implemented strategies to facilitate retention and immigration of the technically skilled. Several OECD countries have relaxed their immigration laws to attract high-skilled students and workers. Some are increasing growth in their international-student populations and encouraging these students to apply for resident status.[43]

### (1) Points-Based Immigration for High-Skilled Workers

Points systems, while not widespread, are starting to develop. Canada, Australia, New Zealand, and the United Kingdom use such systems to recruit highly skilled workers. The Czech Republic set up a pilot project that started in 2004. In 2004, the EU Justice and International Affairs council adopted a recommendation to facilitate researchers from non-EU countries, which asks member states to waive requirements for residence permits or to issue them automatically or through a fast-track procedure and to set no quotas that would restrict their admission. Permits should be renewable and family reunification facilitated. The European Commission has adopted a directive for a special admissions procedure for third-world nationals coming to the EU to perform research. This procedure will be in force in 2006.

- ***Canada*** has put into place a points-based program aimed at fulfilling its policy objectives for migration, particularly in relation to the labor-market situation. The admission of skilled workers depends more on human capital (language skills and diplomas, professional skills, and adaptability) than on specific abilities.[44] Canada has also instituted a business-immigrant selection program to attract investors, entrepreneurs, and self-employed workers.
- ***Germany*** instituted a new immigration law on July 9, 2004. Among its provisions, in the realm of migration for employment, it encourages settlement by high skilled workers, who are eligible immediately for permanent residence permits. Family members who accompany them or subsequently join them have access to the labor market. Like Canada, Germany encourages the immigration of self-employed persons, who are granted temporary residence permits if they invest a minimum of 1 million euros and create at least 10 jobs. Issuance of work permits and residence permits has been consolidated. The Office for Foreigners will issue both permits concurrently, and the Labor Administration subsequently approves the work permit.

---

[41] Unless otherwise noted, policies listed are from an overview presented in: OECD. 2005. *Trends in International Migration: 2004 Annual Report.* Paris: Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development.

[42] OECD members countries include Australia, Austria, Belgium, Canada, the Czech Republic, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Japan, Korea, Luxembourg, Mexico, Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Poland, Portugal, the Slovak Republic, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, Turkey, the United Kingdom, and the United States.

[43] Karine Tremblay. 2004. Links between academic mobility and immigration. *Symposium on International Labour and Academic Mobility: Emerging Trends and Implications for Public Policy, Toronto, October 22.*

[44] Applicants can check online their chances to qualify for migration to Canada as skilled workers. A points score is automatically calculated to determine entry to Canada under the Skilled Worker category. See: Canadian Immigration Points Calculator Web site at http://www.workpermit.com/canada/points_calculator.htm.

- ***UK***[45] The UK Highly Skilled Migrant Programme (HSMP) is an immigration category for entry to the UK for successful people with sought-after skills. It is in some ways similar to the skilled migration programs for entry to Australia and Canada. The UK has added an MBA provision to the HSMP. Eligibility for HSMP visas is assessed on a points system with more points awarded in the following situations:
    - Preference for applicants under 28 years old.
    - Skilled migrants with tertiary qualifications.
    - High-level work experience.
    - Past earnings.
    - In a few rare cases, HSMP points are also awarded if one has an achievement in one's chosen field.
    - One may also score bonus points if one is a skilled migrant seeking to bring a spouse or partner who also has high-level skills and work experience.

- ***Australia*** encourages immigration of skilled migrants, who are assessed on a points system with points awarded for work experience, qualifications, and language proficiency[46] Applicants must demonstrate skills in specific job categories.

**(2) Business Travel**

- ***Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC)*** has instituted the Business Travel Card Scheme designed to liberalize trade and stimulate economic growth. The scheme facilitates travel for business people traveling for short periods to participating countries (in 2004, APEC had 16 member countries, including China). Travel is possible between participating countries after submission of a single application, which is filtered by the applicant's home country and forwarded to all the participating countries for precertification. Cardholders are checked against police records in their own country as well as against warning lists in participating countries. Approved travelers get cards valid for 3 years that provide special access to fast-track lanes at airports. In 2004, there were over 5,000 cards in circulation.

**(3) Student Visas** Many OECD countries are determined to attract a larger number of international students. In addition to developing special programs and streamlining application processes, some countries have signed bilateral agreements while others have decided to offer job opportunities to graduates.

- ***Canada*** Students no longer require study permits for stays of less than 6 months.
- ***France*** Since 1999, it has been possible to obtain a 3- to 6-month visa for short-term studies without registration.

**(4) Work Permits for International Students and Spouses**

- ***Canada***[47] A new off-campus work program allows international students at public postsecondary institutions to work off campus, extending the previous policy enacted

---

[45] UK Highly Skilled Migrant Programme Web page. Also has a points calculator. See http://www.workpermit.com/uk/highly_skilled_migrant_program.htm

[46] See points calculator at http://www.workpermit.com/australia/point_calculator.htm.

[47] OST. "Canada: Immigration Policy Change Widens Door for Foreign Students and Scholars." *Bridges* 6 (July 13, 2005). Available at: http://bridges.ostina.org.

earlier in 2005 that allowed students to work on campus while in Canada on a student visa.

• ***Germany*** Since 2003, international students have been allowed to work 180 half-days per year without a work permit.

• ***Austria*** Since 2003, students can work half-time to finance their studies.

**(5) Permit to Stay after Graduation to Find a Job**

• ***Canada***[48] As of May 16, 2005, a new policy allows certain students to work in their field of study for up to 2 years after graduation. Previously, international students were allowed to stay only 1 year after graduation to work in Canada.

• ***Germany*** International students may remain in Germany for 1 year after the end of their studies to seek employment.

• ***UK***[49] Foreign students at UK universities graduating from specific engineering, physical-science and mathematics courses are now permitted to stay in the UK for 1 year after graduation to take up employment.[50] The Science and Engineering Graduate Scheme was launched on October 25, 2004, and is now fully operational. This new immigration category allows non-European Economic Area nationals who have graduated from UK-higher or further-education establishments in certain mathematics, physical-sciences and engineering subjects with a 2.2 degree or higher to remain in the UK for 12 months after their studies to pursue a career. Only those who have studied approved programs are eligible to apply to remain under the scheme. The scheme was first announced in the UK 2003 Budget as an incentive to encourage foreign students to study in these fields in the UK and to be an asset to the workplace after graduation by relieving the shortages of engineering, physical-science and mathematics graduates in the UK. Applicants must

- Have successfully completed a degree course with second-class honours (2.2) or higher, a Masters course or PhD on the relevant list of Department for Education or Skills-approved physical-science, mathematics, and engineering courses at a UK institution of higher or further education.
- Intend to work during the period of leave granted under the scheme.
- Be able to maintain and accommodate themselves and any dependents without recourse to public funds.
- Intend to leave the UK at the end of their stay (unless granted leave as a work-permit holder, high skilled migrant, business person, or innovator).

---

[48] OST. 2005. Ibid.

[49] UK Home Office "Working in the UK" Web page. Available at: http://www.workingintheuk.gov.uk/working_in_the_uk/en/homepage/schemes_and_programmes/graduate_students.html

[50] The scheme was highlighted in Sir Gareth Roberts' review, "The Supply of People with Science, Technology, Engineering and Mathematics Skills" (see http://www.kent.ac.uk/stms/research-gc/roberts-transferable-skills/roberts-recommendations.doc) that the UK was suffering from a shortage of engineering, mathematics and physical science students at university and skilled workers in the labor market. This shortage could do serious damage to the UK's future economical growth. There is currently a reported shortage in sectors such as research and development and financial services for mathematics, science, and engineering specialists.

This paper summarizes findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. Statements in this paper should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

# Achieving Balance and Adequacy in Federal Science and Technology Funding


**Summary**

The complementary goals of *balance* and *adequacy* in federal funding for science and technology require both diversity and cohesion in the nation's R&D system. Diversity fosters creativity, creates competition among people and ideas, brings new perspectives to problems, and fosters linkages among sectors. Cohesion helps ensure that basic research is not squeezed out by more immediate needs and that the highest quality research is supported.

Federal actions that could improve the balance of federal science and technology (FS&T) funding include the following:

- Create a process in Congress that examines the entire FS&T budget before the total federal budget is aggregated into allocations to appropriations committees and subcommittees.
- Establish a stronger coordinating and budgeting role for the Office of Science and Technology Policy to promote cohesion among federal R&D agencies.
- Maintain the diversity of FS&T funding in terms of sources of funding, performers, time horizons, and motivations.
- Balance funding between basic and applied research and across fields of research to stimulate innovative cross-disciplinary thinking.
- Protect funding for high-risk research by setting aside a portion of the R&D budgets of federal agencies for this purpose.
- Maintain a favorable economic and regulatory environment for capitalizing on research—for example, by using tax incentives to build stronger partnerships among academe, industry, and government.
- Encourage industry to boost its support of research conducted in colleges and universities from 7% to 20% of total academic research over the next 10 years.

Two important goals can help policymakers judge the adequacy of federal funding for FS&T. First, the United States should be among the world leaders in all major areas of science. Second, the United States should maintain clear leadership in some areas of science. The recent doubling of the budget of the National Institutes of Health—and other recent increases in R&D funding—acknowledge the tremendous

opportunities and national needs that can be addressed through science and technology. Similar opportunities exist in the physical sciences, engineering, mathematics, computer science, environmental science, and the social and behavioral sciences—fields in which federal funding has been essentially flat for the last 15 years.

Among the steps that the federal government could take to ensure that funding for science and technology is adequate across fields are these:

- Increase the budget for mathematics, the physical sciences, and engineering research by 12% a year for the next 7 years within the research accounts of the Department of Energy, the National Science Foundation, the National Institute for Standards and Technology, and the Department of Defense.
- Return federal R&D funding to at least 1% of US gross domestic product.
- Make the R&D tax credit permanent to promote private support for research and development, as requested by the Administration in the FY 2006 budget proposal.

Support for a new interdisciplinary field of quantitative science and technology policy studies could shed light on the complex effects that scientific and technologic advances have on economic activities and social change.

**A Century of Science and Technology**

In 1945, in his report *Science—The Endless Frontier*, Vannevar Bush proposed an idea that struck many people as far-fetched.[1] He wrote that the federal government should fund the research of scientists without knowing exactly what results the research would yield– an idea that flatly contravened the US government's historical practice.[2]

Despite the misgivings of many policymakers, the US government eventually adopted Bush's idea. The resulting expansion of scientific and technological knowledge helped produce a half-century of unprecedented technologic progress and economic growth. New technologies based on increased scientific understanding have enhanced our security, created new industries, advanced the fight against disease, and produced new insights into ourselves and our relationship with the world. If the 20th century was America's century, it also was the century of science and technology.

Since 1950, the federal government's annual support for research and development (R&D) has grown from less than $3 billion to more than $130 billion—more than a 10-fold expansion in real terms.[3] Today, about 1 in every 7 dollars in the federal discretionary budget goes for R&D. Performers of federal R&D include hundreds of colleges and universities and many thousands of private companies, federal laboratories, and other nonprofit institutions and laboratories. These institutions produce not only new knowledge but also the new generations of scientists and engineers who are

[1] Office of Scientific Research and Development, *Science –The Endless Frontier*, Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office, 1945.
[2] A. Hunter Dupree, *Science in the Federal Government: A History of Policies and Activities*, 2nd ed., Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1986.
[3] National Science Foundation, National Science Board, *Science and Engineering Indicators 2000*, Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2000.

responsible for a substantial portion of the innovation that drives changes in our economy and society.

Major priorities within the federal R&D budget have shifted from the space race in the 1960s to energy independence in the 1970s to the defense buildup of the 1980s to biomedical research in the 1990s. In the 1990s, the nation's R&D system also began to encounter challenges that it had not faced before. The end of the Cold War, an acceleration of economic globalization, the rapid growth of information technologies, new ways of conducting research, and very tight federal budgets led to thorough re-evaluations of the goals of federal R&D. Though Vannevar Bush's vision remains intact, the R&D system today is much more complex, diversified, and integrated into society than would have been imagined 60 years ago.

In this decade, the challenges to the R&D system have intensified. International competitors are now targeting service sectors, including R&D, just as they have targeted manufacturing sectors in the past. Global development and internationalization, new trade agreements, and the rapid flow of capital are reshaping industries so quickly that policymakers barely have time to respond. Similarly, workplace technologies and demands change so quickly that workers must be periodically retrained to remain competitive. Throughout modern economies, advantages accrue to individuals, governments, and companies that are adaptable, forward-looking, knowledgeable, and innovative.

At the beginning of the 21st century, the United States stands at a crossroads. The only way for this nation to remain a high-wage, high-technology country is to remain at the forefront of innovation. Achieving this goal will require that the nation remain a leader in the scientific and technological research that contributes so heavily to innovation.

**Achieving Balance in Federal Science and Technology Funding**

Federal funding for science and technology in the United States historically has been balanced along several dimensions—between research and development, between defense and nondefense R&D, between academic and nonacademic R&D performers, and so on. Much of this balance arises in a de facto manner from the independent actions of a wide range of array supporters and performers. But some is the consequence of explicit policy decisions by the executive and legislative branches.

In the 1995 report *Allocating Federal Funds for Science and Technology*, a committee of the National Research Council laid out five broad principles designed in part to help the federal government achieve the proper balance of R&D funding:[4]

- Make the allocation process more coherent, systematic, and comprehensive.
- Determine total federal spending for federal science and technology based on a clear commitment to ensuring US leadership.
- Allocate funds to the best projects and people.
- Ensure that sound scientific and technical advice guides allocation decisions.

[4] National Research Council, Committee on Criteria for Federal Support of Research and Development, *Allocating Federal Funds for Science and Technology*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1995.

- Improve federal management of R&D activities.

The report recommended that

- The President present an annual comprehensive FS&T budget, including areas of increased and reduced emphasis. The budget should be sufficient to serve national priorities and foster a world-class scientific and technical enterprise.
- Departments and agencies make FS&T allocations based on clearly articulated criteria that are congruent with those used by the Executive Office of the President and by Congress.
- Congress create a process that examines the entire FS&T budget before the total federal budget is disaggregated into allocations to appropriations committees and subcommittees.
- The President and Congress ensure that the FS&T budget is sufficient to allow the United States to achieve pre eminence in a select number of fields and perform at a world-class level in other major fields.

The Executive Branch responded by providing, as part of the President's budget submission, an analysis of the FS&T budget that encompasses federal funds spent specifically on scientific and technological research programs, the development and maintenance of the necessary research infrastructure, and the education and training of scientists and engineers. In addition, the White House Office of Management and Budget (OMB) and Office of Science and Technology Policy (OSTP) issue a joint budget memorandum that articulates the President's goals for the upcoming budget year to aid them in the preparation of agency budgets before submission to OMB.

Analysis of this budget reveals trends in the support of scientific and technologic research that the broader category of R&D obscures. For example, in the president's FY 2006 budget request, federal R&D would be up 1% from $131.5 billion to $132.3 billion. But FS&T would be down 1%, from $61.7 billion to $60.8 billion (see Figures R&D-1 and R&D-2).[5] (The director of OSTP has pointed out that it can be misleading to compare proposed budgets with enacted budgets because the latter can contain funds specified by Congress for research projects that were not included in the President's budget.[6])

Congress has not yet adopted a process that entails an overall consideration of the scientific and technological research supported by the federal government.[7] Subcommittees in both the House and Senate still consider portions of the federal R&D budget separately without deliberations or hearings on the broad objectives of S&T spending. At a minimum, the use of a common budget classification code could allow Congress more easily to address science and technology programs in a unified manner.

---

[5] Office of Management and Budget, *Budget of the United States Government, Fiscal Year 2006*, Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office, 2005.
[6] John Marburger, speech to the 20th Annual AAAS Forum on Science and Technology Policy, April 21, 2005.
[7] Jeff Bingaman, Robert M. Simon, and Adam L. Rosenberg, "Needed: A Revitalized National S&T Policy", *Issues in Science and Technology*, Spring 2004, pp. 21-25.

Overall consideration of the FS&T budget could reiterate the importance of basic research and of diversity among research supporters and performers. Especially when budgets are tight, basic research can be displaced by the more immediate needs of applied research and technology development. In fact, less than half of all federal R&D funding is allocated for basic and applied research (see Figure R&D-3). The FS&T budget has increased since 2000, but these increases are primarily due to increases in funding of the National Institutes of Health (NIH). Non-defense related R&D funding has been stagnant in recent years (see Figure R&D-4). Recently, the FS&T budget has been declining since the charge to double NIH funding has been completed (see Figure R&D-5). Recent Department of Defense (DOD) budgets offer another example—ever the last decade, the resources provided for basic research by the DOD have declined substantially.[8] Recent trends show that while defense R&D budgets have been increasing overall, the amount of resources allocated to science research in DOD is decreasing (see Figure R&D-6). This lack of support for basic research could have major consequences for the development of necessary future military capabilities.

*Allocating Federal Funds for Science and Technology* also recommended that:

- R&D conducted in federal laboratories focus on the objectives of the sponsoring agency and not expand beyond the assigned missions of the laboratories. The size and activities of each laboratory should correspond to changes in mission requirements.
- FS&T funding generally favor academic institutions because of their flexibility and inherent quality control and because they link research to education and training in science and engineering.
- FS&T budget decisions give preference to funding projects and people rather than institutions. That approach will increase the flexibility in responding to new opportunities and changing conditions.
- Competitive merit review, especially that involving external reviewers, be the preferred way to make awards, because competition for funding is vital to maintain the high quality of FS&T programs.
- Evaluations of R&D programs and of those performing and sponsoring the work also incorporate the views of outside evaluators.
- R&D be well managed and accountable but not micromanaged or hobbled by rules and regulations that have little social benefit.

Diversity cannot be an excuse for mediocrity. People, projects, and institutions need to be reviewed to ensure that they are meeting national needs in science and technology. Open competition involving evaluation of merit by peers is the best-known mechanism to maintain support for the highest-quality projects and people. Quality also can be maintained by knowledgeable program managers who have established external scientific and technical advisory groups to help assess quality and to help monitor whether agency needs are being met.

---

[8] National Research Council, Committee on Department of Defense Basic Research, *Assessment of Department of Defense Basic Research*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2005.

Possible actions for the federal government to maintain the diversity and balance of federal funding for science and technology include the following:

- Create a process in Congress that examines the entire FS&T budget before the total federal budget is aggregated into allocations to appropriations committees and subcommittees.[9]
- Establish a stronger coordinating and budgeting role for the OSTP to promote cohesion among federal R&D agencies.[10]
- Maintain the diversity of FS&T funding in terms of sources of funding, performers, time horizons, and motivations.[11]
- Balance funding between basic and applied research and across fields of research to stimulate innovative cross-disciplinary thinking.[12]
- Protect funding for high-risk research by setting aside a portion of the R&D budgets of federal agencies for this purpose.[13]
- Maintain a favorable economic and regulatory environment for capitalizing on research—for example, by using tax incentives to build stronger partnerships among academe, industry, and government.[14]
- Encourage industry to boost its support of research conducted in colleges and universities from 7% to 20% of total academic research over the next 10 years.[15]

**Achieving Adequacy in Federal Science and Technology Funding**

Given the importance of maintaining balance and diversity in the FS&T budget, the next logical question is, What is the appropriate magnitude of federal support for science and technology?

In 1993, the Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy of the National Academy of Sciences, the National Academy of Engineering, and the Institute

---

[9] Committee on Criteria for Federal Support of Research and Development, 1995.
[10] National Research Council, Board on Science, Technology, and Economic Policy, *Trends in Federal Support of Research and Graduate Education*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2001.
[11] National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, Institute of Medicine, Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, *Capitalizing on Investments in Science and Technology*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999.
[12] National Academy of Engineering, Committee on the Impact of Academic Research on Industrial Performance, *The Impact of Academic Research on Industrial Performance*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2003.
[13] Council on Competitiveness, *Innovate America: National Innovation Initiative and Report*, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004
[14] National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, Institute of Medicine, Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, *Capitalizing on Investments in Science and Technology*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999.
[15] National Research Council, Office of Special Projects, *Harnessing Science and Technology for America's Economic Future: National and Regional Priorities*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999.

of Medicine established two broad goals to guide federal investments in science and technology:[16]

- The United States should be among the world leaders in all major areas of science. Achieving this goal would allow this nation quickly to apply and extend advances in science wherever they occur.
- The United States should maintain clear leadership in some areas of science. The decision to select a field for leadership would be based on national objectives and other criteria external to the field of research.

These goals provide a way of assessing the adequacy of federal funding for science and technology. Being world class across fields requires that the United States have the funding, infrastructure, and human resources for researchers to work at the frontiers of research. Pre eminence in fields relevant to national priorities requires that policymakers choose specific areas in which to invest additional resources.

An important way of measuring leadership and pre eminence in fields and subfields of research is benchmarking of US research efforts against those in other countries. Experiments with benchmarking have demonstrated that data can be gathered fairly readily for analysis.[17] Benchmarking analyses then can be converted into funding guidance that takes into account the activities of other research performers (including industry and other countries) and the inherent uncertainties of research.

Responding to abundant opportunities and national priorities in science and technology, the federal government has increased R&D funding substantially in recent years. From 1990 to 2002, inflation-adjusted investment by the federal government in academic research went up 66%.[18] Increases in total R&D have been especially dramatic in the last few years because of increases for defense weapons development, the creation of homeland-security R&D programs, and the effort to double the budget of NIH.

However, as a percentage of GDP, R&D has fallen from 1.25% in 1985 to about 0.75% today, and a continuation of current trends will extend this decline into the future (see Figure R&D-7). Compared with the European Union, the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, and Japan, US federal R&D expenditures as a share of GDP are declining (see Figure R&D-8). Sweden, Finland, Japan, and Korea all invest a larger percentage of their GDP in R&D than the United States (see Figure R&D-9). In the president's FY 2006 budget request, most R&D programs would drop in real terms, and overall expenditures for R&D would fail to keep pace with inflation for the first time in more than a decade.[19] Funding for all three multiagency R&D initiatives—

---

[16] National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, and Institute of Medicine, Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, *Science, Technology, and the Federal Government: National Goals for a New Era*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1993.

[17] National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, and Institute of Medicine, Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, *Experiments in International Benchmarking of US Research Fields*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2000.

[18] National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004

[19] American Association for the Advancement of Science, *AAAS Analysis of R&D in the FY 2006 Budget*, Washington, D.C.: AAAS, 2006.

Networking and Information Technology R&D, the National Nanotechnology Initiative, and the Climate Change Science Program—would drop in FY 2006. Furthermore, with record-breaking budget deficits and new federal obligations ranging from the war in Iraq to the expansion of Medicare to pay for prescription drugs, prospects for outyear increases in R&D are dim.

The doubling of the NIH budget from 1998 to 2003 implicitly acknowledged that the rate of return on additional federal investments in science and technology is very high. Similar opportunities exist in the physical sciences, engineering, mathematics, computer science, environmental science, and the social and behavioral sciences—fields in which federal funding has been essentially flat for the last 15 years (see Figure R&D-10). Microelectronics, biotechnology, information technology, systems analysis, alternative fuels, robotics, nanotechnology, and many other research areas all have the potential to transform entire industries. Even such seemingly esoteric fields as cosmology and elementary particle physics could reveal new aspects of matter that not only could have practical implications but will inspire future generations of scientists, engineers, and mathematicians.

In addition, increases in funding of fields outside the biomedical sciences can pay dividends by complementing the tremendous advances occurring in molecular biology. Much of the recent progress in the health sciences has been underpinned by earlier achievements in mathematics, the physical sciences, and engineering. Deciphering the human genome, for example, was heavily dependent on advancements in robotics and computers. The development of modern imaging machines was made possible to a great extent by advances in engineering and mathematics.

The federal government could take several steps to ensure that funding for science and technology is adequate across fields:

- Increase the budget for mathematics, the physical sciences, and engineering research by 12% a year for the next 7 years in the research accounts of the Department of Energy, the National Science Foundation, the National Institute for Standards and Technology, and the Department of Defense.[20]
- Return federal R&D funding to at least 1% of the US GDP.[21]
- Minimize earmarks in science and technology funding because these types of research requests diminish the funding available for competitive merit-reviewed research.[22]
- Provide a tax credit to corporations that fund basic research in science and technology at our nation's universities.
- Make the R&D tax credit permanent to promote private support of R&D, as requested by the Administration in the FY 2006 budget proposal.

---

[20] Alliance for Science & Technology Research in America, "Basic Research: Investing in America's Innovation Future", a presentation for the House Republican High Tech Working Group, March 31, 2004.
[21] Council on Competitiveness, *Innovate America*, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004.
[22] Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, 2003.

**Learning More about the Effects of Research**

Innovation has become more important than capital or labor in boosting economic productivity, but the course and effects of innovation are much harder to predict and understand. New technologies can spread rapidly through a society, transforming multiple areas of economic activity and in turn triggering further innovations. The prime example is information technology, which has had a dramatic and accelerating influence on manufacturing, the provision of services, and other economic activities.

Intensive study of innovation as an engine of economic growth and social change in an extremely complex social context could provide guidance for policymakers and other leaders. For example, is the current federal support of science and technology appropriately balanced across fields? What would be the effects if federal R&D were returned to its historical high as a share of GDP?

Another important topic for research is the organization of the federal agencies that support R&D. New organizational models could be explored, performance metrics developed, and approaches tested.

Options for the federal government include the following:

- Support the development of a new interdisciplinary field of quantitative science and technology policy studies that could work to predict the effect of specific science and technology projects on the world's economies and workforces.[23]
- Support research to examine the organization models of R&D agencies and potential changes in practices and structures.

[23] Marburger, 2005.

**Achieving Balance and Adequacy**
**in Federal Science and Technology Funding**
**Appendix 1**
**Figures and Tables**

**Figure R&D-1: Funds for Basic Research Are Declining at Most Federal Research Agencies.**

**Figure R&D-2: Funds for Applied Research, as Well as for Facilities and Equipment, Are Declining at Most Federal Research Agencies.**

**Figure R&D-3: Less Than Half All Federal Research and Development Funding Is Allocated for Science and Research.**

**Figure R&D-4: Nondefense-Related R&D Funding Has Been Stagnant in Recent Years.**

**Figure R&D-5: The Federal Science And Technology (FS&T) Budget Has Increased Since 2000, but These Increases Are Due Primarily to Increases in NIH. The FS&T Budget Is Declining Since NIH Budget Doubling Has Ceased.**

**Figure R&D-6: Recent Trends in Funding Have Shown That While Defense R&D Budgets Have Been Increasing Overall, the Amount of Resources Allocated to Science Research in the Department of Defense Is Decreasing.**

**Figure R&D-7: Federal R&D Funding as a Share of GDP Has Been Declining, while Industry Funding Has Recently Begun to Decrease.**

**Figure R&D-8: Compared with the European Union, the OECD, and Japan, US R&D Expenditures as a Share of GDP Are Declining.**

**Figure R&D-9: Sweden, Finland, Japan, and Korea Are Investing a Larger Percentage of Their GDP in R&D than the United States.**

**Figure R&D-10: Recent Federal Research Funding for All Fields Is Stagnant. Although Funding for the Life Sciences Increased Greatly in the Past, for Many Fields the Level of Funding Has Remained Roughly the Same, in Constant Dollars, for 30 Years.**

**Figure R&D-1: Funds for Basic Research are Declining at Most Federal Research Agencies.**

**Table 5–2. FEDERAL RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT SPENDING**

(Budget authority, dollar amounts in millions)

| | 2004 Actual | 2005 Estimate | 2006 Proposed | Dollar Change: 2005 to 2006 | Percent Change: 2005 to 2006 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **By Agency** | | | | | |
| Defense | 65,462 | 70,422 | 70,839 | 417 | 1% |
| Health and Human Services | 28,047 | 28,752 | 28,807 | 55 | ..... |
| NASA | 10,574 | 10,990 | 11,527 | 537 | 5% |
| Energy | 8,779 | 8,629 | 8,528 | –101 | –1% |
| National Science Foundation | 4,160 | 4,082 | 4,194 | 112 | 3% |
| Agriculture | 2,222 | 2,415 | 2,039 | –376 | –16% |
| Homeland Security | 1,053 | 1,185 | 1,467 | 282 | 24% |
| Commerce | 1,137 | 1,134 | 1,013 | –121 | –11% |
| Transportation | 661 | 748 | 808 | 60 | 8% |
| Veterans Affairs | 866 | 784 | 786 | 2 | ..... |
| Interior | 627 | 615 | 582 | –33 | –5% |
| Environmental Protection Agency | 661 | 572 | 569 | –3 | –1% |
| Other | 1,089 | 1,243 | 1,145 | –98 | –8% |
| **Total** | **125,338** | **131,571** | **132,304** | **733** | **1%** |
| **Basic Research** | | | | | |
| Defense | 1,358 | 1,513 | 1,319 | –194 | –13% |
| Health and Human Services | 14,780 | 15,124 | 15,246 | 122 | 1% |
| NASA | 2,473 | 2,368 | 2,199 | –169 | –7% |
| Energy | 2,847 | 2,887 | 2,762 | –125 | –4% |
| National Science Foundation | 3,524 | 3,432 | 3,480 | 48 | 1% |
| Agriculture | 829 | 851 | 788 | –63 | –7% |
| Homeland Security | 68 | 85 | 112 | 27 | 32% |
| Commerce | 43 | 58 | 71 | 13 | 22% |
| Transportation | 20 | 38 | 41 | 3 | 8% |
| Veterans Affairs | 347 | 315 | 315 | ..... | ..... |
| Interior | 37 | 36 | 30 | –6 | –17% |
| Environmental Protection Agency | 113 | 66 | 70 | 4 | 6% |
| Other | 149 | 155 | 175 | 20 | 13% |
| **Subtotal** | **26,588** | **26,928** | **26,608** | **–320** | **–1%** |

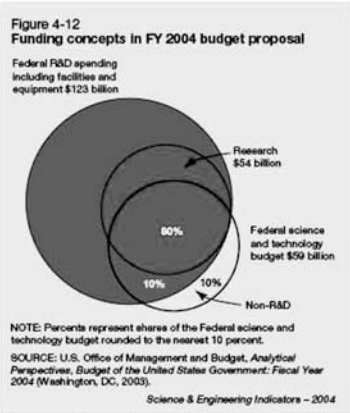
SOURCE: Executive Office of the President. 2005. Budget of the United States Government, Fiscal Year 2006, Part Two: Analytical Perspectives. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office. pp. 66-67. (http://www.gpoaccess.gov/usbudget/fy06/browse.html)

**Figure R&D-2: Funds for Applied Research, as Well as for Facilities and Equipment, Are Declining at Most Federal Research Agencies.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Applied Research** | | | | | |
| Defense | 4,351 | 4,851 | 4,139 | –712 | –15% |
| Health and Human Services | 13,007 | 13,274 | 13,410 | 136 | 1% |
| NASA | 3,006 | 2,497 | 3,233 | 736 | 29% |
| Energy | 2,693 | 2,760 | 2,709 | –51 | –2% |
| National Science Foundation | 266 | 279 | 276 | –3 | –1% |
| Agriculture | 1,055 | 1,093 | 942 | –151 | –14% |
| Homeland Security | 247 | 346 | 399 | 53 | 15% |
| Commerce | 828 | 825 | 763 | –62 | –8% |
| Transportation | 349 | 423 | 494 | 71 | 17% |
| Veterans Affairs | 476 | 430 | 433 | 3 | 1% |
| Interior | 538 | 530 | 495 | –35 | –7% |
| Environmental Protection Agency | 423 | 365 | 386 | 21 | 6% |
| Other | 599 | 562 | 553 | –9 | –2% |
| **Subtotal** | **27,838** | **28,235** | **28,232** | **–3** | ..... |
| **Development** | | | | | |
| Defense | 59,701 | 63,903 | 65,331 | 1,428 | 2% |
| Health and Human Services | 41 | 54 | 28 | –26 | –48% |
| NASA | 3,189 | 3,727 | 3,511 | –216 | –6% |
| Energy | 1,992 | 1,846 | 1,959 | 113 | 6% |
| National Science Foundation | ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| Agriculture | 159 | 157 | 146 | –11 | –7% |
| Homeland Security | 481 | 599 | 746 | 147 | 25% |
| Commerce | 152 | 149 | 90 | –59 | –40% |
| Transportation | 279 | 269 | 254 | –15 | –6% |
| Veterans Affairs | 43 | 39 | 38 | –1 | –3% |
| Interior | 49 | 46 | 54 | 8 | 17% |
| Environmental Protection Agency | 125 | 141 | 113 | –28 | –20% |
| Other | 324 | 495 | 396 | –99 | –20% |
| **Subtotal** | **66,535** | **71,425** | **72,666** | **1,241** | **2%** |
| **Facilities and Equipment** | | | | | |
| Defense | 52 | 155 | 50 | –105 | –68% |
| Health and Human Services | 219 | 300 | 123 | –177 | –59% |
| NASA | 1,906 | 2,398 | 2,584 | 186 | 8% |
| Energy | 1,247 | 1,136 | 1,098 | –38 | –3% |
| National Science Foundation | 370 | 371 | 438 | 67 | 18% |
| Agriculture | 179 | 314 | 163 | –151 | –48% |
| Homeland Security | 257 | 155 | 210 | 55 | 35% |
| Commerce | 114 | 102 | 89 | –13 | –13% |
| Transportation | 13 | 18 | 19 | 1 | ..... |
| Veterans Affairs | ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... | N/A |
| Interior | 3 | 3 | 3 | ..... | ..... |
| Environmental Protection Agency | ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... | N/A |
| Other | 17 | 31 | 21 | –10 | –32% |
| **Subtotal** | **4,377** | **4,983** | **4,798** | **–185** | **–4%** |

SOURCE: Executive Office of the President. 2005. Budget of the United States Government, Fiscal Year 2006, Part Two: Analytical Perspectives. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office. pp. 66-67. (http://www.gpoaccess.gov/usbudget/fy06/browse.html)

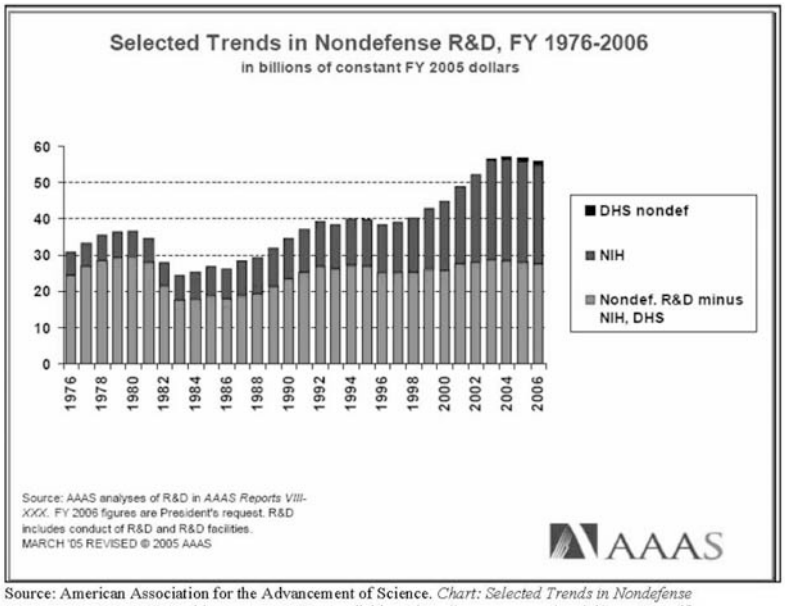
**Figure R&D-3: Less Than Half All Federal Research and Development Funding Is Allocated for Science and Research.**




An alternative method of calculating technology investment uses the federal science and technology (FS&T) budget. It encompasses the funds spent specifically on research programs, research infrastructure, education, and scientific training but excludes funds for development of technologies.

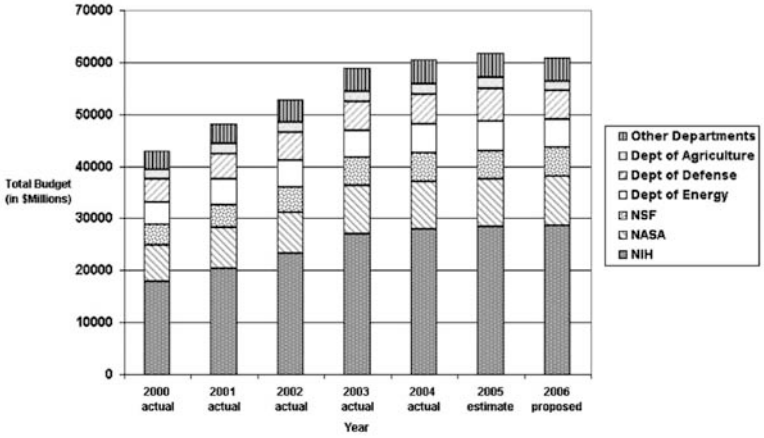
Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Figure 4-12.

**Figure R&D-4: Nondefense-Related R&D Funding Has Been Stagnant in Recent Years.**



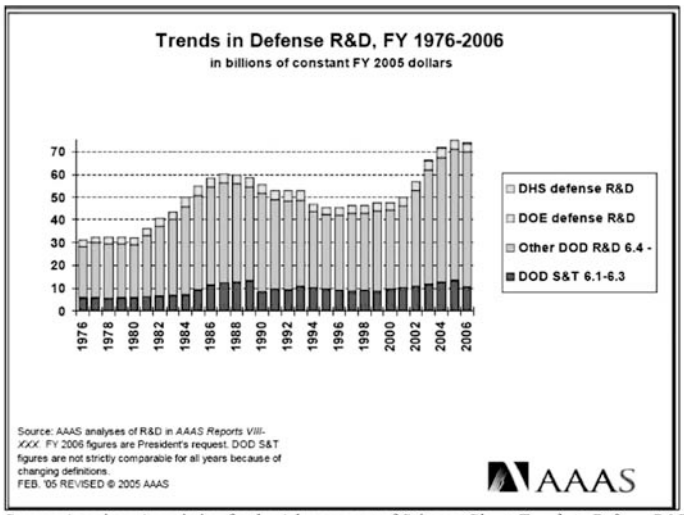

Source: American Association for the Advancement of Science. *Chart: Selected Trends in Nondefense R&D: FY 1976-2006."* Washington, DC. 2005. Available at: http://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/trnon06c.pdf

**Figure R&D-5: The Federal Science And Technology (FS&T) Budget Has Increased Since 2000, but These Increases Are Due Primarily to Increases in NIH. The FS&T Budget Is Declining Since NIH Budget Doubling Has Ceased.**

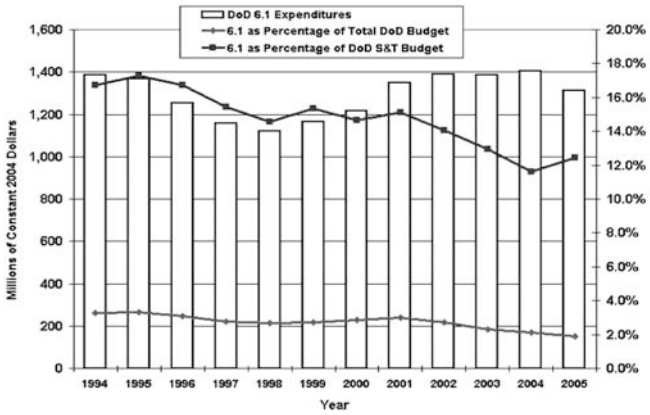



SOURCE: Executive Office of the President. 2005. Budget of the United States Government, Fiscal Year 2006, Part Two: Analytical Perspectives. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office. pp.68. (http://www.gpoaccess.gov/usbudget/fy06/browse.html)

**Figure R&D-6: Recent Trends in Funding Have Shown That While Defense R&D Budgets Have Been Increasing Overall, the Amount of Resources Allocated to Science Research in the Department of Defense Is Decreasing.**

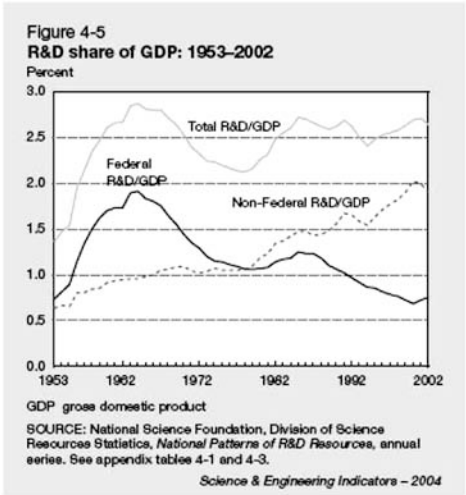


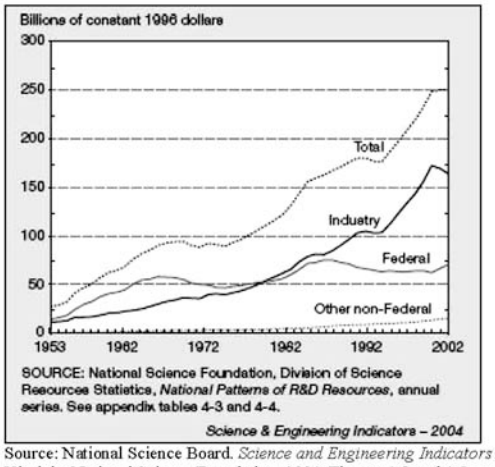

Source: American Association for the Advancement of Science. *Chart: Trends in Defense R&D: FY 1976-2006"* Washington, DC. February, 2005. Available at: http://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/trdef06c.pdf




Source: National Science Board. 2004. S&E Indicators, 2004. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.

**Figure R&D-7: Federal R&D Funding as a Share of GDP Has Been Declining, while Industry Funding Has Recently Begun to Decrease.**

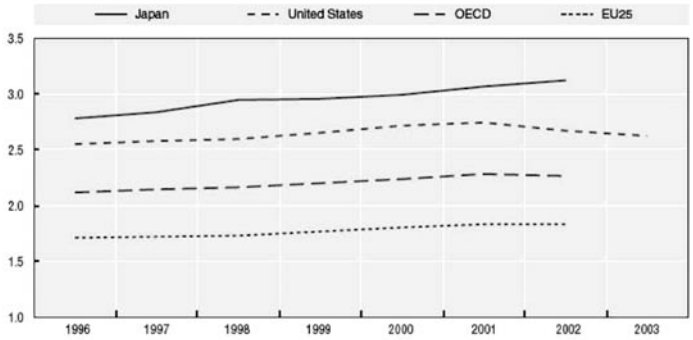



Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Figures 4-3 and 4-5.

**Figure R&D-8: Compared with the European Union, the OECD, and Japan, US R&D Expenditures as a Share of GDP Are Declining.**

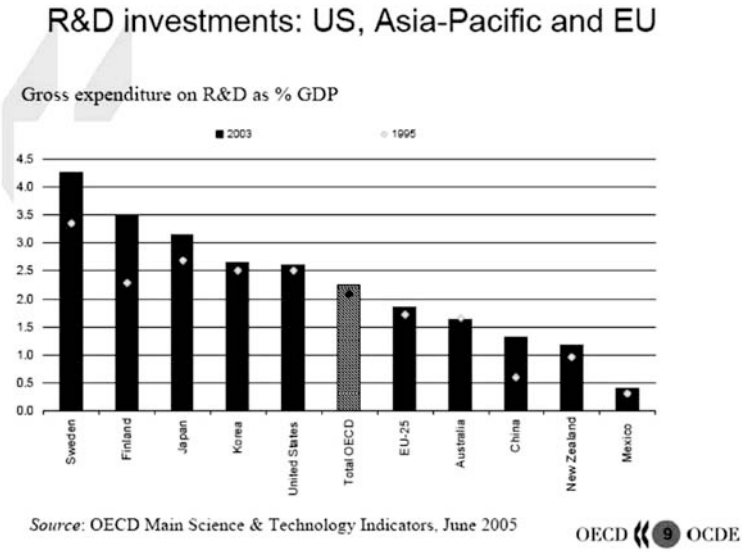
Figure 1.2. **Trends in R&D intensity, 1995-2003**
GERD as a percentage of GDP




GERD = Gross domestic expenditure on R&D.
*Source:* OECD, MSTI database, June 2004.

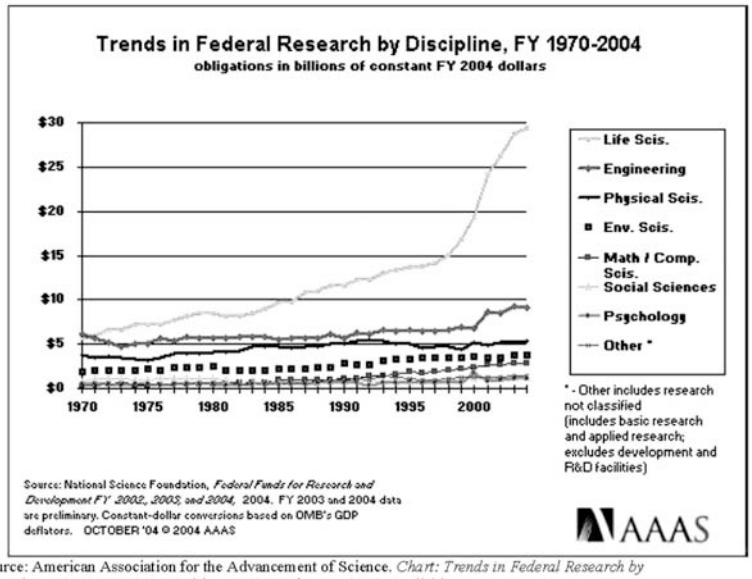
© OECD 2004
Source: Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development. *Main Science and Technology Indicators 2004.* Paris, France: OECD. June 2004.

**Figure R&D-9: Sweden, Finland, Japan, and Korea Are Investing a Larger Percentage of Their GDP in R&D than the United States.**




Source: Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development. *Main Science and Technology Indicators, 2005*. Paris, France: OECD. June 2005. Available at: http://www.oecd.org/document/26/0,2340,en_2649_34451_1901082_1_1_1_1,00.html

**Figure R&D-10: Recent Federal Research Funding for All Fields Is Stagnant. Although Funding for the Life Sciences Increased Greatly in the Past, for Many Fields the Level of Funding Has Remained Roughly the Same, in Constant Dollars, for 30 Years.**




Source: American Association for the Advancement of Science. *Chart: Trends in Federal Research by Discipline: FY 1970-2004"* Washington, DC. February, 2005. Available at: http://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/discip04.pdf

This paper summarizes findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. Statements in this paper should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

# The Productivity of Scientific and Technological Research


**Summary**

Innovation—the process of converting inventions, ideas, or concepts into commercial products or processes—has always been a convoluted process, but today it is becoming even more difficult to understand and predict. Seemingly minor developments can have major consequences, producing a nonlinearity that defies forecasting. Developments in one field can heavily influence other fields, creating multidisciplinary networks of cause and effect. New ideas can come from anywhere in the production process, not just from the basic research that traditionally has been seen as the driver of innovation. In such a fluid, interconnected system, policymakers need to create the optimal environment for innovation and then stand back and let the system do its job.

The effectiveness of scientific and technologic innovation depends on many factors in research organizations, including the management and review of research programs, the policies and procedures that apply to those programs, and the broader environment and culture of research. Federal options to improve this effectiveness include the following:

*The Research Environment and Culture*

- Increase the size and duration of project awards so that researchers spend more time doing research and less time ensuring that their research is supported.
- Increase the diversity of the individuals and organizations doing research.
- Fund risky projects that could dramatically advance an area of research or open new research frontiers.
- Develop a new digital cyberinfrastructure to make the best use of rapidly expanding databases and multidisciplinary collaborations.
- Expand funding for merit-reviewed, cross-disciplinary, collaborative research centers.

*Program Management and Review*

- Ensure that federal agencies include research programs in their strategic plans and that they evaluate the success of those programs in performance reports.
- Evaluate research in terms of quality, relevance, and leadership. For basic research, include assessments of the historical value of basic research in contributing to national goals.
- Evaluate how well research programs develop human resources and the quality, relevance, and leadership of the programs.
- Establish a formal process to identify and coordinate areas of research that are supported by multiple agencies, and designate a lead agency for each such field.

*Administrative Policies and Procedures*

- Develop a new framework for the development of policies, rules, regulations, and laws affecting the partnership between the federal government and the institutions that perform research.
- Raise the cap on reimbursement of indirect costs to reflect the costs to universities of conducting research.
- Expand and enhance the Federal Demonstration Project to enroll more institutions and heighten the visibility of this important initiative.

**The Research Environment and Culture**

Because innovation does not have a single obvious pathway to success, much depends on the environment and culture that make innovation possible. These factors range widely across social, administrative, and technological dimensions. The social factors include such considerations as commitment, collaboration, communication, the treatment of multiple viewpoints, workplace diversity, and the willingness to take risks. Administrative factors include salaries, benefits, workplace conditions, the availability of sabbaticals, and travel funding. Technological factors include technical support, training, access to high-speed computing and communications, information services, and so on.

Each of these environmental and cultural dimensions can itself be the subject of innovation. This is most obvious with regard to information technology. To take just one example, a Web site called InnoCentive (www.innocentive.com) now allows companies to post R&D problems online and offer scientists financial rewards for solutions.

The consequences of innovation extend into the social and administrative spheres. For example, increasing the number of women in the biomedical sciences helped focus attention on women's health issues, with corresponding increases in research in these areas. Similarly, funding researchers at different stages in their careers and at different types of institutions can expand the range of viewpoints brought to bear on a problem.

The federal initiatives that could improve the research environment and culture are unlimited. Among those suggested are the following:[1]

- Increase the size and duration of project awards so that researchers spend more time doing research and less time ensuring that their research is supported (see Figures RP-1 and RP-2).
- Increase the diversity of the individuals and organizations doing research.
- Fund risky projects that could dramatically advance an area of research or open new research frontiers.
- Develop a new digital cyberinfrastructure to make the best use of rapidly expanding databases and multidisciplinary collaborations.
- Expand funding for merit-reviewed, cross-disciplinary, collaborative research centers.
- Collect the best practices and attributes of federal agencies and research performers and disseminate this information widely.
- Develop a common electronic grant-application system that combines the best features of current systems and can be used by all researchers and all federal agencies.

**Program Management and Review**

In an era of innovation, the innovation process itself needs to be the subject of research and development. Federal policies that influence scientific and technological research and the commercialization of that research need to be continually re-examined and improved. Valuable sources of insight include international comparisons, the results of small-scale experiments, lessons from other sectors of the economy, and clear, data-based thinking.

One useful way to improve the effectiveness of research programs is by setting goals for those programs and then monitoring the ability of programs to achieve those goals. This was one of the aims of the 1993 Government Performance and Results Act (GPRA), which was designed to encourage greater efficiency, effectiveness, and accountability in federal programs and spending. The act required federal agencies to set strategic goals for at least a 5-year period and then measure their success annually in meeting those goals.

For agencies that support research activities, implementing GPRA has presented many challenges.[2] Applied-research programs, whether conducted by federal agencies or private companies, have desired outcomes that are directly related to agency or company missions. Evaluating such programs is therefore relatively straightforward. A series of milestones that should be achieved by particular times can be established, and periodic reporting can indicate progress toward those milestones.

---

[1] National Science and Technology Council, Business Models Subcommittee, "Comments from the Request for Information"

[2] National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, and Institute of Medicine, Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, *Evaluating Federal Research Programs: Research and the Government Performance and Results Act*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999.

But the usefulness of new basic research is inherently unpredictable. Though history abundantly demonstrates the tremendous value of basic research, the practical outcomes of such research can seldom be identified while the research is in progress. Furthermore, misuse of measurements for basic research could lead to strongly negative results. Measuring this research on the basis of short-term relevance, for example, could be very destructive to quality work.

For both basic and applied research, there are meaningful measures of quality, relevance to agency goals and intended users, and contributions to world leadership in the relevant fields. These measures can be regularly reported, and they represent a sound way to ensure that the country is getting a good return on its research investments. A full description of an agency's goals and results should contain an evaluation of all research activities and their relevance to an agency's mission.

Evaluating basic research requires substantial scientific or engineering knowledge. Evaluating applied research requires, in addition, the ability to recognize its potential applicability to practical problems, which typically requires input from potential users. Expert review should be used to assess both basic-research and applied-research programs. A balance must be achieved between having the most knowledgeable and the most independent individuals serve as reviewers.

Pluralism is a major strength of the US research enterprise. But better communication among agencies would enhance opportunities for collaboration, keep important questions from being overlooked, and reduce inefficient duplication of effort. Identifying a single agency to serve as the focal point for particular fields of research could bring needed cohesion to the federal research effort. In some cases, it may make sense to adopt the model used at the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), in which the desired end product or technology is defined before research begins, so that research teams can coordinate their efforts to solve the problem.

To improve the effectiveness of federal research and development programs, the federal government could:

- Ensure that federal agencies include research programs in their strategic plans and that they evaluate the success of those programs in performance reports.[3]
- Evaluate research in terms of quality, relevance, and leadership. For basic research, include assessments of the historical value of basic research in contributing to national goals.
- Evaluate how well research programs develop human resources and the quality, relevance, and leadership of the programs. If federal research activities do not continue to produce a flow of well-educated scientists and engineers, the capability of an agency to fulfill its mission will be compromised and the knowledge learned and technology developed will be lost.
- Establish a formal process to identify and coordinate areas of research that are supported by multiple agencies. A lead agency should be identified for each such field, and that agency should be responsible for ensuring that coordination occurs among the agencies.

[3] Ibid.

- Investigate and experiment with innovative ways of managing research, such as establishment of long-term research goals, very flat management structures, multidisciplinary teams, and a focus on technology transfer (these are some of the approaches that have met with considerable success at DARPA).[4]

**Administrative Policies and Practices**

The performers of research sponsored by the federal government operate under an increasing number and variety of administrative requirements. Examples include rules for human subjects, animal welfare, conflicts of interest, costing and administration, agency-specific requirements, and indirect costs. While each rule has its own history and justifications, the combination of often poorly coordinated requirements imposes a significant burden on research performers.

Two publications from the Office of Management and Budget (OMB)—Circular A-21, Cost Principles for Educational Institutions, and Circular A-110, *Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Other Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations*—form the framework for current cost and administrative regulations. Both are in need of revision. In 1999, the National Science and Technology Council (NSTC) released a report titled *Renewing the Federal Government-University Research Partnership for the 21st Century*, which laid out a set of guiding principles to provide a framework for the development of new policies, rules, regulations, and laws. These principles could be used to define acceptable standards for the conduct of research that could identify areas of deficiency and foster an appropriate balance between compliance with regulations and administrative flexibility.

A particularly contentious issue for college and university researcher performers has been the 26% cap on reimbursement of administrative costs imposed by the federal government in 1991.[5] Currently, about a quarter of federal funds spent on research at universities reimburses indirect costs. The two major components of indirect costs are for the construction, maintenance, and operation of facilities used for research and for supporting administrative expenses, such as financial management, institutional review boards, and environment, health, and safety management.

As the administrative demands on universities have increased, these institutions have had to pay for an increasing percentage of indirect costs that are not covered under the 26% cap. As a result, universities have had to shift funds to cover administrative costs from other sources, including tuition, endowments, or state appropriations. Eventually, this cost shifting will be detrimental to the health of these institutions, resulting either in less research, higher tuitions, or reduced services to students.

A more flexible and responsive relationship between federal agencies and universities could help control the administrative costs of research. In 1986, the program now known as the Federal Demonstration Partnership (FDP) was established to examine,

---

[4] Lawrence H. Dubois, "DARPA's Approach to Innovation and Its Reflection in Industry", pp. 37-48 in *Reducing the Time from Basic Research to Innovation in the Chemical Sciences: A Workshop Report to the Chemical Sciences Roundtable*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2003.

[5] Office of Science and Technology Policy, *Analysis of Facilities and Administrative Costs at Universities*, Washington, DC: Executive Office of the President, 2000.

streamline, and reduce the burdens of grant administration. The goals of the FDP are to standardize terms and conditions across federal agencies, simplify the prior-approval process, and streamline award distribution—for example, the FDP is doing a long-term study of institutional burdens related to the OMB circulars. Extending the FDP to colleges with less involvement in federal research awards would help disseminate best practices among federal agencies and institutions of higher education.

Among the actions the federal government could take to reduce the administrative burden on the performers of research are the following:

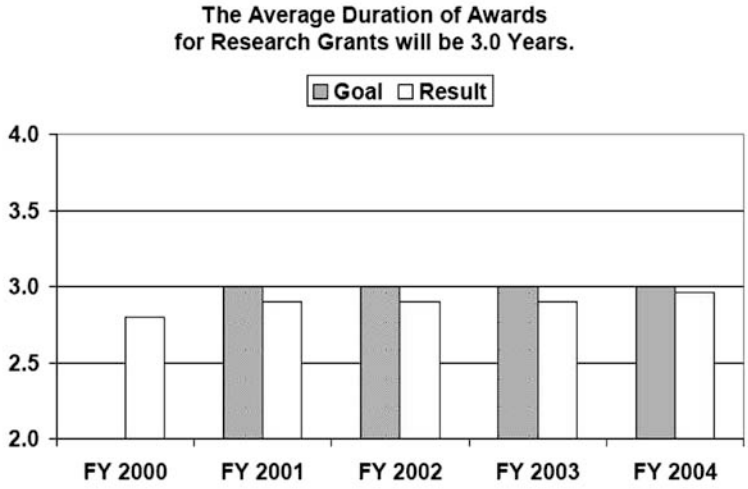
- Use the "Principles of the Federal Partnership with Universities in Research" developed by the NSTC to provide a framework for the development of new policies, rules, regulations, and laws affecting the government-university partnership.
- Raise the cap on reimbursement of indirect costs to reflect the costs to universities of conducting research.
- Expand and enhance the FDP to enroll more institutions and heighten the visibility of this important initiative.
- Streamline and align the grant-administration process across agencies to the extent that is consistent with agency needs; all agencies should use uniform terms and conditions for all research and research-related project grants.

**The Productivity of Scientific and Technological Research**
**Appendix RP 1**
**Figures and Tables**

**RP-1: The Average Length of an NSF Research Grant Has Increased Recently but Is Still Less Than 3 Years.**

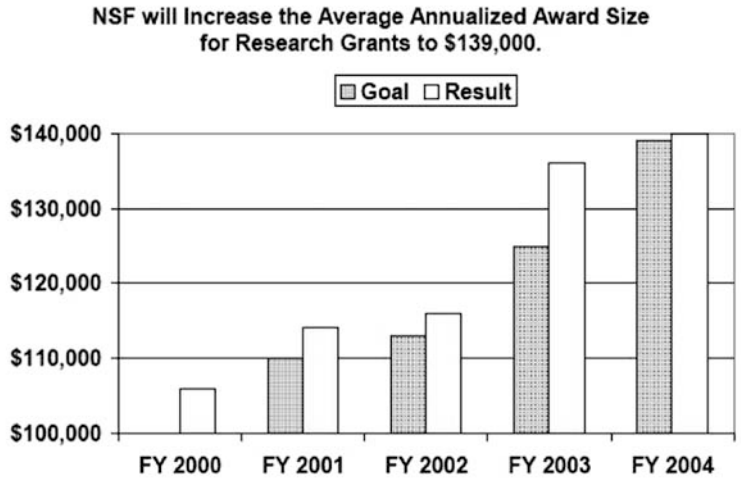
**RP-2: NSF Reached Its Average Annualized Award Size Goal for 2004, but It Is Only $140,000 per Year.**

**Figure RP-1: The Average Length of an NSF Research Grant Has Increased Recently but Is Still Less Than 3 Years.**




Source: National Science Foundation. *FY 2004 Performance and Accountability Report*. Arlington, Virginia: National Science Foundation. 2004.

**Figure RP-2: NSF Reached Its Average Annualized Award Size Goal for 2004, but It Is Only $140,000 per Year.**




Source: National Science Foundation. *FY 2004 Performance and Accountability Report*. Arlington, Virginia: National Science Foundation. 2004.

This paper summarizes findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. Statements in this paper should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

## Investing in High-Risk and Breakthrough Research

### Summary

If processes for awarding research grants are too risk-averse, innovative research projects that could lead to future breakthroughs in science and technology may never be funded. To avoid over-cautious R&D funding, recent reports and new programs have focused on three critical areas: adequate funding for basic, discovery-oriented research; independent research funding for young investigators; and funding for individuals who propose visionary research.

Among the federal actions that have been proposed to encourage high-risk research are the following:

- Reallocate 3% of all federal-agency R&D budgets toward grants that invest in novel, high-risk, and exploratory research.
- Establish a program at the National Institutes of Health (NIH) to promote the conduct of innovative research by scientists transitioning into their first independent positions.
- Within NIH, continue to explore programs, such as the Pioneer Awards, to increase funding for high-risk, high-benefit biomedical research.

### Support High-Risk Research

Besides favoring older investigators, the current peer-review system can tend to drive award decisions toward conservative research that is based on precedent and is consensus-oriented. As a result, public funding for research can gradually shift from investments in bold, transformational discovery to much more incremental research.

The Council on Competitiveness proposes in the 2004 report *Innovate America: Thriving in a World of Challenge and Change* that the nature of discovery-focused research creates a need for government support. However, federal research support since the Cold War has become more conservative, focusing on short-term, incremental, low-risk goals. Outside the government, the council believes that risk-based investments are also needed to promote innovation. Investors tend to focus on short-term profits and are unwilling to accept the risks that come with investing in a long-term research project (see Figure HRR-1).[1] The report recommends the following:

[1] Council on Competitiveness, *Innovate America: Thriving in a World of Challenge and Change*, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004.

- Reallocate 3% of all federal-agency R&D budgets toward grants that invest in novel, high-risk, and exploratory research.
- Provide a 25% tax credit for early-stage investments of at least $50,000 through qualified angel funds.[2]

In the United States, NIH has, through its Roadmap initiative, also begun to seed more innovative, high-risk research. "The past two decades have brought tremendous scientific advances that can greatly benefit medical research," the Roadmap argues. "While progress will continue into the foreseeable future, human health and well-being would benefit from accelerating the current pace of discovery. One way to achieve this goal is to support scientists of exceptional creativity who propose highly innovative approaches to major contemporary challenges in biomedical research. NIH has traditionally supported research projects, not individual investigators. However, complementary means might be necessary to identify scientists with ideas that have the potential for high impact, but that may be too novel, span too diverse a range of disciplines, or be at a stage too early to fare well in the peer review process." As part of this initiative, NIH has created the NIH Director's Pioneer Awards "to encourage creative, outside-the-box thinkers to pursue exciting and innovative ideas about biomedical research." The first Pioneer Awards were granted in 2004.[3]

To revitalize frontier research capable of providing breakthroughs, the federal government could

- Within NIH, continue to explore programs, such as the Pioneer Awards, to increase funding for high-risk, high-benefit biomedical research.

The National Science Board, at the National Science Foundation (NSF), is also discussing this issue. In 2004, an ad hoc Task Group on High-Risk Research was formed, which recommended that a formal Task Force on Transformative Research be established under the Committee on Programs and Plans. Additionally, the ad hoc Task Group noted that there is no formal definition of "high-risk" or "transformative" research, so there is no way to adequately determine how much support NSF is providing to such projects, but there are several reasons to begin doing so. The formal committee is researching these and other questions, and a report is expected within 2 years.[4]

The European Commission (EC), meanwhile, has focused part of its R&D funding on seeding high-risk research. Under its Sixth Framework Programme (FP6), the EC has established a New and Emerging Science and Technology (NEST) program at € 215 million to "support unconventional and visionary research with the potential to open new fields for European science and technology, as well as research on potential problems uncovered by science."[5]

---

[2] Council on Competitiveness, 2004.
[3] National Institutes of Health, NIH Roadmap, "High Risk Research," 2005. See http://nihroadmap.nih.gov/highrisk.
[4] National Science Board. Committee on Programs and Plans, Charge to the Task Force on Transformative Research. Available at: http://www.nsf.gov/nsb/committees/cpptrcharge.htm
[5] European Commission, Enterprise and Industry Directorate-General, "New and Emerging Science and Technology (NEST) Programme," 2005. Available at: http://www.cordis.lu/nest/home.html.

**Foster Innovation through Young Investigators**

While peer review provides a high-integrity process sheltered from political forces, evidence suggests that it tends to favor both established investigators and investigators, new or continuing, who build on established research lines.[6] As a result, young investigators have difficulty establishing themselves as independent researchers, which can have a variety of negative consequences for establishing careers, ensuring an adequate research workforce, and bringing fresh insights and ideas to the research enterprise. Indeed, recent research indicates that the age at which great innovations are produced has increased by about 6 years over the 20th century, and the loss of productivity at earlier ages is not compensated for by increased productivity after early middle age[7] (see Figure HRR-2). The risk is that competence and productivity can be honored to the point where they become the "enemies of greatness".

The current system tends to emphasize the number of papers published and can overlook whether important problems are being tackled. Because requests for grant funds from new investigators are evaluated on the basis of "preliminary results", most funded research becomes constrained to well-worn research paths, which for new investigators often means the research they previously pursued when they were postdoctoral fellows in established laboratories. In short, innovation can become the victim of a system that has become too risk-averse.

Because of the difficulties facing new investigators, the median age at which investigators receive their first research grant from NIH, for example, had crept up to 42 years in 2002. This raises the concern that new investigators are being driven to pursue more conservative research projects instead of high-risk, high-reward research that can significantly advance science. Also, young investigators can end up focusing much of their attention on others' research, forfeiting the special creativity that they may bring to their own work (see Figure HRR-3).[8]

The same considerations apply to work funded by the Department of Defense (DOD). The need for new discoveries and innovation argues for substantial involvement of university researchers. Yet some younger university researchers in the expanded fields of interest to the DOD are discouraged by difficulty in acquiring research support from the department.[9]

To address these needs, the federal government could:

- Establish a program at NIH to promote the conduct of innovative research by scientists transitioning into their first independent positions. These research grants would replace the existing collection of K22 awards and would provide sufficient funding and resources for promising scientists to initiate independent research programs and allow for increased risk-taking during the final phase of these efforts. The program should make 200 grants annually of $500,000 each, payable over 5 years. Each award would provide funding for 2 years of postdoctoral training support while the awardee develops an independent research program and 3 years of support as a fully independent researcher.[10]

---

[6] National Research Council, *Bridges to Independence: Fostering the Independence of New Investigators in Biomedical Research*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2005.
[7] Benjamin Jones. 2005. *Age and Great Innovation* (Working paper 11359). Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research. Available at http://www.nber.org/papers/w11359.
[8] National Research Council, *Bridges to Independence: Fostering the Independence of New Investigators in Biomedical Research*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2005.
[9] National Research Council, *Assessment of Department of Defense Basic Research*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2005.
[10] National Research Council, *Bridges to Independence, 2005.*

- Establish and implement uniformly across all the NIH institutes a New Investigator R01 grant. The "preliminary results" section of the application should be replaced with "previous experience" to be appropriate for new investigators and to encourage higher-risk proposals or scientists branching out into new areas. This award should include a full budget and have a 5-year term. NIH should track New Investigator R01 awardees in a uniform manner, including their success on future R01 applications.[11]

- Encourage, through DOD funding and policies for university research, participation by younger researchers as principal investigators.[12]

[11] Ibid.
[12] National Research Council, *Assessment of Department of Defense Basic Research*, 2005.

**Investing in High-Risk and Breakthrough Research**
**Appendix HRR 1**
**Figures and Tables**

**Table of Contents**

**HRR-1: There Is a Growing Gap in Available Risk Capital for Entrepreneurs to Use in Working on New Ideas and Innovations.**

**Figure HRR2A: Innovation Window Is Becoming Compressed. More People Seek Education to Keep Abreast of New Knowledge, Delaying the Onset of Productivity.**

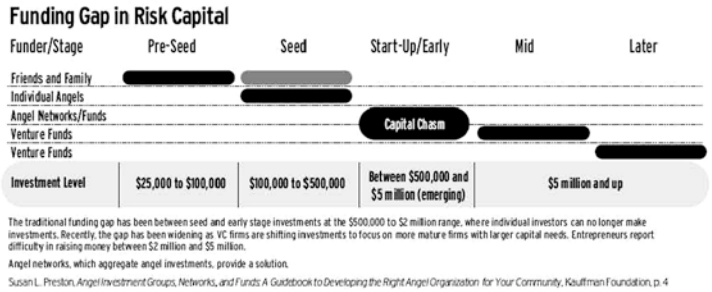
**Figure HRR2B: But Delayed Onset of Innovation Is Not Compensated for by Increased Lifetime Productivity.**

**Figure HRR-3A: Number of Young (<35 Years Old) Investigators Receiving Federal Funding Is Decreasing.**

**Figure HRR-3B: While the Success Rate for Receiving an NIH Grant Is Highest Among Young Researchers, the Number of Young Researchers Applying for NIH Grants Has Decreased Dramatically in Recent Years.**

**Figure HRR-3C: Success Rates and Proportion of Young Investigators Applying for Grants Are Higher at NSF, Which Has CAREER--A Special Grants Program for Early-Career Researchers, as Well as Specific Program Guidance and Portfolio Balance Measures.**

**Figure HRR-1: There Is a Growing Gap in Available Risk Capital for Entrepreneurs to Use in Working on New Ideas and Innovations.**




Source: Council on Competitiveness, *Innovate America: Thriving in a World of Challenge and Change.* Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004. Figure 6, p 36.

**Figure HRR2A: Innovation Window Is Becoming Compressed. More People Seek Education to Keep Abreast of New Knowledge, Delaying the Onset of Productivity.**

Figure 1: The Age Distribution of Great Innovation

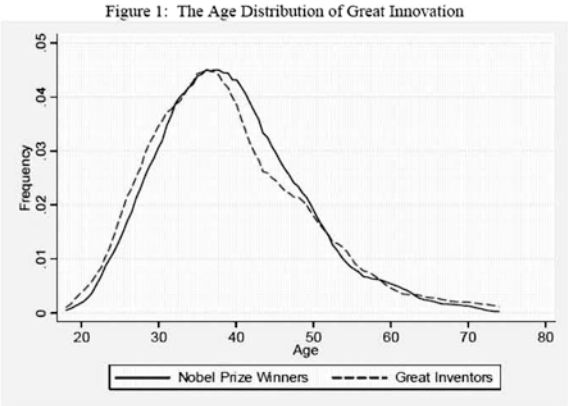
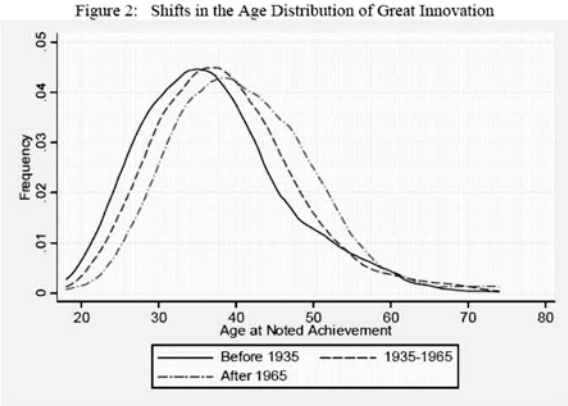


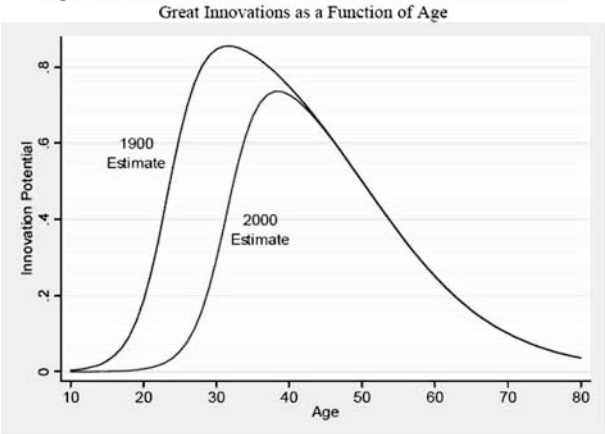

Figure 2: Shifts in the Age Distribution of Great Innovation




Source: Benjamin Jones. *Age and Great Innovation.* NBER Working paper 11359, Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research. 2005 Available at http://www.nber.org/papers/w11359.

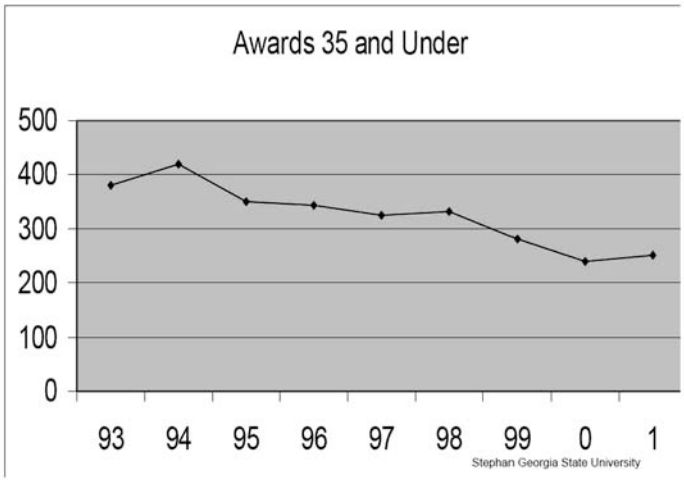
**Figure HRR2B: But Delayed Onset of Innovation Is Not Compensated for by Increased Lifetime Productivity.**

Figure 7: Maximum Likelihood Estimates for the Potential to Produce Great Innovations as a Function of Age




Source: Benjamin Jones. *Age and Great Innovation.* NBER Working paper 11359, Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research. 2005 Available at http://www.nber.org/papers/w11359.

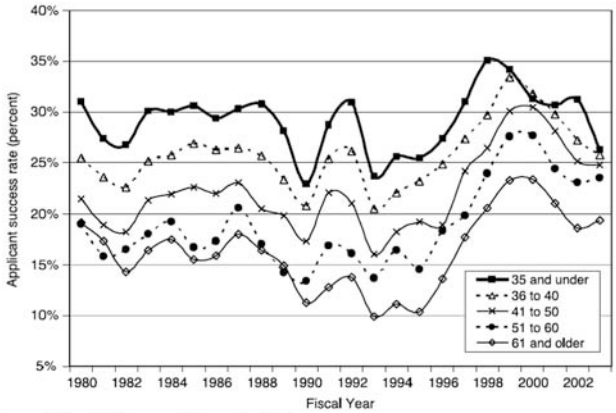
**Figure HRR-3A: Number of Young (<35 Years Old) Investigators Receiving Federal Funding Is Decreasing.**




Source: Paula Stephan. Presentation at Bridges to Independence Workshop. Board on Life Sciences, The National Academies. June 16, 2004. Available at: http://dels.nas.edu/bls/bridges/Stephan.pdf. Data are drawn from National Science Foundation's Survey of Doctorate Recipients.

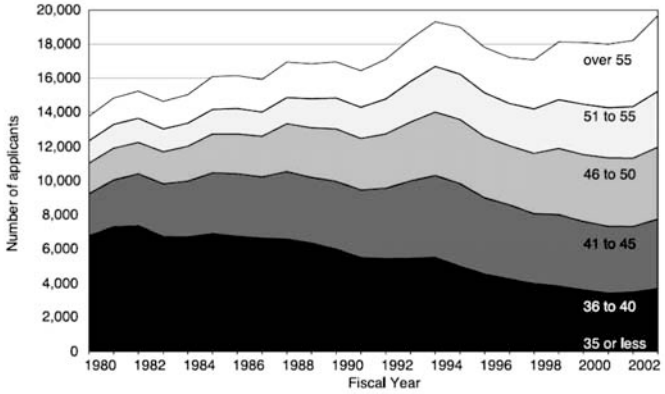
**Figure HRR-3B: While the Success Rate for Receiving an NIH Grant Is Highest Among Young Researchers, the Number of Young Researchers Applying for NIH Grants Has Decreased Dramatically in Recent Years.**

**Success rate of competing new R01 and R29 grant application by age of principal investigator.**



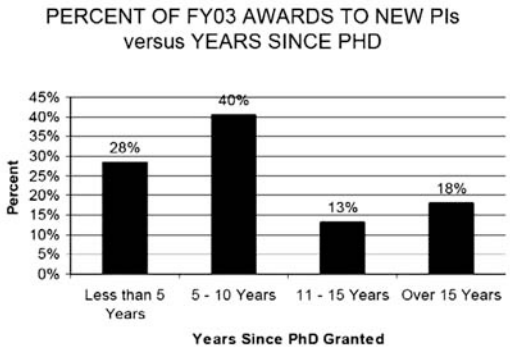

Source: Office of Extramural Research, NIH.

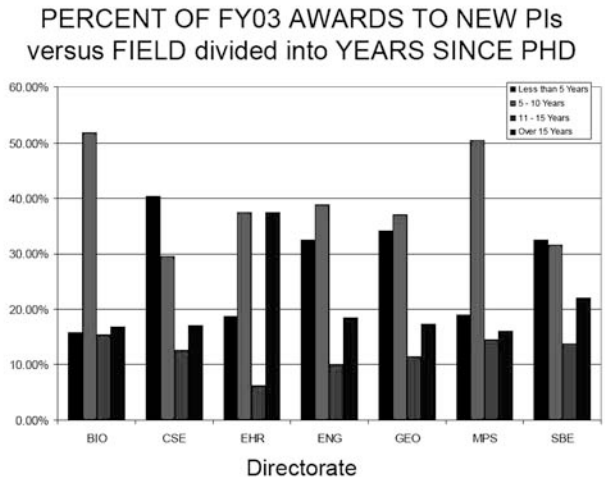
**Number of R01, R23, R29, or R37 applicants by age cohort.**




Source: National Research Council. *Bridges to Independence*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press. 2005.
Note: Data is from The National Institutes of Health, Office of Extramural Research. See: http://grants.nih.gov/grants/oer.htm

**Figure HRR-3C: Success Rates and Proportion of Young Investigators Applying for Grants Are Higher at NSF, Which Has CAREER--A Special Grants Program for Early-Career Researchers, as Well as Specific Program Guidance and Portfolio Balance Measures.**




Source: Mary Clutter. Presentation at Bridges to Independence Workshop. Board on Life Sciences, The National Academies. June 16, 2004. Available at: http://dels.nas.edu/bls/bridges/Clutter.pdf.

This paper summarizes findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. Statements in this paper should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

# Ensuring That the United States Is at the Forefront in Critical Fields of Science and Technology

## Summary

As concerns over the declining competitiveness of some US industries emerged in the 1980s, policies and programs were put into place with the goal of enabling new ideas—particularly those created through federal support—to be commercialized more quickly.

These policies and programs have taken a number of forms. They have included support for R&D partnerships among companies and between industry and government, support for R&D activities in small companies, programs to support academic research in areas of interest to industry, policies to encourage commercialization of inventions made by federal laboratories and those made by academic researchers with federal support, initiatives to coordinate federal R&D in areas of interest to several agencies, and the creation of private-sector advisory committees concerned with the future international competitiveness of particular industries.

Some of these programs have attracted controversy. For example, the Advanced Technology Program (ATP), having survived several attempts to eliminate it, was not appropriated funds for new awards in FY 2005.[1] Others have continued and expanded or have made a variety of transitions—for example, from government-supported to privately funded.

Federal actions that have been proposed include the following:

*New Policies and Initiatives*

- Create interdisciplinary discovery-innovation institutes to bring together research, education, and practice around the solution of major societal problems.
- Create a program of "Innovation Acceleration" grants to stimulate high-risk research through a set aside of 3 % of agency R&D budgets.
- Create a National Institute of Innovation to provide venture capital for innovative startups.
- Expand industry-led roadmaps for R&D priorities.

[1] See the ATP Web site's "Update for 2005", www.atp.nist.gov/atp/05comp.htm.

- Launch a large new initiative to develop the computational science base and the necessary broad infrastructure (such as networks) and domain-specific tools for research and education enabled by information technology across the various fields of science, engineering, and medicine.
- Establish centers for production excellence and Innovation Extension Centers to improve the capabilities of small and medium-sized enterprises.

*Modifications of Existing Policies and Programs*

- Make improvements to the Small Business Innovation Research program, including bridges between phase I and phase II funding, increased phase II funding relative to phase I funding, and regular assessments across agencies.
- Restore ATP funding—including the ability to support new awards—to the average level of recent years.
- Make improvements in ATP, including streamlining the application process and widening the window for funding, better integrating ATP with other programs, and focusing some funding in thematic areas.
- Have such agencies as the Securities and Exchange Commission, the Federal Communications Commission, and the Internal Revenue Service consider launching industry-university collaborative research centers to benefit the services industries.
- Re-examine and amend the Bayh-Dole Act to encourage collaboration among university licensing offices, thereby promoting economic development.

**The Federal Government as Venture Capitalist**

The Small Business Innovation Research (SBIR) and Small Business Technology Transfer (STTR) programs have sought to encourage the innovative activities of small businesses. SBIR was established in 1982 and sets aside 2.5 % of the extramural R&D budgets of the largest federal science agencies for funding R&D by small businesses; it currently runs at over $1 billion per year.[2] Table EL-1 shows the overall trend. SBIR encompasses three phases: feasibility, development, and commercialization. SBIR has been reviewed and evaluated a number of times over the course of its existence.[3] The National Research Council is currently undertaking a new assessment of the program.[4]

STTR was established in 1992 to encourage small businesses to partner with research institutions in R&D and commercialization.[5]

---

[2] National Research Council, *SBIR: Program Diversity and Assessment Challenges, Report of a Symposium*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2004.

[3] National Research Council, *SBIR: An Assessment of the Department of Defense's Fast Track Initiative*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2000. National Research Council, *SBIR: Challenges and Opportunities*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999.

[4] National Research Council, *An Assessment of the Small Business Innovation Research Program: Project Methodology*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2004.

[5] US General Accounting Office, "Contributions to and Results of the Small Business Technology Transfer Program", statement by Jim Wells (GAO-01-867T), Washington, DC: GAO, 2001.

Although there has been debate over the years about the impacts of these programs and the appropriate evaluation metrics, past assessments have been positive overall. Political support also has been very strong, with a number of technical changes having been recommended and enacted over the years.

Possible federal actions to improve and extend these programs include the following:

- Bridge the funding gap between phase I and phase II awards provided by the SBIR program.[6]
- Increase the number of phase II SBIR awards at the expense of phase I awards.[7]
- Regularly assess SBIR program results and compare with the Department of Defense (DOD) Fast Track results, and assess the costs and benefits of better integrating SBIR awards in the development of "clusters" around universities and technology parks.[8]
- Create a National Institute of Innovation that would provide venture capital for innovative startup companies to smooth the peaks and valleys of private-sector venture-capital flows.[9] A similar idea, called the Civilian Technology Corporation, was proposed by a National Academies committee some years ago.[10]

**The Advanced Technology Program and Other Consortia**

Partly as a response to Japan's success in benefiting from industrial consortia in such areas as steel and semiconductors, Congress passed the National Cooperative Research Act in 1984. This legislation limited potential antitrust liabilities in order to encourage corporate R&D consortia.

With the launch of SEMATECH in 1987, the US government moved to actual financial support for collaborative industrial R&D. SEMATECH was founded as a partnership between US semiconductor companies and the DOD. In the succeeding years, as the US semiconductor industry regained competitive strength, the federal contribution to SEMATECH was gradually reduced and then eliminated.[11] The consortium, now named International SEMATECH, includes countries based in Europe, Korea, and Taiwan in addition to those based in the United States.

ATP was established in 1988 as a program of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). ATP supports collaborative research among companies. The program has operated at a level of $150 million to $200 million per year in recent years.

---

[6] National Research Council, *The Small Business Innovation Research Program: Challenges and Opportunities,* Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999.
[7] Ibid.
[8] National Research Council, 2000.
[9] Kent Hughes, "Facing the Global Competitiveness Challenge", *Issues in Science and Technology* 21(Summer 2005).
[10] National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, Institute of Medicine, *The Government Role in Civilian Technology*, Washington, DC.: National Academy Press, 1992.
[11] National Research Council, *Securing the Future: Regional and National Programs to Support the Semiconductor Industry*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2003. See also the "History" page on the International SEMATECH web site, www.sematech.org/corporate/history.htm.

As mentioned above, the FY 2005 budget included funds to continue existing projects but no money to fund new proposals. Figure EL-2 shows how ATP funding has fluctuated over the years. ATP also supports an extensive program of evaluation and research, which has supported work at the National Academies and the National Bureau of Economic Research.[12]

Possible federal actions to derive advantage from government-industry partnerships and industrial consortia include the following:

- Create "Innovation Acceleration" grants to stimulate high-risk research.[13] These grants would be supported through a set aside of 3 % of agency R&D budgets.
- Restore the support of ATP and its ability to fund new projects to the level of recent years.
- Streamline and shorten the ATP application process and timeline.[14]
- Give applications from single companies parity with those from joint ventures or consortia.[15]
- Extend the window for ATP award applications, accelerate the decision-making process for awards, and extend the period in which awards can be made.[16]
- Retain the debriefing process for unsuccessful ATP applicants.[17]
- Concentrate a significant portion of ATP awards in selected thematic areas.[18]
- Coordinate ATP with SBIR and national initiatives.[19]
- Establish a regular outreach program within NIST to coordinate ATP awards with matching grants by states.[20]
- Pass legislation that would allow industries to form self-organizing investment boards that would raise funds through a "tax" on sales of their products in order to support R&D on common problems.[21]

**University-Based Centers**

Federally supported university-based centers constitute a category of programs that support collaborative (usually interdisciplinary) research between universities and

---

[12] See the ATP web site, www.atp.nist.gov/factsheets/1-a-1.htm.
[13] Council on Competitiveness, *Innovate America: National Innovation Initiative and Report*, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004.
[14] National Research Council, *The Advanced Technology Program: Challenges and Opportunities*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 1999.
[15] Ibid.
[16] National Research Council, *The Advanced Technology Program: Assessing Outcomes*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2001.
[17] Ibid.
[18] Ibid.
[19] Ibid.
[20] Ibid.
[21] Paul Romer, "Implementing a National Technology Strategy with Self-Organizing Industry Investment Boards," pp. 345-399 in Martin Neil Baily, Peter C. Reiss, and Clifford Winston (eds.), *Brookings Papers on Economic Activity: Microeconomics* (2), Washington, DC: Brookings Institution, 1993.

industries. These include such programs as the Engineering Research Centers (ERCs), Science and Technology Centers (STCs), and Industry-University Cooperative Research Centers (I/UCRCs) of the National Science Foundation (NSF). Other agencies, such as the Department of Transportation and the Department of Energy (DOE), also support university-based centers. These programs are generally awarded on a continuing basis with renewal reviews at fixed periods. NSF support for individual STCs phases out after 11 years, while other center programs are funded longer. Leveraged support from industry is generally required, the level of which varies by program.

The NSF efforts have the longest track record. For example, the ERCs program was established in 1985.[22] The program itself is occasionally evaluated internally and by an external contractor using surveys, bibliometric analysis, and other methods.[23] These evaluations generally show that a large percentage of industry participants derive benefits from participation, including knowledge transfer and the ability to hire students. At the time when the STCs program was being considered for renewal, a National Academies committee recommended that the program continue.[24] Figure EL-3 shows how the various NSF centers programs fit into the overall funding picture.

Options for federal action include the following:

- Establish a new, large, multiagency centers program. In a preliminary report released for public comment earlier this year, a committee of the National Academy of Engineering proposed to create a program of interdisciplinary discovery-innovation institutes on research-university campuses. The institutes would bring together research, education, and practice around the solution of major societal problems.[25] Multiagency federal support for the institutes would build to several billion dollars per year, to be supplemented by support from industry, states, and nonprofits.
- Establish centers in agencies that have not supported centers in the past. Federal mission and regulatory agencies with primary responsibility for the services industries—such as the Securities and Exchange Commission, the Internal Revenue Service, the Federal Communications Commission, and the Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS)—should consider funding academic research in ways that encourage greater participation by the services industries.[26]

---

[22] Linda Parker, *The Engineering Research Centers (ERC) Program: An Assessment of Benefits and Outcomes*, Arlington, Va.: National Science Foundation, 1997. (www.nsf.gov/pubs/1998/nsf9840/nsf9840.htm).

[23] J. David Roessner, David Cheney, and H.R. Coward, *Impact of Industry Interactions with Engineering Research Centers—Repeat Study*, SRI International, 2004.

[24] National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, Institute of Medicine, *An Assessment of the National Science Foundation's Science and Technology Centers Program*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1996.

[25] National Academy of Engineering, *Assessing the Capacity of the US Research Enterprise* (preliminary report for public comment), Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2005.

[26] National Academy of Engineering, *The Impact of Academic Research on Industrial Performance*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2003.

**Collaborative Research and Development Agreements**

Another mechanism for government-industry collaboration is a collaborative and development agreement (CRADA). The Stevenson-Wydler Technology Innovation Act of 1986 allowed federal laboratories to enter into CRADAs with private companies. The legislation has been amended several times and covers most agencies.The National Aeronautics and Space Administration has a separate authority under the 1958 Space Act and the 1989 National Space Policy.[27]

As of FY 2001, there were 3,603 active CRADAs, 80 % of which involved the DOD, DOE, or DHHS.[28]

CRADAs can range from focused collaboration on a specific technology to large programs, such as FreedomCAR, a successor to the Partnership for a New Generation of Vehicles (PNGV) CRADA between the DOE and the big three automakers.[29] PNGV was reviewed by a standing National Academies committee.[30] Although the research made impressive technological progress, only with the recent rapid rise in gasoline prices are advanced technologies for high-fuel-economy vehicles becoming a competitive factor in the marketplace.

**The Bayh-Dole Act**

The Bayh-Dole Act of 1980, which allowed universities to own and license patents of university inventions (even inventions supported by federal funds), ushered in an explosion of university patenting and licensing activity.[31] There is broad recognition that Bayh-Dole has encouraged a variety of university-industry collaborations and small-firm startups. Figures EL-4 and EL-5 show how industry support for university research and university licensing income has gone up. There has been continuing research and debate on the ultimate impacts.[32]

Calls to amend or rethink Bayh-Dole have come from several quarters in recent years. Some companies and universities have found it difficult to work out the intellectual-property aspects of collaboration.[33] There also have been cases in which

---

[27] NASA, *Space Act Manual*, Washington, DC: NASA, 1998. Available at: nodis3.gsfc.nasa.gov/1050-1.html

[28] National Science Board, Science and Engineering Indicators 2004, Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004. See summary points for Chapter 4 at www.nsf.gov/sbe/srs/seind04/c4/c4h.htm).

[29] US General Accounting Office, "Lessons Learned from Previous Research could Benefit FreedomCAR Initiative", statement of Jim Wells (GAO-02-810T), Washington, DC: GAO, 2002.

[30] National Research Council, *Review of the Research Program of the Partnership for a New Generation of Vehicles*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2001.

[31] Council on Government Relations, *The Bayh-Dole Act: A Guide to the Law and Implementing Regulations,* Washington, DC: CGR, 1999. Avialable at: www.ucop.edu/ott/bayh.html)

[32] David C. Mowery and Arvids A. Ziedonis, "Numbers, Quality and Entry: How Has the Bayh-Dole Act Affected US University Patenting and Licensing?" in Adam B. Jaffe, Josh Lerner, and Scott Stern (eds.), *Innovation Policy and the Economy, Volume 1*, Cambridge, MA.: The MIT Press, 2001.

[33] Susan Butts and Robert Killoran, "Industry-University Research in Our Times: A White Paper," 2003. Available at: http://www7.nationalacademies.org/guirr/IP_background.html)

university intellectual-property rights might have impeded the flow of a superior medical treatment to the market, to the detriment of public health.[34]

Possible options for federal action include the following:

- Evaluate and amend the Bayh-Dole Act to promote collaborations between university technology-transfer offices, local community colleges, local economic-development planning agencies, federal laboratories, select managers of venture funds, and industry leaders. This would respond to the increasing pressure on university technology-transfer specialists to become stewards of their regional economic development. Cooperative Economic Development Agreements (CEDAs) can accomplish this goal.[35]

**Commissions and Councils on Specific Industries and Technologies**

Over the years, a number of national advisory bodies have been set up to develop policy ideas and recommendations affecting specific industries. These bodies have sometimes taken on science and engineering issues as a central part of their work. The National Advisory Committee on Semiconductors, which operated in the late 1980s and early 1990s, is one example. A more recent example is the Commission on the Future of the United States Aerospace Industry.[36] A followup effort, the National Aerospace Initiative, has sought to involve the relevant agencies in the development of technology roadmaps for the industry.[37]

The President's Information Technology Advisory Committee, which was disbanded in June 2005, issued a final report recommending that federal agencies change the way they fund computational science and calling on the National Academies to lead a roadmapping effort.[38] Several years ago, an advisory committee to NSF recommended the launch of an effort to boost cyberinfrastructure for research enabled by information technology.[39]

Possible options for federal action include the following:

- Make coordinated, fundamental, structural changes that affirm the integral role of computational science in addressing the 21st century's most important problems, which are predominantly multidisciplinary, multiagency, multisector, and collaborative. To initiate the required transformation, the federal government, in partnership with academe and industry, must create and execute a multidecade

[34] Avital Bar Shalom and Robert Cook-Deegan, "Patents and Innovation in Cancer Therapeutics: Lessons from CellPro," *The Milbank Quarterly* 80(December 2002):637-76, iii-iv.
[35] Clovia Hamilton, "University Technology Transfer and Economic Development: Proposed Cooperative Economic Development Agreements Under the Bayh-Dole Act", *John Marshall Law Review*, Winter 2003.
[36] Commission on the Future of the United States Aerospace Industry, *Final Report*, Arlington, VA, 2002. Available at: www.ita.doc.gov/td/aerospace/aerospacecommission/AeroCommissionFinalReport.pdf
[37] National Research Council, *Evaluation of the National Aerospace Initiative*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2004.
[38] President's Information Technology Advisory Committee, *Computational Science: Ensuring America's Competitiveness*, Washington, DC: 2005.
[39] Blue-Ribbon Advisory Panel on Cyberinfrastructure, *Revolutionizing Science and Engineering Through Cyberinfrastructure*, Arlington, VA.: National Science Foundation, 2003.

roadmap directing coordinated advances in computational science and its applications in science and engineering disciplines.

- Commission the National Academies to convene one or more task forces to develop and maintain a multidecade roadmap for computational science and the fields that require it, with a goal of ensuring continuing US leadership in science, engineering, the social sciences, and the humanities.
- Direct the NSF to establish and lead a large-scale, interagency, and internationally coordinated Advanced Cyberinfrastructure Program to create, deploy, and apply cyberinfrastructure in ways that radically empower all scientific and engineering research and allied education. Sustained new NSF funding of $1 billion per year is required to achieve "critical mass" and to leverage the necessary coordinated coinvestment from other federal agencies, universities, industry, and international sources required to empower a revolution.[40]

**Manufacturing and Innovation Extension**

The Manufacturing Extension Partnership (MEP) program of NIST was established in 1989 and now comprises about 350 nonprofit MEP centers that collectively receive a little over $100 million annually from NIST.[41] The centers have been successful in attracting support from states, industry, and other entities.

Several recent recommendations for federal action are related to manufacturing technology and extension services:

- Establish a program of Innovation Extension Centers to enable small and medium-sized enterprises to become first-tier manufacturing partners.[42]
- Create centers for production excellence that include shared facilities and consortia.[43]

[40] Ibid.
[41] See the NIST web site, www.mep.nist.gov/about-mep/about.html.
[42] Council on Competitiveness, *Innovate America: National Innovation Initiative and Report*, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004.
[43] Ibid.

**Ensuring That the United States Is at the Forefront in Critical Fields of Science and Technology**
**Appendix**
**Figures and Tables**

**Table EL-1: Small-Business Innovation Research Award Funding, by Type of Award: FY 1983–2001. As a Fixed Percentage of Large Research-Agency Budgets, SBIR has Grown Steadily over the Years.**

**Figure EL-2: Summary of ATP Awards, by Source of Funding: 1990-2004. The ATP Program Has Been Controversial and Has Fluctuated in Size as a Result.**

**Figure EL-3: Centers as a Percentage of the NSF Research and Related Account. Centers Account for 7% of NSF's Total Budget and 9% of the Research and Related Budget.**

**EL-4: Industry Support of Science and Engineering Research at US Colleges and Universities. Industry Support Has Increased Steadily since Bayh-Dole.**

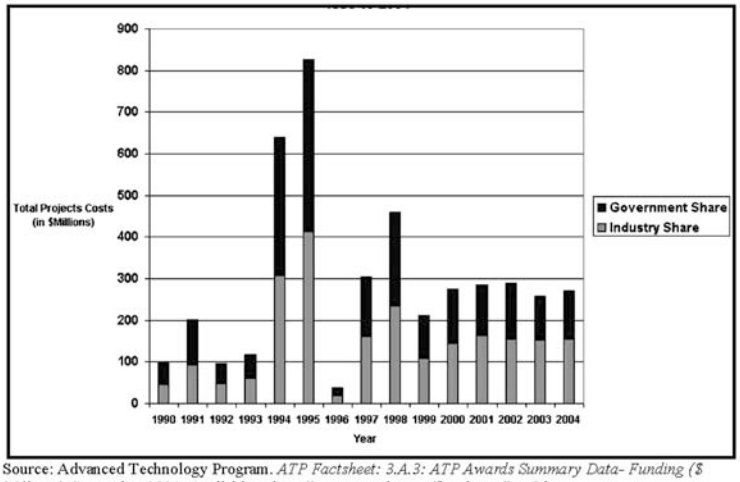
**EL-5: License Income to North American Universities and Research Institutes. Licensing Income Has Grown.**

**Figure EL-1: Small-Business Innovation Research Award Funding, by Type of Award: FY 1983–2001. As a Fixed Percentage of Large Research-Agency Budgets, SBIR has Grown Steadily over the Years.**

| | All agencies | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| FY | Total | Phase I (feasibility) | Phase II (main phase) |
| 1983 | 45 | 45 | 0 |
| 1984 | 108 | 48 | 60 |
| 1985 | 199 | 69 | 130 |
| 1986 | 298 | 99 | 199 |
| 1987 | 351 | 110 | 241 |
| 1988 | 389 | 102 | 285 |
| 1989 | 432 | 108 | 322 |
| 1990 | 461 | 118 | 342 |
| 1991 | 483 | 128 | 336 |
| 1992 | 508 | 128 | 371 |
| 1993 | 698 | 154 | 491 |
| 1994 | 718 | 220 | 474 |
| 1995 | 835 | 232 | 602 |
| 1996 | 916 | 229 | 646 |
| 1997 | 1,107 | 278 | 789 |
| 1998 | 1,067 | 262 | 804 |
| 1999 | 1,097 | 300 | 797 |
| 2000 | 1,190 | 302 | 888 |
| 2001 | 1,294 | 317 | 977 |

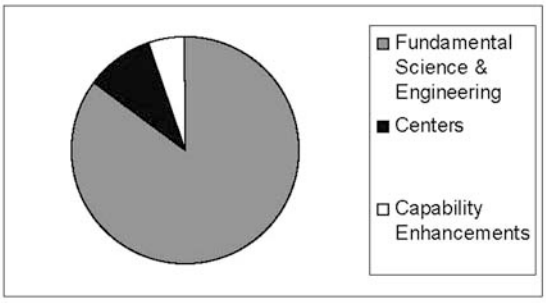
Source: National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004. Appendix Table 4-39.

**Figure EL-2: Summary of ATP Awards, by Source of Funding: 1990-2004. The ATP Program Has Been Controversial and Has Fluctuated in Size as a Result.**



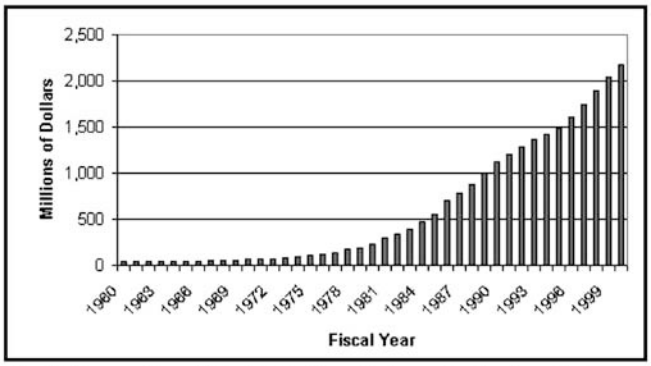

Source: Advanced Technology Program. *ATP Factsheet: 3.A.3: ATP Awards Summary Data- Funding ($ Millions)*. September 2004. Available at http://www.atp.nist.gov/factsheets/3-a-3.htm

**Figure EL-3: Centers as a Percentage of the NSF Research and Related Account.**



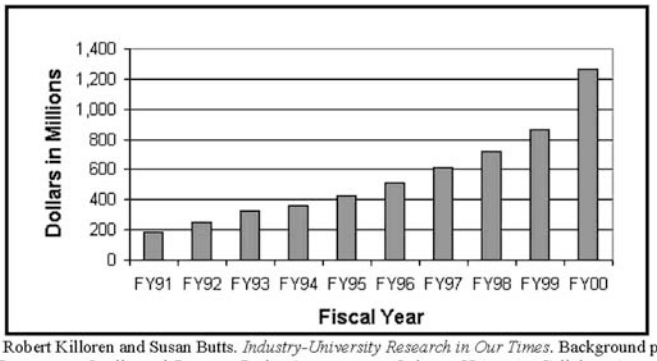

Source: National Based on data in the National Science Foundation. 2005.FY 2005 Performance and Accountability Report. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.

**Figure EL-4: Industry Support of Science and Engineering Research at US Colleges and Universities. Industry Support Has Increased Steadily since Bayh-Dole.**




Source: Robert Killoren and Susan Butts. *Industry-University Research in Our Times*. Background paper for *Re-Engineering Intellectual Property Rights Agreements in Industry-University Collaborations*. Government-University-Industry Research Roundtable, National Academies. June 26, 2003. Available at: http://www7.nationalacademies.org/guirr/IP_background.html

**Figure EL-5: License Income to North American Universities and Research Institutes. Licensing Income Has Grown.**




Source: Robert Killoren and Susan Butts. *Industry-University Research in Our Times*. Background paper for *Re-Engineering Intellectual Property Rights Agreements in Industry-University Collaborations*. Government-University-Industry Research Roundtable, National Academies. June 26, 2003. Available at: http://www7.nationalacademies.org/guirr/IP_background.html

This paper summarizes findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. Statements in this paper should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

# Understanding Trends in Science and Technology Critical to US Prosperity


**Summary**

Sound policies rest on a solid foundation of information and analysis. The collection and analysis of data have become key components of the innovation system.

During the late 1980s and early 1990s, policy-makers expressed a growing interest in assessments and international comparisons of critical technologies. This interest was prompted by the rapid (and unexpected) emergence during the 1980s of Japanese companies in high-technology fields, such as microelectronics, robotics, and advanced materials. Policy-makers proposed that regular efforts to identify the technologies likely to underlie future economic growth and to assess the relative international standing of the United States in those technologies would yield information useful for making investment decisions.

Today, a number of government and private groups undertake a variety of technology assessments that enhance our understanding of America's relative standing in specific science and engineering fields. More detailed and innovative measures could provide important additional information on the status and effects of scientific and technological research.

Recommendations for federal actions in these areas include the following:

*International Benchmarking of US Research Fields*

- Establish a system to conduct regular international benchmarking assessments of US research to provide information on the world leadership status of key of fields and subfields of scientific and technologic research.

*Critical Technologies*

- Establish a federal office that would coordinate ongoing private and public assessments of critical technologies and initiate additional assessments where needed.

- Mandate that the White House Office of Science and Technology Policy prepare a regular report on innovation that would be linked to the federal budget cycle.
- Provide the National Science Foundation (NSF) Division of Science Resources Statistics (SRS) with resources to launch a program of innovation surveys.
- Ensure that research and innovation survey programs, such as the NSF R&D survey, incorporate emerging, high-growth, technology-intensive industries, such as telecommunications and biotechnology, and industries across the service sector—financial services, transportation, and retailing, among others.

**Science and Technology Benchmarking**

As part of the technology and international-competitiveness debates of the 1980s and 1990s, several initiatives were launched to assess national capabilities in specific fields of science and engineering. Many of the early assessments looked at Japanese capabilities and were performed by US or international panels.[1] In the late 1980s, the Japan Technology Evaluation Center started as an interagency federal initiative managed by SAIC; it evolved into an NSF-contracted center at Loyola College of Maryland and is now an independent nonprofit known as the WTEC, Inc.[2] WTEC assessments cover a variety of countries and fields and are undertaken on an ad hoc basis. They are funded by the federal agencies most interested in the specific field being assessed.

A 1993 National Academies report recommended that the world leadership status of research fields be evaluated through international benchmarking.[3] A followup report that reviewed three benchmarking experiments (mathematics, immunology, and materials science and engineering) concluded that the approach of using expert panels could yield timely, accurate "snapshots" of specific fields.[4] The report also suggested that benchmarking assessments be conducted every 3-5 years to capture changes in the subject fields. Figure UT-1 illustrates one such assessment.

The factors considered most important in determining US leadership status, on the basis of all the international benchmarking experiments, were human resources and graduate education, funding, innovation process and industry, and infrastructure.

In addition, the Bureau of Industry and Security of the US Department of Commerce undertakes assessments of the US industrial and technology base in areas considered important for national defense.[5] These assessments often take into account international competitiveness.

---

[1] National Research Council, National Materials Advisory Board, *High-Technology Ceramics in Japan.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1984.
[2] See the WTEC, Inc., website, www.wtec.org/welcome.htm.
[3] National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, and Institute of Medicine, Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, *Science, Technology, and the Federal Government.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1993.
[4] National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, and Institute of Medicine, Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, *Experiments in International Benchmarking of U.S. Research Fields*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2000.
[5] See www.bis.doc.gov/defenseindustrialbaseprograms/osies/DefMarketResearchRpts/Default.htm.

Possible federal action includes the following:

- Establish a system to conduct regular international benchmarking assessments of US research to provide information on the world leadership status of key fields and subfields of scientific and technological research.

An example of the potential utility of this information is shown in Figures UT-2 to UT-5 which show funding and innovation process metrics for nanotechnology.

**Critical Technologies**

In 1990, Congress mandated that a biennial review be conducted of America's commitment to critical technologies deemed essential for "maintaining economic prosperity and enhancing the competitiveness of the US research enterprise". The legislation required that the number of technologies identified in the report not exceed 30 and include the most economically important civilian technologies expected after the decade following the report's release with the estimated current and future size of the domestic and international markets for products derived from the identified technologies. However, the exact definition of critical technologies was not included in the legislation.

The Office of Science and Technology Policy (OSTP) prepared National Critical Technologies Reports (NCTR) to Congress in 1991,[6] 1993,[7] 1995,[8] and 1998.[9] The content of and methods used to prepare the NCTRs varied throughout the decade.[10] The 1995 report, for example, identified seven "technology categories" (energy, environmental quality, information and communication, living systems, manufacturing, materials, and transportation), which were divided into 27 "technology areas". Figure UT-6 illustrates the NCTR analyses for materials research. Each of the 27 areas was identified on a competitive scale ranging from lagging to leading, and each area was then compared with Europe and Japan.[11]

Over the 1990s, the RAND Corporation played an increasingly important role in the preparation of the NCTRs. RAND assisted with the background research for the 1993 report and was a co-author of the 1995 report with OSTP.[12] The 1998 critical-technologies report was prepared by RAND with little involvement of OSTP.[13] This report, which refocused the study specifically on input from the private sector, identified five critical sectors of technology: software, microelectronics and telecommunications

[6] National Critical Technologies Panel, *Report of the National Critical Technologies Panel*, Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1991.
[7] National Critical Technologies Panel, *The Second Biennial Report of the National Critical Technologies Panel*, Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1993.
[8] National Critical Technologies Panel, *The National Critical Technologies Report*, Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1995.
[9] Steven W. Popper, Caroline S. Wagner, and Eric V. Larson, *New Forces at Work: Industry Views Critical Technologies*, Santa Monica, CA: RAND, 1998.
[10] Caroline S. Wagner and Steven W. Popper, "Identifying Critical Technologies in the USA", *Journal of Forecasting*. 22(2003):113-128.
[11] National Critical Technologies Panel, 1995.
[12] Wagner and Popper, 2003, p. 120.
[13] Ibid.

technologies, advanced manufacturing, materials, and sensor and imaging technologies.[14] After the release of the 1998 report, the legal requirement for OSTP to prepare the NCTR was removed.

Those involved in the NCTR process point out that federal agencies and state and local governments used the reports as a basis for policy-making. However, the NCTRs do not appear to have had a formal effect on US federal policy toward technology development.[15] For example, the NCTRs did not lead to the creation of any large cross-agency technology initiative. Nanotechnology was not a focus of the final 1998 NCTR, but OSTP started work around that time on discussions that would culminate in the creation of the National Nanotechnology Initiative several years later.[16]

In addition to the NCTRs, several other public and private efforts to identify critical technologies in both the defense and civilian arenas were undertaken during the 1990s by such groups as the US Department of Defense[17] and the Council on Competitiveness.[18] More recently, several government agencies have expressed interest in assessing international capabilities in militarily critical technologies.[19] Also, a number of countries are engaged in periodic assessments of critical technologies and international capabilities.

Possible federal actions include the following:

- Establish a federal office that would coordinate ongoing private and public assessments of critical technologies and initiate additional assessments where needed.
- Analyze the technology forecasting and foresight activities of other countries to identify where such activities can provide useful input to policy processes.

**Data on Research and Innovation**

The adequacy of measures and statistical data to inform policy-making remains a concern of the science and technology policy community. For example, during the 1990s, information technologies were widely deployed throughout the US economy and played a major role in a surge of US innovation, yet this process was captured poorly, if at all, by traditional indicators of research and innovation. Except for statistics on formal R&D spending, patents, and some aspects of science and engineering education, innovation-related data are extremely limited.[20]

---

[14] Popper, Wagner, and Larson, 1998.
[15] Wagner and Popper, 2003, p. 123.
[16] Neal Lane and Thomas Kalil, "The National Nanotechnology Initiative: Present at the Creation", *Issues in Science and Technology* 21(Summer 2005): 49-54.
[17] See the Militarily Critical Technologies website, www.dtic.mil/mctl.
[18] Council on Competitiveness, *Gaining New Ground: Technology Priorities for America's Future*, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 1991.
[19] National Research Council, Division on Engineering and Physical Sciences, *Avoiding Surprise in an Era of Global Technology Advances*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2005.
[20] National Research Council, Committee on National Statistics, *Measuring Research and Development Expenditures in the U.S. Economy*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2004.

Among the steps the federal government could take to improve data collection and analysis are the following:

- Mandate that OSTP prepare a regular report on innovation that would be linked to the federal budget cycle.[21] The goal of the report would be to give the government and the public a clear sense of how federal support for R&D fits into the larger national economic system and how both are linked to an increasingly international process of innovation.
- Provide the NSF SRS with resources to launch a program of innovation surveys.[22] SRS should work with experts in universities and public institutions that have expertise in a broad spectrum of related issues. In some cases, it may be judicious to commission case studies. NSF also should build an internal capacity to resolve the methodologic issues related to collecting innovation-related data.
- Ensure the collection of information needed to construct data series of federal science and technology (FS&T).[23] NSF needs to continue to collect the additional data items that are readily available in the defense agencies and expand collection of civilian data that would permit users to construct data series on FS&T expenditures in the same manner as the FS&T presentation in the president's budget documentation.
- Overhaul the field-of-science classification system to take account of changes in academic research, including interdisciplinary and multidisciplinary research.[24] It has been some 3 decades since the field-of-science classification system has been updated, and the current classification structure no longer adequately reflects the state of science and engineering fields. OMB needs to initiate a review of the *Classification of Fields of Science and Engineering*, last published as Directive 16 in 1978. The SRS could serve as the lead agency for an effort that must be conducted on a governmentwide basis. NSF should engage in a program of outreach to the disciplines to begin to develop a standard concept of interdisciplinary and multidisciplinary research, and on an experimental basis it should initiate a program to collect information from a subset of academic and research institutions.
- Redesign NSF's industrial R&D survey.[25] The redesign should begin by assessing the US survey against the international "standard"—the definitions promulgated through the *Frascati Manual* from the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. The redesign also should update the industry questionnaire to facilitate an understanding of new and emerging R&D issues, enhance the program of data analysis and publication, revise the sample to enhance coverage of growing sectors, and improve the collection procedures to better involve and educate the respondents.

---

[21] Kent Hughes, "Facing the Global Competitiveness Challenge," *Issues in Science and Technology*, 21(Summer 2005):72-78.
[22] National Research Council, 2004.
[23] Ibid.
[24] Ibid.
[25] Ibid.

- Ensure that research and innovation survey programs, such as NSF's R&D survey, incorporate emerging, high-growth, technology-intensive industries, such as telecommunications and biotechnology, and industries across the service sector—financial services, transportation, and retailing, and others.[26] Also, survey programs should collect information at the business-unit level of corporate activity rather than on a firm as a whole, and geographic location detail should be collected.
- NSF should increase the analytic value of its data by improving comparability and linkages among its data sets and between its data and data from other sources, such as the US census.[27]
- SRS should develop a long-term plan for its *Science and Engineering Indicators* publication so that it is smaller, more policy focused, and less duplicative of other SRS publications.[28] SRS also should substantially reduce the time between the reference date and data release of each of its surveys to improve the relevance and usefulness of its data.

[26] National Research Council, Board on Science, Technology, and Economic Policy, *Industrial Research and Innovation Indicators*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1997.
[27] Committee on National Statistics, 2004.
[28] Ibid.

**Understanding Trends in Science and Technology**
**Critical to US Prosperity**
**Appendix**
**Figures and Tables**

**Figure UT-1: Example of International Benchmarking for Several Materials Science and Engineering Subfields**

**Figure UT-2: Nanotechology Funding by the US Government Investment Has Been Declining as a Share of Global Government Investment.**

**Figure UT-3: Nanotechology Funding: Government and Corporate Funding Dwarf Venture Capital Funding.**

**Figure UT-4: Nanotechology Innovation Process: The Number of US startups Is Stagnating.**

**Figure UT-5: Nanotechology Innovation Process: Patenting by US Inventors Is Growing Rapidly.**

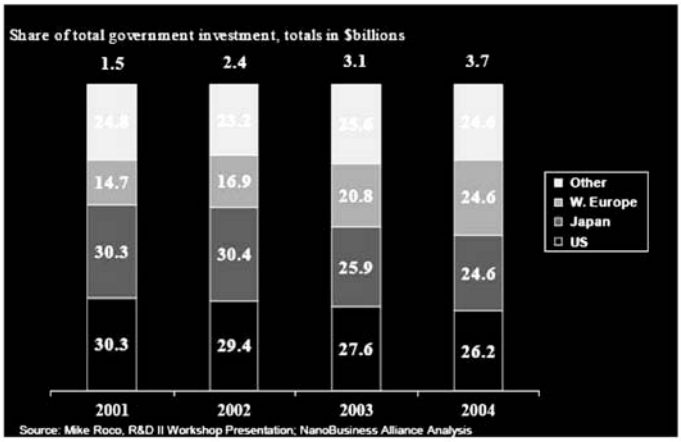
**Figure UT-6: Example of Critical Technologies List for Materials**

**Figure UT-1**
**Example of International Benchmarking for Several Materials Science and Engineering Subfields**

| Sub-Subfield | Current Position | | | | | Likely Future Position | | | | | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1 Fore-front | 2 | 3 Among world leaders | 4 | 5 Behind world leaders | 1 Gaining/ Extending | 2 | 3 Main-taining | 4 | 5 Losing | |
| Tissue engineering | ● | | | | | ● | | | | | Clear US leadership; tremendous worldwide interest. |
| Molecular architecture | | | ● | | | | | ● | | | Strong US competition from Germany and Japan. |
| Protein analogs | ● | | | | | ● | | | | | US dominates, driven by a basic-science approach. |
| Biomimetics | | | ● | | | | | ● | | | Strong players in North America, UK, Japan. |
| Contemporary diagnostic systems | | | ● | | | | | | ● | | Large European Community investments in biosensors research could lower US ranking. |
| Advanced controlled-release systems | | ● | | | | | ● | | | | US leads; extremely high worldwide interest could change this. |
| Bone biomaterials | | | ● | | | | | ● | | | Important developments in Europe and Japan. |

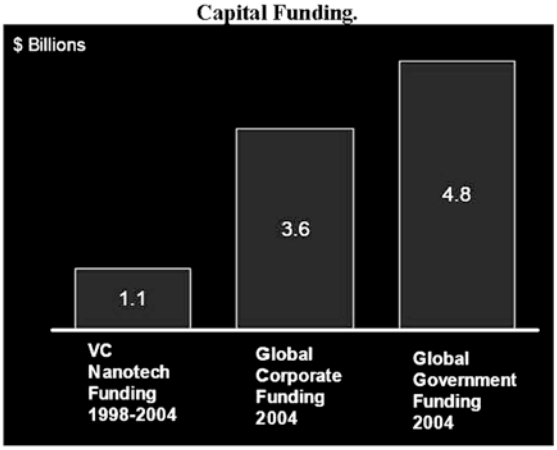
Source: National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, and Institute of Medicine, Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy. *Experiments in International Benchmarking of US Research Fields*.Washington, DC: National Academy Press. 2000.

**Figure UT-2**
**Nanotechology Funding by the US Government Investment Has Been Declining as a Share of Global Government Investment.**



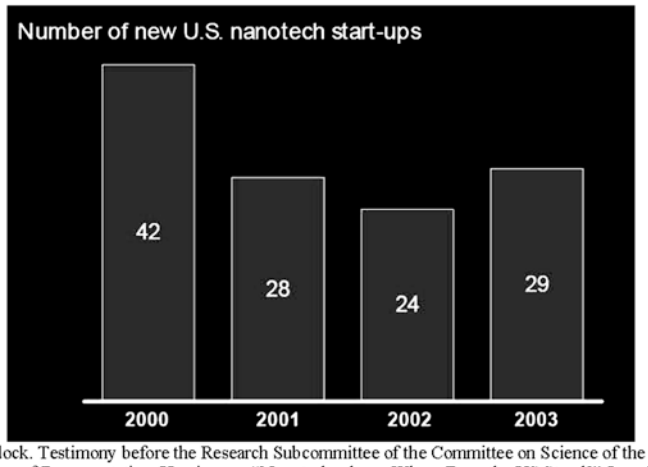

Sean Murdock. Testimony before the Research Subcommittee of the Committee on Science of the United States House of Representative. Hearing on: "Nanotechnology: Where Does the US Stand?" June 29th, 2005.

**Figure UT-3**
**Nanotechology Funding: Government and Corporate Funding Dwarf Venture Capital Funding.**



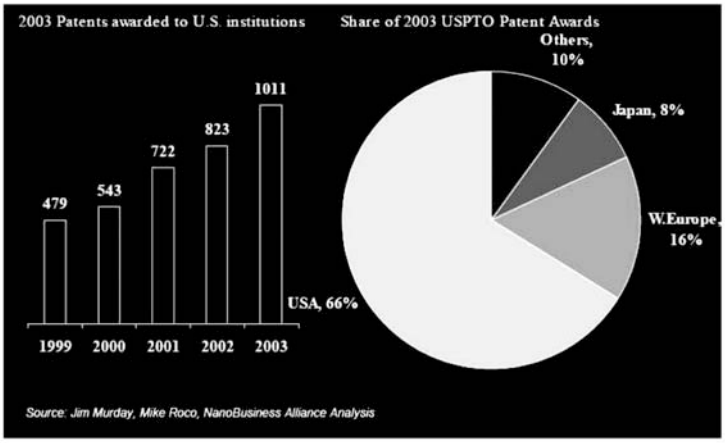

Sean Murdock. Testimony before the Research Subcommittee of the Committee on Science of the United States House of Representative. Hearing on: "Nanotechnology: Where Does the US Stand?" June 29th, 2005.

**Figure UT-4**
**Nanotechology Innovation Process: The Number of US startups Is Stagnating.**




Sean Murdock. Testimony before the Research Subcommittee of the Committee on Science of the United States House of Representative. Hearing on: "Nanotechnology: Where Does the US Stand?" June 29th, 2005.

**Figure UT-5**
**Nanotechology Innovation Process: Patenting by US Inventors Is Growing Rapidly.**




Sean Murdock. Testimony before the Research Subcommittee of the Committee on Science of the United States House of Representative. Hearing on: "Nanotechnology: Where Does the US Stand?" June 29th, 2005.

**Figure UT-6**
**Example of Critical Technologies List for Materials**

## *Materials*

| Technology Area | Technology Sub-Area | Specific Technologies | EP | NS | Sample Applications to Which Specific Techs Contribute |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Materials | **alloys** | light weight structural alloys | ● | ● | lighter, stiffer airframes, automobile frames |
| | | intermetallic alloys (Ti/Ni/Fe aluminides) | ● | ● | high-temp structural applications in aerospace |
| | **ceramic materials** | ceramic IC packaging | ● | | improved interconnection/data rates for multi-IC assemblies |
| | | ceramic matrix composites (see "composites") | ● | ● | |
| | | ceramic coatings | ● | ● | improved wear characteristics in high-speed moving parts: turbine engines, cutting tools |
| | **composites** | polymer matrix composities | ● | ● | economical, bulk PMCs for jet engines, automobiles, high-T aerodynamic surf |
| | | ceramic matrix composites | ● | ● | high-perf aircraft engines, automobile engines, advanced armor |
| | | metal-matrix composites | ● | ● | space applic. for null-outgassing, rad-resist important, hypersonic aircraft, HSCT, armor |
| | | carbon-carbon composites | ● | ● | ultra-high temperature aerospace applications (rocket nozzles, thermal surfaces) |
| | | molecular-scale composites | ● | ● | |
| | **electronic materials** | GaAs | ● | ● | superior, economic GaAs-based ICs (faster and/or hardened electronics) |
| | | thin-film dielectric materials | ● | ● | miniaturization of microwave communication devices |
| | **photonic materials** | semiconductor lasers/laser arrays | ● | ● | laser/detector techs to support communications |
| | | advanced detectors | ● | ● | and optical data processing, with eventual goal of OEICs |
| | **high energy-density materials** | advanced solid and liquid propellants | | ● | space launch vehicles, longer-range artillery |
| | | explosives | | ● | improved conventional weapons |
| | **highway/infrastructure mater** | paving | ● | | higher-durability, more economical materials to maintain surface transport infrastructure |
| | | repair materials | ● | | |
| | | polymer matrix composites | ● | | retrofit reinforcement for earthquake damage prevension |
| | **biocompatible materials** | | ● | ● | See "Living Systems" |
| | **stealth materials** | radar-absorbing materials/coatings | | ● | increased abilities for military aircraft to operate unobserved by radar |
| | **superconductors** | high temperature superconductors | ● | ● | sensors, low-power electronics, power transmission, energy storage, |
| | | advanced low-temp superconductors | ● | ● | powerful magnets for research, medical diagnostics, maglev technology |

(EP = Economic Prosperity; NS = National Security)

Source: Office of Science and Technology Policy. *National Critical Technologies List, March 1995.*
Available at: http://clinton1.nara.gov/White_House/EOP/OSTP/CTIformatted/AppA/appa.html

This paper summarizes findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. Statements in this paper should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

## Ensuring That the United States Has the Best Environment for Innovation

### Summary

A number of recent reports have raised concerns about the United States' long-term ability to sustain its global science and engineering (S&E) leadership.[1] They argue that erosion of this leadership threatens our ability to reap the rewards of innovation in the form of higher incomes and living standards, better health, a cleaner environment, and other societal benefits.

Certainly, the leadership position the United States has maintained in research and the creation of new knowledge since World War II has been an important contributor to economic growth and other societal rewards. However, a look at US history and some contemporary international examples shows that leadership in research is not a sufficient condition for gaining the lion's share of benefits from innovation. A favorable environment for innovation is also necessary. The environment for innovation includes such elements as the market and regulatory environment, trade policy, intellectual-property policies, policies that affect the accumulation of human capital, and policies affecting innovation environments in specific regions. In addition, grand challenges issued by the president (such as the reaction to Sputnik and the call for the Apollo project) can mobilize resources and the national imagination in pursuit of important innovation-related goals.

How can the United States sustain and improve the environment for innovation even in a future where its relative share of global S&E inputs to the innovation process (such as R&D spending, S&E personnel, and the quantity and quality of scientific literature) declines?

Many approaches to improving the innovation environment have been suggested. On some issues, including the offshoring of service-industry jobs, contradictory diagnoses and prescriptions have emerged on the basis of interests and political outlook

[1] American Electronics Association, *Losing the Competitive Advantage? The Challenge for Science and Technology in the United States.* Washington, DC: American Electronics Association, 2004. Council on Competitiveness, *Innovate America*, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004. Richard B. Freeman, "Does Globalization of the Scientific/Engineering Workforce Threaten US Economic Leadership?" NBER Working Paper 11457, Cambridge, MA.: National Bureau of Economic Research, 2005. Task Force on the Future of American Innovation, *The Knowledge Economy: Is America Losing Its Competitive Edge?* Washington, DC: 2005.

of the analysis. On other issues, such as patent-system reform, similar suggestions have emerged from several different reports. The approaches suggested include the following:

*Market, Regulatory, and Legal Environment*

- Establish a public-private body to assess the impact of new regulations on innovation.
- Reduce the costs of tort litigation for the economy.
- Reform Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act.
- Drop current efforts to expense stock options.
- Create best practices for collaborative standard-setting.
- Undertake market and regulatory reforms in the telecommunications industry with the goal of accelerating the speed and accessibility of networks.

*Trade*

- Increase focus on enforcement of the prevailing global rules for intellectual-property protection, particularly in China and in other countries where significant problems remain.
- Make completion of the Doha Round of world-trade talks a priority.

*Intellectual Property*

- Harmonize the US, European, and Japanese patent systems.
- Institute a postgrant open-review procedure for US patents.
- Stop diverting patent application fees to general revenue to provide the US Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) with sufficient resources to modernize and improve performance.
- Shield some research uses of patented inventions from liability for infringement.
- Leverage the patent database as an innovation tool.

*Tax Policy*

- Make the R&D tax credit permanent, and extend coverage to research conducted in university-industry consortia.
- Provide new tax incentives for early-stage investments in innovative startups.
- Provide more favorable tax treatment (expensing and accelerated depreciation) for the purchase of high-technology manufacturing equipment to encourage industry to keep manufacturing in the United States.

*Human Capital*

- Create incentives for investments by employers and employees in lifelong learning, including the creation of tax-protected accounts.
- Restructure and expand worker-assistance programs like the Trade Adjustment Assistance Act so that they are more flexible and cover workers displaced by reasons other than trade.
- Expedite the immigration process, including issuance of permanent residence status (green cards) to all master's and doctoral graduates of US institutions in science and engineering.
- Make H1-B visas "portable" to reduce the possibility of visa holder's being exploited and to reduce the negative impacts on US workers in those fields.
- Fund new programs that promote entrepreneurship at all levels of education.
- Reform policies toward health and pension benefits.
- Require companies operating in the United States to be transparent in reporting offshoring decisions.
- Use procurement policies to discourage government contractors from offshoring by requiring that certain tasks be performed by US workers.

*New "Apollo"*

- Gain presidential-level commitment to the proposition that sustaining and enhancing US ability to innovate is a key national priority.
- Have the President issue a major challenge encompassing federal research and all aspects of the innovation process to mobilize resources in pursuit of a critical national goal. The candidate fields for such a challenge include energy, space, and health care.

*Support for Regional Innovation*

- Establish a program of national innovation centers, or "hot spots", with matching funds from states and educational institutions.
- Designate a lead agency to coordinate regional economic-development programs to ensure that there is a common focus on innovation-based growth.

**Innovation and the Economy**

Wm. A. Wulf points out that "there is no simple formula for innovation. There is, instead, a-multi-component 'environment' that collectively encourages, or discourages, innovation."[2] This environment includes research funding, an educated workforce, a

[2] Wm. A. Wulf. 2005, "Review and Renewal of the Environment for Innovation", unpublished paper.

culture that encourages risk-taking, a financial system that provides patient capital for entrepreneurial activity, intellectual-property protection, and other elements.

The significance of this innovation environment has long been a subject of study. As far back as Adam Smith, economists have been interested in technologic innovation and its impact on economic growth.[3] Early in the 20th century, Joseph Schumpeter argued that innovation was the most important feature of the capitalist economy. Starting in the 1950s, Robert Solow and others developed methods of accounting for the sources of growth, leading to the observation that technologic change is responsible for over half the observed growth in labor productivity and national income. These methods are subject to continued debate and refinement. For example, over long periods the contributions of technologic change and other causes of growth—such as worker skills, capital deepening, and institutional change—are highly interactive and difficult to separate.

Other economists have focused on a more qualitative study of the institutions and practices underlying innovation in individual industries and entire economies. The effort to understand "national innovations systems" has been one focus of recent studies.[4] Others have examined the performance of particular industries.[5] The Sloan Foundation has given understanding innovation a high priority in its funding.[6]

This literature underscores the importance of the environment for innovation and points to several lessons from recent history. Japan's growth trajectory in various S&E inputs and outputs (such as R&D investments, S&E personnel, and patents) since the early 1990s has been similar to what it was before.[7] Yet the Japanese economy's ability to reap the rewards of innovation in the form of higher productivity and incomes was much higher in the earlier period. This can be explained partly by the dual nature of the Japanese economy, where world-class manufacturing industries serving a global market exist side by side with inefficient industries, such as construction.[8] Economic mismanagement and a lack of flexibility in factor markets (labor and capital) also have played an important role.

In contrast, in the mid-1990s the United States saw a jump in productivity growth from the levels that had prevailed since the first oil shock of the early 1970s.[9] In addition to gains in information technology (IT) manufacturing productivity, productivity gains from IT use and the creation of new business methods that take advantage of IT were widespread throughout the economy (see Figure EI-1).

---

[3] Joel Mokyr, "Innovation in an Historical Perspective: Tales of Technology and Evolution", in Benn Steil, David G. Victor, and Richard R. Nelson (eds.), *Technological Innovation and Economic Performance*, Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2002.

[4] Richard R. Nelson, ed., *National Innovation Systems: A Comparative Analysis*, New York: Oxford University Press, 1993.

[5] National Research Council, *US Industry in 2000: Studies in Competitive Performance*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 1999.

[6] See the Alfred P. Sloan Foundation web site at www.sloan.org.

[7] Adam S. Posen, "Japan". in Steil, Victor, and Nelson, 2002.

[8] Dale W. Jorgenson and Masahiro Kuroda, "Technology, Productivity, and the Competitiveness of US and Japanese Industries", in Thomas Arrison, C. Fred Bergsten, Edward M. Graham, and Martha Caldwell Harris (eds.), *Japan's Growing Technological Capability: Implications for the US Economy*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1992.

[9] William Nordhaus, *The Sources of the Productivity Rebound and the Manufacturing Employment Puzzle*. NBER Working Paper 11354, 2005.

It is important to note that science and technology and the innovation process are not zero-sum games in the international context.[10] The United States has proved adept in the past at taking advantage of breakthroughs and inventions from abroad, such as the jet engine and monoclonal antibodies.[11]

Groups and individuals have made numerous recommendations for change in the US environment for innovation.

**Market, Regulatory, and Legal Environment**

Many analyses of innovation focus on the supply side of the equation, such as the size and composition of R&D spending, the number of S&E graduates, and so forth. The importance of the demand side is sometimes neglected. The imperative of meeting the needs of demanding buyers and consumers plays a key role in driving the creation and diffusion of innovations. An open dynamic market is the source of US competitive strength in a range of industries. Even under the "Dell model"—in which development, manufacturing, and other functions are sourced and performed around the globe—contact with customers and knowledge of their needs is a critical capability that Dell keeps inhouse.[12]

In contrast, industries and economies where markets are closed, competition is limited, or consumer rights are not protected tend to act as a drag on innovation and growth. McKinsey and Company's international studies on sector productivity during the 1990s showed that competitive markets were the key factor separating successes and failures.[13]

A wide variety of policies and practices influence the market, regulatory, and legal environment for innovation. These include financial regulations, where the Sarbanes-Oxley Act has produced a number of changes in recent years. In addition, the costs of US approaches to litigation affecting product liability and securities fraud are a perennial target of industry groups.

Given the fact that the United States has lagged behind a number of other countries in broadband access (see Figure EI-2) and the potential positive impact of better and cheaper network access for the economy and the research enterprise in particular, the complex regulations governing telecommunications, the broadcast spectrum, and related areas would seem a promising target of reform.

Possible federal actions include the following:

- "The impact of new regulations on market investments in innovation should be more carefully and collaboratively assessed by a public-private Financial Markets

[10] Wm. A. Wulf, "Observations on Science and Technology Trends: Their Potential Impact on Our Future", in Anne G.K. Solomon (ed.), *Technology Futures and Global Wealth, Power and Conflict*, Washington, DC: Center for Strategic and International Studies, 2005.

[11] National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, Institute of Medicine, *Capitalizing on Investments in Science and Technology*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999.

[12] Thomas L. Friedman, *The World is Flat: A Brief History of the 21st Century*, New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux, 2005, p. 414-419.

[13] William W. Lewis, *The Power of Productivity: Wealth, Poverty, and the Threat to Global Stability*, Chicago: The University of Chicago Press, 2004.

Intermediary Committee, where periodic meetings can score existing and proposed legislation. This committee would follow the model of the Foreign Exchange Committee and Treasury Borrowing Committee."[14]

- "The country should set a goal to reduce the costs of tort litigation from the current level of two percent of GDP—some $200 billion—down to one percent."[15]
- Reform Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, which requires an internal control report in the company's annual report. "Many small and medium-sized companies have serious concern with Section 404 and the expense of the internal control reporting requirements. Small and medium-sized companies are disproportionately burdened by Section 404, and these provisions need to be examined to ensure a proper balance between accountability and bureaucracy."
- Drop efforts to expense stock options. "No industry has benefited more than the high-tech industry from the use of stock options. Stock options provide employees with a direct link to the growth and profitability of companies. They also are an essential tool for attracting and retaining the best workforce, especially for small businesses and start-ups who do not always have the capital to compete on salary alone. Already China and India have learned from the successful use of stock options in Silicon Valley and are using it to attract and retain businesses and employees."
- "The Federal government, through the Internal Revenue Service or Treasury Department, should establish clear guidelines in the Internal Revenue Code on the acceptability of investment of foundation assets in start-up ventures."[16]
- "The Federal government should encourage best practices and processes for standards bodies to align incentives for collaborative standard setting, and to encourage broad participation."[17]
- The Congress should "use the DTV transition to encourage *both* licensed and unlicensed wireless broadband networks as competitive alternatives to wireline cable and DSL offerings."[18]
- "Provide industry the incentives to promote broadband and cellular penetration. Countries like South Korea and Italy have realized enormous competitive advantages by investing heavily in broadband and cellular deployment. Just as the interstate highway system dramatically increased the efficiency and productivity of the US economy half a century ago, so too can efficient communications networks have the same positive effect today. Broadband and cellular diffusion also foster competitive advantages by creating demand for cutting edge products and services."[19]

**Trade**

---

[14] Council on Competitiveness. 2004, p. 65.
[15] Council on Competitiveness. 2004, p. 65
[16] Council on Competitiveness. 2004, p. 62.
[17] Council on Competitiveness. 2004, p. 70.
[18] Michael Calabrese, testimony to the Committee on Commerce, Science and Transportation, United States Senate, Hearing on Broadcast to Broadband, July 12, 2005.
[19] American Electronics Association, 2005, p. 26.

Multilateral trade liberalization has been a goal of US policymakers of both political parties since the end of World War II. The renewal of large US trade deficits in recent years has spurred debate over how to correct it and other global imbalances. The very large US deficit with China has produced calls for exchange-rate adjustment and other measures. In many important respects, China's industrial-development strategy has followed the export-led "playbook" developed by Japan, Korea, and other high-growth Asian economies during the 1960s, 1970s, and 1980s.[20]

Improving the protection of intellectual property worldwide, and especially in such large countries as China where piracy rates are high, has been a policy focus of industry groups (see Figure EI-3). It is important to note that China's laws and policies have come into line with international standards as a result of its accession to the World Trade Organization, so the main issue is enforcement.

Possible federal actions include the following:

- "Promote stronger enforcement of intellectual property protection worldwide. Intellectual property is typically the core asset of any high-tech company. From patents and copyrights to software and trade secrets, intellectual property forms the basis of the knowledge economy. Far too often, foreign legal systems do not adequately protect the owner of these valuable creations, resulting in the loss of literally billions of dollars. The Business Software Alliance estimated that 36 percent of software worldwide was illegally pirated in 2003. This translates to a $29 billion loss in revenue. In China, this figure is 92 percent and the revenue loss is estimated at $3.8 billion. Digital technology has made intellectual property theft that much easier on a wide scale. When foreign companies and consumers can steal this hard-earned property, the profitability and, ultimately, the competitiveness of US companies suffer."[21]
- Make conclusions of the Doha Round a top priority. "The United States economy has gained greatly from liberalization of trade worldwide and from the rules based system facilitated by the World Trade Organization (WTO). The Doha round of trade talks broke down in the summer of 2003 as negotiations on agriculture and certain service sectors reached an impasse. As a result, the United States risks losing momentum in further opening global markets to US products and services."

**Intellectual Property**

With the rise of knowledge-based industries and a number of legislative, judicial, and administrative actions, intellectual-property protection in the United States has been significantly strengthened over the last 25 years.[22] With the increase in the value of a US patent have come an increase in patenting and greater focus by companies and other inventors on the management of intellectual-property as an asset. In this environment,

---

[20] Robert Samuelson, "China's Devalued Concession". *The Washington Post.* July 26, 2005, p. A19.
[21] American Electronics Association, 2005, p. 25.
[22] Wesley M. Cohen and Stephen A. Merrill (eds.), *Patents in the Knowledge-Based Economy*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2003.

debate continues on how to tweak US intellectual property policies so that they maximize incentives for the generation and broad diffusion of innovations.

Possible federal actions include the following:

- "Reduce redundancies and inconsistencies among national patent systems. The United States, Europe, and Japan should further harmonize patent examination procedures and standards to reduce redundancy in search and examination and eventually achieve mutual recognition of results. Differences that need reconciling include application priority (first-to-invent versus first-inventor-to-file), the grace period for filing an application after publication, the best mode requirement of US law, and the US exception to the rule of publication of patent applications after 18 months. This objective should continue to be pursued on a trilateral or even bilateral basis if multilateral negotiations are not progressing."[23]
- "Strengthen USPTO capabilities. To improve its performance the USPTO needs additional resources to hire and train additional examiners and fully implement a robust electronic processing capability. Further, the USPTO should create a strong multidisciplinary analytical capability to assess management practices and proposed changes, provide an early warning of new technologies being proposed for patenting, and conduct reliable, consistent, reputable quality reviews that address office-wide and individual examiner performance. The current USPTO budget is not adequate to accomplish these objectives."[24]
- "Institute an Open Review procedure. Congress should seriously consider legislation creating a procedure for third parties to challenge patents after their issuance in a proceeding before administrative patent judges of the USPTO. The grounds for a challenge could be any of the statutory standards— novelty, utility, non-obviousness, disclosure, or enablement—or even the case law proscription in patenting abstract ideas and natural phenomena. The time, cost, and other characteristics of this proceeding should make it an attractive alternative to litigation to resolve patent validity questions both for private disputants and for federal district courts. The courts could more productively focus their attention on patent infringement issues if they were able to refer validity questions to an Open Review proceeding."[25]
- "Leverage the patent database as an innovation tool. Develop pilot projects (jointly funded by industry, universities and government) to highlight techniques for leveraging patent data for discovery."[26]

**Tax Policy**

---

[23] National Research Council, *A Patent System for the 21st Century*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2004, p. 8.

[24] Ibid., p. 7. Similar recommendations appear in Council on Competitiveness, 2004, and American Electronics Association, 2005. The latter two reports recommend stopping diversion of patent-application fees to general revenue.

[25] National Research Council, 2004, p. 6. A similar recommendation appears in Council on Competitiveness, 2004.

[26] Council on Competitiveness, 2004, p. 70.

Tax policy is another element of the environment for innovation. The research and experimentation tax credit (popularly known as the R&D tax credit) is a longstanding feature of the tax code, although it is generally renewed year to year. The tax treatment of investments in startup companies and purchases of high-technology manufacturing equipment have also been the focus of recent recommendations.

Possible federal actions include the following:

- "The federal government should provide a 25 percent tax credit for early stage investments when made through qualified angel funds. The individuals participating in these funds would need to make a minimum investment of $50,000 each year in order to receive the tax credit. Acceptable investments would be restricted to those that meet requirements for revenue size and age of firm."[27]
- "Enact a permanent, restructured R&E tax credit and extend the credit to research conducted in university-industry consortia."[28]
- Allow more favorable tax treatment of purchases of high-technology manufacturing equipment. "Accelerated depreciation or expensing of high technology equipment would have a particularly positive investment impact. Many of our economic competitors—who actively seek to lure investment in semiconductor manufacturing overseas—offer far more favorable tax treatment than that offered in the United States. As part of the discussion of fundamental reforms of the tax code to promote investment and manufacturing in the US, the Congress should consider allowing companies to expense high technology equipment."[29]
- "Use the required repeal of the Foreign Sales Corporation exemption to fund a revenue-neutral tax credit for investment in information-processing equipment, software, and industrial equipment. In response to WTO rulings, Congress passed a reduction of the corporate tax rate, which really does little to encourage companies to be more competitive and innovative. An investment tax credit would help companies increase investment which would in turn boost productivity. Moreover, it would make US companies more likely to invest in equipment in the Unites States and not overseas."[30]

**Human Capital**

A highly skilled, flexible labor force is an essential component of this nation's ability to reap the benefits of innovation. Recent debates over workforce issues have revolved around several issues.

---

[27] Ibid., p. 62.
[28] Ibid., p. 59. There are similar recommendations in numerous other reports, including National Academy of Engineering, *Mastering a New Role: Prospering in a Global Economy*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 1993; and American Electronics Association, 2005.
[29] Semiconductor Industry Association web site, www.sia-online.org/backgrounders_tax.cfm.
[30] Robert Atkinson, *Meeting the Offshoring Challenge*, Washington, DC, Progressive Policy Institute, 2004.

The first trend is that growing numbers of service industries and their labor forces are becoming subject to global competition, a condition with which manufacturing industries have long familiarity. Offshore outsourcing of business process and IT jobs, or "offshoring", is growing rapidly (see Figure EI-4). Aspects of research and education are included. There are strong disagreements about what outsourcing means, the ultimate impacts, and policy prescriptions.[31] In any case, the trend reinforces the imperative for the promotion of lifelong learning in the United States. As illustrated by Figure EI-5, working adults and other nontraditional students are of growing importance in fields like computer science. Calls to rethink approaches to incentives for continuing education and trade-displacement assistance programs have come from several quarters.

A second element focuses on the immigration of scientists, engineers, and other skilled professionals who contribute to the innovation process. Several recent reports have suggested ways to encourage skilled foreigners to continue immigrating. US openness to people and ideas from around the world is a longstanding strength of the American environment for innovation.[32] In particular, immigrant scientist-engineer-entrepreneurs from Alexander Graham Bell and Andrew Carnegie to Andrew Grove have played key roles in the creation of leading US companies and entire industries.

A third human-capital issue is the reform of health insurance, pensions, and other public and private benefits infrastructures. The goals here are to make these systems sustainable from a long-term cost perspective and to help them support a workforce that is increasingly mobile and less likely to be employed by large organizations for extended periods.

A fourth issue is the promotion of education about entrepreneurship at various educational levels, including S&E education. Among the recommendations that have been suggested are these:

- "Create the human capital investment tax credit to promote continuous education. Companies often lack incentives to invest in educating and retraining workers as they risk losing that return on investment if the worker subsequently leaves the firm. By providing human-capital investment tax credits, the US government can encourage companies to retrain workers by reducing or eliminating out-of-pocket costs. At the forefront of technology innovation, companies are often the best predictor of what skills will be most valuable in the future. Continuous retraining, education, and skills acquisition ensure that fewer technology workers will find themselves suddenly displaced with no skills to participate in the constantly shifting high-tech industry. Furthermore, society would benefit from the continuous education of workers, which also increases productivity and decreases downtime between jobs."[33]
- Create lifelong learning accounts for employees that allow tax-exempt contributions by workers and tax credits for employer contributions.[34]

---

[31] For a point-counterpoint see Ron Hira and Anil Hira, *Outsourcing America: What's Behind Our National Crisis and How We Can Reclaim American Jobs,* Washington, DC: AMACOM Books, 2005, and Diana Farrell, Martha Laboissière, Robert Pascal, Jaeson Rosenfeld, Charles de Segundo, Sascha Stürze, and Fusayo Umezawa, *The Emerging Global Labor Market*, New York: McKinsey Global Institute, 2005.
[32] National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, Institute of Medicine, 1999.
[33] American Electronics Association, 2005, p. 26.
[34] Council on Competitiveness, 2004, p. 54.

- "Reform and rename the Trade Adjustment Assistance Program to cover workers displaced for reasons other than trade, including service sector workers."[35]
- "Offer more flexibility and focus under federal-state employment and training programs. States and the federal government should have more discretion to devote employment and training resources toward high-performance programs, high-growth skills and skills in demand by local firms."[36]
- "Expand temporary wage supplements that help move workers more quickly off unemployment insurance and into new jobs and on-the-job training. The Alternative Trade Adjustment for Older Workers Program should be expanded to include younger workers and should not be linked exclusively to trade dislocation."[37]
- "Re-institute H1-B training grants to ensure that Americans are trained in the skills and fields for which companies now bring in foreign nationals."[38]
- "Establish an expedited immigration process, including automatic work permits and residency status for foreign students who: a) hold graduate degrees in S&E from American universities, b) have been offered jobs by US-based employers and who have passed security screening tests."[39]
- "Give green cards to all US trained master and doctoral students. Accredited US colleges and universities award 8,000 doctoral and 56,000 master's degrees in S&E to foreign nationals per year. Instead of sending these people back to their countries, they should be given a Green Card to stay in the United States. These people will make significant contributions to the economy and workforce. The United States benefits by keeping them here."[40]
- "H1-B visas should be made 'portable' so that a foreign temporary nonimmigrant worker can more easily change jobs in the United States."[41]
- The National Science Foundation should take a significant role in funding pilot efforts to create innovation-oriented learning environments in K-12 and higher education. It also should sponsor research into the processes involved in teaching creativity, inventiveness, and commercialization in technical environments.[42]
- The federal government should create legal certainty for cash-balance pension plans to ensure that employers can continue to offer them. These plans are popular with many employees and have significant advantages over many defined-contribution plans.[43]

---

[35] Ibid., p. 56.
[36] Ibid.
[37] Ibid.
[38] Ibid.
[39] Ibid., p. 51.
[40] American Electronics Association, 2005, p. 25. A similar recommendation appears in Council on Competitiveness, 2004.
[41] National Research Council, *Building a Workforce for the Information Economy*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2001.
[42] Council on Competitiveness, 2004, p. 53
[43] Ibid., p. 55.

- Have the states and the federal government encourage the widespread availability of Health Savings Accounts, including affordable options for low-income workers, as a health-insurance option that provides portability for employees.[44]
- "States and the federal government should define a role for government re-insurance of higher-cost healthcare expenses, so as to reduce the cost of employer-provided coverage and reduce the cost of healthcare to employees."[45]
- "Government procurement rules should favor work done in the United States and should restrict the offshoring of work in any instance where there is not a clear long-term economic benefit to the nation or where the work supports technologies that are critical to our national economic or military security."[46]
- Require transparent disclosure of offshoring. "The publicly owned firms that engage in offshoring ought to at least be transparent in their business dealings, offering layoff notices and providing clear accounting of the employment in their various units, both domestic and abroad."[47]

**Supporting Clusters and Regions**

The tendency of innovative capabilities (such as research, manufacturing, educational institutions, and the workforce) to conglomerate in specific regions has been a subject of economic inquiry for some time.[48] The Council on Competitiveness sponsored a multiyear initiative to study the phenomenon in the US context.[49] One recent analysis postulates that regions need to draw a "creative class" human-resource base to compete effectively in knowledge-intensive industries.[50] Although many of the policy levers to promote regional innovation are in the hands of state and local governments, the federal government could play a larger role through such actions as the following:

- "The federal government should create at least ten Innovation Hot Spots over the next five years. State and local economic development entities and educational institutions should raise matching funds and develop proposals to operate these pilot national innovation centers."[51]
- "Innovation Partnerships need to be created to bridge the traditional gap that has existed between the long-term discovery process and commercialization. These

---

[44] Ibid.
[45] Ibid.
[46] IEEE. 2004. *Position Statement on Offshore Outsourcing*. Washington, DC. Available at: www.ieeeusa.org/policy/positions/offshoring.asp. A similar recommendation appears on the Economic Policy Institute web site.
[47] Economic Policy Institute, *EPI Issue Guide: Offshoring*, Washington, DC: 2004.
[48] Michael J. Piore and Charles F. Sabel, *The Second Industrial Divide: Possibilities for Prosperity*, New York: Basic Books, 1984.
[49] Council on Competitiveness, *Clusters of Innovation: Regional Foundations of US Competitiveness*, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2001.
[50] Richard Florida, *The Rise of the Creative Class... and how it's transforming work, leisure, community, & everyday life*. New York: Basic Books, 2002.
[51] Council on Competitiveness, 2004, p. 62.

new partnerships would involve academia, business and government, and they would be tailored to capture regional interests and economic clusters."[52]

- "The federal government should establish a lead agency for economic development programs to coordinate regional efforts and ensure that a common focus on innovation-based growth is being implemented."[53]

**New "Apollo", "Sputnik", or "Manhattan Project"**

As part of the 2004-2005 debate over the sustainability of US S&E leadership, some individuals and groups have called for a presidential-level challenge to mobilize resources and national imagination in an effort that also would grow the S&E enterprise. Somewhat related is the call for the President to identify innovation as having a major national priority. Specific recommendations include the following:

- Launch an explicit national innovation strategy and agenda led by the President. "Innovation is the critical pathway to building prosperity and competitive advantage for advanced economies. Yet no single institution in government or the private sector has the horizontal responsibility for strengthening the innovation ecosystem at the national level—it is and always will be a shared responsibility. The United States should establish an explicit national innovation strategy and agenda, including an aggressive public policy strategy that energizes the environment for national innovation."[54]
- "Establish a focal point within the Executive Office of the President to frame, assess and coordinate strategically the future direction of the nation's innovation policies. This could be either a Cabinet-level interagency group, or a new, distinct mission assigned to the National Economic Council."[55]
- "Establish an explicit innovation agenda. Direct the President's economic advisors to analyze the impact of current economic policies on US innovation capabilities and identify opportunities for immediate improvement."[56]
- "Direct the Cabinet officers to undertake a policy, program and budget review and propose initiatives designed to foster innovation within and across departments. This is an opportunity to break down 'stovepipes' and foster closer collaboration among the agencies to meet clear national needs."[57]
- "The United States should build an integrated healthcare capability by the end of the decade."[58]
- Apply information technology, research, and systems-engineering tools to US health-care delivery.[59]

---

[52] Ibid., p. 53.
[53] Ibid., p. 62.
[54] Ibid., p. 66.
[55] Ibid.
[56] Ibid.
[57] Ibid.
[58] Ibid., p. 74.
[59] National Academy of Engineering/Institute of Medicine, *Building a Better Delivery System: A New Engineering/Healthcare Partnership*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2005.

- Launch a US-China crash program to develop alternative energies.[60]

[60] Friedman, 2005, p. 413.

**Ensuring That the United States Has**
**the Best Environment for Innovation**
**Appendix**
**Figures and Tables**

**Figure EI-1: Contribution of Different Industries to the Productivity Rebound, 1998-2003, by Broad Industry Group.**

**Figure EI-2: The United States Has Lagged Other Countries in Broadband Adoption.**

**Figure EI-3: China Has a High Piracy Rate, but Because of Market Size Software Piracy Losses Are Actually Higher in the United States.**

**Figure EI-4: Even in the Rapidly Growing Category Of Global Service Exports, Offshoring of Business Process and IT Work from Rich to Poor Countries Will Constitute a Larger Share, Growing at a 30% Compound Annual Rate Between Now and 2008.**

**Figure EI-5: Nontraditional Students and Higher-Education Providers Are Increasingly Important in Such Fields as Computer Science.**

**Figure EI-1: Contribution of Different Industries to the Productivity Rebound, 1998-2003, by Broad Industry Group.**

| | Average share | Contribution to aggregate productivity growth | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1998-2002 | 1999 | 2000 | 2001 | 2002 | 2003 | **Average** |
| Gross domestic product | 100.00 | 2.07 | 2.05 | 1.71 | 2.90 | 3.72 | **2.49** |
| Private industries | 87.50 | 1.96 | 2.08 | 2.00 | 2.97 | 3.43 | **2.49** |
| Finance, insurance, real estate, etc. | 19.74 | 0.60 | 1.36 | 0.92 | 0.33 | 0.38 | **0.72** |
| Computer and electronic products | 1.66 | 0.47 | 0.64 | 0.09 | 0.37 | 0.58 | **0.43** |
| Retail trade | 6.91 | 0.12 | 0.31 | 0.45 | 0.37 | 0.43 | **0.33** |
| Information | 4.62 | 0.22 | 0.14 | 0.21 | 0.34 | 0.56 | **0.30** |
| Professional and business services | 11.53 | 0.13 | -0.18 | 0.41 | 0.42 | 0.47 | **0.25** |
| Durable goods other than computers | 6.78 | 0.01 | 0.30 | 0.01 | 0.49 | 0.26 | **0.21** |
| Wholesale trade | 6.08 | 0.31 | -0.19 | 0.52 | 0.27 | -0.07 | **0.17** |
| Nondurable goods | 5.75 | 0.12 | 0.04 | 0.00 | 0.51 | 0.39 | **0.21** |
| Transportation and warehousing | 3.01 | 0.06 | 0.15 | 0.02 | 0.16 | 0.19 | **0.11** |
| Utilities | 1.97 | 0.07 | 0.17 | -0.06 | 0.18 | 0.17 | **0.10** |
| Arts, entertainment, recreation, etc. | 3.54 | 0.03 | 0.00 | -0.03 | 0.02 | 0.05 | **0.01** |
| Agriculture, forestry, etc. | 1.03 | 0.00 | 0.10 | -0.12 | 0.06 | 0.09 | **0.03** |
| Government | 12.44 | 0.06 | 0.04 | -0.07 | -0.04 | 0.14 | **0.03** |
| Mining | 1.04 | 0.12 | -0.04 | -0.09 | 0.08 | -0.07 | **0.00** |
| Educational services, health care, etc. | 7.09 | -0.01 | 0.01 | -0.05 | 0.01 | 0.03 | **0.00** |
| Other services, except government | 2.40 | -0.07 | -0.05 | -0.07 | -0.08 | 0.04 | **-0.05** |
| Construction | 4.42 | -0.18 | -0.13 | 0.03 | -0.03 | 0.00 | **-0.06** |

Source: William Nordhaus. 2005. *The Source of the Productivity Rebound and the Manufacturing Employment Puzzle*. NBER Working Paper 11354. Table 4, p. 24. Available at: http://www.nber.org/papers/w11354.

**Figure EI-2: The United States Has Lagged Other Countries in Broadband Adoption.**

| Rank | Country | Broadband subscribers per 100 inhabitants |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | South Korea | 24.9 |
| 2 | Hong Kong | 20.9 |
| 3 | The Netherlands | 19.4 |
| 4 | Denmark | 19.3 |
| 5 | Canada | 17.6 |
| 16 | United States | 11.4 |

Source: Michael Calabrese. "Broadcast to Broadband: Completing the Digital Television Transition Can Jumpstart Affordable Wireless Broadband" House Testimony. July 12, 2005.

**Figure EI-3: China Has a High Piracy Rate, but Because of Market Size Software Piracy Losses Are Actually Higher in the United States.**

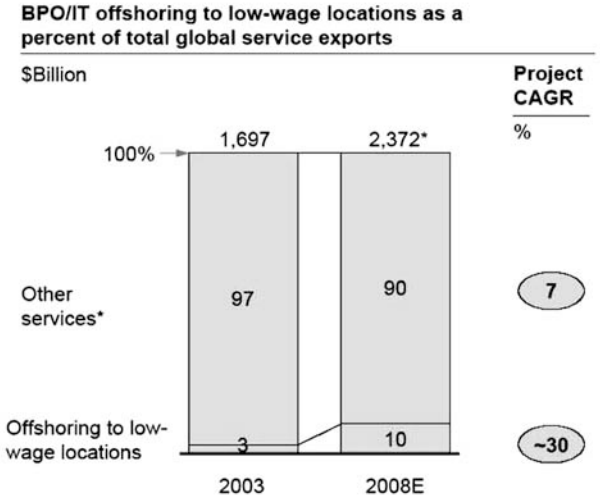
**Ranking by 2004 Software Piracy Losses** Table 2

Piracy of $100 Million or More

| | $M | | $M |
|---|---|---|---|
| United States | $6,645 | Sweden | $ 304 |
| China | 3,565 | Denmark | 226 |
| France | 2,928 | South Africa | 196 |
| Germany | 2,286 | Norway | 184 |
| United Kingdom | 1,963 | Indonesia | 183 |
| Japan | 1,787 | Thailand | 183 |
| Italy | 1,500 | Turkey | 182 |
| Russia | 1,362 | Finland | 177 |
| Canada | 889 | Taiwan | 161 |
| Brazil | 659 | Malaysia | 134 |
| Spain | 634 | Czech Republic | 132 |
| Netherlands | 628 | Austria | 128 |
| India | 519 | Hungary | 126 |
| Korea | 506 | Saudi Arabia | 125 |
| Australia | 409 | Hong Kong | 116 |
| Mexico | 407 | Argentina | 108 |
| Poland | 379 | Ukraine | 107 |
| Belgium | 309 | Greece | 106 |
| Switzerland | 309 | | |

Source: Business Software Alliance and IDC. 2005. Second Annual BSA and IDC Global Software Piracy Study. Washington, DC. Available at: http://www.bsa.org/globalstudy/upload/2005-Global-Study-English.pdf

**Figure EI-4: Even in the Rapidly Growing Category Of Global Service Exports, Offshoring of Business Process and IT Work from Rich to Poor Countries Will Constitute a Larger Share, Growing at a 30% Compound Annual Rate Between Now and 2008.**




* Estimated at 6% annual growth from 2002 figure.
Source: WTO; McKinsey Global Institute analysis

Source: McKinsey & Company. "The Emerging Global Labor Market". June 2005. Executive Summary, p 19.

**Figure EI-5: Nontraditional Students and Higher-Education Providers Are Increasingly Important in Such Fields as Computer Science.**

**TABLE 1.2** Top Producers of Computer Science Bachelor's Degrees, 2001

| Academic Institution | Number of 2001 Bachelor's Degrees Awarded |
|---|---|
| 1. Strayer University | 840 |
| 2. DeVry Institute of Technology (Addison, IL) | 477 |
| 3. CUNY Bernard Baruch College | 465 |
| 4. University of Maryland Baltimore County | 463 |
| 5. DeVry Institute of Technology (Phoenix, AZ) | 440 |
| 6. DeVry Institute of Technology (Cty of Industry, CA) | 349 |
| 7. Rutgers the State University of New Jersey | 336 |
| 8. DeVry Institute of Technology (Kansas City, MO) | 316 |
| 9. DeVry Institute of Technology (Long Beach, CA) | 301 |
| 10. James Madison University | 393 |

Source: CPST; data were derived from the National Science Foundation, WebCASPAR Database, and NCES.

Source: American Association for the Advancement of Science. *Preparing Women and Minorities for the IT Workforce: The Role of Nontraditional Educational Pathways*. Washington, DC. 2005. Available at: http://www.aaas.org/publications/books_reports/ITW/PDFs/Complete_book.pdf

This *paper* summarizes findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. Statements in this paper should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

## *Issue Brief:* Scientific Communication and Security

**Summary**

Among the fundamental tenets of science is openness—minimizing restrictions on communication among scientists is considered essential to progress. The United States has achieved and maintained its pre eminence in science and technology (S&T) in part by embracing the values of scientific openness. And this openness has no natural, and certainly no national, boundaries in an increasingly international scientific enterprise.

Openness may pose risks, however. Adversaries may take advantage of ready access to information to acquire knowledge with which to do harm. Economic competitors may use open communication to pursue their own interests at the expense of the United States.

The United States has sought to limit these potential negative consequences by setting some limits on scientific communication. A system to protect intellectual property seeks to ensure that the applications of discoveries initially benefit those who make the breakthroughs. In the realm of national and homeland security, the US government carries out some research and development in secret and restricts access to certain types of information to keep it away from those who may have hostile intent.

The scientific and technical community recognizes that it has a responsibility to help protect the United States, as it has in the past, by harnessing the best S&T to help counter terrorism and other national-security threats, even though this may mean accepting some limitations on its work. However, there is concern that some of the policies on scientific communication enacted in the wake of the September 11 terrorist attacks and the anthrax mailings and others under consideration will undermine the strength of science in the United States without genuinely advancing security. Various organizations, including the National Academies, have offered recommendations to address these concerns:

- Continue to support the principle set forth in National Security Decision Directive 189 that federally funded fundamental research, such as that conducted in universities and laboratories, should "to the maximum extent possible" be unrestricted.
- Create a clearly defined regulatory "safe harbor" for fundamental research so that universities in particular can have confidence that activities within the safe harbor are in compliance, thus permitting a focus on whatever occurred outside the safe harbor.
- Regularly review and update the lists of information and technologies subject to controls maintained by federal agencies with the goal of restricting the focus of the controls and removing controls on readily available technologies. Carry out the process across as well as within agencies, and include input from the S&T community.

- With regard to the specific issue of "deemed exports", do not change the current system of license requirements for use of export-controlled equipment in university basic research until the following steps have been implemented:
    - Greatly narrow the scope of controlled technologies requiring deemed-export licenses, and ensure that the list remains narrow going forward.
    - Delete all controlled technology from the list whose manuals are available in the public domain, in libraries, on the Internet, or from the manufacturers.
    - Delete all equipment from the list that is available for purchase on the open market overseas from foreign or US companies.
    - Clear international students and postdoctoral fellows for access to controlled equipment when their visas are issued or shortly thereafter so that their admission to a university academic program is coupled with their access to use of export-controlled equipment.
- Undertake a systematic review to determine the number and provisions of all existing types of "sensitive but unclassified" information in the federal government. Using that baseline, require a further review and justification for the maintenance of any category. Tie remaining categories to an explicit statutory or regulatory framework that includes procedures to request access to information and appeal decisions.
- In implementing federal security policies for S&T personnel:
    - Engage S&T personnel in the development and implementation plans for security measures.
    - Continue to accept non-US citizens as visitors and in some cases staff, expedite security reviews for visitors, and more generally work to avoid prejudice against foreigners.
    - Focus and limit security efforts to address the most important security situations.
- Create new or expand existing mechanisms to engage the S&T community in advisory capacities and to improve communication channels.
    - Encourage communication among the diverse communities involved in security issues—policy, S&T, national and homeland security, law enforcement, and intelligence—so that policies regarding scientific communication are both effective and broadly accepted.
    - Build bridges among these communities, particularly in areas of S&T, such as the life sciences, where there is little history of working with the government on security issues.

**Secret Research and Classification of Information**

The US government handles issues of secrecy through a complex mix of statutes, regulations, and procedures that govern the control of classified information, public access to government information, and the maintenance of government records. With two exceptions, the government has no authority to designate information produced outside this legal framework as classified.[1] In the wake of September 11, President Bush extended classification authority to

[1] The first exception is through the Atomic Energy Act; information related to nuclear weapons may be "born classified" without any prior involvement of the government in its generation. The second exception, under the

several departments and agencies that had not previously been involved in such matters, such as the Department of Agriculture, the Environmental Protection Agency, and the Department of Health and Human Services.

Controversies over whether areas of scientific research should be restricted in the name of national security recurred throughout the Cold War. During the early 1980s, the Reagan administration sought to restrict scientific communication in a number of fields. That controversy eventually led to a presidential directive in 1985, influenced in part by a report from the National Academy of Sciences.[2] National Security Decision Directive 189 (NSDD-189) states that federally funded fundamental research, such as that conducted in universities and laboratories, should "to the maximum extent possible" be unrestricted.[3] Where restriction is deemed necessary, the control mechanism is formal classification. "No restrictions may be placed upon the conduct or reporting of federally-funded fundamental research that has not received national security classification, except as provided in applicable US statutes." The policy set out in NSDD-189 is still in force and has been reaffirmed by several senior George W. Bush administration officials.[4]

Over the years, reports and statements from the National Academies and other organizations have strongly supported the principle set forth in NSDD-189 as essential to maintaining the vitality of fundamental research in the United States.[5] Some have suggested that President Bush should reissue the directive as a signal of its continuing importance and his administration's commitment to scientific openness. Others are concerned that, given current controversies and security concerns, the interagency process necessary for such an action could result in a weaker presidential statement. At a minimum, the federal government could:

- Continue to support the principle set forth in National Security Decision Directive 189 that federally funded fundamental research, such as that conducted in universities and laboratories, should "to the maximum extent possible" be unrestricted.

**"Sensitive" Research and Controls on Information**

Serious concerns can arise over whether information is properly classified, whether too much information is classified, and how such decisions are made, but these debates over the classification of scientific research take place within a system of reasonably well-specified and

---

Invention Secrecy Act of 1951, permits information received as part of the patent-application process to be classified.

[2] National Research Council, *Scientific Communication and National Security,* Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1982.

[3] "Fundamental" research is defined as "basic and applied research in science and engineering, the results of which ordinarily are published and shared broadly within the scientific community, as distinguished from proprietary research and from industrial development, design, production and product utilization, the results of which ordinarily are restricted for proprietary or national security reasons" (National Security Decision Directive 189, September 21, 1985).

[4] Letter to Dr. Harold Brown from Condoleezza Rise, Assistant to the President for National Security Affairs, November 1, 2001. John Marburger, Director of the Office of S&T Policy, Executive Office of the President, reaffirmed NSDD 189 in a speech to a workshop on "Scientific Openness and National Security" at The National Academies on January 9, 2003.

[5] Recent examples include National Research Council, *Assessment of Department of Defense Basic Research,* Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2005, p.6; Center for Strategic and International Studies, *Security Controls on Scientific Information and the Conduct of Scientific Research*, Washington, DC: CSIS, June 2005.

understood rules. Far more problematic is the interest in designating certain areas of research and certain types of knowledge—wherever they are produced and however they are funded–as "sensitive but unclassified" (SBU).

The problem of "sensitive information" is not new. Classification is only one of the ways in which the US government controls public access to information. Across the federal government, there are dozens of categories that apply narrowly or broadly to specific types of information (see Figure SCS-1).[6] Some of the categories are defined in statute, some through regulation, and some only through administrative practices. In addition, different agencies may assign a variety of civil and even criminal penalties for violation of their restrictions.[7]

Here, the fundamental issue is the scope of restrictions—that is, how much should the government try to control? When the primary US opponent was another technologically sophisticated state, the Soviet Union, the case could be made that one should focus on S&T areas that could truly make a difference in terms of adding to Soviet capabilities or undermining those of the United States. With the fall of the Soviet Union, some argue that the range of less technologically sophisticated opponents, including terrorists, now confronting the United States means that the government should try to deny access to the much wider range of information and technologies that could be useful to them.

While recognizing the legitimate concerns that others may take advantage of open access to information, technologies, and materials for malicious purposes, past examinations of the potential tradeoffs between openness and security have concluded that the United States is best served by focusing its efforts on protecting fewer, very-high-value areas of S&T.[8] This is particularly true in fields where knowledge is advancing quickly and diffusing rapidly; otherwise, the United States may expend its efforts in attempts to control knowledge and technology that are readily available elsewhere. In addition, many of the existing and proposed lists of "sensitive" information and materials tend to consist of broad and general categories, making it potentially difficult for researchers to know whether their activities are in or out of bounds.

These considerations suggest two general principles and a number of specific recommendations:

- Principle 1: Construct "high fences" around narrow areas—that is, maintain stringent security around sharply defined and narrowly circumscribed areas, but reduce or eliminate controls over less sensitive material.

---

[6] The CSIS Commission on Science and Security in the 21st Century identified at least 20 types of information that could be considered "sensitive" within the Department of Energy, most without consistent, department-wide definitions or application (Center for Strategic and International Studies, *Science and Security in the 21st Century: A Report to the Secretary of Energy on the Department of Energy Laboratories*, Washington, DC: CSIS, 2002, p.55).

[7] Genevieve J. Knezo, " 'Sensitive But Unclassified' and Other Federal Security Controls on Scientific and Technical Information: History and Current Controversy", Washington, DC: Congressional Research Service, April 2, 2003, p.10.

[8] This is a fundamental conclusion of the Corson report and is echoed in other reports, such as National Research Council, *A Review of the Department of Energy Classification Policy and Practice*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1995; Commission on Protecting and Reducing Government Secrecy (the Moynihan Commission), *Secrecy*, Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office, 1997; Center for Strategic and International Studies, *Security Controls on Scientific Information and the Conduct of Scientific Research*, Washington, DC: CSIS, June 2005.

  - Regularly review and update the lists maintained by federal agencies of information and technologies subject to controls with the goal of restricting their focus and removing controls on readily available technologies.
  - Carry out the process across as well as within agencies, and include input from the S&T community.
- Principle 2: Avoid the creation of categories of SBU information and consolidate existing ones.
  - Undertake a systematic review to determine the number and provisions of all existing types of SBU in the federal government.
  - Using that baseline, require a further review and justification for the maintenance of any category. Tie remaining categories to an explicit statutory or regulatory framework that includes procedures to request access to information and appeal decisions.

**"Deemed Exports": A Special Current Case**

The controls governed by the Export Administration Act and its implementing regulations extend to the transfer of "technology". *Technology* is considered "*specific information* necessary for the 'development,' 'production,' or 'use' of a product", and providing such information to a foreign national within the United States may be considered a "deemed export" whose transfer requires an export license[9] [italics added]. The primary responsibility for administering deemed exports lies with the Department of Commerce (DOC), but other agencies may have regulations to address the issue. Deemed exports are currently the subject of significant controversy.

In 2000, Congress mandated annual reports by agency offices of inspector general (IG) on the transfer of militarily sensitive technology to countries and entities of concern; the 2004 reports focused on deemed exports. The individual agency IG reports and a joint interagency report concluded that enforcement of deemed-export regulations had been ineffective; most of the agency reports recommended particular regulatory remedies.[10]

The DOC sought comments from the public about the recommendations from its IG before proposing any changes. The department earned praise for this effort to reach out to

[9] "Generally, technologies subject to the Export Administration Regulations (EAR) are those which are in the United States or of US origin, in whole or in part. Most are proprietary. Technologies which tend to require licensing for transfer to foreign nationals are also dual-use (i.e., have both civil and military applications) and are subject to one or more control regimes, such as National Security, Nuclear Proliferation, Missile Technology, or Chemical and Biological Warfare." "Deemed Exports" Questions and Answers, Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce.
The International Traffic in Arms Regulations (ITAR), administered by the Department of State, control the export of technology, including technical information, related to items on the US Munitions List. Unlike the EAR, however, "publicly available scientific and technical information and academic exchanges and information presented at scientific meetings are not treated as controlled technical data."

[10] Reports were produced by the DOC, DOD, The Department of Energy (DOE), and the Department of State, Department of Homeland Security, and the Central Intelligence Agencies. Only the interagency report and the reports from DOC, DOD, and DOE are publicly available.

potentially affected groups and is currently reviewing the 300 plus comments it received, including those from the leaders of the National Academies.[11]

On July 12, 2005, the Department of Defense (DOD) issued a notice in the *Federal Register* seeking comments on a proposal to amend the Defense Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (DFARS) to address requirements for preventing unauthorized disclosure of export-controlled information and technology under DOD contracts that follow the recommendations in its IG report. The proposed regulation includes a requirement for access-control plans covering unique badging requirements for foreign workers and segregated work areas for export-controlled information and technology, and it makes no mention of the fundamental-research exemption.[12] Comments are due by September 12, 2005.

Many of the comments in response to the DOC expressed concern that the proposed changes were not based on systematic data or analysis and could have a significant negative impact on the conduct of research in both universities and the private sector, especially in companies with a substantial number of employees who are not US citizens. Similar comments are expected in response to the DOD proposals. Among the recommendations that have been offered to date to address these concerns are the following:

- Create a clearly defined regulatory "safe harbor" for fundamental research so that universities can have confidence that activities within the safe harbor are in compliance with security restrictions, thus permitting a focus on whatever occurred outside the safe harbor.[13]
- Do not change the current system of license requirements for use of export-controlled equipment in university basic research until the following steps have been implemented:
    - Greatly narrow the scope of controlled technologies requiring deemed export licenses, and ensure that the list remains narrow going forward.
    - Delete all controlled technology from the list whose manuals are available in the public domain, in libraries, on the Internet, or from the manufacturers.
    - Delete all equipment from the list that is available for purchase on the open market overseas from foreign or US companies.
    - Clear international students and postdoctoral fellows for access to controlled equipment when their visas are issued or shortly thereafter so that their admission to a university academic program is coupled with their access to use of export controlled equipment.[14]

**Engaging the S&T Community in the Challenges of Achieving Security**

In the wake of September 11 and the anthrax mailings, the S&T community, as in past times of crisis and along with other Americans, responded to the new challenges to US security. This response has occurred on many levels, from helping to analyze current and potential threats

[11] The letter from the presidents of the National Academies may be found at http://www7.nationalacademies.org/rscans/Academy_Presidents_Comments_to_DOC.PDF.
[12] *Federal Register* 70(132)(July 2005):39976—78. Available at http://a257.g.akamaitech.net/7/257/2422/01jan20051800/edocket.access.gpo.gov/2005/05-13305.htm.
[13] See footnote 11.
[14] These recommendations were made by Dan Mote, president of the University of Maryland, at a May 6, 2005, workshop at the National Academies and cited in the letter from the National Academies' presidents.

to working on ways in which advances in S&T can improve national and homeland security.[15] This has required active engagement by the S&T community with policymakers, particularly in national and homeland security, in law enforcement, and in intelligence, where many of the parties at the table are likely to lack experience dealing with one another. It also involves continuing efforts to ensure that highly qualified S&T personnel are attracted to working on problems related to national and homeland security.

Press reports since September 11 have suggested that officials in the DOD and DHS are concerned about attracting eligible workers, especially those with specialties in demand in open parts of the private sector. Since a significant portion of the work may be restricted or classified, this issue is largely a subset of the wider problem addressed in other background papers of ensuring that sufficient qualified US citizens are available to do the work. It also involves ensuring that restrictions on non-US citizens as employees are appropriate.

In addition, attracting personnel requires the creation of a work environment that will enable R&D in particular to be "cutting-edge". For example, scientists working in a restricted or classified environment, especially at federal laboratories, still need to interact with the wider scientific community, including foreign visitors and collaborators, where much of the innovation most relevant to their work is taking place. In the wake of a series of scandals over alleged security lapses in the DOE nuclear-weapons complex in the late 1990s, the department imposed a number of new and expanded security restrictions. This sparked substantial concern about ensuring that the scientific quality of the laboratories could be sustained, and several organizations made proposals they believed would provide an appropriate balance between openness and security, these including[16]

- Engage S&T personnel in the development and implementation plans for security measures.
- Continue to accept non-US citizens as visitors and in some cases staff, expedite security reviews for visitors, and more generally work to avoid prejudice against foreigners;
- As with recommendations for other situations, focus and limit security efforts to address the most important security situations.

Beyond attracting S&T personnel, it is essential to engage the broader S&T community in efforts to bring the latest S&T to bear on security problems. Much of the relevant research and many of the best ideas seem likely to come from outside the government and its own network of laboratories. Tapping these resources involves meeting several needs. One is ensuring an attractive climate for undertaking security-related R&D in universities and the private sector. Another is engaging the S&T community in a variety of advisory capacities and communication channels. Some observers have recommended a variety of new mechanisms or expanded and revised roles for existing mechanisms, including the following:

---

[15] For a comprehensive examination of the potential contributions of S&T, see National Research Council, *Making the Nation Safer: The Role of S&T in Countering Terrorism*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2002. Guides to additional reports and current projects of The National Academies related to homeland security may be found at http://www.nationalacademies.org/subjectindex/sec.html.

[16] National Research Council, Balancing Scientific Openness and National Security Controls at the Nuclear Weapons Laboratories, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1999; Center for Strategic and International Studies, Science and Security in the 21st Century: A Report to the Secretary of Energy on the Department of Energy Laboratories, Washington, DC: CSIS, 2002.

- Encourage communication among the diverse communities involved in security issues—policy, S&T, national and homeland security, law enforcement, and intelligence—so that policies regarding scientific communication are both effective and broadly accepted.
- Build bridges among these communities, particularly in areas of S&T, such as the life sciences, where there is little history of working with the government on security issues.[17]

[17] See the recommendations, for example, in National Research Council, *Biotechnology Research in an Age of Terrorism*, Washington, DC: the National Academies Press, 2004.

**Scientific Communication and Security**
**Appendix SC&S**
**Figures**

**Figure SC&S-1: Examples of "Sensitive but Unclassified" and Other Controlled Information.**

**Figure SC&S-1: Examples of "Sensitive but Unclassified" and Other Controlled Information.**

| Data Category | Description |
|---|---|
| FOIA Exempted | Any information that is exempted from mandatory disclosure under the Freedom of Information Act. |
| Intelligence Activities | Information that involves or is related in intelligence activities, including collection methods, personnel, and unclassified information. |
| Cryptologic Activities | Information that involves encryption/decryption of information; communications security equipment, keys, algorithms, processes; information involving the methods and internal workings of cryptologic equipment. |
| Command and Control | Information involving the command and control of forces, troop movements. |
| Weapon and Weapon Systems | Information that deals with the design, functionality, and capabilities of weapons and weapon systems both fielded and un-fielded. |
| RD&E | Research, development, and engineering data on un-fielded products, projects, systems, and programs that are in the development or acquisition phase. |
| Logistics | Information dealing with logistics, supplies, materials, parts and parts requisitions, including quantities and numbers. |
| Medical Care/HIPAA | Information dealing with personal medical care, patient treatment, prescriptions, physician notes, patient charts, x-rays, diagnosis, etc. |
| Personnel Management | Information dealing with personnel, including evaluations, individual salaries, assignments, and internal personnel management. |
| Privacy Act Data | Information covered by the Privacy Act of 1974 (5 U.S.C. § 552A) |
| Contractual Data | Information and records pertaining to contracts, bids, proposals, and other data involving government contracts. |
| Investigative Data | Information and data pertaining to official criminal and civil investigations such as investigator notes and attorney-client privileged information. |

Source: Congressional Research Service. *"Sensitive But Unclassified" and Other Federal Security Controls on Scientific and Technical Information: History and Current Controversy.* (CRS Report for Congress. Order Code RL31845.) February 20, 2004.

This paper summarizes findings and recommendations from a variety of recently published reports and papers as input to the deliberations of the Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. Statements in this paper should not be seen as the conclusions of the National Academies or the committee.

## Science and Technology Issues in National and Homeland Security

### Summary

Keeping a technological edge over adversaries of the United States has long been a key component of our national security strategy. US preeminence in science and technology (S&T) is considered essential to achieving that goal, so throughout the Cold War the United States generously funded research and development, including basic research, that could contribute to national security. Since 1950, "defense" funding has been the largest component of the overall federal R&D budget, and it has been a majority of that funding since FY 1981 (see Figure NHS-1). That investment has provided substantial spinoffs to the private sector, adding to the knowledge base and innovation that have fueled US productivity and prosperity.

In the wake of the September 11 attacks and the anthrax mailings, the nation has looked to S&T to help meet the new challenges of homeland security. Meanwhile, the US military is in the midst of a "transformation" that depends on taking advantage of new and emerging technologies to respond to the diffuse and uncertain threats that characterize the 21st century.

The current pursuit of national and homeland security is taking place in a profoundly different environment, however. The end of the Cold War and the increasing commercialization and globalization of the traditional sources of S&T innovation for security have produced significant challenges for US national and homeland security policies. Many proposals to ensure continuing US S&T leadership see defense funding as essential to supporting this goal, requiring policies that would be able to serve both economic and national and homeland security objectives.

Federal actions that have been proposed include the following:

- Raise the level of S&T spending to 3% of Department of Defense (DOD) spending and restore DOD's historical commitment to basic research by directing 20% of its S&T budget to long-term research.
    - Increase the budget for mathematics, the physical sciences, and engineering research by 12% a year for the next 7 years within the research accounts of the Department of Energy (DOE), the National Science Foundation (NSF), the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), and the DOD.
    - Within the DOD, set the balance of support for 6.1 basic research more in favor of unfettered exploration than of research related to short-term needs.

- For homeland security R&D:
    - Commit to increase the portion of support that the Department of Homeland Security (DHS) devotes to basic research, perhaps by setting targets to be achieved within 5-10 years as the most immediate needs are satisfied.
    - Undertake a comprehensive review to identify opportunities across the entire federal homeland security R&D budget to support increased investments in basic and applied research.
    - On the applied R&D side, search for technologies that can reduce costs or provide ancillary benefits to civil society to ensure a sustainable effort against terrorist threats.
- Conduct a review of the current military and dual-use export-control systems to identify policies that narrowly target exports of concern without needlessly burdening peaceful commerce; strengthen the multilateral cooperation essential to any effective export-control regime; streamline export classification, licensing, and reporting processes; and afford the President the authority and flexibility needed to advance US interests.
- Establish a new framework for coordinating multilateral export controls based on harmonized export-control policies and enhanced defense cooperation with close allies and friends.
- Assess whether the current system of the national laboratories that carry out defense-related research has the structure, personnel, and resources to provide the cutting-edge work and innovation to support national and homeland security R&D needs.
- Create a new National Defense Education Act (NDEA) for the 21st century. The new NDEA would include portable graduate fellowships, institutional traineeships, incentives to create professional science and engineering (S&E) masters programs, undergraduate loan forgiveness, grants to support new and innovative undergraduate curricula, grants to expand K-12 education outreach, summer training and research opportunities for K-12 teachers, employer S&E and foreign-language educational tax breaks, national laboratory and federal service professional incentives, and additional funds for program evaluation.

**The National and Homeland Security R&D Portfolio**

With the end of the Cold War, US defense investment, already declining in the wake of the Reagan Administration's massive buildup, entered the longest period of sustained decline since the end of World War II, with deep cuts in funding for weapons procurement and R&D. September 11 and the wars in Afghanistan and Iraq have more than restored overall funding levels, but serious concerns remain about the size and even more the mix of the R&D portfolio. In recent years, more and more emphasis has gone to development as opposed to research (see Figure NHS-2). The portion of the DOD R&D budget devoted to basic research (the "6.1" account) has declined in constant dollars from

3.3% in FY 1994 to an estimated 1.9% in FY 2005 (see Figure NHS-3).[1] In addition, within that account there has been increasing emphasis on research that appears more likely to yield short-term pay-offs rather than the more open exploration that has been so important to past advances. The President's budget request for FY 2006 called for a 13% cut in the 6.1 account, which by July 2005 the House of Representatives had partially restored to a 4% decrease. The House also called for a 4.2 % gain in applied research (the "6.2" account) rather than the 15% reduction called for by the President's budget request, although the gain would come largely in the form of earmarks.[2]

Beyond meeting the immediate perceived R&D needs of the US military, broad service policy documents, such as *Joint Vision 2010* and *2020,* look toward substantial expansions in the breadth and depth of S&T to support US strategy.[3] The transformation goals set forth in DOD's 2001 Quadrennial Defense Review (QDR) also depend on continuing to exploit the enhanced capabilities that can emerge from advances in S&T; the report called for significantly increasing S&T spending within the DOD budget.[4]

Achieving these goals will require a return to the traditional strong support for basic and applied research, in particular in the physical sciences and engineering. These goals also will demand initiatives in new and emerging areas of S&T, such as those called for by the QDR and a recent Defense Science Board study.[5] In addition, these changes are considered essential to sustaining the role that defense research has played in improving the broader health of the US S&T enterprise.

Among the actions that have been proposed for the federal government are these:

- Raise the level of S&T spending to 3% of DOD spending[6] and restore DOD's historical commitment to basic research by directing 20% of its S&T budget to long-term research.[7]
- Increase the budget for mathematics, the physical sciences, and engineering research by 12% a year for the next 7 years within the research accounts of DOE, NSF, NIST, DOD.
- Within DOD, set the balance of support for 6.1 basic research more in favor of unfettered exploration than of research related to short-term needs.

Funding for R&D for homeland security is a much more recent enterprise. The majority of US homeland security R&D funding actually occurs outside DHS (see Table NHS-1).[8] After annual increases of more than $200 million in each of its first 3 years,

---

[1] Funding for the 6.2 "applied research" account has gone up and down but now is 5.5 % in FY 2005 compared with 7.6 % in FY1994. Constant dollar and Percentage calculations by the Council on Competitiveness based on AAAS, "Historical Table: Trends in DOD 'S&T,' 1994-2005".
[2] AAAS, "Update on R&D in FY 2006 DOD House Appropriations", July 2005.
[3] National Research Council, *Assessment of Department of Defense Basic Research*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2005.
[4] Department of Defense, *Quadrennial Defense Review Report*, Washington, DC: Department of Defense, 2001.
[5] Defense Science Board, The *Defense Science Board 2001 Summer Study on Defense Science and Technology*, Washington, DC: DSB, 2001.
[6], p.41.
[7] Council on Competitiveness, *Innovate America: National Innovation Initiative Summit and Report: Thriving in a World of Challenge and Change*, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness, 2004.
[8] AAAS, "Table 4: Federal Homeland Security-Related R&D by Agency", March 2005.

the FY 2006 budget request for DHS R&D slowed to a 3.6% increase, or $44 million, for a total of $1.3 billion. To date, both the House and the Senate have essentially retained the requested levels, but each has made changes in how the funds would be allocated. Efforts to consolidate all DHS R&D programs into the department's Directorate for S&T are scheduled to be completed in FY 2006.[9]

Basic research is at present a relatively small portion of the federal homeland security R&D portfolio. The priority is instead on efforts to use S&T to develop and field new methods and measures to increase security as quickly as possible.[10] The primary exception is the biodefense program, in particular the very large National Institutes of Health research program.

The question of the balance across the homeland security R&D portfolio is an open issue. If more funding for basic research is a goal, options for the federal government include the following:

- Commit to increase the portion of support that DHS devotes to basic research, perhaps by setting targets to be achieved within 5-10 years as the most immediate needs are satisfied.
- Undertake a comprehensive review to identify opportunities across the entire federal homeland security R&D budget to support increased investments in basic and applied research.
- On the applied R&D side, search for technologies that can reduce costs or provide ancillary benefits to civil society to ensure a sustainable effort against terrorist threats.

**New Sources of Innovation for Security: The Technology Transfer Dilemma**

Traditionally, US government programs were the primary driver for research into new defense-related technologies. The DOD relied on a dedicated domestic industrial base, supported largely by the results of generous DOD-funded R&D in the commercial sector and universities.

That Cold War model no longer exists because of the deep cuts in US defense research investment already discussed and the dramatic increases in private sector R&D investment, particularly in the high-technology areas such as information and communications technologies essential to transformation. The US government has attempted to come to terms with this new situation through a variety of initiatives to enable it to take advantage of innovation from the commercial sector that could "spin on" to enhance military capabilities.

The dramatic consolidation and increasing globalization of many sectors of the traditional defense industrial base also have encouraged US efforts to find ways to enhance technology cooperation with close friends and allies. In the decade following

9 AAAS, "R&D Funding Update on R&D in the FY 2006 DHS Budget", 2005.

10 For a comprehensive examination of the potential contributions of science and technology, see National Research Council, *Making the Nation Safer: The Role of Science and Technology in Countering Terrorism*, Washington, DC: The National Academies Press, 2002. Guides to the additional reports and current projects of the National Academies related to homeland security may be found at http://www.nationalacademies.org/subjectindex/sec.html.

the end of the Cold War, the 15 major US defense contractors shrank to four huge firms (see Figure NHS-4).[11] Many US defense firms have embraced a global business model, and non-US firms, primarily from Europe, have gained access to the US defense market on their own or in cooperation with US companies.[12]

These fundamental changes in the sources and structures of innovation for national security have also made it easier for US adversaries to gain access to knowledge and technology that could improve their capabilities.[13] Policies to draw on innovation from firms in the commercial sector with global markets and international workforces or to enhance international technology cooperation potentially clash with longstanding US efforts to control the leakage of technology. September 11 and increasing concerns for terrorism—especially using nuclear, chemical, or biologic—agents, have exacerbated these tensions. Faced with adversaries who are far less technologically sophisticated or who are relying on technology to make rapid advances in their capabilities—and for whom a much broader range of US technologies is thus potentially relevant than for a technologically advanced opponent like the Soviet Union—there is a natural inclination to broaden the scope of US control efforts to cover as much as possible that could be of use.

There is increasing concern that current policy initiatives serve neither technology transfer and cooperation on the one hand nor proliferation prevention on the other.[14] In part, this is because technology-transfer policy is being pursued largely through a policy apparatus constructed during the Cold War that critics from many quarters charge has never genuinely adjusted to the new threats facing the United States. According to critics, continued reliance on this apparatus—in particular, the current export-control regime for military and so-called dual-use goods and technologies—might do relatively little to prevent others from gaining access to US products and know-how while damaging the capacity of the United States to draw on innovation in the commercial sector for both economic and national and homeland security objectives.

While critics generally share profound dissatisfaction with the current system, there is little consensus within or among the federal government, Congress, and the affected communities about remedies for the situation. These disputes are not new, but they take on particular force now because of the depth and extent of the disputes and because of their potential impact on efforts to promote the health and capacity of the US S&T enterprise.

---

[11] A.R. Markusen and S.S. Costigan, "The Military Industrial Challenge", in Markusen and Costigan (eds.), *Arming the Future: A Defense Industry for the 21st Century*, New York: Council on Foreign Relations, 1999, p.8.

[12] "Transformed? A Survey of the Defence Industry", *The Economist*, July 20, 2002; and K. Hayward, "The Globalization of Defence Industries", *Survival*, Summer 2001.

[13] See, for example, National Intelligence Council, *Mapping the Global Future: Report of the National Intelligence Council's 2020 Project*, Washington, DC: NIC, December 2004, and Defense Science Board Task Force on Globalization and Security, *Final Report*, Washington, DC: Office of the Under Secretary of Defense for Acquisition and Technology, 1999.

[14] See, for example, *Defense Science Board Task Force on Globalization and Security, Final Report; CSIS, Technology and Security in the 21st Century: US Military Export Control Reform;* Government Accountability Office, *Defense Trade: Arms Export Control System in the Post-9/11 Environment*, GAO-05-234, February 16, 2005; and GAO, *Defense Trade: Arms Export Control Vulnerabilities and Inefficiencies in the Post-9/11 Security Environment*, GAO-05-468R, April 7, 2005.

For the federal government, there are a number of possible options, including these:

- Conduct a review of the current US military and dual-use export control systems to identify policies that narrowly target exports of concern without needlessly burdening peaceful commerce; strengthen the multilateral cooperation essential to any effective export-control regime; streamline export classification, licensing, and reporting processes; and afford the President the authority and flexibility needed to advance US interests.[15]
- Establish a new framework for coordinating multilateral export controls based on harmonized export-control policies and enhanced defense cooperation with close allies and friends.[16]

**The Role of the National Laboratories in National and Homeland Security**

Over the course of the Cold War, the United States created a system of national and federal laboratories, some devoted exclusively to research related to national security and some serving multiple roles. The DOE, for example, maintains 10 national laboratories that are managed through contracts with universities and private firms.[17] The DOD maintains a much larger system. Other laboratories maintained by such agencies as National Aeronautics and Space Administration may also conduct defense-related work. DHS has turned to some of the existing DOE laboratories to support its new R&D enterprise;[18] it also is creating the National Bioterrorism Analysis and Countermeasures Center to handle its large biodefense-research portfolio. Some of these laboratories do a mix of classified and unclassified research, and others carry out only unclassified work, in some cases to ensure the maximal openness for their basic-research programs.

Since the end of the Cold War, questions have arisen periodically about the continuing relevance of the national-laboratory system. Periodic reviews of the DOE laboratories, for example, have proposed substantial changes, including consolidation of the laboratories and significant changes in management structures.[19] More general concerns include how to ensure the quality of scientific personnel in the laboratories and whether measures should introduce greater competition to increase the incentives for the laboratories to draw on the best personnel and ideas in the private sector.[20]

---

[15] Center for Strategic and International Studies, *Technology and Security in the 21st Century: US Military Export Control Reform*, Washington, DC: CSIS, 2001.
[16] Henry L. Stimson Center and Center for Strategic and International Studies, *Enhancing Multilateral Export Controls for US National Security*, Washington, DC: The Henry L. Stimson Center, 2001.
[17] See, for example, http://www.energy.gov/engine/content.do?BT_CODE=ST_SS16.
[18] See http://www.dhs.gov/dhspublic/display?theme=27&content=3000.
[19] See, for example, Department of Energy, *Task Force on Alternatives Futures for the Department of Energy National Laboratories* (Galvin Commission), 1995; General Accounting Office, *Department of Energy National Laboratories Need Clearer Vision and Better Management*, GAO/RCED -95-10, January 1995; National Research Council, *Maintaining High Scientific Quality at Los Alamos and Livermore National Laboratories*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2004.
[20] See, for example, National Research Council, *National Laboratories: Building New Ways to Work Together -- Report of a Workshop*, Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2005, and the suggestions about personnel in Defense Science Board, The *Defense Science Board 2001 Summer Study on Defense Science and Technology*, Washington, DC: DSB, 2001.

Options for the federal government to address these issues include an initial effort to:

- Assess whether the current system of the national laboratories that carry out defense-related research has the structure, personnel, and resources to provide the cutting-edge work and innovation to support national and homeland security R&D needs.

**National Defense Education Act**

Adopted by Congress in 1958, the original NDEA was intended to boost education and training in security and national-defense related fields. NDEA was a response to the launch of Sputnik and the emerging threat to the United States posed by the Soviet Union. The NDEA was funded with approximately $400 million to $500 million (in constant 2004 dollars). NDEA provided funding to enhance research facilities; fellowships to thousands of graduate students pursuing degrees in science, mathematics, engineering, and foreign languages; and low-interest loans for undergraduates in these areas.

By the 1970s, the act had been largely superseded by other programs, but its legacy remains in the form of several federal student-loan programs.[21] The legislation ultimately benefited all of higher education as the notion of defense was expanded to include most disciplines and fields of study.[22]

The DOD workforce is critical to our nation's security planning. This workforce, however, has experienced a real attrition of more than 13,000 personnel over the last 10 years. At the same time, DOD projects that its workforce demands will increase by more than 10% (by 2010). Indeed, several major studies[23] since 1999 argue that the number of US graduates in critical areas is not meeting national, homeland, and economic security needs (see Figure NHS-5). Science, engineering, and language skills continue have very high priority across government and industrial sectors.

Many positions in critical-skills areas require security clearances, meaning that only US citizens may apply. While over 95% of undergraduates are US citizens, in many of the S&E fields less than 50% of those earning PhDs are US citizens. Retirements also loom on the horizon: over 60% of the federal S&E workforce is over 45, a large proportion of whom are employed by DOD (see Table NHS-2). DOD and other federal agencies face increased competition from domestic and global commercial interests for top-of-their-class, security-clearance-eligible scientists and engineers.

To ensure adequate human resources in fields important for homeland security, the National Research Council in the report *Making the Nation Safer* recommended that

---

[21] Association of American Universities, *A National Defense Education Act for the 21st Century. Renewing Our Commitment to US Students, Science, Scholarship, and Society*, Washington DC: AAU, 2005. Available at: http://www.aau.edu/education/NDEAOP.pdf.

[22] Michael Parsons, 2005, "Higher Education Is Just Another Special Interest", *The Chronicle of Higher Education* 51(22): B20. Available at: http://chronicle.com/prm/weekly/v51/i22/22b02001.htm.

[23] See, for example, the National Science Board's companion paper to *Science and Engineering Indicators, 2004.* Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation, 2004.

there be a human-resource development program similar to the NDEA.[24] National weapons laboratories have instituted specific programs to recruit and hire critically skilled people to staff nuclear-stockpile stewardship programs—for which US citizenship is a primary consideration—including graduate and postdoctoral internship programs, programs involving local high schools and universities, and support for current employees to gain additional training (see Table NHS-3). Human-resources offices are attempting to solve workforce problems through a number of independent actions. Many agencies now have direct-hire authorities and can offer significant signing bonuses in special cases. A recent Government Accountability Office report indicates these multiapproach programs are a major reason that DOD laboratories currently do not have significant problems locating the necessary people to fill critical-skills positions.[25]

DOD has proposed, as part of the department's 2006 appropriations,[26] to create and fund NDEA 2005 (see Figure NHS-6). This program would extend a 2004 pilot SMART program and, as with the original NDEA, would provide scholarships and fellowships to students in critical fields of science, mathematics, engineering, and foreign languages. It would expand on the original act in providing scholarships to undergraduates, including those pursuing associate degrees. The program would cover tuition, room and board, internships, tutors, and travel for all students. DOD requires a service commitment on completion of studies.

DOD has requested $10.3 million in its FY 2006 budget request for this program. SMART was initiated in 2005 as a pilot program and funded at $2.5 million. The program has generated considerable interest among students: SMART currently funds 25 students, but DOD vetted over 600 applications.[27]

Possible actions include:

- Create a new NDEA for the 21st century to promote the education and training of students in science, technology, engineering, mathematics, and foreign languages. The new NDEA would include portable graduate fellowships, institutional traineeships, incentives to create professional S&E masters programs, undergraduate loan forgiveness, grants to support innovative undergraduate curricula, grants to expand K-12 education outreach, summer training and research opportunities for K-12 teachers, employer S&E and foreign-language

[24] National Research Council, *Making the Nation Safer: The Role of Science and Technology in Countering Terrorism*, Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 2001.

[25] Government Accountability Office, *National Nuclear Security Administration: Contractors' Strategies to Recruit and Retain and Critically Skilled Workforce Are Generally Effective* (GAO-05-164), Washington DC: GAO, 2005.

[26] See H.R. 1815, National Defense Authorization Act for Fiscal Year 2006 § Sec. 1105. Science, Mathematics, and Research for Transformation (SMART) Defense Education Program--National Defense Education Act (NDEA), Phase I. Introduced to the House on 4/26/2005; on 6/6/2005 referred to Senate committee; status as of 7/26/2005: received in the Senate and read twice and referred to the Committee on Armed Services.

[27] Jeffrey Brainard, , "Defense Department Hopes to Revive Sputnik-Era Science-Education Programs", *The Chronicle of Higher Education* 51(36)(2005): A18. Available at: http://chronicle.com/prm/weekly/v51/i36/36a01802.htm.

educational tax breaks, national-laboratory and federal-service professional incentives, and additional funds for program evaluation.[28]

[28] National Research Council. 2001. *Making the Nation Safer: The Role of Science and Technology in Countering Terrorism.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press; Ronald M. Sega, Director of Defense Research and Engineering, DoD, *Testimony Before the Subcommittee on Emerging Threats and Capabilities of the Senate Armed Services Committee*, March 9, 2005. Available at http://armed-services.senate.gov/statemnt/2005/March/Sega%2003-09-05.pdf ; and Association of American Universities. 2005. *A National Defense Education Act for the 21st Century. Renewing Our Commitment to US Students, Science, Scholarship, and Society* (White paper). Washington DC: AAU. Available at http://www.aau.edu/education/NDEAOP.pdf.

**Science and Technology Issues in National and Homeland Security**
**Appendix NHS**
**Figures and Tables**

**Figure NHS-1: Since 1950, Defense Funding Has Been the Largest Component of the Overall Federal R&D Budget, and It Has Been a Majority of That Funding since FY 1981.**

**Figure NHS-2: In Recent Years, More and More Emphasis Has Gone to Development as Opposed to Research.**

**Figure NHS-3: The Portion of the DOD R&D Budget Devoted to Basic Research (The "6.1" Account) Has Declined in Constant Dollars.**

**Table NHS-1: The Majority of US Homeland Security R&D Funding Actually Occurs Outside the Department of Homeland Security.**

**Figure NHS-4: In the Decade Following the End of the Cold War, the 15 Major US Defense Contractors Shrank to Four Huge Firms.**

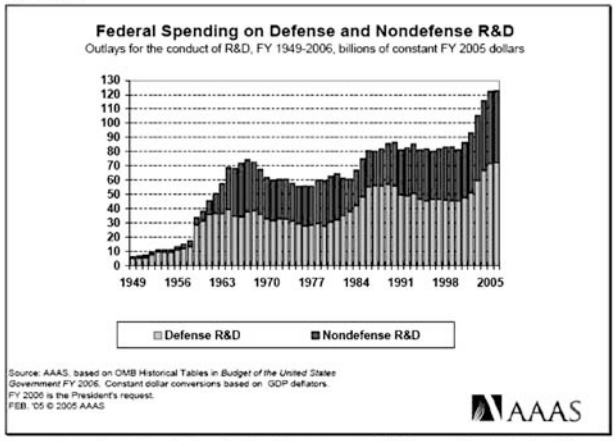
**Figure NHS-5: The Number of US Graduates in Critical Areas Is Not Meeting National, Homeland, and Economic Security Needs.**

**Table NHS-2: Over 60 % of the Federal S&E Workforce Is Over 45, a Large Proportion of Whom Are Employed by DOD.**

**Table NHS-3: National Weapons Laboratories Have Instituted Specific Programs to Recruit and Hire Critically Skilled People to Staff Nuclear-Stockpile Stewardship Programs, for Which US Citizenship Is a Primary Consideration.**

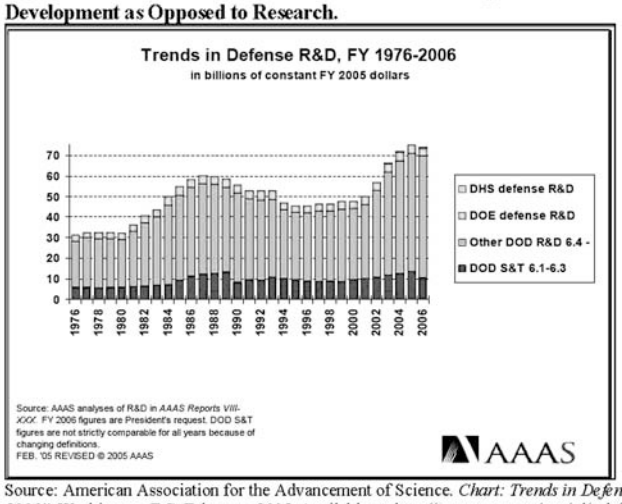
**Figure NHS-6: DOD Strategy for NDEA Within Its Current Portfolio of Workforce Programs.**

**Figure NHS-1: Since 1950, Defense Funding Has Been the Largest Component of the Overall Federal R&D Fudget, and It Has Been a Majority of That Funding since FY 1981.**



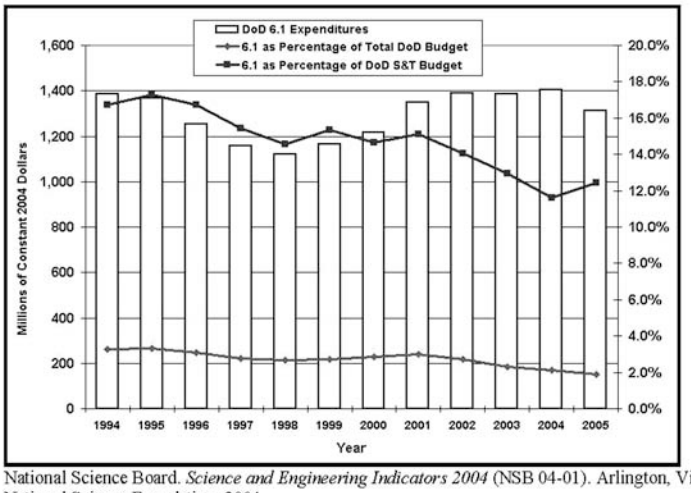

Source: American Association for the Advancement of Science. *Chart: Federal Spending on Defense and Nondefense R&D."* Washington, DC. February, 2005. Available at: ttp://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/histde06.pdf

**Figure NHS-2: In Recent Years,Mmore and More Emphasis Has Gone to Development as Opposed to Research.**




Source: American Association for the Advancement of Science. *Chart: Trends in Defense R&D: FY 1976-2006"* Washington, DC. February, 2005. Available at: http://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/trdef06c.pdf

**Figure NHS-3: The Portion of the DOD R&D Budget Devoted to Basic Research (The "6.1" Account) Has Declined in Constant Dollars.**




National Science Board. *Science and Engineering Indicators 2004* (NSB 04-01). Arlington, Virginia. National Science Foundation. 2004.

**Table NHS-1: The Majority of US Homeland Security R&D Funding Actually Occurs Outside the Department of Homeland Security.**

(budget authority in millions of dollars)

| | FY 2002 Actual | FY 2003 Actual | FY 2004 Actual | FY 2005 Estimate | **FY 2006 Budget** | Change FY 05-06 Amount | % |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Agriculture | 175 | 155 | 40 | 161 | **172** | 11 | 6.8% |
| Commerce | 20 | 16 | 23 | 73 | **82** | 9 | 11.9% |
| Department of Defense | 259 | 212 | 267 | 362 | **394** | 32 | 8.7% |
| Department of Energy | 50 | 48 | 47 | 92 | **81** | -12 | -12.5% |
| Department of Homeland Security | 266 | 737 | 1,028 | 1,243 | **1,287** | 44 | 3.6% |
| Environmental Protection Agency | 95 | 70 | 52 | 33 | **94** | 61 | 185.1% |
| Health and Human Services | 177 | 1,653 | 1,724 | 1,796 | **1,802** | 6 | 0.4% |
| *- National Institutes of Health* | *162* | *1,633* | *1,703* | *1,774* | ***1,781*** | 6 | 0.4% |
| National Aeronautics and Space Adm. | 73 | 73 | 88 | 88 | **92** | 4 | 4.5% |
| National Science Foundation | 229 | 271 | 321 | 326 | **329** | 3 | 1.0% |
| Transportation | 106 | 7 | 3 | 0 | **0** | 0 | - - |
| All Other | 48 | 47 | 32 | 42 | **92** | 50 | 118.8% |
| **Total Homeland Security R&D** | 1,499 | 3,290 | 3,626 | 4,216 | **4,425** | 208 | 4.9% |
| *(Total Homeland Security Spending)* | *32,881* | *42,447* | *40,834* | *46,015* | ***49,943*** | *3,928* | *8.5%* |

AAAS, based on Office of Management and Budget data from OMB's *2003 Report to Congress on Combating Terrorism* and *Budget of the US Government FY 2006*. Figures adjusted from OMB data by AAAS to include conduct of R&D and R&D facilities, and revised estimates of DHS R&D.

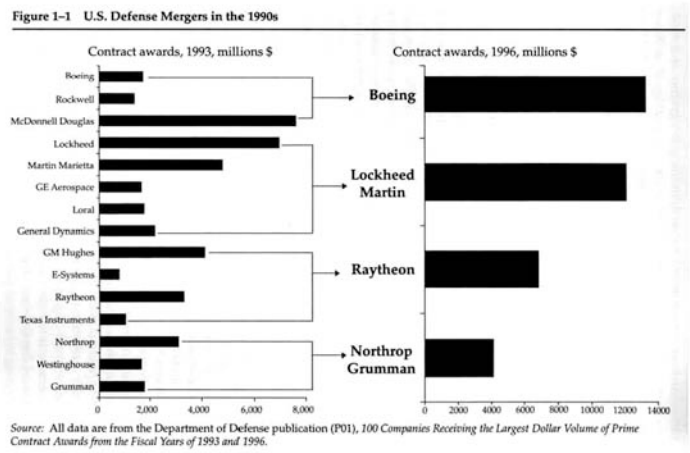
Figures do not include non-R&D homeland security activities, nor do they include DOD R&D investments in overseas combating terrorism.

Funding for all years includes regular appropriations and emergency supplemental appropriations.

**REVISED February 17, 2005**

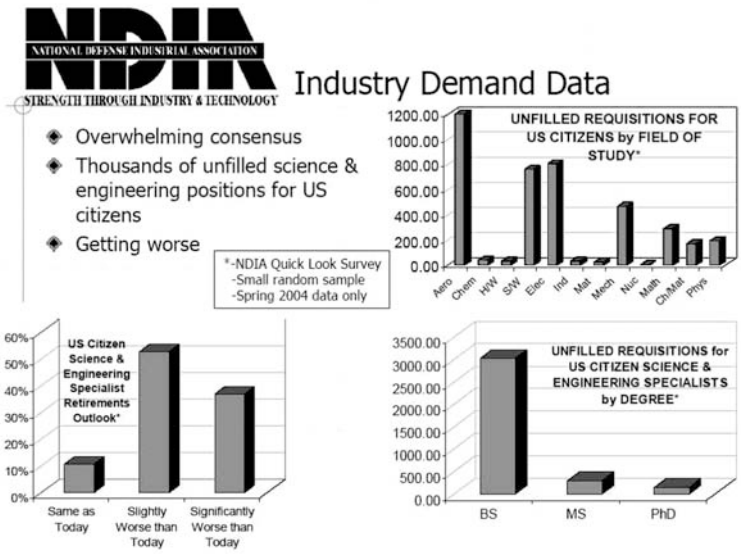
Source: American Association for the Advancement of Science. *Guide to R&D Funding Data: Historical Data*. Washington, DC. 2005. Available at: http://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/guihist.htm

**Figure NHS-4: In The Decade Following the End of the Cold War, the 15 Major US Defense Contractors Shrank to Four Huge Firms.**




Source: Ann R. Markusen and Sean S. Costigan. *Arming The Future*. New York: Council on Foreign Relations Press. 1999. Figure 1-1, p 8.

**Figure NHS-5: The Number of US Graduates in Critical Areas Is Not Meeting National, Homeland, and Economic Security Needs.**




Source: Edward Swallow, Chair NDIA Space Division and Chair, Industry Study on Critical Workforce Issues. Presentation at the National Defense Industry Association meeting. April 2005. Available at: http://proceedings.ndia.org/4340/swallow.pdf.

**Table NHS-2: Over 60 % of the Federal S&E Workforce Is Over 45, a Large Proportion of Whom Are Employed by DOD.**

| | 1999 | 2000 | 2001 | 2002 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total S&Es | 44.2% | 43.5% | 43.1% | 43.4% |
| All sci | 26.1% | 25.4% | 25.6% | 26.9% |
| Comp/Math sc | 45.5% | 43.9% | 44.0% | 45.3% |
| Life sci | 11.4% | 11.2% | 11.0% | 10.9% |
| Physical sci | 26.7% | 26.2% | 26.1% | 26.2% |
| Social sci | 20.4% | 20.4% | 19.7% | 19.6% |
| All eng | 66.7% | 66.4% | 66.2% | 66.7% |
| Aerospace | 44.7% | 43.6% | 43.0% | 42.8% |
| Chemical | 62.3% | 63.6% | 65.7% | 67.6% |
| Civil | 61.8% | 61.3% | 60.6% | 60.1% |
| EE&Comp | 79.3% | 79.1% | 78.5% | 79.1% |
| Industrial | 81.1% | 80.2% | 79.4% | 79.4% |
| Mechanical | 88.2% | 88.2% | 88.4% | 89.2% |
| Other eng | 54.6% | 55.1% | 55.5% | 55.9% |

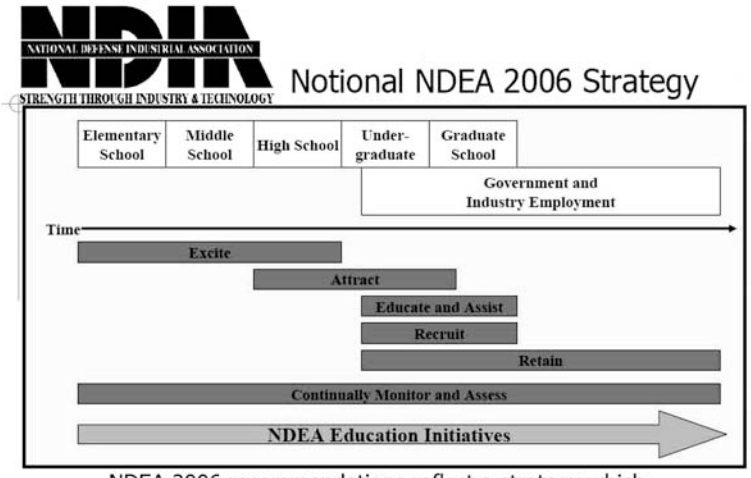
Source: Pre-release - OPM data for NSF S&E Indicators 2005, Table B-14. Federal scientists and engineers, by agency and major occupational group: 1999-2002

**Table NHS-3: National Weapons Laboratories Have Instituted Specific Programs to Recruit and Hire Critically Skilled People to Staff Nuclear-Stockpile Stewardship Programs, for Which US Citizenship Is a Primary Consideration.**

| | Program | Sponsor |
|---|---|---|
| **Pre-College (K12)** | Materials World Modules | Army |
| | STARBASE | OSD-RA |
| | eCybermission | Army |
| **Undergraduate** | Awards to Stimulate and Support Undergraduate Research Education (ASSURE) | AFOSR with NSF |
| | Research Assistantships in Microelectronics | DARPA with Semiconductor Industries Association |
| | Science, Mathematics, and Research for Transformation (SMART) | AFOSR |
| **Graduate** | National Defense Science and Engineering Graduate Fellowships | NDSEG |
| | Naval Research—S&T for Americas Readiness (N-STAR) | Navy with NSF |
| | SMART | AFOSR |

Source: Bill Berry, Acting Deputy Undersecretary for Laboratories and Basic Science, "STEM Education Act" Presentation at STARBASE Directors' Conference, April 7, 2005. Available at http://www.starbasedod.com/resources/SME%20Briefing-STARBASE%20Directors%20Conf%204-7-05v5%20wo%20Backup.ppt

**Figure NHS-6: DOD Strategy for NDEA Within Its Current Portfolio of Workforce Programs.**




NDEA 2006 recommendations reflect a strategy which sets preconditions for an adequate S&E workforce pipeline based upon providing S&E-related educational opportunities

Source: Edward Swallow, Chair NDIA Space Division and Chair, Industry Study on Critical Workforce Issues. Presentation at the National Defense Industry Association meeting. April 2005. Available at: http://proceedings.ndia.org/4340/swallow.pdf.

# Appendix E

## ESTIMATED RECOMMENDATION COST TABLE

The following tables provide each implementation action and a "back of the envelope" estimate of the incremental annual cost to the federal government for each. These cost estimates are to illustrate the size of the program the committee is proposing and are not definitive. To obtain a more definitive estimate, economic modeling would be necessary.

Since the pre-publication version of the report was released on October 12, 2005, policymakers have requested a 10-year annual cost estimate for the committee's recommendations. That estimate is what is presented here. In developing this estimate, the committee collected more detailed information than it had at that time to develop these cost estimates. In addition, we have attempted to provide sufficient information so that the cost estimates could be recreated.

In many cases, programs are phased in over a number of years. In addition, some of the scholarship and fellowship programs take 3-4 years to reach steady state.

The aggregate cost estimate of all the recommendations remain in the same range as the committee developed in October. The cost estimate at that time was $9.2 to $23.8 billion. The current aggregate cost estimate is $8.6 to $19.8 billion.

**Gathering Storm Annual Cost Estimate, by Recommendation, 2007-2016 (millions of dollars)**

| Recommendation | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 | 5-year total | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 | % of Total in 2016 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| K-12 | 376 | 747 | 1219 | 1689 | 1976 | 6007 | 2071 | 2091 | 2091 | 2091 | 2091 | **10.5** |
| Research | 1670 | 2790 | 4010 | 5430 | 6850 | 20750 | 8250 | 9650 | 9650 | 9650 | 9650 | **48.6** |
| Higher Education | 1100 | 1700 | 2300 | 2675 | 2675 | 10450 | 2675 | 2675 | 2675 | 2675 | 2675 | **13.5** |
| Innovation | 5423 | 5423 | 5423 | 5423 | 5423 | 27115 | 5423 | 5423 | 5423 | 5423 | 5423 | **27.3** |
| **TOTAL** | **8569** | **10660** | **12952** | **15217** | **16924** | 64322 | **18419** | **19839** | **19839** | **19839** | **19839** | 99.9 |

**Gathering Storm Annual Cost Estimate, by Action Item, 2007-2016 (millions of dollars)**

| Action Item | Recommendation | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 | 5-year total | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A-1 | Recruit 10, 000 teachers | 110 | 295 | 550 | 815 | 965 | 2735 | 1040 | 1040 | 1040 | 1040 | 1040 |
| A-2a | Summer Institutes | 40 | 80 | 120 | 120 | 120 | 480 | 120 | 120 | 120 | 120 | 120 |
| A-2b | Master's Program | 46 | 92 | 158 | 224 | 290 | 810 | 310 | 330 | 330 | 330 | 330 |
| A-2c | AP-IB Teacher Incentives | 100 | 179 | 265 | 363 | 400 | 1307 | 400 | 400 | 400 | 400 | 400 |
| A-2d | Science & Math Curriculum | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 100 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 |
| A-3 | AP-IB Student Incentives | 60 | 81 | 106 | 147 | 181 | 575 | 181 | 181 | 181 | 181 | 181 |
| *Total (K-12)* | | *376* | *747* | *1219* | *1689* | *1976* | 6007 | *2071* | *2091* | *2091* | *2091* | *2091* |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| B-1 | Long-term Basic Research | 800 | 1700 | 2700 | 3900 | 5200 | 14300 | 6600 | 8000 | 8000 | 8000 | 8000 |
| B-2 | Early-Career Research Award | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 | 300 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| B-3 | Research Infrastructure | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 | 2500 | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 |
| B-4 | High-Risk Research | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| B-5 | ARPA-Energy | 300 | 500 | 700 | 900 | 1000 | 3400 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 |
| B-6 | Presidential Innovation Award | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 250 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 |
| *Total (Research)* | | *1670* | *2790* | *4010* | *5430* | *6850* | 20750 | *8250* | *9650* | *9650* | *9650* | *9650* |

| Action Item | Recommendation | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 | 5-year total | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| C-1 | Undergraduate Scholarships | 375 | 750 | 1125 | 1500 | 1500 | 5250 | 1500 | 1500 | 1500 | 1500 | 1500 |
| C-2 | Graduate Portable Fellowships | 225 | 450 | 675 | 675 | 675 | 2700 | 675 | 675 | 675 | 675 | 675 |
| C-3 | Continuing Educ. Tax Credit | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 | 2500 | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 |
| C-4 | Expedite Visa Processing | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| C-5 | Intl Student Work Permits | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| C-6 | Skills-based immigration Policy | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| *Total (Higher Education)* | | *1100* | *1700* | *2300* | *2675* | *2675* | 10450 | *2675* | *2675* | *2675* | *2675* | *2675* |
| D-1 | Intellectual Property Protection | 323 | 323 | 323 | 323 | 323 | 1615 | 323 | 323 | 323 | 323 | 323 |
| D-2 | R&D Tax Credit | 5100 | 5100 | 5100 | 5100 | 5100 | 25500 | 5100 | 5100 | 5100 | 5100 | 5100 |
| D-3 | Innovation Tax Incentives Study | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| D-4 | Ubiquitous Broadband Internet | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| *Total (Incentives for Innovation)* | | *5423* | *5423* | *5423* | *5423* | *5423* | 27115 | *5423* | *5423* | *5423* | *5423* | *5423* |
| | | **2007** | **2008** | **2009** | **2010** | **2011** | 10045 | **2012** | **2013** | **2014** | **2015** | **2016** |
| **Grand Total (Billions of Dollars)** | | 8.6 | 10.7 | 13 | 15.2 | 16.9 | 64.4 | 18.4 | 19.8 | 19.8 | 19.8 | 19.8 |

**Action A-1 (Recruit 10, 000 teachers) Detailed Cost Analysis**

| | | Year | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Millions of Dollars** | | **2007** | **2008** | **2009** | **2010** | **2011** | **2012** | **2013** | **Steady State** |
| Scholarships | | 75 | 225 | 450 | 675 | 825 | 900 | 900 | 900 |
| Bonuses | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 |
| Institutional Awards | | 35 | 70 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| | Total | 110 | 295 | 550 | 815 | 965 | 1040 | 1040 | 1040 |
| **Scholarship** | #Old Students | 5000 | 5000 | 15000 | 30000 | 45000 | 55000 | 60000 | 60000 |
| **if $15,000** | #New students | | 10000 | 15000 | 15000 | 10000 | 5000 | | |
| **per year** | Scholarship $ | 15000 | 15000 | 15000 | 15000 | 15000 | 15000 | 15000 | 15000 |
| | Total $M | 75 | 225 | 450 | 675 | 825 | 900 | 900 | 900 |
| **Bonuses** | # Teachers | 0 | 0 | 0 | 4000 | 4000 | 4000 | 4000 | 4000 |
| | Bonus $ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 10000 | 10000 | 10000 | 10000 | 10000 |
| | Total $M | 0 | 0 | 0 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 | 40 |
| **Institutional** | # Institutions | 35 | 70 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| **Matching** | Grant $M | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| **Grants** | Total $M | 35 | 70 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |

| Action A-2a (Summer Institutes)Detailed Analysis | Year | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **2007** | **2008** | **2009** | **2010** | **2011** | **2012** | **2013** | **Steady State** |
| Number of Teachers | 16500 | 33500 | 50000 | 50000 | 50000 | 50000 | 50000 | 50000 |
| Cost per Teacher ($) | 2400 | 2400 | 2400 | 2400 | 2400 | 2400 | 2400 | 2400 |
| **Total (Millions of $)** | **40** | **80** | **120** | **120** | **120** | **120** | **120** | **120** |

| Action A-2b (Master's Program) Detailed Analysis | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **2007** | **2008** | **2009** | **2010** | **2011** | **2012** | **2013** | **Steady State** |
| Number of Programs | 100 | 200 | 300 | 400 | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 |
| Students per Program | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 |
| Number of Students/Program | 2000 | 4000 | 6000 | 8000 | 10000 | 10000 | 10000 | 10000 |
| Cost per Student | 23000 | 23000 | 23000 | 23000 | 23000 | 23000 | 23000 | 23000 |
| **Cost per Program ($M)** | **46** | **92** | **138** | **184** | **230** | **230** | **230** | **230** |
| Number of Graduates | | | 2000 | 4000 | 6000 | 8000 | 10000 | 10000 |
| Cost per Bonus | | | 10000 | 10000 | 10000 | 10000 | 10000 | 10000 |
| **Bonus Cost ($M)** | | | **20** | **40** | **60** | **80** | **100** | **100** |
| **TOTAL ($M)** | **46** | **92** | **158** | **224** | **290** | **310** | **330** | **330** |

| | **Breakdown of Program Cost ($) (100 students over a 5-year period)** |
|---|---|
| **Course Development** | 100,000 |
| **Administrative Staff Cost** | 500,000 |
| **Tuition** | 1,500,000 |
| **Transportation Reimbursement** | 150,000 |
| **Equipment** | 50,000 |
| **TOTAL $/Student** | 23,000 |

Note: Program cost estimate based on Email from Hai-Lung Dai of the University of Pennsylvania to Deborah Stine dated December 20, 2005.

**Action A-2c (AP/IB Teacher Incentive Program) Detailed Analysis**

| | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 | 2012 | 2013 | Steady State |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of Math and Science AP/IB Teachers | 14000 | 28000 | 42000 | 56000 | 56000 | 56000 | 56000 | 56000 |
| Number Laying the Foundation (LTF) (pre-AP/IB) Teachers | 16000 | 32000 | 48000 | 64000 | 64000 | 64000 | 64000 | 64000 |
| Training fee per teacher | 800 | 800 | 800 | 800 | 800 | 800 | 800 | 800 |
| **Total Training Cost ($M)** | **24** | **48** | **72** | **96** | **96** | **96** | **96** | **96** |
| Stipend fee/AP-IB Teacher | 1800 | 1800 | 1800 | 1800 | 1800 | 1800 | 1800 | 1800 |
| **Total Stipends for AP-IB Teachers ($M)** | **25** | **50** | **76** | **101** | **101** | **101** | **101** | **101** |
| Stipend fee/Laying the Foundation Teacher | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 |
| **Total Stipends for LTF Teachers ($M)** | **16** | **32** | **48** | **64** | **64** | **64** | **64** | **64** |
| Estimated Number of Passing AP-IB Scores | 313500 | 385000 | 495000 | 700000 | 870000 | 870000 | 870000 | 870000 |
| Teacher Bonus for Passing AP-IB Scores | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| **Total AP-IB Teacher Bonuses ($M)** | **31** | **39** | **50** | **70** | **87** | **87** | **87** | **87** |
| Estimated Number of Passing LTF Scores | 160000 | 384000 | 768000 | 1280000 | 2080000 | 2080000 | 2080000 | 2080000 |
| Teacher Bonus for Passing LTF Scores | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 |
| **Total LTF Teacher Bonuses ($M)** | **4** | **10** | **19** | **32** | **52** | **52** | **52** | **52** |
| **TOTAL ($M)** | **100** | **179** | **265** | **363** | **400** | **400** | **400** | **400** |

**Action 2-d (Curriculum Standards)**
**Cost: $100 million over 5 years**

**Action A-3 (AP/IB Student Incentive Program)**
**Detailed Analysis**

| | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 | 2012 | Steady State |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Number of Math and Science AP/IB Students | 570000 | 700000 | 900000 | 1250000 | 1500000 | 1500000 | 1500000 |
| Exam Fee (50% of $82 fee) | 41 | 41 | 41 | 41 | 41 | 41 | 41 |
| **Total AP-IB Exam Fee Cost** | **23** | **29** | **37** | **51** | **62** | **62** | **62** |
| Estimated Number of Passing AP-IB Scores | 313500 | 385000 | 495000 | 700000 | 870000 | 870000 | 870000 |
| Student Mini-Scholarship for Passing AP-IB Scores | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| **Total Mini-Scholarships** | **31** | **39** | **50** | **70** | **87** | **87** | **87** |
| Number of Pre AP/IB Students Taking Test | 640000 | 1280000 | 1920000 | 2560000 | 3200000 | 3200000 | 3200000 |
| Exam Fee (50% of $20 fee) | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 |
| **Total pre AP-IB Exam Fee Cost** | **6** | **13** | **19** | **26** | **32** | **32** | **32** |
| **TOTAL ($M)** | **60** | **81** | **106** | **147** | **181** | **181** | **181** |

**Action B-1 (Research Funding) Detailed Analysis:** The base for this cost estimate was determined using information from the following NSF publication:

Federal Funds for Research and Development: Fiscal Years 2002, 2003, and 2004 (Publication No: NSF 05-307)

which identifies the amount of basic research funding, by agency, in the physical sciences, mathematics, computer sciences, and engineering. (FY 2004 is the most recent year this information is available). This is summarized in the table below:

**Preliminary federal obligations for basic research in the physical sciences, mathematics, computer sciences, and engineering, by agency, FY 2004**[1]

| AGENCY | Funding (Billions) | Percent Of Total |
|---|---|---|
| All agencies | $7.4 | |
| Department of Defense | $1.1 | 15% |
| Department of Energy | $2.1 | 28% |
| NASA | $1.5 | 21% |
| NSF | $1.9 | 26% |

The committee also proposed that all of DOD basic research funding be increased. The following number provides the amount of DOD basic research funding included and not included in the table above (i.e., not in the research fields identified);

**DOD Basic Research Funding (including above): $1.6 billion**
**(not including above): $0.5 billion**

This provides a total base: $7.9 billion ($7.4B + $0.5B) which is that increased at a rate of 10% per year over the next 7 years as indicated in the recommendation.

| Year | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 | 2012 | 2013 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Millions of Dollars | 800 | 1700 | 2700 | 3900 | 5200 | 6600 | 8000 |

[1] Other agencies which fund these areas are Commerce, HHS, USDA, DHS, Interior, VA, EPA. HHS is largest at 6%; remainder at 1% or less for a total of 10%. Source: NSF, 2005. Federal Funds for Research and Development: Fiscal Years 2002, 2003, and 2004 (Publication No: NSF 05-307)

**Action B-2 (Early-Career Research Grants) Detailed Analysis:** As with the scholarship programs, this estimate gradually increases over time as the $500,000 research grants are payable over 5 years.

| | Year | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **2007** | **2008** | **2009** | **2010** | **Steady State** |
| #Previous Researchers | | 200 | 400 | 600 | 800 |
| #New Researchers | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 | 200 |
| Research $ | 100000 | 100000 | 100000 | 100000 | 100000 |
| Total $M | 20 | 40 | 60 | 80 | 100 |

**Action B-3 (Advanced Research Instrumentation and Facilities) Detailed Analysis:** This proposed action indicates that the funding will be $500 million per year for the next 5 years.

| Year | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Millions of Dollars | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 | 500 |

**Action B-4 (High-Risk Research) Detailed Analysis:** No new funds required for this action—just a specification that 8% of existing funds will be directed toward high-risk research.

**Action B-5 (ARPA-E) Detailed Analysis:** This recommendation indicates that ARPA-E would be funded at $300 million per year, gradually increasing over 5-6 years to $1 billion per year at which time it would be evaluated.

| Year | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Millions of Dollars | 300 | 500 | 700 | 900 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 |

**Action B-6 (Presidential Innovation Award) Detailed Analysis:** This program for a Presidential Innovation award would not require a monetary award, but one may be provided as indicated here.

| Year | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Millions of Dollars | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 |

**Action C-1 (Undergraduate Scholarships) Detailed Analysis**: The committee recommends that up to $20,000/year be provided for scholarships. This analysis focuses on the mid-range scholarship of $15,000/year. This allows the amount of the scholarship to vary relative to an institution's tuition. Because scholarship programs provided funding for a number of years, this program will take several years to reach steady state.

| | Year | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **2007** | **2008** | **2009** | **2010** | **Steady State** |
| #Old Students | | 25000 | 50000 | 75000 | 100000 |
| #New students | 25000 | 25000 | 25000 | 25000 | |
| Scholarship $ | 15000 | 15000 | 15000 | 15000 | 15000 |
| Total $M | 375 | 750 | 1125 | 1500 | 1500 |

**Action C-2 (Graduate Fellowships) Detailed Analysis:** As with the undergraduate scholarships, the committee recommends that up to $20,000/year be provided for scholarships. This analysis focuses on the mid-range fellowship of $15,000/year. This allows the amount of the fellowship to vary relative to an institution's tuition. Because fellowship programs provided funding for a number of years, this program will take several years to reach steady state. This program also provides a stipend for the graduate student at $30,000/year.

| | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | Steady State |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| #Old Students | | 5000 | 10000 | 15000 |
| #New students | 5000 | 5000 | 5000 | |
| Scholarship $ | 15000 | 15000 | 15000 | 15000 |
| Stipend $ | 30000 | 30000 | 30000 | 30000 |
| Total $M | 225 | 450 | 675 | 675 |

**Action C-3 (Continuing Education):** Based on a similar existing credit, the budget for this action is assumed to be $500 million per year. Education tax credits are available to individual families to help defray the cost of college. According to the College Board, the Federal Government provided $81.5 billion in student aid during 2003-2004. This can be roughly disaggregated as follows: 70 percent loans, 21 percent grants, 8 percent tax benefits. The tax benefits (Hope and Lifetime Learning Credits) amounted to approximately $6.3 billion. The $500 million the committee proposes is a modest amount in this context designed to spur corporate sponsorship of continuing education. The cap on tax credits could be increased over time or even lifted altogether. The following webpage provides an overview of existing tax credits: http://www.ed.gov/offices/OPE/PPI/HOPE/index.html.

**Action C-4 to C-7 (International Students and Scholars):** These are assumed to have no major cost as they involve only a policy change.

**Action D-1 (Enhance Intellectual Property Protection):** The base amount for this estimate is the FY2006 request for the US Pattent and Trademark Office which was $1.7 billion, a 10 percent increase from FY2005. The proposed $340 million per year, reflects a 20 percent increase in FY2007 in order to institute a post-grant review system and enhance other capabilities aimed at increasing the quality and timeliness of patent examinations. The other proposed changes do not require funding.

| Year | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Millions of Dollars | $340 | $340 | $340 | $340 | $340 | $340 | $340 | $340 |

**Action D-2: Strengthen the R&D Tax Credit:** Tax credits vary from year to year. In FY2005 the current R&D tax credit was forecast to cost $5.1 billion. Since the amount of the R&D tax credit in any given year depends on overall corporate profitability and tax liability, as well as on R&D spending decisions, the overall cost cannot be determined precisely in advance. Maintaining the existing R&D tax credit, therefore, is assumed to result in no incremental cost. The proposed doubling of the existing R&D tax credit is assumed to cost about the same as the existing R&D tax credit, but the actual increment could be larger or smaller. In addition, the proposed expansion of the number of companies eligible for the R&D tax credit is not reflected in the $5.1 billion figure as the number of companies who might be potentially be involved is unknown.

| Year | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Millions of Dollars | $5,100 | $5,100 | $5,100 | $5,100 | $5,100 | $5,100 | $5,100 | $5,100 |

**Action D-3 (Innovation Tax Incentive Study):** The proposed studies should be able to be performed within existing budgets.

**Action D-4 (Ubiquitous Broadband Internet):** The most important steps would not necessarily entail Federal outlays.

# APPENDIX F

## K-12 EDUCATION RECOMMENDATIONS SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION

### JUSTIFICATION FOR NUMBERS OF TEACHERS AND STUDENTS IN THE AP-IB AND PRE AP-IB PROGRAMS RECOMMENDED IN *ACTION A-2*.

***Students***

The goal is to have 1,500,000 high school students taking at least one advanced placement (AP) or International Baccalaureate (IB) mathematics or science exam by 2010, an increase to 23% from 6.5% of US high school juniors and seniors who took at least one AP math or science exam in 2004, with 700,000 passing the exam[1] (see Exhibit 1). AP-IB classes must be open to all students.

Exhibit 1: US Public School Enrollment and AP Participation

| | Projected 2004[2] | Projected 2010[3] |
|---|---|---|
| Total grade 9-12 enrollment | 14,700,000 | 14,600,000 |
| Total grade 11-12 enrollment | | 6,500,000 |
| | | |
| | Actual 2004[4] | Projected 2010 |
| Number of high school Jr./Sr. taking at least one AP mathematics or science exam | 380,000 | 1,500,000 |
| Percent of Jr./Sr. taking at least one AP mathematics or science exam | 6.5% | 23% |
| AP mathematics or science teachers | 33,000 | 100,000 |
| Students per AP teacher | 11.5 | 15 |

The proposed AP incentive program (APIP) has increased the number of students taking AP exams. To measure AP participation in a school, district, state or nation, we calculated the number of students taking AP exams per 1000 juniors and seniors. In 2005, the number of students taking AP exams in all math, science or english in the Dallas 10 districts was 2.3 times that of the national level (see Exhibit 2).

[1] AP passing score is 3-5; note that some colleges do not allow credit for AP coursework unless a score of 5 is achieved. IB scores on a 7-point scale, and 5 or higher is considered passing.
[2] The College Board
[3] Statistical Abstract of the United States: 2004-2005, Table 202.
[4] The College Board

Exhibit 2: Students taking AP Exams Per 1000[5] Juniors and Seniors Enrolled

| | |
|---|---|
| Dallas 10 APIP schools | 325 students |
| Texas public schools | 170 students |
| US public schools | 139 students |

***Teachers—AP-IB***

The AP and Pre-AP programs as proposed would provide professional development for 150,000 teachers now in the classroom to teach rigorous math and science courses in middle and high schools. Of these, 70,000 will teach Advanced Placement or International Baccalaureate courses in mathematics and science.[6] In addition, 80,000 teachers in grades 6-11 who are now in the classroom will receive training, teachers guides and assessments instruments, such as those available in the Laying the Foundation program, to prepare them to teach pre-AP mathematics and science courses that lead up to AP or IB courses. The proposed professional development program for AP-IB teachers is 7 days a year for four years; for Laying the Foundation teachers it is 8 days a year for four years.

Assuming 10 percent attrition among the current 33,000 AP mathematics and science teachers and by training an additional 70,000 teachers, public high schools would have an estimated 100,000 mathematics and science teachers capable of teaching AP or IB courses in place by 2010. This number is based on a realistic goal with the capacity to provide quality professional training for teachers on a large scale. As they become more productive and confident as teachers, they will recruit more students into demanding mathematics and science courses. We then realistically can expect steady increases in the numbers of junior and senior students who will take AP-IB mathematics and science exams to 1.5 million students by 2010, with increases well beyond 2010.

***Teachers—Pre AP-IB***

This proposal will provide pre-AP math and science training in content and pedagogy for 80,000 teachers who are currently in grades 6-11 classrooms. The 4-year training program includes 8 days of training each year for four years and the classroom materials (vertically aligned curriculum, lesson plans, laboratory exercises and diagnostics) needed to teach the more demanding math and science courses. By 2010, these teachers will help an estimated 5 million students each year develop critical thinking and problem solving skills in order to enlarge the AP pipeline in math and science. This represents an estimated 20% of US students who will be enrolled in grades 6-11 in 2010 (see Exhibit 3).

[5] "Per 1000" is calculated on the best enrollment data available at the time.
[6] Including AP calculus, computer science, statistics, biology, chemistry, physics and environmental science.

Exhibit 3: K-12 Students, Teachers, and Salaries[7]

| | # students | # teachers | Average salary | # science and math teachers |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| K-5 | 29,627,634 | 1,781,900 | $46,408 | |
| 6-8 | | | | 350,702[8] (191K in science, 160K in mathematics) |
| 9-12 | 18,504,864 | 1,264,723 | $47,120 | |
| High School Grads (2003-4) | 2,771,781 | | | |
| Total (Fall 2003) | 48,132,518 | 3,046,623 | $46,752 | (1,700,000)[9] |

NOTES: In 2003, there were 15,397 US school districts and the average amount spent per K-12 student from all revenue sources was $8,248.

[7] Unless otherwise noted, figures, excerpts, and charts are for the 2003-4 school year, as reported by National Education Association. 2005. *Rankings and Estimates.* Atlanta, GA: NEA Research, available at http://www.nea.org/edstats/images/05rankings.pdf.
[8] For the 1999-2000 school year.
[9] From Glenn commission report, 2000. Includes ALL primary school teachers, as well as specialty teachers in middle and upper grades.

# Appendix G

## Rising Above The Gathering Storm: Energizing and Employing America for a Brighter Economic Future

**Statement of**

**Norman R. Augustine**
**Retired Chairman and Chief Executive Officer**
**Lockheed Martin Corporation**

**And**

**Chair, Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century**
**Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy**
**Division on Policy and Global Affairs**
**The National Academies**

**before the**

**Committee on Energy and Natural Resources**
**U.S. Senate**

**October 18, 2005**

Mr. Chairman and members of the Committee.

Thank you for this opportunity to appear before you on behalf of the National Academies' Committee on Prospering in the Global Economy of the 21st Century. As you know, our effort was sponsored by the National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering and Institute of Medicine (collectively known as the National Academies). The National Academies were chartered by Congress in 1863 to advise the government on matters of science and technology.

The study had as its origin a conversation which took place at the National Academies with Senator Lamar Alexander several months ago. As a result of that discussion, the Academies were requested by Senator Alexander and Senator Jeff Bingaman, members of the Senate Committee on Energy and Natural Resources, to conduct an assessment of America's ability to compete and prosper in the 21st century—and to propose appropriate actions to enhance the likelihood of success in that endeavor. This request was endorsed by the House Committee on Science.

To respond to that request the Academies assembled twenty individuals with diverse backgrounds, including university presidents, CEOs, Nobel Laureates and former presidential appointees. The result of our committee's work was examined by over forty highly qualified reviewers who were also designated by the Academies. In undertaking our assignment we considered the results of a number of prior studies which were conducted on various aspects of America's future prosperity. We also gathered sixty subject-matter experts with whom we consulted for a weekend here in Washington and who provided recommendations related to their fields of specialty.

It is the unanimous view of our committee that America today faces a serious and intensifying challenge with regard to its future competitiveness and standard of living. Further, we appear to be on a losing path. We are here today hoping both to elevate the nation's awareness of this developing situation and to propose constructive solutions.

The thrust of our findings is straightforward. The standard of living of Americans in the years ahead will depend to a very large degree on the quality of the jobs that they are able to hold. Without quality jobs our citizens will not have the purchasing power to support the standard of living which they seek, and to which many have become accustomed; tax revenues will not be generated to provide for strong national security and healthcare; and the lack of a vibrant domestic consumer market will provide a *disincentive* for either U.S. or foreign companies to invest in jobs in America.

What has brought about the current situation? The answer is that the prosperity equation has a new ingredient, an ingredient that some have referred to as "The Death of Distance". In the last century, breakthroughs in aviation created the opportunity to move people and goods rapidly and efficiently over very great distances. Bill Gates has referred to aviation as the "World Wide Web of the twentieth century". In the early part of the present century, we are approaching the point where the communication, storage and processing of information are nearly free. That is, we can now move not only physical items efficiently over great distances, we can also transport *information* in large volumes and at little cost.

The consequences of these developments are profound. Soon, only those jobs that require near-physical contact among the parties to a transaction will not be opened for competition from job seekers around the world. Further, with the end of the Cold War and the evaporation of many of the political barriers that previously existed throughout the world, nearly three *billion* new, highly motivated, often well educated, new capitalists entered the job market.

Suddenly, Americans find themselves in competition for their jobs not just with their neighbors but with individuals around the world. The impact of this was initially felt in manufacturing, but soon extended to the development of software and the conduct of design activities. Next to be affected were administrative and support services. Today, "high end" jobs, such as professional services, research and management, are impacted. In short, few jobs seem "safe":

- U.S. companies each morning receive software that was written in India overnight in time to be tested in the U.S. and returned to India for further production that same evening—making the 24-hour workday a practicality.
- Back-offices of U.S. firms operate in such places as Costa Rica, Ireland and Switzerland.
- Drawings for American architectural firms are produced in Brazil.
- U.S. firm's call centers are based in India—where employees are now being taught to speak with a mid-western accent.
- U.S. hospitals have x-rays and CAT scans read by radiologists in Australia and India.
- At some McDonald's drive-in windows orders are transmitted to a processing center a thousand miles away (currently in the U.S.), where they are processed and returned to the worker who actually prepares the order.
- Accounting firms in the U.S. have clients tax returns prepared by experts in India.
- Visitors to an office not far from the White House are greeted by a receptionist on a flat screen display who controls access to the building and arranges contacts—she is in Pakistan.
- Surgeons sit on the opposite side of the operating room and control robots which perform the procedures. It is not a huge leap of imagination to have highly-specialized, world-class surgeons located not just across the operating room but across the ocean.

As Tom Friedman concluded in *The World is Flat*, globalization has "accidentally made Beijing, Bangalore and Bethesda next door neighbors". And the neighborhood is one wherein candidates for many jobs which currently reside in the U.S. are now just a "mouse-click" away.

How will America compete in this rough and tumble global environment that is approaching faster than many had expected? The answer appears to be, "not very well"—unless we do a number of things differently from the way we have been doing them in the past.

Why do we reach this conclusion? One need only examine the principal ingredients of competitiveness to discern that not only is the world flat, but in fact it may be tipping *against* us.

One major element of competitiveness is, of course, the cost of labor. I recently traveled to Vietnam, where the wrap rate for low-skilled workers is about twenty-five cents per hour, about one-twentieth of the U.S. minimum wage. And the problem is not confined to the so-called "lower-end" of the employment spectrum. For example, five qualified chemists can be hired in India for the cost of just one in America. Given such enormous disadvantages in labor cost, we cannot be satisfied merely to match other economies in those other areas where we do enjoy strength; rather we must excel . . . markedly.

The existence of a vibrant domestic market for products and services is another important factor in determining our nation's competitiveness, since such a market helps attract business to our shores. But here, too, there are warning signs: Goldman Sachs analysts project that within about a decade, fully 80% of the world's *middle-income* consumers will live in nations outside the currently industrialized world.

The availability of financial capital has in the past represented a significant competitive advantage for America. But the mobility of financial capital is legion, as evidenced by the willingness of U.S. firms to move factories to Mexico, Vietnam and China if a competitive advantage can be derived by doing so. Capital, as we have observed, crosses geopolitical borders at the speed of light.

Human capital—the quality of our work force—is a particularly important factor in our competitiveness. Our public school system comprises the foundation of this asset. But as it exists today, that system compares, in the aggregate, abysmally with those of other developed—and even developing—nations . . . particularly in the fields which underpin most innovation: science, mathematics and technology.

Of the utmost importance to competitiveness is the availability of knowledge capital—"ideas". And once again, scientific research and engineering applications are crucial. But knowledge capital, like financial capital, is highly mobile. There *is* one major difference: being first-to-market, by virtue of access to new knowledge, can be immensely valuable, even if by only a few months. Craig Barrett, a member of our committee and Chairman of Intel, points out that ninety percent of the products his company delivers on December 31st did not even exist on January 1st of that same year. Such is the dependence of hi-tech firms on being at the leading edge of scientific and technological progress.

There are of course many other factors influencing our nation's competitiveness. These include patent processes, tax policy and overhead costs—such as healthcare, regulation and litigation—all of which tend to work against us today. On the other hand, America's version of the Free Enterprise System has proven to be a powerful asset, with its inherent aggressiveness and discipline in introducing new ideas and flushing out the obsolescent. But others have now recognized these virtues and are seeking to emulate our system.

But is it not a *good* thing that others are prospering? Our committee's answer to that question is a resounding "*yes*". Broadly based prosperity can make the world more stable and safer for all; it can make less costly products available for American consumers; it can provide new customers for the products we produce here. Yet it is inevitable that there will be relative winners and relative losers—and as the world prospers, we should seek to assure that America does not fall behind in the race.

The enigma is that in spite of all these factors, America seems to be doing quite well just now. Our nation has the highest R&D investment intensity in the world. We have indisputably the finest research universities in the world. California alone has more venture capital than any nation in the world other than the United States. Two million jobs were created in America in the past year alone, and citizens of other nations continue to invest their savings in America at a remarkable rate. Total household net worth is now approaching $50 *trillion.*

The reason for this prosperity is that we are reaping the benefits of past investments—many of them in the fields of science and technology. But the early indicators of future prosperity are generally heading in the wrong direction. Consider the following:

- For the cost of one engineer in the United States, a company can hire eleven in India.
- America has been depending heavily on foreign-born talent. Thirty-eight percent of the scientists and engineers in America holding doctorates were born abroad. Yet, when asked in the spring of 2005, what are the most attractive places in the world in which to live, respondents in only one of the countries polled indicated the U.S.A.
- Chemical companies closed seventy facilities in the U.S. in 2004, and have tagged forty more for shutdown. Of 120 new chemical plants being built around the world with price tags of $1 billion or more, one is in the U.S. Fifty are in China.
- In 1997 China had fewer than fifty research centers managed by multinational corporations. By 2004 there were over six-hundred.
- Two years from now, for the first time, the most capable high-energy particle accelerator on earth will reside outside the United States.
- The United States today is a net importer of high technology products. The U.S. share of global high tech exports has fallen in the last two decades from 30% to 17%, while America's trade balance in high tech manufactured goods shifted from a positive $33B in 1990 to a negative $24B in 2004.
- In a recent international test involving mathematical understanding, U.S. students finished in 27th place among the nations participating.
- About two-thirds of the students studying chemistry and physics in U.S. high schools are taught by teachers with no major or certificate in the subject. In the case of math taught in grades five through twelve, the fraction is one-half. Many such students are being taught math by graduates in physical education.
- In one recent period, low-wage employers like Wal-Mart (now the nation's largest employer) and McDonald's created 44% of all new jobs. High-wage employers created only 29%.
- In 2003 foreign students earned 59% of the engineering doctorates awarded in U.S. universities.
- In 2003 only three American companies ranked among the top ten recipients of patents granted by the U.S. Patent Office.
- In Germany, 36% of undergraduates receive their degrees in science and engineering. In China, the corresponding figure is 59%, and in Japan it is 66%. In the U.S., the share is 32%. In the case of engineering, the U.S. share is 5%, as compared with 50% in China.
- The United States is said to have over ten million illegal immigrants, but the number of legal visas set-aside annually for "highly qualified foreign workers" was recently dropped from 195,000 per year down to 65,000.
- In 2001 (the most recent year for which data are available), U.S. industry spent more on tort litigation and related costs than on research and development.

As important as jobs are, the impact of these circumstances on our nation's security could be even more profound. In the view of the bipartisan Hart-Rudman Commission on National Security, ". . . the inadequacies of our system of research and education pose a greater threat to U.S. national security over the next quarter century than any potential conventional war that we might imagine."

The good news is that there are things we can do to assure that America does in fact share in the prosperity that science and technology are bringing the world. In this regard, our committee has made four broad recommendations as the basis of a prosperity

initiative—and offers 20 specific actions to make these recommendations a reality. They include:

- "Ten Thousand Teachers, Ten Million Minds"—which addresses America's K-12 education system. We recommend that America's talent pool in science, math and technology be increased by vastly improving K-12 education. Among the specific steps we propose are:
  - Recruitment of 10,000 new science and math teachers each year through the award of competitive scholarships in math, science and engineering that lead to a bachelor's degree *accompanied by a teaching certificate*—and a 5-year commitment to teach in a public school.
  - Strengthening the skills of 250,000 *current* teachers through funded training and education in part-time master's programs, summer institutes and Advanced Placement training programs.
  - Increasing the number of students who take Advanced Placement science and mathematics courses.

- "Sowing the Seeds"—which addresses America's research base. We recommend strengthening the nation's traditional commitment to long-term *basic* research through:
  - Increasing federal investment in research by 10% per year over the next seven years, with primary attention devoted to the physical sciences, engineering, mathematics, and information sciences—without disinvesting in the health and biological sciences.
  - Providing research grants to early career researchers
  - Instituting a National Coordination Office for Research Infrastructure to oversee the investment of an additional $500M per year for five years for advanced research facilities and equipment.
  - Allocating at least 8% of the existing budgets of federal research agencies to discretionary funding under the control of local laboratory directors.
  - Creation of an Advanced Research Projects Agency—Energy (ARPA-E), modeled after DARPA in the Department of Defense, reporting to the Department of Energy Undersecretary for Science. The purpose is to support the conduct of out-of-the-box, transformational, generic, energy research by universities, industry and government laboratories.
  - Establish a Presidential Innovation Award to recognize and stimulate scientific and engineering advances in the national interest.

- "Best and Brightest"—which addresses higher education. In this area we recommend:
  - Establishing 25,000 competitive science, mathematics, engineering, and technology undergraduate scholarships and 5,000 graduate fellowships in areas of national need for US citizens pursuing study at US universities.
  - Providing a federal tax credit to employers to encourage their support of continuing education.
  - Providing a one-year automatic visa extension to international students who receive a science or engineering doctorate at a U.S. university, and providing

automatic work permits and expedited residence status if these students are offered employment in the US.
- Instituting a skill-based, preferential immigration option
- Reforming the current system of "deemed exports" so that international students and researchers have access to necessary non-classified information or research equipment while studying and working in the US.

- "Incentives for Innovation"—in which we address the innovation environment itself. We recommend:
  - Enhancements to intellectual property protection, such as the adoption of a first-to-file system.
  - Increasing the R&D tax credit from the current 20% to 40%, and making the credit permanent.
  - Providing permanent tax incentives for US-based innovation so that the United States is one of the most attractive places in the world for long-term innovation-related investments.
  - Ensuring ubiquitous broadband Internet access to enable U.S. firms and researchers to operate at the state of the art in this important technology.

It should be noted that we are not confronting a so-called "typical" crisis, in the sense that there is no 9/11, Sputnik or Pearl Harbor to alert us as a nation. Our situation is more akin to that of the proverbial frog being slowly boiled. Nonetheless, while our committee believes the problem we confront is both real and serious, the good news is that we may well have time to do something about it—if we start now.

Americans, with only 5% of the world's population but with nearly 30% of the world's wealth, tend to believe that scientific and technological leadership and the high standard of living it underpins is somehow the natural state of affairs. But such good fortune is *not* a birthright. If we wish our children and grandchildren to enjoy the standard of living most Americans have come to expect, there is only one answer: We must get out and *compete*.

I would like to close my remarks with a perceptive and very relevant poem. It was written by Richard Hodgetts, and eloquently summarizes the essence of innovation in the highly competitive, global environment. The poem goes as follows:

*Every morning in Africa a gazelle wakes up.*
*It knows it must outrun the fastest lion or it will be killed.*
*Every morning in Africa a lion wakes up.*
*It knows it must outrun the slowest gazelle or it will starve.*
*It doesn't matter whether you're a lion or a gazelle – when the sun comes up, you'd better be running.*

And indeed we should.

Thank you for providing me with this opportunity to testify before the committee. I would be pleased to answer any questions you have about the report

# Appendix H

## BIBLIOGRAPHY


1. Adelman, Clifford. 1998. Women and Men on the Engineering Path: A Model for Analysis of Undergraduate Careers. Washington DC: US Department of Education. Available at http://www.nae.edu/nae/diversitycom.nsf/98b72da8aad70f1785256da20053deaf/85256cfb00484b5c85256da000002f83/$FILE/Adelman_Women_and_Men_of_the_Engineering_Path.pdf.

2. Allen, M. 2003. Eight Questions on Teacher Preparation: What does the Research Say? Washington, DC: 2003. Education Commission of the States. Available at http://www.ecs.org/tpreport.

3. Alliance for Science & Technology Research in America. 2004. Basic Research: Investing in America's Innovation Future, a presentation for the House Republican High Tech Working Group, March 31.

4. Alphonso, Caroline. 2005. Facing Security Hurdles, Top Students Flock to Canada. The Globe and Mail. February 22.

5. American Association for the Advancement of Science. 2004. Trends in Federal Research by Discipline, FY 1976-2004. October. Available at: http://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/disc04tb.pdf and http://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/discip04c.pdf

6. American Association for the Advancement of Science. 2005. Historical data on federal R&D, FY 1976-2006. Mar. 22. Available at http://www.aaas.org/spp/rd/hist06p2.pdf.

7. American Electronics Association. 2004. Losing the Competitive Advantage? The Challenge for Science and Technology in the United States. Washington, DC: American Electronics Association.

8. American Electronics Association. 2004. Offshore Outsourcing in an Increasingly Competitive and Rapidly Changing World: A High-Tech Perspective. Washington, DC: March.

9. Arndt, Michael. 2005. No Longer the Lab of the World: U.S. Chemical Plants are Closing in Droves as Production Heads Abroad. BusinessWeek. May 2. Available at: http://www.businessweek.com/magazine/content/05_18/b3931106.htm and http://www.usnews.com/usnews/biztech/articles/051010/10energy.htm

10. Association of American Universities. A National Defense Education Act for the 21st Century. 2005. Renewing Our Commitment to US Students, Science, Scholarship, and Society (White paper). Washington DC: AAU. Available at http://www.aau.edu/education/NDEAOP.pdf.

11. Aslanbeigui, N. and V. Montecinos. 1998. Foreign Students in US Doctoral Programs. Journal of Economic Perspectives 12:171-182.

12. Association of American Universities. 1998.Committee on Graduate Education, Graduate Education, Washington, DC: Association of American Universities.

13. Athreye, S. S. 2003. The Indian software industry. Carnegie Mellon Software Industry Center Working Paper 03-04. Pittsburg, PA: Carngie-Mellon University. Oct.

14. Atkinson, Robert, 2004. Meeting the Offshoring Challenge. Washington, DC: Progressive Policy Institute.

15. Atkinson, R. D. 2004. The Past and Future of America's Economy: Long Waves of Innovation That Power

Cycles of Growth. Northampton, MA: E. Elgar.

16. Attewell, Paul. 2001. The winner take-all high school: Organizational adaptations to educational stratification. Sociology of Education 74(4)(2001):267-296.

17. Attiyeh, Gregory and Richard Attiyeh. 1997. Testing for Bias in Graduate School Admissions. Journal of Human Resources 32:524-548.

18. Austin, C., Brady, L., Insel, T., and Collins, F. 2004. NIH molecular libraries initiative. Science 306(2004):1138-1139.

19. Autor, David, Lawrence Katz, and Kearney, Melissa. 2005. Trends in U.S. Wage Inequality: Re-Assessing the Revisionists. National Bureau of Economic Research. Working Paper 11627.

20. Ayers, W. M. 2002. MIT: The Impact of Innovation. Boston, MA: Bank Boston. Available at http://web.mit.edu/newsoffice/founders/Founders2.pdf.

21. Babco, E. 2002.Trends in African American and Native American Participation in STEM Higher Education. Washington DC: Commission on Professionals in Science and Technology.

22. Bar Shalom, Avital and Cook-Deegan, Robert. 2002. Patents and Innovation in Cancer Therapeutics: Lessons from CellPro. The Milbank Quarterly 80(December 2002):637-76, iii-iv.

23. Bardhan, A. and Kroll, C. 2003.The New Wave of Outsourcing. Fisher Center Research Reports #1103. University of California, Berkeley, CA: Fisher Center for Real Estate and Urban Economics. Nov. 2.

24. Bauer, P. W. 1999. Are We in a Productivity Boom? Evidence from Multifactor Productivity Growth. Federal Reserve Bank of Cleveland. Cleveland: OH: Oct, 15. Available at www.clevelandfed.org/research/Com99/1015.pdf, table 1.

25. Berkner, L.K., S. Cuccaro-Alamink and A.C. McCormick. 1996.Descriptive Summary of 1989-90 Beginning Postsecondary Students: 5 Years Later With an Essay on Postsecondary Persistence and Attainment. (NCES 96155).Washington DC: National Center for Education Statistics.

26. Berliner, D. C. and B. J. Biddle. 1995. The Manufactured Crisis: Myths, Fraud, and the Attack on America's Public Schools. New York. Addison-Wesley.

27. Bhagwati, J., A. Panagariya and T. N. Srinivasan. 2004.The muddles over outsourcing. Journal of Economic Perspectives 18(summer 2004): 93-114

28. Blasie, C. and G. Palladino. 2005. Implementing the professional development standards: A research department's innovative masters degree program for high school chemistry teachers. Journal of Chemical Education 82(4)(2005):567-570.

29. Bogumil Jewsiewicki. 2003. The Brain Drain in an Era of Liberalism, Ottawa, ON: Canadian Bureau for International Education.

30. Bonvillian, W. B. 2004. Meeting the new challenge to US economic competitiveness. Issues in Science and Technology 21(1)(Fall 2004): 75-82.

31. Boskin, Michael J. and Lawrence J. Lau. 1992. Capital, Technology, and Economic Growth. in Nathan Rosenberg, Ralph Landau, and David C. Mowery, eds. Technology and the Wealth of Nations. Stanford, Calif.: Stanford University Press.

32. Boylan, Myles. 2004. Assessing Changes in Student Interest in Engineering Careers Over the Last Decade.

CASEE, National Academy of Engineering. Available at: http://www.nae.edu/NAE/caseecomnew.nsf/weblinks/NFOY-6GHJ7B/$file/Engineering%20Interest%20-%20HS%20through%20College_V21.pdf.

33. Braxton, J.M. 2002. Reworking the Student Departure Puzzle. Nashville, TN: Vanderbilt University Press.

34. Brown, H. 2004.Council of Graduate Schools Finds Declines in New International Graduate Student Enrollment for Third Consecutive Year. Washington, DC: Council of Graduate Schools, Nov. 4.

35. Bubnoff, A. von. 2005. Asia squeezes Europe's lead in science. Nature 436(7049)(Jul. 21, 2005):314-314.

36. Budget of the United States Government, Fiscal Year 2006. 2005. Analytical Perspectives, Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office. Available at: http://a255.g.akamaitech.net/7/255/2422/07feb20051415/www.gpoaccess.gov/usbudget/fy06/pdf/spec.pdf.

37. Building Engineering & Science Talent, The Talent Imperative, San Diego: BEST. 2004.

38. Building Engineering and Science Talent (BEST). 2004. A Bridge for All: Higher Education Design Principles in Science, Technology, Engineering and Mathematics. San Diego, CA: BEST. Available at: http://www.bestworkforce.com.

39. Bureau of Industry and Security. 2004. Deemed Export Controls May Not Stop the Transfer of Sensitive Technology to Foreign Nationals in the U.S., Final Inspection Report No. IPE-16176—March 2004, Office of Inspections and Program Evaluations.

40. Bush pushes ubiquitous broadband by 2007. Reuters. March 26, 2004.

41. Business Roundtable. 2005. Tapping America's Potential. Washington, DC: Business Roundtable.

42. Business Roundtable. 2006. Innovation and U.S. Competitiveness: Addressing the Talent Gap. Public Opinion Research. Washington, DC: Business Roundtable. January 12. Available at: http://www.businessroundtable.org/pdf/20060112Two-pager.pdf

43. Business-Higher Education Forum. 2005. A Commitment to America's Future: Responding to the Crisis in Mathematics and Science Education, Washington, DC: American Council on Education.

44. Butts, Susan and Killoran, Robert. 2003. Industry-University Research in Our Times: A White Paper. Available at: http://www7.nationalacademies.org/guirr/IP_background.html

45. Bybee, Rodger W. and Elizabeth Stage. 2005. No country left behind, Issues in Science and Technology, Winter pp. 69-75.

46. Calabrese, Michael. 2005. Testimony to the Committee on Commerce, Science and Transportation, United States Senate, Hearing on Broadcast to Broadband, July 12.

47. Callan, B., S. Costigan, K. Keller. 1997. Exporting U.S. High Tech: Facts and Fiction about the Globalization of Industrial R&D, Council on Foreign Relations, New York, NY.

48. Center for Strategic and International Studies. 2001. Technology and Security in the 21st Century: US Military Export Control Reform, Washington, DC. CSIS.

49. Center for Strategic and International Studies. 1996. Global Innovation / National Competitiveness. Washington, DC: CSIS.

50. Center for Strategic and International Studies. 2005. Security Controls on Scientific Information and the

Conduct of Scientific Research. Washington, DC: CSIS, Jun.

51. Center for Strategic and International Studies. 2005. Technology Futures and Global Power, Wealth and Conflict.: Washington, DC: Center for Strategic and International Studies, May, p. viii.

52. Center for Sustainable Energy Systems. 2005. US Energy System Factsheet. University of Michigan. Ann Harbor, MI: August

53. Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. 2005. National Heath Expenditures. Available at: http://www.cms.hhs.gov/NationalHealthExpendData/downloads/tables.pdf

54. Central Intelligence Agency. 2001. Long-Term Global Demographic Trends: Reshaping the Geopolitical Landscape. Lansing, VA: CIA, July, p. 25.

55. Chelleraj, G., K.E. Maskus, and A. Mattoo. 2004. The Contribution of Skilled Immigration and International Graduate Students to US Innovation (Working Paper N. 04-10), University of Colorado, Boulder, CO:

56. Clinton, William Jefferson. "Commencement Address at Morgan State University in Baltimore, Maryland." May 18, 1997 Government Printing Office. 1997. Public Papers of the Presidents of the United States, Books I and II. Available at: http://www.gpoaccess.gov/pubpapers/wjclinton.html

57. Clotfeltner, CT, Ehrenberg, RG, Getz ,M, and Siegfried, JJ. 1991.Economic Challenges in Higher Education. Chicago, IL: The University of Chicago Press.

58. Cochran-Smith, M., and K. M. Zeichner. 2005. Studying Teacher Education. Washington, DC: American Educational Research Association.

59. Cohen, D. K. and H. C. Hill. 2000. Instructional policy and classroom performance: The mathematics reform in California. Teachers College Record 102(2)(2000): 294-343;

60. Cohen, W. 2001. East Asia at the Center: Four Thousand Years of Engagement with the World, New York: Columbia University Press.

61. Cohen, Wesley M and Merrill, Stephen A. (eds.), 2003. Patents in the Knowledge-Based Economy, Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

62. College Board, 2004.Trends in Student Aid 2004, Washington, D.C. College Board.

63. Colvin, Geoffrey. 2005. Can Americans compete? Is America the world's 97-lb. weakling? Fortune. July 25.

64. Commission on the Future of the United States Aerospace Industry. Final Report, Arlington, VA, Available at: www.ita.doc.gov/td/aerospace/aerospacecommission/AeroCommissionFinalReport.pdf

65. Commission on Protecting and Reducing Government Secrecy (the Moynihan Commission).1997. Secrecy, Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office.

66. Committee for Economic Development, Research and Policy Committee, Learning for the Future. 2003. Changing the Culture of Math and Science Education to Ensure a Competitive Workforce. New York: Committee for Economic Development.

67. Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy. 2000. Enhancing the Postdoctoral Experience for Scientists and Engineers, Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

68. Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy. 1995. Reshaping the Graduate Education of Scientists and Engineers, Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

69. Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy. 2005. Policy Implications of International Graduate Students and Postdoctoral Scholars in the United States, Washington DC: National Academies Press.

70. Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy. 1993. Science, Technology, and the Federal Government: National Goals for a New Era. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

71. Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy. 1999. Capitalizing on Investments in S&T. National Academy Press. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

72. Committee on Science, US House of Representatives. Unlocking Our Future. 1998. Toward a New National Science Policy (the "Ehlers Report").Washington, DC: US Congress.

73. Conference Board of Canada. 1999. The Economic Implications of International Education for Canada and Nine Comparator Countries: A Comparison of International Education Activities and Economic Performance. Department of Foreign Affairs and International Trade. Ottawa, Canada.

74. Conference Board of Canada. 1999.The Economic Implications of International Education for Canada and Nine Comparator Countries: A Comparison of International Education Activities and Economic Performance. Ottawa: Department of Foreign Affairs and International Trade. Ottawa, Canada.

75. Congressional Commission on the Advancement of Women and Minorities in Science, Engineering, and Technology Development. 2000. Land of Plenty: Diversity as America's Competitive Edge in Science, Engineering, and Technology. Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation.

76. Consortium for Policy Research in Education. 2002. A Report on the Eighth Year of the Merck Institute for Science Education. Philadelphia, PA: CPRE, University of Pennsylvania. Available at http://www.mise.org/pdf/cpre2000_2001.pdf.

77. Corporate R&D scorecard. 2005. Technology Review, Sept. pp. 56-61.

78. Council of Economic Advisers. 1995. Economic report of the President. United States Government Printing Office, Washington, DC.

79. Council of Economic Advisors. 1995. Supporting Research and Development to Promote Economic Growth: The Federal Government's Role. Washington, DC: White House, October.

80. Council of Graduate Schools. 2004. Ph.D. Completion and Attrition: Policy, Numbers, Leadership, and Next Steps.

81. Council on Competitiveness. 2001. Clusters of Innovation: Regional Foundations of US Competitiveness, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness.

82. Council on Competitiveness. 1991. Gaining New Ground: Technology Priorities for America's Future, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness.

83. Council on Competitiveness. 2004. Innovate America: National Innovation Initiative Summit and Report: Thriving in a World of Challenge and Change, Washington, DC: Council on Competitiveness.

84. Council on Government Relations. 1999. The Bayh-Dole Act: A Guide to the Law and Implementing Regulations, Washington, DC: CGR. Available at: www.ucop.edu/ott/bayh.html)

85. Council on Governmental Relations. 2003. Report of the Working Group on the Cost of Doing Business.

Washington, DC. CGR. June, 2.

86. Crow, M. and B. Bozeman. 1998. Limited by Design: R&D Laboratories and the U.S. National Innovation System. Columbia University Press: New York. pp. 5-6.

87. Dalton, D.H., M.G. Serapio, Jr. and P.G. Yoshida.1999. Globalizing Industrial Research and Development. U.S. Department of Commerce, Technology Administration, Office of Technology Policy.

88. Dalton, D.H., M.G. Serapio, Jr. and P.G. Yoshida. 1999. Globalizing Industrial Research and Development. U.S. Department of Commerce, Technology Administration, Office of Technology Policy.

89. Davis, Todd M. 2003. Atlas of Student Mobility, New York: Institute of International Education.

90. Defense Science Board. 2001. The Defense Science Board 2001 Summer Study on Defense Science and Technology. Washington, DC: DSB.

91. Department of Commerce. 2002. Commission on the Future of the United States Aerospace Industry, Final Report, Arlington, VA, Available at: www.ita.doc.gov/td/aerospace/aerospacecommission/AeroCommissionFinalReport.pdf.

92. Department of Defense. 2001.Quadrennial Defense Review Report. Washington, DC: DSB.

93. Department of Energy. 1995. Task Force on Alternatives Futures for the Department of Energy National Laboratories (Galvin Commission).

94. Department of State. 2004. Revision to Visas Mantis Clearance Procedure. State 153587, No. 22. Available at: http://travel.state.gov/visa/state153587.html.

95. Dertouzos, M., R. Lester, and R. Solow. 1989. Made in America: Regaining the Productive Edge. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

96. Dickeson, Robert C., 2004. Collision Course: Rising College Costs Threaten America's Future and Require Shared Solutions, Indianapolis, IN. Lumina Foundation for Education, Inc.

97. Dresselhaus, M. S. and I. L. Thomas. 2001. Alternative energy technologies. Nature 414(2001):332-337.

98. Dupree, A. Hunter, 1986. Science in the Federal Government: A History of Policies and Activities, 2nd ed., Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press.

99. E. H. Preeg. 2003. The Emerging Chinese Advanced Technology Superstate. Arlington,VA: Manufacturers Alliance/ MAPI and Hudson Institute, 2005; K. Walsh. Foreign High-Tech R&D in China: Risks, Rewards, and Implications for US-China Relations. Washington, DC: Henry L. Stimson Center.

100. E. L. Andrews. 2005. The doctrine was not to have one; Greenspan will leave no road map to his successor. New York Times, Aug. 26. p. C1.

101. E. Mansfield. 1991Academic research and industrial innovation. Research Policy 20:1-12.

102. Economic Policy Institute. 2004. EPI Issue Guide: Offshoring, Washington, DC.

103. Ehrenberg, Ronald G. and Zhang, Liang. 2004. The Changing Nature of Faculty Employment (Working Paper 44), Ithaca, NY: Cornell Higher Education Research Institute.

104. Eisenberg, R. 2003. Science and the law: Patent swords and shields. Science 299(5609):1018-1019.

105. European Commission. 2005. Enterprise and Industry Directorate-General. New and Emerging Science and Technology (NEST) Programme. Available at: http://www.cordis.lu/nest/home.html.

106. Evenson, R. E. 2001. Economic impacts of agricultural research and extension. In Handbook of Agricultural Economics Vol 1, eds. B. L. Gardner and G. C. Rausser, pp. 573-628 Rotterdam: North Holland,

107. Finn, Michael G. 2003. Stay Rates of Foreign Doctorate Recipients from US Universities, 2001, Oak Ridge, TN: Oak Ridge Institute for Science and Education. The stay rate was defined as remaining in the United States for at least 2 years after receipt of the doctorate, but Finn estimates that these rates do not fall appreciably during the first 5 years after graduation.

108. Florida, R. 2002. The Rise of the Creative Class…and how it's transforming work, leisure, community, & everyday life. New York: Basic Books.

109. Florida, R. 2005.The Flight of the Creative Class: The New Global Competition for Talent. New York: Harper Business.

110. Fox, M. F., and P. 2001. Stephan. Careers of young scientists: Preferences, prospects, and reality by gender and field. Social Studies of Science 31:109-122.

111. Forrester Research. 2004. Near-Term Growth of Offshoring Accelerating. Cambridge, MA: Forrester Research, May 14.

112. Fox MF and Stephan P. 2001. Careers of Young Scientists: Preferences, Prospects, and Reality by Gender and Field. Social Studies of Science 31:109-122.

113. Freeman R, Weinstein E, Marincola E, Rosenbaum J, and Solomon F. 2001. "CAREERS: Competition and Careers in Biosciences." Science 294 (5550): 2293-2294;

114. Freeman, R.B., Jin, E., and Shen, C.-Y. 2004. Where Do New US-Trained Science-Engineering PhDs Come From? (Working Paper Number 10544), Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economics Research.

115. Freeman, Richard B. 2005. Does Globalization of the Scientific/Engineering Workforce Threaten US Economic Leadership? (Working Paper 11457), Cambridge, MA.: National Bureau of Economic Research.

116. Freeman, Richard. 2005. It's a flat world, after all. The New York Times. April 3, Section 6; Column 1; Magazine Desk; Pg. 33

117. Friedman, Thomas L. 2005. The World is Flat: A Brief History of the 21st Century, New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux. p. 414-419.

118. Friedman, Thomas. 2005. The End of the Rainbow. New York Times. June 29.

119. Gerstner, Louis V., Jr. 2004. Teaching at Risk: A Call to Action. New York: City University of New York. Available at: www.theteachingcommission.org.

120. Hira, Ron and Anil Hira, 2005. Outsourcing America: What's Behind Our National Crisis and How We Can Reclaim American Jobs, Washington, DC: AMACOM Books.

121. Galvin Panel report. 1995. Task Force on Alternative Futures for the Department of Energy National Laboratories, Secretary of Energy Advisory Board. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Energy.

122. Geoffrey Colvin. 2005. America isn't ready. Fortune. July 25.

123. Gereffi, G. and V. Wadhwa. 2005. Framing the Engineering Outsourcing Debate: Placing the United States on a Level Playing Field with China and India. Available at: http://memp.pratt.duke.edu/downloads/duke_outsourcing_2005.pdf.

124. Glenn Commission. 2000. Before It's Too Late: A Report to the Nation from the National Commission on Mathematics and Science Teaching for the 21st Century. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Education.

125. Golde, C.M. and T.M. Dore. 2001. At Cross Purposes: What the Experiences of Doctoral Students Reveal about Doctoral Education. Philadelphia PA: A Report Prepared for The Pew Charitable TrUSts.

126. Gomory, R., and W. Baumol. 2001. Global Trade and Conflicting National Interests. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

127. Gomory, Ralph E. and Shapiro, Harold T. 2003. Globalization: Causes and Effects, Issues in Science and Technology.

128. Goo, Sara Kehaulani. Airlines Outsource Upkeep. Washington Post. August 21, 2005. Available at: http://www.washingtonpost.com/wp-dyn/content/article/2005/08/20/AR2005082000979.html

129. Goo, Sara Kehaulani. 2004. Two-Way Traffic in Airplane Repair. Washington Post June 1.

130. Gordon, R. J. 2002. The United States. In Technological Innovation and Economic Performance, eds. B. Steil, D. G. Victor, and R. R. Nelson, pp. 49-73. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.

131. Gordon, R. J. 2004. Why was Europe Left at the Station When America's Productivity Locomotive Departed? Working Paper 10661. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research. Available at http://www.nber.org/papers/w10661.

132. Gordon, R. J. 2002.Technology and Economic Performance in the American Economy. Working Paper 8771. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research.

133. Government Accounting Office. 1998. Best Practices: Elements Critical to Successfully Reducing Unneeded RDT&E Infrastructure. USGAO Report to Congressional Requesters. Washington, DC: GAO.

134. Government Accountability Office. 2005. National Nuclear Security Administration: Contractors' Strategies to Recruit and Retain and Critically Skilled Workforce Are Generally Effective (GAO-05-164), Washington DC: GAO.

135. Government Accountability Office. 2004. Border Security: Improvements Needed to Reduce Time Taken to Adjudicate Visas for Science Students and Scholars (GAO-04-371). Washington, DC: GAO

136. Government Accountability Office. 2005. Border Security: Streamlined Visas Mantis Program has lowered burden on science students and scholars, but further refinements needed (GAO-05-198). Washington DC: GAO.

137. Grabowski, H., J. Vernon, and J. DiMasi. 2002. Returns on research and development for 1990s new drug introductions. Pharmacoeconomics 20(suppl. 3)(2002):11-29.

138. Gralla, P. 2004. U.S. lags in broadband adoption despite VoIP demand, says report. EE Times Online. Available at: http://www.eet.com/showArticle.jhtml?articleID=55800449

139. Gross, Grant. 2003. CEOs defend moving jobs offshore at tech summit. InfoWorld. October 9.

140. Hall, B. H. and J. van Reenen. 1999. How Effective Are Fiscal Incentives for R&D? A Review of the Evidence. Working Paper 7098. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research.

141. Hamilton, Clovia. 2003. University Technology Transfer and Economic Development: Proposed Cooperative Economic Development Agreements Under the Bayh-Dole Act. John Marshall Law Review.

142. Henry L. Stimson Center and Center for Strategic and International Studies. 2001. Enhancing Multilateral Export Controls for US National Security, Washington, DC: The Henry L. Stimson Center.

143. Heyman, G.D., Martyna B, and Bhatia S. 2002. "Gender and Achievement-Related Beliefs among Engineering Students." Journal of Women and Minorities in S&E 8: 33-45.

144. Hicks, D. 2004. Asian countries strengthen their research. Issues in Science and Technology Vol.20 No. 4(Summer 2004):75-78. The author notes that the number of doctoral degrees awarded in China has increased 50-fold since 1986.

145. Hira, Ron. 2004. Rochester Institute of Technology, presentation to Committee on Science, Engineering, and Public Policy, Workshop on International Students and Postdoctoral Scholars, National Academies, July.

146. Hobbs, F. and N. Stoops. 2004. Demographic Trends in the 20th Century. US Census Bureau, CENSR-4. Washington, DC: US Bureau of the Census, November.

147. Holm-Nielsen, L. B. 2002. Promoting science and technology for development: The World Bank's Millennium Science Initiative. Paper delivered on April 30, 2002, to the First International Senior Fellows meeting, The Wellcome Trust, London, UK.

148. Holmstrom, Engin I. Catherine D. Gaddy, Virginia V. Van Horne, and Carolyn M. Zimmerman. 1997 Best and Brightest: Education and Career Paths of Top S&E Students. Washington, DC: Commission on Professionals in Science and Technology,

149. Hughes, K. H. 2005. Building the Next US Century: The Past and Future of US Economic Competitiveness. Washington, DC: Woodrow Wilson Center Press.

150. Hughes, K. H., Facing the global competitiveness challenge. Issues in Science and Technology Vol. 21 No. 4(Summer 2005):72-78.

151. Hundt, R., Why is government subsidizing the old networks when "Big Broadband" convergence is inevitable and optimal? New America Foundation Issue Brief. Dec. 2003.

152. Hunter, K. 2005. Education key to jobs, Microsoft CEO says. Stateline.org, Aug. 17.

153. IEEE. 2004. Position Statement on Offshore Outsourcing. Washington, DC. Available at: www.ieeeusa.org/policy/positions/offshoring.asp.

154. IMD International. World Competitiveness Yearbook. 2005: Lausanne, Switzerland, 2005. The United States leads the world (with a score of 100), followed in order by Hong Kong (93), Singapore, Iceland, Canada, Finland, Denmark, Switzerland, Australia, and Luxembourg (80).

155. Institute for International Education. 2004.Open Doors Report on International Educational Exchange. New York: Institute for Internal Education.

156. International Association of Pharmaceutical Manufacturers & Associations. A review of existing data exclusivity legislation in selected countries. January 2004. Available at: http://www.who.int/intellectualproperty/topics/ip/en/Data.exclusivity.review.doc.

157. ITAA. 2004.The Impact of Offshore IT Software and Services Outsourcing on the US Economy and the IT Industry. Lexington, Mass.: March.

158. Jackson, Richard and Neil Howe. 2003. The 2003 Aging Vulnerability Index. Washington, DC: CSIS and Watson Wyatt Worldwide. p. 43.

159. Joint Chiefs of Staff. 2001. Joint Vision 2020. Washington, DC: Department of Defense, 2000; Department of Defense. Quadrennial Defense Review Report. Washington, DC: Department of Defense.

160. Jones, Benjamin. 2005. Age and Great Innovation (Working paper 11359). Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research. Available at http://www.nber.org/papers/w11359. .

161. Kalita, S. Mitra. Virtual secretary puts new face on Pakistan. Washington Post, May 10, 2005, p. A01.

162. Kane, Thomas J. and . Orszag, Peter R. 2003. Higher Education Spending: The Role of Medicaid and the Business Cycle" (Policy Brief #124). Washington, DC: The Brookings Institution.

163. Kanellos, Michael. 2004. "IBM Sells PC Group to Lenovo." News.com. December 8.

164. Kapur, D. and J. McHale. 2005. Sojourns and Software: Internationally Mobile Human Capital and High-Tech Industry Development in India, Ireland, and Israel. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.

165. Kerr, William. 2004. Ethnic Scientific Communities and International Technology Diffusion (Working paper). Available at: http://econ-www.mit.edu/faculty/download_pdf.php?id=994.

166. King, Alexander, F., 2005. Policy Implications of Changes in Higher Education Finance, presentation to the National Academies' Board on Higher Education and Workforce. Washington, DC, April 21-22.

167. King, D. A..2004. The scientific impact of nations. Nature 430(6997)(July 15):311-316.

168. King, J. L., 2003. Patent examination procedures and patent quality. In Patents in the Knowledge-Based Economy, eds. W. M. Cohen and S. A. Merrill, pp. 54-73. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

169. Kissler, Jerry. 2005. Why It Is in the Interest to Address the Growing Gap Between Public and Private Universities. Oakland, CA: University of California.

170. Knezo, Genevieve J. 2003. Sensitive But Unclassified' and Other Federal Security Controls on Scientific and Technical Information: History and Current Controversy. Washington, DC: Congressional Research Service..

171. Korean Ministry of Science and Technology (MOST). Available at http://www.most.go.kr/most/english/link_2.jsp.

172. Lane, Neal and Kalil, Thomas. 2005 The National Nanotechnology Initiative: Present at the Creation. Issues in Science and Technology 21(Summer): 49-54.

173. Laudicina, P. A. 2005. World Out of Balance: Navigating Global Risks to Seize Competitive Advantage. New York: McGraw Hill.

174. Lawrence H. Dubois. 2003. DARPA's Approach to Innovation and Its Reflection in Industry. pp. 37-48 in Reducing the Time from Basic Research to Innovation in the Chemical Sciences: A Workshop Report to the Chemical Sciences Roundtable, Washington, DC: National Academy Press,

175. Leonard, Jeremey A. 2003. How Structural Costs Imposed on U.S. Manufacturers Harm Workers and Threaten Competitiveness. National Association of Manufacturers. Availbale at: http://www.nam.org/s_nam/bin.asp?CID=216&DID=227525&DOC=FILE.PDF.

176. Lewin, T. 2005. Many Going to College Are Not Ready, Report Says. New York Times, August 17.

177.Lewis, William W. 2004. The Power of Productivity: Wealth, Poverty, and the Threat to Global Stability, Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.

178.Lim, Paul J. 2006. Looking Ahead Means Looking Abroad. New York Times. January 8.

179.Lu, A. 2002. The Decision Cycle for People Going to Graduate School. Stamford, CT: Peterson's Thomson Learning.

180.Madey v. Duke Univ. 307 F.3d 1351. Available at 2002 U.S. App. LEXIS 20823, 64 U.S.P.Q.2d. (BNA) 1737 (Fed. Cir. 2002).

181.Mandel, M. J. 2004. Rational Exuberance: Silencing the Enemies of Growth and Why the Future Is Better Than You Think. New York: Harper Business, p. 27.

182.Mann, While C.2003. Globalization of IT Services and White Collar Jobs. Washington, DC: Institute for International Economics.

183.Markusen, A.R. and Costigan, S.S. 1999.The Military Industrial Challenge", in Markusen and Costigan (eds.), Arming the Future: A Defense Industry for the 21st Century, New York: Council on Foreign Relations, p.8.

184.Mashelkar, R. A. 2004.India's R&D: Reaching for the top. Science 307(2005):1415-1417; L. Auriol. Why do we need indicators on careers of doctorate holders? Workshop on User Needs for Indicators on Careers of Doctorate Holders. OECD: Paris, Sept. 27. Available at http://www.olis.oecd.org/olis/2004doc.nsf.

185.Math and Science Expert Panel. 2004. Exemplary Promising Mathematics Programs. Washington DC: US Department of Education, 1999; National Research Council. On Evaluating Curricular Effectiveness: Judging the Quality of K-12 Mathematics Evaluations. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

186.May, R. M. 2004. Raising Europe's game. Nature 430(2004):831; P. Busquin. Investing in people. Science 303:145.

187.McKinsey and Company. Offshoring: Is It a Win-Win Game? New York, NY: McKinsey and Company, Aug. 2003.

188.McKinsey and Company. 2005. The Emerging Global Labor Market: Part II-The Supply of Offshore Talent in Services. New York, NY: McKinsey and Company, June, p. 23.

189.Mehlman, Bruce. 2003. Offshore Outsourcing and the Future of American Competitiveness.

190.Merck Institute for Science Education (MISE). Available at http://www.mise.org/mise/index.jsp.

191.Mervis, Jeffrey. 2003. Down for the count. Science 300(5622)(May 16):1070-1074.

192.Ministry of Science and Technology. 2004. Chinese Statistical Yearbook 2004. People's Republic of China, Chapter 21, Table 21-11. Available at http://www.stats.gov.cn/english/statisticaldata/yearlydata/yb2004-e/indexeh.htm.

193.Moore, S. and Simon, J. L. 1999. The greatest century that ever was: 25 miraculous trends of the last 100 years. Policy Analysis No. 364. Washington, DC: Cato Institute, Dec. 15.

194.Nadiri, M. I. 1993. Innovations and Technical Spillovers. Working Paper 4423. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research.

195.NASSCOM. 2005. Strategic Review 2005. National Association of Software and Service Companies,

India. Chapter 6. Sustaining the India Advantage. Available at http://www.nasscom.org/strategic2005.asp

196. National Academies. 2002. Observations on the President's Fiscal Year 2003 Federal Science and Technology Budget. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2002, pp. 14-16.

197. National Academy of Engineering. 2003. The Impact of Academic Research on Industrial Performance, Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

198. National Academy of Engineering. 2003. A Century of Innovation Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

199. National Academy of Engineering. 1999. Concerning Federally Sponsored Inducement Prizes in Engineering and Science. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

200. National Academy of Engineering/Institute of Medicine. 2005. Building a Better Delivery System: A New Engineering/Healthcare Partnership, Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

201. National Academy of Sciences. 1996. Ozone Depletion, Beyond Discovery Series. April.

202. National Center for Education Statistic. 2006. Public Elementary and Secondary Students, Staff, Schools, and School Districts: School Year 2003–04. Available at: http://nces.ed.gov/pubs2006/2006307.pdf

203. National Center for Education Statistics. 1999. Highlights from TIMSS. Available at: http://nces.ed.gov/pubs99/1999081.pdf.

204. National Center for Education Statistics. 2004. Schools and Staffing Survey: Qualifications of the Public School Teacher Workforce: Prevalence of Out-of-Field Teaching 1987-88 to 1999-2000 (Revised)," p.10. Available at: http://nces.ed.gov/pubs2002/2002603.pdf

205. National Center for Education Statistics. 2005. International Outcomes of Learning in Mathematics Literacy and Problem Solving: PISA 2003 Results from the U.S. Perspective. pp. 15 & 29 Available at: http://nces.ed.gov/pubs2005/2005003.pdf.

206. National Center for Education Statistics. 2004. Digest of Education Statistics 2004. Institute of Education Sciences, Department of Education, Washington DC, Table 250. Available at http://nces.ed.gov/programs/digest/d04/tables/dt04_250.asp.

207. National Center for Education Statistics.. (2006), "The Nation's Report Card: Mathematics 2005." Available at: http://nces.ed.gov/nationsreportcard/pdf/main2005/2006453.pdf

208. National Center for Teaching and America's Future. 1996.Doing What Matters Most: Teaching for America's Future. New York: NCTAF.

209. National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. 2000. Principles and Standards for School Mathematics. Washington, DC: NCTM. Available at http://standards.nctm.org/

210. National Critical Technologies Panel. 1991. Report of the National Critical Technologies Panel, Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.

211. National Critical Technologies Panel. 1995. The National Critical Technologies Report, Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.

212. National Critical Technologies Panel. 1993.The Second Biennial Report of the National Critical Technologies Panel, Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.

213. National Energy Policy Development Group. 2001. National Energy Policy. US Government Printing Office. Washington DC. May .

214. National Institutes of Health, 2005. NIH Roadmap, High Risk Research. Available at: http://nihroadmap.nih.gov/highrisk.

215. National Institutes of Health. 2001. Working Group on Construction of Research Facilities. A Report to the Advisory Committee of the Director, National Institutes of Health. Bethesda, MD: NIH.

216. National Research Council. 1998. Trends in the Early Careers of Life Scientists. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.

217. National Intelligence Council. 2004. Mapping the Global Future: Report of the National Intelligence Council's 2020 Project. Pittsburgh: Government Printing Office.

218. National Research Council. 2004. A Patent System for the 21st Century. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

219. National Research Council. 2004. An Assessment of the Small Business Innovation Research Program: Project Methodology. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

220. National Research Council. 2005. Assessment of Department of Defense Basic Research. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

221. National Research Council. 1999. Balancing Scientific Openness and National Security Controls at the Nuclear Weapons Laboratories. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

222. National Research Council. 2004. Biotechnology Research in an Age of Terrorism. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

223. National Research Council. 2001. Trends in Federal Support of Research and Graduate Education. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

224. National Research Council. 1997. Industrial Research and Innovation Indicators, Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

225. National Research Council. 2005. Bridges to Independence: Fostering the Independence of New Investigators in Biomedical Research. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

226. National Research Council. 2001. Building a Workforce for the Information Economy. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

227. National Research Council. 1999. A Strategic Plan for Education Research and Its Utilization. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

228. National Research Council. 1995. Allocating Federal Funds for Science and Technology, Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

229. National Research Council. 2004. Measuring Research and Development Expenditures in the U.S. Economy. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

230. National Research Council. 2000. New Practices for the New Millennium. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

231. National Research Council. 2005. Avoiding Surprise in an Era of Global Technology Advances.

Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

232. National Research Council. 2001. Educating Teachers of Science, Mathematics, and Technology: New Practices for a New Millennium. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

233. National Research Council. forthcoming. Enhancing the Community College Pathway to Engineering Careers, Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

234. National Research Council. 2004. Evaluation of the National Aerospace Initiative, Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

235. National Research Council. 1997. Improving Teacher Preparation and Credentialing Consistent with the National Science Education Standards: Report of a Symposium. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

236. National Research Council. 2001.Making the Nation Safer: The Role of Science and Technology in Countering Terrorism. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

237. National Research Council. 2005. National Laboratories: Building New Ways to Work Together. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

238. National Research Council. 1984. National Materials Advisory Board, High-Technology Ceramics in Japan. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

239. National Research Council. 1999. Harnessing Science and Technology for America's Economic Future: National and Regional Priorities. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

240. National Research Council. 2001.Review of the Research Program of the Partnership for a New Generation of Vehicles. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

241. National Research Council. 2000. An Assessment of the Department of Defense's Fast Track Initiative. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

242. National Research Council. 1999. Challenges and Opportunities, Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

243. National Research Council. 2004. Program Diversity and Assessment Challenges, Report of a Symposium, Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

244. National Research Council. 1982. Scientific Communication and National Security. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

245. National Research Council. 2003. Securing the Future: Regional and National Programs to Support the Semiconductor Industry, Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

246. National Research Council. 2001. The Advanced Technology Program: Assessing Outcomes, Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

247. National Research Council. 1999. The Advanced Technology Program: Challenges and Opportunities, Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

248. National Research Council. 1999. The Small Business Innovation Research Program: Challenges and Opportunities, Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

249. National Research Council. 1999. Transforming Undergraduate Education in Science, Mathematics,

Engineering, and Technology, Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

250. National Research Council. 1998. Trends in the Early Careers of Life Scientists, Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

251. National Research Council. 1999. US Industry in 2000: Studies in Competitive Performance, Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

252. National Research Council. 2001. Making the Nation Safer: The Role of Science and Technology in Countering Terrorism. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

253. National Research Council. 2005. Advancing the Nation's Health Needs. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

254. National Research Council. 2004. A Patent System for the 21st Century. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

255. National Research Council. 2002. Attracting PhDs to K–12 Education: A Demonstration Program for Science, Mathematics, and Technology. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

256. National Research Council. 2001. Building a Workforce for the Information Economy. Washington, DC. National Academy Press.

257. National Research Council. 1999. How People Learn: Brain, Mind, Experience, and School. Washington, DC: National Academy Press. Available at http://books.nap.edu/catalog/6160.html.

258. National Research Council. 1997. Science for All Children: A Guide to Improving Elementary Science Education in Your School District. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

259. National Research Council. 2000. Attracting Science and Mathematics Ph.D.s to Secondary School Education. Washington, DC: National Academy Press. Available at http://www.nap.edu/catalog/9955.html.

260. National Research Council. 2004. Engaging Schools: Fostering High-School Students' Motivation to Learn. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

261. National Research Council. 2004. A Patent System for the 21st Century. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

262. National Research Council. 2005. Assessment of Department of Defense Basic Research. Washington, DC. National Academy Press.

263. National Research Council. 2000. The Small Business Innovation Research Program: An Assessment Of The Department Of Defense Fast Track Initiative. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

264. National Research Council. 1995. Evolving the High Performance Computing and Communications Initiative to Support the Nation's Information Infrastructure. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

265. National Research Council. 2003. Frontiers in Agricultural Research: Food, Health, Environment, and Communities. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

266. National Research Council. 1999. Harnessing Science and Technology for America's Economic Future. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

267. National Research Council. 2000. How People Learn. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

268. National Research Council. 2002. Learning and Understanding: Improving Advanced Study of Mathematics and Science in U.S. Schools. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

269. National Research Council. 2001. Making the Nation Safe: The Role of Science and Technology in Countering Terrorism. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

270. National Research Council. 1996. National Science Education Standards. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

271. National Research Council. 1999. U.S. Industry in 2000: Studies in Competitive Renewal. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

272. National Science and Technology Council. 2000. Ensuring a Strong US Scientific, Technical, and Engineering Workforce in the 21st Century. Washington, DC: Executive Office of the President of the United States.

273. National Science and Technology Council. 1995. Final Report on Academic Research Infrastructure: A Federal Plan for Renewal. Washington, DC: White House Office of Science and Technology Policy.

274. National Science Board. 2004. Science and Engineering Indicators 2004, Arlington, VA: National Science Foundation. Available at: www.nsf.gov/sbe/srs/seind04/c4/c4h.htm.

275. National Science Board. Committee on Programs and Plans, Charge to the Task Force on Transformative Research. Available at: http://www.nsf.gov/nsb/committees/cpptrcharge.htm

276. National Science Board. 2004. Report to the National Science Board on the National Science Foundation's Merit Review Process Fiscal Year 2004. NSB-05-12. Arlington, VA: NSB.

277. National Science Board. 2003. Science and Engineering Infrastructure for the 21st Century: The Role of the National Science Foundation. Arlington, VA: NSF.

278. National Science Foundation. 2003. Advisory Panel on Cyberinfrastructure. Revolutionizing Science and Engineering through Cyberinfrastructure. Arlington, VA: NSF.

279. National Science Foundation. 2003.Blue-Ribbon Advisory Panel on Cyberinfrastructure, Revolutionizing Science and Engineering Through Cyberinfrastructure, Arlington, VA: NSF.

280. National Science Foundation. 2000. Division of Science Resources Statistics. Science and Engineering Research Facilities at Colleges and Universities, 1998. NSF-01-301. Arlington, VA: NSF.

281. National Science Foundation. 2004. Graduate Enrollment in Science and Engineering Fields Reaches New Peak; First-Time Enrollment of Foreign Students Declines (NSF 04-326). Arlington, VA: NSF.

282. National Science Foundation. 1999. Preparing Our Children: Math and Science Education in the National Interest, Arlington, VA: NSF.

283. National Science Foundation. 2003. The Science and Engineering Workforce: Realizing America's Potential. Arlington, VA: NSF.

284. National Science Foundation. 2005. Survey of Earned Doctorates, 2003. Arlington, VA: NSF.

285. National Science Foundation. 2001. Survey of Doctorate Recipients 2001, the NSF Survey of Graduate Students and Postdocs. Arlington, VA: NSF.

286. National Science Foundation. 2004. Survey of Graduate Students and Postdoctorates in Science and

Engineering 2002. Arlington, VA: NSF.

287. National Science Foundation. 2005. Graduate Enrollment in Science and Engineering Programs Up in 2003, but Declines for First-Time Foreign Students: Info Brief NSF 05-317, Arlington, VA: NSF.

288. National Science Foundation. 2003. Graduate Enrollment Increases in Science and Engineering Fields, Especially in Engineering and Computer Sciences. NSF 03-315. Arlington, VA: NSF.

289. Nelson, Richard R., 1993.ed. National Innovation Systems: A Comparative Analysis, New York: Oxford University Press.

290. Noon, Chris. 2005. "Starbuck's Schultz Bemoans Health Care Costs." Forbes Magazine. September 19.

291. Nordhaus, W. 1999. The Health of Nations: The Contribution of Improved Health and Living Standards. Albert and Mary Lasker Foundation. Available at http://www.laskerfoundation.org/reports/pdf/economic.pdf.;

292. Nordhaus, W. 2005. The Sources of the Productivity Rebound and the Manufacturing Employment Puzzle (Working Paper 11354). Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research.

293. Ohland, M. W., G. Zhang, B. Thorndyke, and T. J. Anderson. 2004. Grade-Point Average, Changes of Major, and Majors Selected by Students Leaving Engineering. 34th ASEE/IEEE Frontiers in Education Conference. Session T1G:12-17.

294. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. 2002. International Mobility of the Highly Skilled (Policy Brief 92 2002 01 1P4). Paris: OECD Publications. Available at: http://www.oecd.org/dataoecd/9/20/1950028.pdf.

295. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. 2005. China Overtakes U.S. As World's Leading Exporter of Information Technology Goods. Paris: Paris: OECD Publications. December 12.

296. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development OECD. 2005. "OECD Broadband Statistics. Paris: Paris: OECD Publications. June. October 20. Available at: http://www.oecd.org/document/16/0,2340,en_2649_201185_35526608_1_1_1_1,00.html#data2004

297. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. 2005. Trends in International Migration: 2004 Annual Report. Paris: OECD Publications. See http://www.workpermit.com/ for more information on immigration policies in English-speaking countries and the European Union.

298. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. 2005. Main Science & Technology Indicators. Paris: OECD Publications. Available at: http://www.oecd.org/document/26/0,2340,en_2649_34451_1901082_1_1_1_1,00.html

299. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. 2004. Science, Technology and Industry Outlook. Paris: OECD Publications. December, p. 25, 67, 190. Available at: http://www.oecd.org/document/63/0,2340,en_2649_33703_33995839_1_1_1_1,00.html

300. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. Tax Incentive for Research and Development: Trends and Issues. Paris: OECD Publications. Available at: http://www.oecd.org/dataoecd/12/27/2498389.pdf.

301. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. 2004. The Economic Impact of ICT. Paris: OECD Publications.

302. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. 1998. Technology, Productivity, and Job

Creation: Best Policy Practices. Paris: OECD Publications.

303. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development. Program for International Student Assessment. Paris: OECD Publications. Available at: http://www.pisa.oecd.org.

304. Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development. 2005. Education at a Glance 2005. Paris: OECD Publications. Available at http://www.oecd.org/dataoecd/41/13/35341210.pdf.

305. Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. 2003. Science, Technology and Industry Scoreboard, 2003 R&D Database. Paris: OECD Publications. Available at http://www1.oecd.org/publications/e-book/92-2003-04-1-7294/.

306. Office of Management and Budget. 2005. Budget of the United States Government, Fiscal Year 2006. Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office.

307. Office of Science and Technology Policy.2000. Analysis of Facilities and Administrative Costs at Universities, Washington, DC: Executive Office of the President.

308. Office of Scientific Research and Development. 1945. Science –The Endless Frontier. Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office.

309. Organization for International Investment. The Facts About Insourcing. Available at: http://www.ofii.org/insourcing/

310. Office of Science and Technology of Canada. Canada. 2005. Immigration Policy Change Widens Door for Foreign Students and Scholars. Bridges 6. July 13. Available at: http://bridges.ostina.org.

311. Parker, Linda. 1997. The Engineering Research Centers (ERC) Program: An Assessment of Benefits and Outcomes, Arlington, Va.: NSF. Available at: www.nsf.gov/pubs/1998/nsf9840/nsf9840.htm.

312. Parsons, Michael. 2005. Higher Education Is Just Another Special Interest- The Chronicle of Higher Education 51(22): B20. Available at http://chronicle.com/prm/weekly/v51/i22/22b02001.htm.

313. Peterson, P. G. 2002. The shape of things to come: Global aging in the 21st century. Journal of International Affairs 56(1) Fall. New York, NY: Columbia University Press.

314. Pew Research Center. 2005. U.S. Image Up Slightly, But Still Negative, American Character Gets Mixed Reviews. Pew Global Attitudes Project. Washington, DC. Available at: http://pewglobal.org/reports/display.php?ReportID=247.

315. Piore, Michael J. and Charles F. Sabel. 1984. The Second Industrial Divide: Possibilities for Prosperity. New York: Basic Books.

316. Popper, Steven W. and Wagner, Caroline S. 2002. New foundations for growth: The US innovation system today and tomorrow. Arlington, VA: RAND

317. Popper, Steven W., Wagner, Caroline S., and Larson, Eric V. 1998. New Forces at Work: Industry Views Critical Technologies. Santa Monica, CA: RAND

318. Powell, Kendall. 2005. Hot house High. Nature. 435: 874-875.

319. President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology. 1997. Federal Energy Research and Development for the Challenges of the Twenty-First Century-Report of the Energy Research and Development Panel. The President's Committee of Advisors on Science and Technology. Washington, DC.

320. President's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology. 2004. Sustaining the Nation's Innovation Ecosystems, Information Technology Manufacturing and Competitiveness. Washington, DC: White House Office of Science and Technology Policy.

321. President's Information Technology Advisory Committee. 2005. Computational Science: Ensuring America's Competitiveness. Washington, DC.

322. Prestowitz, C. 2005. Three Billion New Capitalists: The Great Shift of Wealth and Power to the East. New York: Basic Books.

323. Raven, P. 2005. Biodiversity and Our Common Future-Bulletin of the American Academy of Arts & Sciences 58:20-24.

324. Rizzo, Michael. 2005. State Preferences for Higher Education Spending: A Panel Data Analysis, 1977-2001. Paper presented at Cornell Higher Education Research Institute's Annual Conference "Assessing Public Higher Education at the Start of the 21st Century." Ithaca, NY, May 22-23.

325. Roach, Steve. 2004. More Jobs, Worse Work. New York Times. July 22.

326. Romer, Paul M. 2000. Should the Government Subsidize Supply or Demand in the Market for Scientists and Engineers? (Working Paper 7723). Cambridge, MA: National Bureau for Economic Research. Availabe at: http://www.nber.org/papers/w7723.

327. Romer, Paul. 1993. Implementing a National Technology Strategy with Self-Organizing Industry Investment Boards. From Martin Neil Baily, Peter C. Reiss, and Clifford Winston (eds.), Brookings Papers on Economic Activity: Microeconomics (2), Washington, DC: Brookings Institution.

328. Rutherford, F. J., and Andrew Ahlgren. 1990. Science For All Americans. American Association for the Advancement of Science. October. Available at: http://www.project2061.org/default_flash.htm

329. Samuelson, P. A. 2004. Where Ricardo and Mill rebut and confirm arguments of mainstream economists supporting globalization. Journal of Economic Perspectives 18 (summer):135-146

330. Samuelson, Robert. 2005. China's Devalued Concession. The Washington Post. July 26,

331. Samuelson, Robert. 2005. The world is still round. Newsweek. July 25.

332. Saxenian, Anna Lee. 1999. Silicon Valley's New Immigrant Entrepreneurs. San Francisco: Public Policy Institute. Available at: http://www.ccis-ucsd.org/PUBLICATIONS/wrkg15.PDF.

333. Saxenian, Anna Lee. 2002. Brian Circulation: How High-Skill Immigration Makes Everyone Better Off. The Brookings Review 20(1)(Winter 2002) Washington DC, The Brookings Institute.

334. Schmidt, W. H., C. McKnight, R. T. Houang and D. E. Wiley. 2005. The Heinz 57 curriculum: When more may be less. Paper presented at the 2005 annual meeting of the American Education Research Association, Montreal, Quebec.

335. Scott, A. Steyn,G. Geuna,A. Brusoni,S. and Steinmeuller, W. E. 2001. The economic returns of basic research and the benefits of university-industry relationships. Report for the UK Government Office of Science and Technology. SPRU (Science and Technology Policy Research), University of Sussex: Brighton, 2001. Available at http://www.sussex.ac.uk/spru/documents/review_for_ost_final.pdf.

336. Secretary of Energy's Advisory Board. 2003. Task Force on the Future of Science Programs at the Department of Energy. Critical Choices: Science, Energy and Security. Final Report. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Energy. Oct. 13.

337. Semiconductor Industry Association. 2005. Choosing to Compete. December 12.

338. Seymour, E. and Hewitt, N. 1997. Talking About Leaving: Why Undergraduates Leave the Sciences. Boulder, CO: Westview Press.

339. Shanghai's Jiao Tong University Institute of Higher Education. 2004. Academic Ranking of World Universities. Available at: http://ed.sjtu.edu.cn/rank/2004/2004Main.htm

340. Sharma, Dinesh C. and Mike Yamamoto. 2004. How India is handling international backlash. CNET news.com. May 6.

341. Sigma Xi.2004. Sigma Xi National Postdoctoral Survey. Available at: http://postdoc.sigmaxi.org.

342. Smith, T. 2001. The Retention and Graduation Rates of 1993-1999 Entering Science, Mathematics, Engineering, and Technology Majors in 175 Colleges and Universities. Norman, OK: Center for Institutional Data Exchange and Analysis (C-IDEA), the University of Oklahoma.

343. Solow, R. M. 1957. Technical change and the aggregate production function. The Review of Economics and Statistics 39(1957):312-320.

344. Solow, R. M. 1960. Investment and Technical Progress. Available at: http://nobelprize.org/economics/laureates/1987/index.html.

345. Segal, A. 2004. Is America losing its edge? Innovation in a globalized world. Foreign Affairs Nov./Dec.

346. Spencer Stuart. 2005. 2004. CEO Study: A Statistical Snapshot of Leading CEOs. Available at: http://content.spencerstuart.com/sswebsite/pdf/lib/Statistical_Snapshot_of_Leading_CEOs_relB3.pdf#search='ceo%20educational%20background'

347. Spotts, P. N. 2005. Pulling the plug on science? Christian Science Monitor. Apr. 14.

348. Steil, Benn, Victor, David G. and Nelson, Richard R. 2002. Technological Innovation and Economic Performance. Princeton, New Jersey. Princeton University Press.

349. Stephan, P.E. and Levin, S.G. 2005. Foreign Scholars in US Science: Contributions and Costs in Science and the University, eds. Ronald Ehrenberg and Paula Stephan, Madison, WI: University of Wisconsin Press.

350. Stokes, D. E.1997. Pasteur's Quadrant: Basic Science and Technological Innovation. Washington DC.

351. Subotnik, Rena F., Stone, Karen Maurer, and Cynthia Steiner. 2001. Lost Generation of Elite Talent in Science. Journal of Secondary Gifted Education 13(2001):33-43.

352. Task Force on the Future of American Innovation. 2005. The Knowledge Economy: Is the United States Losing Its Competitive Edge, Benchmarks for Our Innovation Future. Washington, DC: The Task Force on the Future of US Innovation. February.

353. Teitelbaum, M.S. 2003. Do We Need More Scientists? The Public Interest 153:40-53.

354. Tobias, S. 1990. They're Not Dumb, They're Different. Stalking the Second Tier. Tucson, AZ: Research Corporation.

355. Tufts Center for the Study of Drug Development. Backgrounder: How new drugs move through the development and approval process. Nov. 1, 2001. Available at http://csdd.tufts.edu/NewsEvents/RecentNews.asp?newsid=4.

356. U.S. Commission on National Security. 2001. Road Map for National Security: Imperative for Change. Washington, DC: The Commission.

357. U.S. Department of Commerce. 2004. Spectrum Policy for the 21st Century: The President's Spectrum Policy Initiative. Report 1. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Commerce, June. Available at http://www.ntia.doc.gov/reports/specpolini/presspecpolini_report1_06242004.htm.

358. U.S. Department of Energy. 2001. Infrastructure Frontier: A Quick Look Survey of the Office of Science Laboratory Infrastructure. Washington, DC: DOE. April.

359. UNCTAD. 2004. World Investment Report 2004: The Shift Towards Services. New York and Geneva. United Nations.

360. United Nations, Department of Economic and Social Affairs, Population Division. 1999. The World at Six Billion. October 12. Available at: http://www.un.org/esa/population/publications/sixbillion/sixbillion.htm

361. United States Bureau of Labor Statistics. 2005. International Comparisons of Hourly Compensation Costs for Production Workers In Manufacturing, 2004. November 18. Available at: ftp://ftp.bls.gov/pub/news.release/History/ichcc.11182005.news

362. United States Commission on National Security 2001. Road Map for National Security: Imperative for Change.

363. United States House of Representatives Committee on Science. 1998. Unlocking our future: toward a new national science policy. September 24. Available at http://www.house.gov/science/science_policy_report.htm.

364. United States of America's Embassy. 1996. China's Science and Technology Policy for the Twenty-First Century—A View from the Top, Report from the US Embassy, Beijing, November.

365. US Bureau of Labor Statistics. 2005. Business Employment Dynamics: First Quarter 2005." November 18. Available at: http://www.bls.gov/rofod/3640.pdf.

366. US Bureau of the Census. Historical Statistics of the United States, Colonial Times to 1970. Part 1, Series B 107-15.

367. US Census Bureau Data Base. Total Mid-Year Population, 2004-2050. Available at: http://www.census.gov/ipc/www/idbsprd.html

368. US Census Bureau. 2000. Statistical Abstract of the United States.

369. US Department of Education. 2000. NAEP 1999 Trends in Academic Progress: Three Decades of Academic Performance. National Center for Education Statistics 2000-469, Washington, DC: US Department of Education.

370. US Department of Education. 1998. Pursuing Excellence: A Study of Twelfth-Grade Mathematics and Science Achievement in International Context. National Center for Education Statistics 98-049. Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office.

371. US Department of Education. 1994. Prisoners of Time. National Education Commission on Time and Learning. Washington, DC: US Department of Education.

372. US Department of Energy. Laboratory Science Teacher Professional Development Program: About LSTPD. Office of Science: Office of Workforce Development for Teachers and Scientists. Washington, DC.

373. US Department of Labor. 2001. Report on the American Workforce, 2001. Department of Labor. Washington, DC. Available at http://www.bls.gov/opub/rtaw/pdf/rtaw2001.pdf.

374. US General Accounting Office. 2001.Contributions to and Results of the Small Business Technology Transfer Program. Statement by Jim Wells (GAO-01-867T). Washington, DC: GAO.

375. US General Accounting Office. 2002. Lessons Learned from Previous Research could Benefit Freedom CAR Initiative. Statement of Jim Wells (GAO-02-810T). Washington, DC: GAO.

376. US Geological Survey. 1998. Building Safer Structures. Fact Sheet 167-95. Reston, VA: USGS. June. Available at http://quake.wr.usgs.gov/prepare/factsheets/SaferStructures/SaferStructures.pdf.

377. US Geological Survey. 1998. Speeding Earthquake Disaster Relief. Fact Sheet 097-95. Reston, VA: USGS, June. Available at http://quake.wr.usgs.gov/prepare/factsheets/Mitigation/Mitigation.pdf.

378. US Patent and Trademark Office. 2006. USPTO Annual List of Top 10 Organizations Receiving Most U.S. Patents. January 10. Available at: http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/com/speeches/06-03.htm

379. Bush, Vannevar. 1945. Science: The Endless Frontier. Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office.

380. Vedder, Richard. 2004. Growing Broke By Degree: Why College Costs Too Much. Washington, DC: AEI Press.

381. Venezia, A., Kirst MW, and Antonio AL. 2003. Betraying the College Dream: How Disconnected K-12 and Postsecondary Education Systems Undermine Student Aspirations. Stanford, CA: The Bridge Project, Stanford University. Available at: http://www.stanford.edu/group/bridgeproject/betrayingthecollegedream.pdf.

382. Wagner, Caroline S. and Popper, Steven W. 2003. Identifying Critical Technologies in the USA. Journal of Forecasting. 22(2003):113-128.

383. Wilson, D. J. 2002. Is embodied technological change the result of upstream R&D? Industry-level evidence. Review of Economic Dynamics 5(2)(2002):342-362.

384. Wulf, Wm. A.. 2005. Review and Renewal of the Environment for Innovation. Unpublished paper.

385. Wulf, Wm. A. 2005. Observations on Science and Technology Trends: Their Potential Impact on Our Future. In Anne G.K. Solomon (ed.), Technology Futures and Global Wealth, Power and Conflict. Washington, DC: Center for Strategic and International Studies.

386. Zumeta, W. and Raveling, J. S. 2004. The Market for Ph.D. Scientists: Discouraging the Best and Brightest? Discouraging All? AAAS Symposium, February 16. Available at: http://www.eurekalert.org/pub_releases/2004-02/uow-rsl021304.php.

387. Zumeta, William and Joyce S. Raveling. 2002. Attracting the Best and the Brightest. Issues in Science and Technology. Winter.

388. Zumeta, William and Joyce S. Raveling. 2001. The Best and the Brightest for Science: Is There a Problem Here? Pp. 121-161 in M.P. Feldman and A.N. Link (eds.), Innovation Policy in the Knowledge-Based Economy. Boston: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2001.

THE NATIONAL ACADEMIES

*Advisers to the Nation on Science, Engineering, and Medicine*

The nation turns to the National Academies—National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, Institute of Medicine, and National Research Council—for independent, objective advice on issues that affect people's lives worldwide.

www.national-academies.org

ISBN 0-309-10045-3
90000
9 780309 100458